

Art Unit: 3991

for the components of the active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent (see pp. 262-263).

Le Person teaches the limitations of the instant claims, other than the differences discussed below.

Le Person does not teach the viscosity of its wet mixture of ingredients, whereas the instant claims require a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps. It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have prepared Le Person's coating mixture of acrylic polymer, solvents and active with an appropriate viscosity so that it can be spread on a substrate and dried to form a film useful for transdermal delivery of the active (see p. 257). The claimed viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps corresponds to a viscosity ranging from thin castor oil to mincemeat. It would be obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to prepare Le Person's mixture such that the viscosity is not too low, and thus, the mixture doesn't run like water, but not too high so the mixture is spreadable on a substrate; and so as to ultimately form a transdermal delivery film which is a quality product with physical and chemical homogeneity and an appropriate distribution of active substance (see the paragraph bridging the left and right columns on p. 257 of Le Person).

The claimed percent variation of active of no more than 10%, less than 5%, less than 2%, less than 1% and less than 0.5%, and thus also the claimed substantially uniform distribution and locking-in or substantially preventing migration are inherent in Le Person's films in view of the fact that, as noted above, Le Person's active material

Art Unit: 3991

homogenizes and a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent. Accordingly, Le Person's films are suitable for regulatory approval by the FDA and commercialization, as here claimed.

Alternatively, to the extent the claimed percent variation of active is no inherent from Le Person's process, then such would have been obvious. Le Person also differs from the instant claims in that while Le Person teaches the active material homogenizes and a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent, Le Person does not perform "analytical chemical tests" on the equal sized dosage units.

However, Le Person's films are intended for human use for delivery of pharmaceuticals, such as transdermal drug delivery (see p. 257). It is well-known in the art that world regulatory authorities do not permit dosage forms to vary by more than 10% in the amount of active present. It is also well-known in the art that to verify such uniformity, the actual content of active in individual dosages is measured, i.e., conventional analytical testing is used.

It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to minimize the active content variation among Le Person's dosages, as measured by analytical chemical tests, as close to zero as possible, including the instantly claimed no more than 10%, less than 5%, less than 2%, less than 1%, and less than 0.5%, in view of the well-known goal of a skilled artisan to prepare dosages that do not vary by more than 10% in active, in view of the fact that Le

Art Unit: 3991

Person's active material homogenizes and a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent, and a desire to obtain FDA approval and commercialize the product. A skilled artisan would minimize active content variation by optimizing the available parameters in Le Person's process, which are the same as or similar to those in the '080 patent. These include drying temperature, drying time, air velocity, humidity etc (see pp. 258-259 of Le Person).

Further, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have performed known analytical chemical tests on Le Person's dosages so as to determine the actual amount of active in the dosages and thus, assure active content uniformity.

With respect to claim 82 and 315, Le Person does not specifically teach repeating its process and said analytical chemical tests. Further, Le Person does not specifically teach that the active content of the first film obtained from the process and additional films prepared by repeating the process varies no more than 10% from a desired amount as indicated by analytical chemical tests.

However, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have repeated Le Person's process and the analytical chemical tests for each film prepared by the process so as to prepare more films and dosages, seek regulatory approval and commercialize the product. It further would have been obvious to a skilled artisan at the time the invention was made to have prepared the multiple films such that the active content in each film does not vary by

Art Unit: 3991

more than 10% from the amount of active the dosages are supposed to contain as required by various world regulatory authorities, in order to minimize dosage variation and commercialize the product. A skilled artisan would obtain the variation of no than 10% from the desired amount by optimizing said available parameters in Le Person's process.

With respect to claims 90 and 172, Le Person teaches that its coating mixture contains three light solvents ( $Sl_i$ ) (see p. 258, section 2.1). Table 1 indicates that solvent  $Sl_2$  has a molecular weight of 46, which is the molecular weight of ethanol. While dimethyl ether also has a molecular weight of 46, it cannot be used as a solvent due to its low boiling point of  $-24^\circ\text{C}$ . Accordingly, the Le Person's light solvent of molecular weight 46 is either the same as or renders obvious ethanol as here claimed.

With respect to claims 274 and 292, which require that the resulting film contains less than about 6% by weight solvent, the solvent content in Le Person's dried films is far under about 6% as evidenced by Figs. 2 and 5. Le Person teaches that using a short-infrared drying process, in 10 minutes 99% of the initial water content from a 100  $\mu\text{m}$  thick coating is evaporated (see § 3.1 at pp. 260-261, in particular Fig. 5 and the second paragraph of right col. at page 260). In view of the water and heavy solvent content in Fig. 5, the total solvent content is well under about 6%.

Le Person does not teach the pharmaceutical or drug active materials listed in claims 92 and 174. However, these materials are conventional pharmaceuticals and drugs.

Accordingly, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have used the conventional pharmaceutical or drug materials here claimed as the pharmaceutical or drug material in Le Person's film so as to take advantage of the intended function of the pharmaceutical or drug, and because of a reasonable expectation of success.

With respect to claims 317 and 318, while Le Person does not specifically teach using air currents which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix such is either inherent or obvious. It's inherent because Le Person teaches air velocities of 2 m/s and 4 m/s (Table 2), which correspond to 4.5 miles/hr and 8.9 miles/hr, respectively. These are light winds that even with water (viscosity 1 cp) would produce only small wavelets.

Alternatively, since Le Person's resulting, dried films are homogeneous with respect to active material, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have adjusted Le Person's air velocity so that the film is not excessively blown and thus, a consistent product can be obtained.

**8. On pages 45-46 of the Comments filed 04/12/13, Third Party Requester proposes that claims 1, 5, 7-10, 13, 14, 23, 63, 64, 82, 84, 86-89, 92, 93, 102, 142, 143, 161, 166, 168-171, 174, 175, 184, 224, 225, 249, 267, 285 and 300-317 be rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as obvious over Horstmann.**

Art Unit: 3991

**9. On page 46 of the Comments filed 04/12/13, Third Party Requester proposes that claim 318 be rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over the combined teachings of Horstmann and Arter.**

**10. On pages 46-47 of the Comments filed 04/12/13, Third Party Requester proposes that claim 318 be rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over the combined teachings of Horstmann and Strobush.**

These proposed rejection Nos. 8 to 10 **are not adopted** for the reasons that follow.

Independent claims 1, 82 and 161 have been amended to require, and new independent claims 315-318 require, performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%. This requirement is similar to the imitation set forth in patented dependent claims 255, 273 and 291 (now canceled), which depended from claims 1, 82 and 161, respectively, and required the step of forming a plurality of individual dosage units of substantially the same size, wherein the active content of individual dosage units varies no more than 10%. Neither in the request for reexamination nor in the Comments filed 04/12/13 has Third Party Requester shown how Horstmann teaches or renders said requirement. Further, Horstmann is discussed in the Background of the Related Technology section of the '080 patent, where difficulty in achieving a uniform film after drying is discussed (col. 1,

Art Unit: 3991

line 52 through col. 4, line 23). Neither Arter nor Strobush solves Horstmann's deficiency.

### ***Response to Arguments***

Patent Owner's arguments filed March 13, 2013 have been fully considered but they are not persuasive.

It is noted that p. 61 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13 refers to "... the Bogue Declaration and the Fuller Declaration". There is no Fuller Declaration of record in the reexamination proceeding. As noted on p. 46 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13, the declarations accompanying Patent Owner's response of 03/13/13 are the Bogue Declaration and Lin Declaration.

#### General Arguments and the Bogue Declaration:

Patent Owner compares the claimed process to making bread on different days of the week (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 48-49). In particular, Patent Owner argues slices of bread from a loaf baked on a Monday would differ in taste by only 10%, and that slices from a Monday loaf and a Friday loaf have a difference in taste of about 10% from what the baker believes all his/her bread should be expected to taste like (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 48-49). Patent Owner cites the Bogue Declaration and argues that the "recipe" of Patent Owner's process keeps the difference between individual dosage units from one manufactured lot at smaller than 10% in amount of pharmaceutical active in claims 1, 82, 161 and 316-318, and keeps the difference between individual dosage

Art Unit: 3991

units between different manufactured lots smaller than 10% from a desired amount in claim 315 (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 48-52). The Bogue Declaration is cited in other portions of the Remarks of 03/13/13, including pp. 46, 60, 61, 63 and 64.

Patent Owner's arguments and the Bogue Declaration are unpersuasive. While a baker can follow a specific recipe with specific ingredients to bake the bread loaf, the instant claims are not so specific, but rather are broad and general. As noted above in the rejections, the prior art either explicitly, inherently and/or obviously performs the claimed generic manufacturing steps using the claimed generic ingredients.

In fact, as also noted above, Chen analyzes its resulting film using the same criteria exemplified in the '080 patent specification for evaluation of substantial uniform distribution, i.e., weight of dosages and visual inspection (see col. 31, line 37 through col. 32, line 34, and col. 37, lines 61-63 of the '080 patent). In particular, Chen's dried film product of Example 1 is cut into equal sized dosage units ready for packing (p. 17, lines 31-32; Table 4) and has a weight of  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film, a density of  $1.0485 \pm 0.009$  g/cm<sup>2</sup>, a water content of  $1.7 \pm 0.24\%$ , a thickness of  $2.1 \pm 0.12$  mil (see Table 4); and the dried films are glossy and substantially transparent (p. 17, line 15), i.e., they are visually free of aggregation. The  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film has variation of  $(0.001/0.028) \times 100 = 3.6\%$ . When film weight is rounded to two decimal places as in Table 2 at col. 31 of the '080 patent, then the weight is 0.03 gram/dosage film with a variation of 0%. Such small variation when following Chen's process was confirmed in the Reitman Declaration submitted by Third Party Requester.



Likewise, in the Example at cols. 11-12, Staab prepares a four-foot wide film which is then cut into two inch by two inch films each weighing 190 mg and containing 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride as the active agent (see col. 11, line 52 through col. 12, line 3). Le Person teaches the active material homogenizes and a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent (p. 263, col. 1, lines 8-13),

The Bogue Declaration is unpersuasive for several reasons. It does not make a comparison with the prior art of record, and thus, does not show anything unexpected with respect to the prior art of record. Other than the general process steps in the claims, which are performed by the prior art either explicitly, inherently or obviously, the Bogue Declaration lacks specific details about the film production. For example, it is not clear in the Bogue Declaration which materials, e.g., the specific polymers, actives and solvent, are used; it is not clear if other materials are present when preparing the films; it is not clear exactly what is done to form the flowable polymer matrix or how and on what it is casted, or how the controlled drying is performed and for what exact amount of time the drying is done, or which analytical chemical tests are used, etc. Accordingly, a definitive conclusion cannot be reached from the Bogue Declaration.

Patent Owner argues that “[a]s defined in the ‘080 patent, a visco-elastic film is one that has been controllably dried to lock its components into a substantially uniform distribution throughout the film while avoiding problems associated with conventional drying methods.” (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 53).

This argument is unpersuasive. Nowhere does the '080 patent provide a special definition for the term "visco-elastic film". As noted above in the Scope of Claims section, the matrix prior to evaporating the solvent (water) may be viscoelastic, and the viscoelasticity is present due, for example, to the fact that a hydrocolloid has been added. The instant claims have been amended to require "controlled drying ... to form a visco-elastic film having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout ...". However, as noted in the rejections, Chen, Staab and Le Person use controlled drying and obtain the claimed substantial uniformity of active in a viscoelastic film.

Patent Owner argues that physical properties such as product film weight and appearance do not establish uniformity of content of components, and that in the Scope of Claims section of the Office action mailed 11/29/12, the Specialist mistakenly included physical uniformity type tests with chemical uniformity type tests (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 53-59). In particular, Patent Owner cites the following passage from the Scope of Claims:

An alternative means for evaluating uniformity is to cut the film into individual doses and measure the weight of the doses (col. 31, line 46 through col. 32, line 45). The '080 patent notes that "films of substantially similar size cut from different locations of the same film contain substantially the same amount of active." (col. 32, lines 37-39).

and argues that the two sentences are not related to each other, other than that both deal with examples of cutting the film into dosage forms (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 57-58). Patent Owner cites col. 32, lines 35-40 of the '080 patent and argues that the '080 patent "discloses essentially that to demonstrate uniformity of content for active, the

Art Unit: 3991

amount of active in each substantially similarly sized sample must be determined."

(Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 58-59). Patent Owner argues that "it is one thing to have films which appear to be substantially free of aggregation and rely on that to say there is substantially no disparity among the amount of active in any portion of the film, and it is a totally different thing to demonstrate the presence of the required level of uniformity of content in the amount of active by analytical chemical testing and determining the actual amount of active in samples." (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 58). Patent Owner argues that "[i]n one example, in the '080 Patent analytical chemical testing was used to test for the amount of one component, a red dye, and in so doing established that the uniformity of content of the component fell well within the 10% level, particularly, it was 4%. See, '080 Patent, col. 33, l. 10 through col. 34, l. 24 (example M)." (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 59).

Patent Owner's arguments are unpersuasive. First, it is noted that the issued claims in the '080 patent do not recite "analytical chemical tests". This requirement was added by Patent Owner in the amendment dated 03/13/13 in response to the Office action mailed 11/29/12. Accordingly, in discussing the distribution of active in the Scope of Claims section in the first Office action, the Specialist was not mistaken in citing those portions of the '080 patent that deal with distribution of the active. In particular, the '080 patent teaches at col. 31, lines 37-44, that a "uniform distribution of components" can be determined by examination by either the naked eye or under slight magnification, and that "by viewing the films it was apparent that they were substantially free of aggregation, i.e. the carrier and the actives remained substantially in place and did not

Art Unit: 3991

move substantially from one portion of the film to another ... [t]herefore, there was substantially no disparity among the amount of active in any portion of the film." An alternative means for evaluating uniformity is to cut the film into individual doses and measure the weight of the doses (col. 31, line 46 through col. 32, line 45). The '080 patent notes that "films of substantially similar size cut from different locations of the same film contain substantially the same amount of active." (col. 32, lines 37-39).

Further, contrary to Patent Owner's argument, said two sentences are related to each other, i.e., cutting the film into individual doses and measuring the weight of the doses is an analytical technique for determining uniformity of active, as discussed at col. 31, line 46 through col. 32, line 39 of the '080 patent. In particular, col. 31, line 46 through col. 32, line 39 of the '080 patent discusses measuring uniformity by cutting the film into individual dosage units and weighing them. In this example, i.e., Example E bridging cols. 30-32, the individual dosages weighed 0.04 grams, i.e., 40 mg, "which shows that the distribution of the components within the film was consistent and uniform. This is based on the simple principle that each component has a unique density. Therefore, when the components of different densities are combined in a uniform manner in a film, as in the present invention, individual dosages [sic] forms from the same film of substantially equal dimensions, will contain the same mass." (See col. 31, line 46 through col. 32, line 33). The '080 patent then goes on to teach that "[a]n alternative method of determining uniformity of the active is to cut the film into individual doses ... [which are then] dissolved and tested for the amount of active in films of particular size." (See col. 32, lines 34-39).

Art Unit: 3991

In fact, Patent Owner's Lin Declaration notes in ¶16 that "[t]esting to establish uniformity of dosage is defined in the USP under the general chapter <905>." As noted by Third Party Requester on pp. 13-14 of the Comments filed 04/12/13, "[i]f the amount of active is high enough, a Weight Variation Test is acceptable. See Exhibit K at pp. 6-7, Q&A5." Exhibit J of the Comments filed 04/12/13, which is the 2011 version of general chapter <905>, shows that weight variation involves weight measurement of dosages.

Further, in the example in the '080 patent cited by Patent Owner, i.e., Example M at cols. 33-34, analytical chemical testing is used to test for the amount of one component, a red dye. However, red dye, which footnote 4 of Table 4 notes is available from McCormick, is not a bioactive active or pharmaceutical active here claimed. In the examples of the '080 patent containing bioactive or pharmaceutical active, visual inspection and/or weight of dosage films are used as in Chen. In the '080 patent's Example E, which contains loratadine as an active, visual inspection is used, and so is weight of dosage films, which are consistently found to be 0.04 gm (see col. 31, line 37 through col. 32, line 33). In the example at col. 37, lines 52-67, loratadine is added to composition AA and a dried film is formed and then cut into 1 in. x 0.75 in. pieces. The pieces are measured to weigh 70 mg  $\pm$  0.7 mg "demonstrating the uniformity of the composition of the film."

Patent Owner argues the following on pp. 54-55 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13:

Importantly, the process of forming a proper film product with the claimed levels of uniformity of content in, for example, the amount of active does not end

Art Unit: 3991

at the mixing stage. Patentee has discovered that the various steps post-mixing play a very important role in ensuring that the resulting product complies with the stringent requirements for uniformity of content. For example, one key step in the formation of a film product is the drying step, particularly when heat and/or radiation is used to dry the film. Patentee has discovered that controlled drying methods is essential in meeting these claimed requirements. Controlled drying includes methods that avoid, for example, the formation of bubbles, or uncontrolled air currents that may cause movement of particles within the visco-elastic film forming matrix. Controlled drying, as required by the invention as claimed, may be effectuated through evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less.

This argument is unpersuasive since, as noted above in the rejections, each of Chen, Staab and Le Person performs the claimed controlled drying. Using Chen as an example, it is the Specialist's position that Chen's mixture before drying is viscoelastic. In particular, as noted above, the '080 patent teaches that "[t]he addition of hydrocolloids to the aqueous phase of the suspension increases viscosity, may produce viscoelasticity, and can impart stability depending on the type of hydrocolloid, its concentration and the particle composition, geometry, size and volume fraction (see col. 8, lines 42-46). Chen adds the same hydrocolloid as in the '080 patent, i.e. said HPMC, to water, and Chen's wet matrix before drying has a viscosity of 500-15,000 cps (p. 15, line 26), which is within the '080 patent's disclosed range of about 400-100,000 cps and overlaps the most preferred range of about 1,000-40,000 cps (see the paragraph bridging cols. 16 and 17 of the '080 patent). Accordingly, Chen's films in Examples 1, 2 and 5-8 and the Example in Tables 7 and 8 are inherently viscoelastic before drying.

Art Unit: 3991

Within 4 minutes of the 9 minutes of drying in Chen's Examples 1, 2 and 5-8 and the Example in Tables 7 and 8, a more dry viscoelastic film is obtained.

Alternatively, to the extent that Chen's wet film in Examples 1, 2 and 5-8 and the example in Tables 7 and 8 before drying are not viscoelastic, then within about the first 4 minutes of the 9 minute drying in a hot air circulating oven at 50°C, a viscoelastic film is inherently formed. In particular, in order to arrive at a dried film product as in Chen, which is made using the same materials as disclosed in the '080 patent and the same basic process steps here claimed, wherein the dried film is glossy and substantially transparent and has the gram per dosage, thickness, density and water content in Chen's Table 4 for Example 1, then a viscoelastic film is inherently formed within about 4 minutes. The remaining time after the viscoelastic film is formed further dries the viscoelastic film.

As an even further alternative, if Chen's viscoelastic film is formed after about the first 4 minutes but within Chen's 9 minute drying time, then a skilled artisan would recognize that with a higher drying temperature, a shorter drying time than 9 minutes can be used. In other words, a higher drying temperature than the 50°C exemplified by Chen would result in formation of Chen's viscoelastic film product sooner. In fact, Chen teaches that its drying temperature can be in the range of 40-100°C (see p. 15, line 28). It would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have used a higher drying temperature than the 50°C exemplified by Chen because Chen teaches that the drying temperature can be as high as 100°C, and the resulting expectation of a shorter drying time using a higher temperature.

Further, before controlled drying, Chen's mixture of ingredients, i.e., the instant flowable polymer matrix, which Chen teaches has a viscosity of 500 to 15,000 cps, is degassed in a vacuum chamber until trapped air bubbles are removed, and then coated on the non-siliconized side of a polyester film (see p. 15, lines 24-29; and p. 17, lines 13-15). Chen controls drying and evaporates water from the cast matrix in 9 minutes of drying in a hot air circulating oven at 50°C (see p. 17, lines 13-15 and Fig. 2). As seen schematically in the drying apparatus of Chen's Fig. 2, the air flow is less direct at the film surface at the beginning of the drying and becomes more direct as the film proceeds through the drying oven, which has an aeration controller (see also p. 5, line 31 through p. 6, line 3). According, Chen takes into account air bubbles and control of air currents.

Patent Owner argues that having a glossy surface does not equate to a uniform film, because the bottom side of a film product formed on a substrate will take the surface features of the substrate (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 55).

This argument is unpersuasive. Apparently, this argument is referring to Chen, which teaches that its film is glossy (see p. 17, line 15). The argument ignores the fact that Chen further teaches its film is substantially transparent, has a weight of  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film when cut into dosages, has a thickness of  $2.1 \pm 0.12$  mil, has a density of  $1.0485 \pm 0.009$  g/cm<sup>2</sup>, and has a water content of  $1.7 \pm 0.24\%$  (see p. 17, lines 15-16 and Table 4). The argument also ignores the fact that Chen uses essentially the same production steps, e.g., forming a masterbatch premix, adding



Art Unit: 3991

active, casting the flowable polymer matrix, controlled drying, and forming a resulting film, as in instant claim 1.

Patent Owner argues they were the first to identify and solve the problems associated with manufacture of commercially and pharmaceutically viable active containing film dosage units or forms (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 59-61). In particular, Patent Owner argues they discovered that conventional drying methods are not commercially viable to manufacture therapeutic-active-containing films, and argues they solved the problem by controlling polymer matrix viscosity and controlling the drying process (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 60-61).

These arguments are not persuasive. While the '080 patent states at col. 3, lines 33-37 that "[c]onventional drying methods generally include the use of forced hot air using a drying oven, drying tunnel, and the like" and that "[t]he difficulty in achieving a uniform film is directly related to the rheological properties and the process of water evaporation in the film-forming process", it is noted that none of the processes of Chen, Staab or Le Person, which are essentially the same as here claimed, with the exception of running conventional "analytical chemical tests", is addressed in the '080 patent.

Patent Owner argues the Cohen Declaration is "dead wrong on its face or does not apply to the '080 patent" because "Dr. Cohen does not discuss the degree of uniformity of content"; argues that Dr. Cohen provides no support for any prescribed

Art Unit: 3991

degree of uniformity; and cites case law for the proposition that inherency requires more than probabilities, possibilities or assumption (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 62-65).

This argument is unpersuasive. As noted above in the rejection over Chen, ¶¶ 8-10 of the Cohen Declaration are cited for the proposition that when working with a homogeneous or completely dissolved coating mixture as in Chen, it would be difficult for a person of ordinary skill in the film art not to obtain a film that has a uniform content of active, and the drying method disclosed in Chen would not be expected to create any agglomeration, aggregation or otherwise non-uniform content of active (see ¶¶ 8-10). This is supported by the results of Chen, who cuts a film into dosage units weighing  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film (Table 4 of Chen) and thus, a variation of  $(0.001/0.028) \times 100 = 3.6\%$ . When film weight is rounded to two decimal places as in Table 2 at col. 31 of the '080 patent, then the weight is 0.03 gram/dosage film with a variation of 0%. As also noted above, the films have a density of  $1.0485 \pm 0.009$  g/cm<sup>2</sup>, a water content of  $1.7 \pm 0.24\%$ , a thickness of  $2.1 \pm 0.12$  mil (see Table 4); and the dried films are glossy and substantially transparent (p. 17, line 15), i.e., they are visually free of aggregation. The Cohen Declaration's assertions are further supported by the Reitman Declaration, which reproduced Chen's Example 7 and obtained films each weighing 0.034 grams/dosage unit, and having a variation of active content, i.e., oxybutynin content, of less than 10% as here claimed.

In rebutting Third Party Requester's position in the request that a "whereby" clause in a method claim is not given weight when it simply expresses the intended

Art Unit: 3991

result of a process step positively recited, Patent Owner argues that such clauses, including the "wherein" clauses of the instant independent claims, cannot be ignored (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 73-74).

This argument is moot since the rejections in the Office action mailed 11/29/12 and the instant Action Closing Prosecution address the "wherein" clauses of the claims. The requirements of the clauses are either taught by, inherent in, or rendered obvious by the prior art, as set forth in the rejections.

Arguments with respect to the rejections based on Chen; and Patent Owner's citation of the Lin Declaration:

Patent Owner argues the following on pp. 65-66 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13:

1. Chen's alleged inherency.

"The claimed "substantially uniform distribution of components" and "locking-in or substantially preventing migration" of the active in independent claims 1, 82 and 161, and the variation of active content of 10% or less in dependent claims 254-255, 272-273 and 290-291, are inherent in Chen's exemplified films and process. Inherency is based on the following: As discussed above, Chen uses the same materials and method as here claimed. Chen's ingredients are mixed until they are uniformly dispersed or dissolved in the hydrocolloid (p. 17, lines 8-11). Chen uses the same criteria discussed above with respect to the '080 patent in the Scope of Claims section for evaluation of substantial uniform distribution, i.e., weight of dosages and visual inspection."

Office Action, p. 13.

The criteria used by Chen as cited by the Examiner for evaluation of "substantial uniform distribution" are physical observations. Such "observations" cannot be used, either inherently or otherwise, to establish the uniformity of content in the actual amount of active in equally sized samples in Chen's examples. Absent statements or data based on

Art Unit: 3991

analytical chemical testing, not weighing or visual inspection, for the amount of active present in the film, Chen does not and cannot inherently disclose Patentee's resulting film having the claimed levels of uniformity of content. Moreover, even if Chen disclosed, which it does not, the use of the same materials and methods as the '080 Patent, the mere fact that a certain thing may result from a given set of circumstances is not sufficient to support inherency. *Crown, supra*, at 1378.

These arguments are unpersuasive. As noted above, Chen uses the same materials and method steps here claimed. Additionally, the criteria used by Chen to evaluate uniformity is the same as used in the examples of '080 patent, i.e., visual inspection and weight of dosage films. As noted above, Chen's dried film product of Example 1 is cut into dosage units ready for packing (p. 17, lines 31-32) and has a weight of  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film, i.e., 0.03 gram/dosage film with a variation of 0%. Chen's films are glossy and substantially transparent (p. 17, line 15).

Likewise, at cols. 31-32, the '080 patent teaches that uniform distribution of components within the film was apparent by examination by either the naked eye or under slight magnification. Also, the individual dosages in Table 2 consistently weighed 0.04 grams, "which shows that the distribution of components within the film was consistent and uniform ... based on the simple principle that each component has a unique density. Therefore, when the components of different densities are combined in a uniform manner in a film, as in the present invention, individual dosages [sic] forms from the same film of substantially equal dimensions, will contain the same area." (See col. 32, lines 26-33). Similarly, at col. 37, lines 52-67 of the '080 patent, the dried film was cut into 1 in. x 0.75 in. pieces weighing  $70 \text{ mg} \pm 0.7 \text{ mg}$ .

Art Unit: 3991

While the '080 patent teaches analytical chemical tests can be used as an alternative to visual inspection and weight of dosages films for determining uniformity (col. 31, line 37 through col. 32, line 39), no analytical chemical tests are done in any '080 patent example to determine the weight of a pharmaceutical active or bioactive active. The only analytical chemical tests exemplified in the '080 patent are in Example M at col. 33-34, and these tests are done for content of McCormick red dye, which is not a pharmaceutical active or bioactive active.

Patent Owner argues "Third Party Requester has not provided any proof that Chen's process examples when followed exactly, with all the components exactly as listed, and all other conditions of Chen exactly met, will provide a process suitable for commercial manufacture, a process which produces products which are regulatory approvable by the FDA, and which exhibit the levels of uniformity of content in actual amount of active claimed by Patentee's processes." (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 66).

This argument is unpersuasive. The claims do not require FDA approval. Chen renders obvious the claimed invention and, as discussed above, shows the same level of uniformity, based on visual examination and weight of dosage units, as exemplified in the '080 patent. In any event, as also noted above, the Reitman Declaration submitted by Third Party Requester is further proof that when Chen's process example is followed exactly, with all the components exactly as listed, and all other conditions of Chen exactly met, provides a level of uniformity as here claimed.

Art Unit: 3991

On pp. 66-67 and 77 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13, Patent Owner points to ¶ 22 of the Lin Declaration, which argues the following:

22. Finally, Chen's patent discloses the release profiles of four active agents from films. See Chen, Figure 5. The release profile data presented in Figure 5 show a high degree of variability at each data point. For example, the release profile for nicotine containing film product show that the amount of nicotine released at the 5 minute and 8 minute time point can be as high as approximately 115-120%. This level of active agent is greater than the 110% level (from an expected amount of 100%) that is considered acceptable to FDA for regulatory approval of a product that purports to be manufactured consistently with acceptable content uniformity. These data indicate that the test method used in the analysis is not reproducible and/or there is a lack of active agent content uniformity between individual dosage units. These deficiencies demonstrate the lack of manufacturing consistency and lack of active agent content uniformity in the film.

This argument is unpersuasive. Nowhere does the '080 patent or USP general chapter <905> cited in ¶ 16 of the Lin Declaration (see also Exhibits J and K of the Comments filed 04/12/13) rely solely on a release profile to evaluate uniformity of content in the amount of active, as here claimed. Further, as noted by Third Party Requester on p. 7 of the Comments filed 04/12/13:

Lin concludes his Declaration with a logical fallacy. Based on a possible relationship between data and a film problem, and despite evidence that indicates an alternative possibility is more likely, Lin illogically finds that the data necessarily shows a film problem. Lin states that Chen's interim release data indicates a problem with the test method "and/or" a variation in dosage unit active content. See Lin Decl. ¶ 20 [sic, ¶ 22] (emphasis added). Reduced to its logical components, Lin's premise is that X (Chen's interim release data) indicates A (test problem) and/or B (film problem). As an initial matter, the fact that Chen's maximum release error bars decrease over time indicates that the error noted by Lin is an artifact of the test method--not a characteristic of the film. Nonetheless, without further support or explanation, Lin concludes that Chen's data demonstrates unacceptable variation in dosage unit active content (film problem). Reduced to its logical components, Lin's conclusion (X demonstrates B) does not follow from Lin's own premise (X indicates A and/or B). In other words, Lin's conclusion is logically invalid based on Lin's own stated premise.

Art Unit: 3991

Because it lacks viable support or explanation, Lin's conclusory allegation based on Chen's interim release data cannot overcome any rejections based on Chen. See MPEP 716.01 (C).III (requiring consideration of the absence of factual support for an expert opinion in assessing its probative value).

Patent Owner cites the Lin Declaration for the proposition that Chen's disclosure is insufficient to provide the manufacture of drug-containing films with the uniformity content in amount of drug (active) in individual dosage units to make FDA approvable film products (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 67 and 78). Patent Owner argues that the claims now require analytical chemical testing and that the films have levels of uniformity in the amount of active which varies by no more than 10% from film to film and/or no more than 10% from a desired amount across several films (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 67).

These arguments and the Lin Declaration are unpersuasive. As noted by Third Party Requester on pp. 5-6 of the Comments filed 04/12/13, the issue here is not whether Chen provides the thousands of pages of documentation required for the FDA to approve a drug product for administration to humans. The issue here is one of meeting the well-known requirement of a variation in active content of no more than 10%. As noted in the Background of the Related Technology section of the '080 patent, it is well-known from various world regulatory authorities that dosage forms may not vary more than 10% in the amount of active present (col. 2, lines 38-45). The claims require a film has levels of uniformity in the amount of active which varies by no more than 10%, and claims 82 and 315 further require no more than 10% from a desired amount across additional films prepared by repeating the process. As discussed above,

Art Unit: 3991

while the '080 patent teaches analytical chemical tests can be used as an alternative to visual inspection and weight of dosages films for determining uniformity (col. 31, line 37 through col. 32, line 39), the only analytical chemical tests exemplified in the '080 patent are in Example M at col. 33-34, and these tests are done for content of McCormick red dye, which is not a pharmaceutical active or bioactive active.

As also discussed in detail above, the criteria used by Chen to evaluate uniformity is the same as used in the examples of '080 patent, i.e., visual inspection and weight of dosage films. Chen's dried film product of Example 1 is cut into dosage units ready for packing (p. 17, lines 31-32) and has a weight of  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film, a density of  $1.0485 \pm 0.009$  g/cm<sup>2</sup>, a water content of  $1.7 \pm 0.24\%$ , and a thickness of  $2.1 \pm 0.12$  mil (see Table 4); and the dried films are glossy and substantially transparent (p. 17, line 15), i.e., they are visually free of aggregation and the weight is  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage, i.e., 0.03 gram/dosage with a variation of 0% when rounded to two decimal places as in Table 2 at col. 31 of the '080 patent.

Further, as noted in the rejection, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have performed known analytical tests on Chen's dosages so as to determine the actual amount of active in the dosages and assure active content uniformity.

Patent Owner argues that the terms "glossy" and "transparent" used to describe the films prepared in Chen are not interchangeable or equivalent with uniformity of content of components of a film (Remarks of 03/13/13., pp. 67-68 and 75-77).



Art Unit: 3991

This argument is unpersuasive. Chen uses the terms "glossy" and "transparent", i.e., visual characteristics of the film, along with measuring gram per dosage of a film cut into dosages (see p. 17, line 15; and Table 4). These are the same types of evaluations taught at col. 31, line 37 through col. 32, line 39 of the '080 patent.

Patent Owner argues the following on p. 75 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13:

Chen does not disclose as claimed in the '080 patent: the recited controlled drying; the recited viscoelastic film; substantially uniform distribution of components; or locking-in or substantially preventing migration of the active; or said substantially uniform distribution of said active maintained by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, rapidly increasing the viscosity of the flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about 4 minutes to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of active, such that uniformity of content of the resulting film varies by no more than 10% in amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of a lot of the resulting film, and by no more than 10% from the desired amount across different lots of resulting films, and is in compliance with FDA regulations governing same.

This argument is unpersuasive because, for all the reasons set forth above, the features argued by Patent Owner are either taught, inherent in, or rendered obvious by Chen.

Patent Owner argues the following on p. 75 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13:

Chen also fails to disclose, explicitly or inherently, the additional elements found in Claim 317. Claim 317 generally adds, inter alia, conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60 °C and using air currents, which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by less

Art Unit: 3991

than 5%, and further controlling drying through a process comprising drying at a temperature differential ranging from 5 °C to 30 °C between polymer matrix inside temperature and outside exposure temperature.

Patent Owner's arguments are misguided because claim 317 does not recite a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60 °C, nor does it recite a variance of less than 5%, or a temperature differential ranging from 5 °C to 30 °C between polymer matrix inside temperature and outside exposure temperature.

Claim 317 does recite using air currents, which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix. However, as noted above, Chen's Fig. 2 shows air flow is less direct at the film surface at the beginning of the drying and becomes more direct as the film proceeds through the drying oven, which has an aeration controller (see also p. 5, line 31 through p. 6, line 3). As also noted above, Chen produces a film that is glossy, substantially transparent, has a weight of  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film, a density of  $1.0485 \pm 0.009$  g/cm<sup>2</sup>, a water content of  $1.7 \pm 0.24\%$ , a thickness of  $2.1 \pm 0.12$  mil (seep. 17, lines 15-16; and Table 4). The  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film, when rounded to two decimal places as in Table 2 at col. 31 of the '080 patent, is 0.03 gram/dosage film with a variation of 0%. Accordingly, the air flow of Chen either inherently or obviously have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix in order to arrive at the glossy, transparent, essentially uniform films which are exemplified therein.

Formation of a viscoelastic film is also recited in claim 317, but as discussed in the rejection, Chen's films in Examples 1, 2 and 5-8 and the example in Tables 7 and 8 before drying are already viscoelastic, the films become viscoelastic within the first 4

Art Unit: 3991

minutes of drying, or such would have been obvious using a higher drying temperature and shorter drying time.

Patent Owner argues that statements in Chen such as “dried under aeration” and “glossy, stand alone, self-supporting, non-tacky and flexible film” are general statements and cannot support either anticipation or obviousness (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 75-76).

This argument is unpersuasive because the rejection over Chen is based on much more in Chen than these statements, and Chen renders obvious the claimed invention for the reasons stated above.

Patent Owner argues that Chen’s drying process “is so general and devoid of detail so as to provide no guidance other than to dry a film in a conventional hot air circulating oven at temperatures of from 40-100°C and leaves it for a period of time”; that Chen does not disclose any other drying methods beyond drying under aeration; that Chen does not disclose any controlled drying process; and that Chen shows no recognition of complexities involved in commercial manufacturing of films. (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 76).

These arguments are unpersuasive. As noted in the rejection, Chen’s processing steps are essentially the same as here claimed. Further, with respect to drying, as seen schematically in the drying apparatus of Chen's Fig. 2, the air flow is less direct at the film surface at the beginning of the drying and becomes more direct as the film proceeds through the drying oven, which has an aeration controller (see also p.

Art Unit: 3991

5, line 31 through p. 6, line 3). Chen exemplifies drying at 50°C for 9 minutes, which is within the '080 patent's most desirable temperature range of about 80°C or less (col. 27, lines 53-55) and within the '080 patent's time range of about 10 minutes or fewer (col. 7, line 31).

With respect to the rejection over the combined teaching of Chen and Staab, Patent Owner relies on the same arguments set forth above (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 78).

These arguments are unpersuasive for the reasons set forth above.

Arguments with respect to the rejections based on Staab:

Patent Owner argues that Staab does not and cannot inherently disclose the claimed levels of uniformity content or forming a viscoelastic film within about the first 4 minutes (Remarks of 03/13/13, pp. 69 and 79).

This argument is unpersuasive. The '080 patent teaches that “[t]he addition of hydrocolloids to the aqueous phase of the suspension increases viscosity, may produce viscoelasticity, and can impart stability depending on the type of hydrocolloid, its concentration and the particle composition, geometry, size and volume fraction (see col. 8, lines 42-46). Staab uses the same hydrocolloid as in the '080 patent, i.e. said HPMC. As noted above, Staab teaches that “[t]he dissolution of the film can be readily adjusted by using different viscosities of the hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose ranging from less than 80 to more than 4,000 centipoises.” (See col. 5, lines 10-14). Staab’s film in the

Art Unit: 3991

Example at cols. 11-12 is inherently viscoelastic before drying. Accordingly, within about the first 4 minutes of drying, a viscoelastic film having less water than before drying is formed.

Alternatively, to the extent that Staab's blended mixture before drying is not viscoelastic, then within about the first 4 minutes of the drying, a viscoelastic film is inherently formed. In particular, in order to arrive at a dried film product as in Staab, which is made using the same materials as disclosed in the '080 patent and the same basic process steps here claimed and each dosage film weighing 190 mg and containing 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride as the active agent (col. 11, line 35 through col. 12, line 3), i.e., a variation in active content of 0%, then a viscoelastic film is inherently formed within about the first 4 minutes of drying.

With respect to uniformity, the claimed percent variations as measured by analytical chemical tests, as well as the claimed "substantially uniform distribution of components" and "locking-in or substantially preventing migration" are inherent in Staab's films in view of the fact that each dosage film contains 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride, i.e., a variation of 0%. Alternatively, such would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was in view of the well-known goal of a skilled artisan to prepare dosages that do not vary by more than 10% in the amount of active present, in view of Staab's 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride per dosage film, and to commercialize the product. A skilled artisan would minimize active content variation by optimizing the available parameters in Staab's process, which are the same as or

Art Unit: 3991

similar to those in the '080 patent. These include the polymer material, drying temperature, hot air application, drying time, viscosity, etc.

Patent Owner argues that "Staab does not disclose testing to determine the amount of benzalkonium chloride present in the final product or even how each and every sample turned out to be 19 mg." (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 69).

This argument is unpersuasive. It is not necessary for a patent to disclose what is very well-known in the art, e.g., analytical chemical testing. In fact, there are no examples in the '080 patent specification where analytical chemical testing is used to measure an amount of pharmaceutical active or bioactive active. With respect to how each and every sample turned out to be 19 mg, Staab uses essentially the same process steps as here claimed.

Patent Owner further argues that Staab does not disclose "the recited controlled drying" (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 79).

This argument is unpersuasive. Generally, Staab teaches drying at a controlled temperature of 130°F to 140°F (col. 11, lines 1-6), 54°C to 60°C. Since the temperature is regulated, and heat is applied by underbelt steam and overbelt hot air which are each adjustable (col. 10, lines 28-34), the drying is controlled as here claimed.

Patent Owner argues "Staab starts with a composition having 10% by weight of benzalkonium chloride (50% aqueous) yet allegedly obtains a resulting film with 19 mg benzalkonium chloride in a 190 mg film, to once again obtain a 10% benzalkonium

Art Unit: 3991

chloride resulting composition" and that a perfect yield must always be considered suspect (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 69).

This argument is unpersuasive. None of the examples in the '080 patent measures or reports a weight or weight percent of pharmaceutical active or bioactive in a cut dosage film. In fact, just as the example at cols. 31-32 in the '080 patent prepares dosage units weighing 0.04 grams, i.e., 40 mg, Staab's dosage units weigh 190 mg. Staab goes further and provides the active material weight in the dosage films, i.e., 19 mg. The argument that Staab's benzalkonium chloride content is suspect is unsupported by factual evidence.

Patent Owner argues the following on pp. 79-80 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13:

Staab certainly does not disclose, explicitly or inherently, the additional claim elements of Claim 317. Claim 317 generally adds to the above, inter alia, conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60 °C and using air currents, which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by less than 5%, and further controlling drying through a process comprising drying at a temperature differential ranging from 5 °C to 30 °C between polymer matrix inside temperature and outside exposure temperature.

Patent Owner's arguments are misguided because claim 317 does not recite a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60 °C, nor does it recite a variance of less than 5%, or a temperature differential ranging from 5 °C to 30 °C between polymer matrix inside temperature and outside exposure temperature.

Art Unit: 3991

Claim 317 does recite using air currents, which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix. However, as noted in the rejection, such is inherent in Staab's process because Staab's cut films each contain 19 mg of active and thus, the variation of active in the dosage units is 0%. Alternatively, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have adjusted Staab's overbelt hot air (col. 10, lines 28-34) so that the film is not excessively blown and thus, a consistent product can be obtained

Formation of a viscoelastic film is also recited in claim 317. However, as discussed in detail above, Staab's blended mixture before drying is already viscoelastic, or alternatively, within about the first 4 minutes of drying, a viscoelastic film is formed.

Patent Owner's arguments concerning a gas-formed film in Staab are addressed by Third Party Requester on p. 40 of the Comments filed 04/12/13, reproduced below:

Applicant also discusses how Staab teaches the benefits of a gas-foamed film, which is "contraindicated in Patentee's invention." Reply [Remarks of 03/13/13] pp. 80-81. In fact, Applicant specifically states that "the '080 Patent teaches the use of anti-foaming agents to prevent gas bubble formation." Reply p. 80 (emphasis in original). Yet not one of the pending claims recites the presence of an anti-foaming agent, or the formation of a film with no bubbles.

Arguments with respect to the rejection based on Le Person:

Many of Patent Owner's arguments with respect to Le Person are addressed by Third Party Requester on pp. 42-43 of the Comments filed 04/12/13, reproduced below:

Applicant argues that "Le Person allows for materials which may have such a low molecular weight that forming a visco-elastic film may not be possible" and "lacks sufficient enabling disclosure to be an effective reference." Reply [of 03/13/13] p. 70. But the claims do not require a high molecular weight. And again, Applicant



Art Unit: 3991

has not met its burden of providing facts rebutting the presumption that Le Person is operable. See MPEP 2121. Indeed, for all Le Person allegedly "lacks," it still includes a teaching of each and every manipulative drying step recited in the pending claims.

Applicant also argues that Le Person "discloses methods that result in a non-uniform product prior to and at 10 minutes." Reply [of 03/13/13] p. 82. Applicant argues:

Le Person even states that "intense moisture removal through the exposed surface of the layer to the radiation, during the first 3 min of drying (Le Person, Fig. 7) produces a stress on the polymer skeleton ... and as a result the acrylic polymer becomes more and more dense in the upper part of the layer (exposed surface)." (Le Person, p. 261). As a result, this "intense" shrinkage results in displacement of the active phase.

Reply page 83.

But what Le Person actually says is that "[t]his intense shrinkage coupled with the polymer compaction causes a displacement of the active phase towards the bottom of the layer." Le Person p. 26, col. 2, last ¶ (emphasis added). Changes in density in the upper and lower part of the layer and displacement of the active to the bottom of the film would have no effect on dose-to-dose variability.

Again, as with Staab, Applicant presents the basically identical conclusory argument that Le Person does not teach the claimed drying methods. Reply [of 03/13/13] pp. 81-82. But the Office Action already confirmed that Le Person teaches the claimed drying methods. Office Action [mailed 11/29/12], pp. 36-39 [as well as the rejection set forth above]. The addition of the word "controlled" does not distinguish the claims from Le Person, at least because Le Person teaches "a conventional drying rig where temperature ( $T_{\infty db}$ ), Velocity ( $U_{\infty}$ ), and humidity ( $Y_{\infty}$ ), of air are controlled." See Le Person, p. 258, col. 2 and Fig. 1. Additionally, Le Person teaches a polymer matrix having a viscosity of from about 400 to about 100,000 cps, at least because this viscosity range encompasses any conceivable polymer solution that is capable of being cast. And Le Person teaches forming a viscoelastic film within about 4 minutes by increasing the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying. See Le Person, Figure 2, illustrating that, at 4 minutes (or 240 s - approximately  $15 \text{ s}^{0.5}$ ), water content is less than 20% by weight in films dried by MIR and SIR and less than about 35% by weight in all dried films.

Art Unit: 3991

Patent Owner argues that Le Person does not teach the instantly claimed no more than 10% in amount of active in substantially equally sized dosage units sampled from different locations, and no more than 10% from the desired amount across different lots of resulting films, and in compliance with FDA regulations governing same (Remarks of 03/13/13, p. 82)

However, all of the claimed percent variation as measured by analytical chemical tests, as well as the claimed "substantially uniform distribution of components" and "locking-in or substantially preventing migration" are inherent in Le Person's films in view of the fact that, as noted above, Le Person's active material homogenizes and a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent.

Alternatively, such would have been obvious in view of the well-known goal of a skilled artisan to prepare dosages that do not vary by more than 10% in active, in view of the fact that Le Person's active material homogenizes and a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent, and to commercialize the product. A skilled artisan would minimize active content variation by optimizing the available parameters in Le Person's process, which are the same as or similar to those in the '080 patent. These include drying temperature, drying time, air velocity, humidity etc (see pp. 258-259 of Le Person).

Patent Owner argues the following on p. 83 of the Remarks filed 03/13/13:

Le Person certainly does not disclose, either explicitly or inherently, the additional claim elements found in Claim 317. Claim 317 generally adds to the above, inter alia, conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60 °C and using air currents, which have

Art Unit: 3991

forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by less than 5%, and further controlling drying through a process comprising drying at a temperature differential ranging from 5 °C to 30 °C between polymer matrix inside temperature and outside exposure temperature.

Patent Owner's arguments are misguided because claim 317 does not recite a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60 °C, nor does it recite a variance of less than 5%, or a temperature differential ranging from 5 °C to 30 °C between polymer matrix inside temperature and outside exposure temperature.

Claim 317 does recite using air currents, which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix. However, as noted in the rejection, while Le Person does not specifically teach using air currents which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix such is either inherent or obvious. It's inherent because Le Person teaches air velocities of 2 m/s and 4 m/s (Table 2), which correspond to 4.5 miles/hr and 8.9 miles/hr, respectively. These are light winds that even with water (viscosity 1 cp) would produce only small wavelets.

Alternatively, since Le Person's resulting, dried films are homogeneous with respect to active material, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to have adjusted Le Person's air velocity so that the film is not excessively blown and thus, a consistent product can be obtained.

Formation of a viscoelastic film is also recited in claim 317. However, as discussed in the rejection, within about 4 minutes of drying, Le Person's film is inherently viscoelastic.

### **Conclusion**

The patent owner is reminded of the continuing responsibility under 37 CFR 1.985 to apprise the Office of any litigation activity, or other prior or concurrent proceeding, involving Patent No. 7,897,080 throughout the course of this reexamination proceeding. The third party requester is also reminded of the ability to similarly apprise the Office of any such activity or proceeding throughout the course of this reexamination proceeding. MPEP 2686.

**This is an ACTION CLOSING PROSECUTION (ACP);** see MPEP § 2671.02.

(1) Pursuant to 37 CFR 1.951(a), the patent owner may once file written comments limited to the issues raised in the reexamination proceeding and/or present a proposed amendment to the claims which amendment will be subject to the criteria of 37 CFR 1.116 as to whether it shall be entered and considered. Such comments and/or proposed amendments must be filed within a time period of 30 days or one month (whichever is longer) from the mailing date of this action. Where the patent owner files such comments and/or a proposed amendment, the third party requester may once file comments under 37 CFR 1.951(b) responding to the patent owner's submission within 30 days from the date of service of the patent owner's submission on the third party requester.

(2) If the patent owner does not timely file comments and/or a proposed amendment pursuant to 37 CFR 1.951(a), then the third party requester is precluded from filing comments under 37 CFR 1.951(b).

(3) Appeal **cannot** be taken from this action, since it is not a final Office action.

**All** correspondence relating to this *inter partes* reexamination proceeding should be directed:

Art Unit: 3991

By EFS: Registered users may submit via the electronic filing system EFS-Web  
at <https://efs.uspto.gov/efile/myportal/efs-registered>

By Mail to: Attn: Mail Stop "Inter Partes Reexam"  
Central Reexamination Unit  
Commissioner for Patents  
P. O. Box 1450  
Alexandria VA 22313-1450

Please FAX any communications to:  
(571) 273-9900  
Central Reexamination Unit

Please hand-deliver any communications to:  
Customer Service Window  
Attn: Central Reexamination Unit  
Randolph Building, Lobby Level  
401 Dulany Street  
Alexandria, VA 22314

Signed:

/Alan Diamond/  
Patent Reexamination Specialist  
Central Reexamination Unit 3991

/Jerry D. Johnson/  
Patent Reexamination Specialist  
Central Reexamination Unit 3991

/Deborah D Jones/  
Supervisory Patent Examiner, Art Unit 3991

|   |                        |                  |                     |
|---|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
|   | Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
|   | Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

| U.S.PATENTS       |         |               |                        |            |   |  |
|-------------------|---------|---------------|------------------------|------------|---|--|
| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Patent Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Issue Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
| /A.D./            | 1       | 4515162       |                        | 1985-05-07 | Yamamoto et al                                  |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 4517173       |                        | 1985-05-14 | Kizawa et al                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 3       | 4529601       |                        | 1985-07-16 | Broberg et al                                   |  |
| /A.D./            | 4       | 4529748       |                        | 1985-07-16 | Wienecke  |  |
| /A.D./            | 5       | 4562020       |                        | 1985-12-31 | Hijiya et al                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 6       | 4569837       |                        | 1986-02-11 | Suzuki et al                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 7       | 4593053       |                        | 1986-06-03 | Jevne et al                                     |  |
| /A.D./            | 8       | 4608249       |                        | 1986-08-26 | Otsuka et al                                    |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                 |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-----------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 9  | 4615697 |  | 1986-10-07 | Robinson        |  |
| /A.D./ | 10 | 4623394 |  | 1986-11-18 | Nakamura et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 11 | 4652060 |  | 1987-03-24 | Miyake          |  |
| /A.D./ | 12 | 4659714 |  | 1987-04-21 | Watt-Smith      |  |
| /A.D./ | 13 | 4675009 |  | 1987-06-23 | Hymes et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 14 | 4695465 |  | 1987-09-22 | Kigasawa et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 15 | 4704119 |  | 1987-11-03 | Shaw et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 16 | 4713239 |  | 1987-12-15 | Babaian et al   |  |
| /A.D./ | 17 | 4713243 |  | 1987-12-15 | Schiraldi et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 18 | 4722761 |  | 1988-02-02 | Cartmell et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 19 | 4740365 |  | 1988-04-26 | Yukimatsu et al |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                  |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|------------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 20 | 5028632 |  | 1991-07-02 | Fuisz            |  |
| /A.D./ | 21 | 4748022 |  | 1988-05-31 | Busciglio        |  |
| /A.D./ | 22 | 4765983 |  | 1988-08-23 | Takayanagi et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 23 | 4772470 |  | 1988-09-20 | Inoue et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 24 | 4777046 |  | 1988-10-11 | Iwakura et al    |  |
| /A.D./ | 25 | 4789667 |  | 1988-12-06 | Makino et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 26 | 4849246 |  | 1989-07-18 | Schmidt          |  |
| /A.D./ | 27 | 4860754 |  | 1989-08-29 | Sharik et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 28 | RE33093 |  | 1989-10-17 | Schiraldi et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 29 | 4876092 |  | 1989-10-24 | Mizobuchi et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 30 | 4876970 |  | 1989-10-31 | Bolduc           |  |



**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                   |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-------------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 31 | 4888354 |  | 1989-12-19 | Chang et al       |  |
| /A.D./ | 32 | 4894232 |  | 1990-01-16 | Reul et al        |  |
| /A.D./ | 33 | 4900552 |  | 1990-02-13 | Sanvordeker et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 34 | 4900554 |  | 1990-02-13 | Yanagibashi et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 35 | 4900556 |  | 1990-02-13 | Wheatley et al    |  |
| /A.D./ | 36 | 4910247 |  | 1990-03-20 | Haldar et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 37 | 4915950 |  | 1990-04-10 | Miranda et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 38 | 4925670 |  | 1990-05-15 | Schmidt           |  |
| /A.D./ | 39 | 4927634 |  | 1990-05-22 | Sorrentino et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 40 | 4927636 |  | 1990-05-22 | Hijiya et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 41 | 4937078 |  | 1990-06-26 | Mezei et al       |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                 |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-----------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 42 | 4940587 |  | 1990-07-10 | Jenkins et al   |  |
| /A.D./ | 43 | 4948580 |  | 1990-08-14 | Browning        |  |
| /A.D./ | 44 | 4958580 |  | 1990-09-25 | Asaba et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 45 | 4978531 |  | 1990-12-18 | Yamazaki et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 46 | 4981693 |  | 1991-01-01 | Higashi et al   |  |
| /A.D./ | 47 | 4981875 |  | 1991-01-01 | Leusner et al   |  |
| /A.D./ | 48 | 5023082 |  | 1991-06-11 | Friedman et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 49 | 5024701 |  | 1991-06-18 | Desmarais       |  |
| /A.D./ | 50 | 6488963 |  | 2002-12-03 | McGinity et al. |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

**U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS**

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Publication Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|

|   |                        |                     |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |   |             |  |            |             |  |
|--------|---|-------------|--|------------|-------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 1 | 20050037055 |  | 2005-02-17 | Yang et al. |  |
|--------|---|-------------|--|------------|-------------|--|

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button.

#### FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup> | Country Code <sup>2</sup> | Kind Code <sup>4</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|--------------------------|
| /A.D./            | 1       | 0191721                              | WO                        | A2                     | 2001-12-06       | A.E. Staley Manufacturing Co.                   |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 0170194                              | WO                        | A1                     | 2001-09-27       | Warner-Lambert Company                          |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button

#### NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|--------------------|---------|---|--------------------------|
|                    | 1       |   | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button

#### EXAMINER SIGNATURE

|                    |                             |                 |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Examiner Signature | /Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013) | Date Considered |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

|   |                        |                     |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

See attached certification statement.

Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

None

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

|            |   |                     |            |
|------------|---|---------------------|------------|
| Signature  | /Daniel A. Scola, Jr., Reg. No. 29,855/ | Date (YYYY-MM-DD)   | 2013-01-29 |
| Name/Print | Daniel A. Scola, Jr.                    | Registration Number | 29,855     |

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.



|   |                        |                     |            |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     |                     | 95002170   |
|   | Filing Date            |                     | 2012-09-10 |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |            |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |            |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |            |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |            |

| U.S. PATENTS      |         |               |                        |            |   | Remove   |
|-------------------|---------|---------------|------------------------|------------|---|--|
| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Patent Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Issue Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
| /A.D./            | 1       | 4202966       |                        | 1980-05-13 | Misaki et al.                                   |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 7241411       |                        | 2007-07-10 | Berry et al.                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 3       | 4365423       |                        | 1982-12-28 | Arter et al.                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 4       | 4851394       |                        | 1989-07-25 | Kubodera  |  |
| /A.D./            | 5       | 5759599       |                        | 1998-06-02 | Wampler et al.                                  |  |
| /A.D./            | 6       | 6428825       |                        | 2002-08-06 | Sharma et al.                                   |  |
| /A.D./            | 7       | 6047484       |                        | 2000-04-11 | Bolland et al.                                  |  |
| /A.D./            | 8       | 5137729       |                        | 1992-08-11 | Kuroya et al.                                   |  |

|   |                        |                     |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |               |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|---------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 9  | 6238700 |  | 2001-05-29 | Donher et al. |  |
| /A.D./ | 10 | 5028632 |  | 1991-07-02 | Fuisz         |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button. **Add**

**U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS** Remove

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Publication Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| /A.D./            | 1       | 20050170138        | A1                     | 2005-08-04       | Berry   |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button. **Add**

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS** Remove

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup> | Country Code <sup>2</sup> | Kind Code <sup>4</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|--------------------------|
|                   | 1       |                                      |                           |                        |                  |   |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button. **Add**

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS** Remove

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|--------------------|---------|---|--------------------------|
| /A.D./             | 1       | Endo and Ueda, FABAD J. PHARM. SCI., 29:27-38, 2004   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./             | 2       | Dr. June V. Engel, "The Benefits of Eating Fibre" from <a href="http://www.diabetes.ca/Section_About/fibre.asp">http://www.diabetes.ca/Section_About/fibre.asp</a><br>(dated 5/11/05)   | <input type="checkbox"/> |



|   |                        |                  |                     |
|---|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
|   | Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
|   | Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |   |   |                          |
|--------|---|---|--------------------------|
| /A.D./ | 3 | ATRIDOX(R) (DOXYCYCLINE HYCLATE) product label (Date Unknown).  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 4 | Cholewinski et al., PHARMACEUTICA ACTA HELVETIAE, 71:405-419, 1996.   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 5 | Di Donato et al., J. BIOL. CHEM., 268(7): 4745-4751, 1993.  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 6 | Leathers, APPL. MICROBIOL. BIOTECHNOL., 62:468-473, 2003.   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 7 | Huus et al., "Thermal Dissociation and Unfolding of Insulin," Biochemistry, Vol. 44, pp. 11171-11177, 2005. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

|                    |                             |                 |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Examiner Signature | /Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013) | Date Considered |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |  |  |
|------------------------|---------------------|--|--|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |  |  |
| Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |  |  |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |  |  |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |  |  |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |  |  |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |  |  |

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

- See attached certification statement.
- The fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

|            |   |                     |            |
|------------|---|---------------------|------------|
| Signature  | /Daniel A. Scola, Jr., Reg. No. 29,855/ | Date (YYYY-MM-DD)   | 2013-01-29 |
| Name/Print | Daniel A. Scola                         | Registration Number | 29,855     |

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

|   |                        |                  |                     |
|---|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            |                  | 2013-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
|   | Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
|   | Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

| U.S.PATENTS       |         |               |                        |            |   |  |
|-------------------|---------|---------------|------------------------|------------|---|--|
| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Patent Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Issue Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
| /A.D./            | 1       | 5044761       |                        | 1991-09-03 | Yuhki et al                                     |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 5047244       |                        | 1991-09-10 | Sanvordeker et al                               |  |
| /A.D./            | 3       | 5064717       |                        | 1991-11-12 | Suzuki et al                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 4       | 5089307       |                        | 1992-02-18 | Ninomiya et al                                  |  |
| /A.D./            | 5       | 5158825       |                        | 1992-10-27 | Altwirth  |  |
| /A.D./            | 6       | 5166233       |                        | 1992-11-24 | Kuroya et al                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 7       | 5186938       |                        | 1993-02-16 | Sablotsky et al                                 |  |
| /A.D./            | 8       | 5229164       |                        | 1993-07-20 | Pins et al                                      |  |

/Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013)

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2013-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                  |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|------------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 9  | 5234957 |  | 1993-08-10 | Mantelle         |  |
| /A.D./ | 10 | 5271940 |  | 1993-12-21 | Cleary et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 11 | 5272191 |  | 1993-12-21 | Ibrahim et al    |  |
| /A.D./ | 12 | 5346701 |  | 1994-09-13 | Heiber et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 13 | 6660292 |  | 2003-12-09 | Zerbe et al.     |  |
| /A.D./ | 14 | 5411945 |  | 1995-05-02 | Ozaki et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 15 | 5413792 |  | 1995-05-09 | Ninomiya et al   |  |
| /A.D./ | 16 | 5433960 |  | 1995-07-18 | Meyers           |  |
| /A.D./ | 17 | 5455043 |  | 1995-10-03 | Fischel-Ghodsian |  |
| /A.D./ | 18 | 5462749 |  | 1995-10-31 | Rencher          |  |
| /A.D./ | 19 | 5472704 |  | 1995-12-05 | Santus et al     |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2013-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                 |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-----------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 20 | 5518902 |  | 1996-05-21 | Ozaki et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 21 | 5567431 |  | 1996-10-22 | Vert et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 22 | 5620757 |  | 1997-04-15 | Ninomiya et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 23 | 6284264 |  | 2001-09-04 | Zerbe et al.    |  |
| /A.D./ | 24 | 5700478 |  | 1997-12-23 | Biegajski et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 25 | 5700479 |  | 1997-12-23 | Lundgren        |  |
| /A.D./ | 26 | 5733575 |  | 1998-03-31 | Mehra et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 27 | 5766620 |  | 1998-06-16 | Heiber et al    |  |
| /A.D./ | 28 | 5881476 |  | 1999-03-16 | Strobush et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 29 | 5948430 |  | 1999-09-07 | Zerbe et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 30 | 6153210 |  | 2000-11-28 | Roberts et al   |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            | 2013-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |             |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 31 | 6177096 |  | 2001-01-23 | Zerbe et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 32 | 6231957 |  | 2001-05-15 | Zerbe et al |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

**U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS**

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Publication Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| /A.D./            | 1       | 20010046511        | A1                     | 2001-11-29       | Zerbe et al.                                    |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 20050118217        |                        | 2005-06-02       | Barnhart et al.                                 |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button.

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup> | Country Code <sup>2</sup> | Kind Code <sup>4</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|--------------------------|
| /A.D./            | 1       | 2432925                              | DE                        | C3                     | 1976-01-22       | Schering AG                                     |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 2449865                              | DE                        | B2                     | 1976-04-29       | Schering AG Berlin and Bergkamen                |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./            | 3       | 3630603                              | DE                        | C2                     | 1988-03-10       | Desitin Arzneimittel GmbH                       |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |

/Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013)

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2013-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |    |    |            |  |                          |
|--------|----|---------|----|----|------------|--|--------------------------|
| /A.D./ | 4  | 0200508 | EP | B1 | 1986-12-10 | Nitto Denko Corporation                    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 5  | 0219762 | EP | A1 | 1987-04-29 | Desitin Arzneimittel GmbH                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 6  | 0241178 | EP | B1 | 1987-10-14 | Rohto Pharmaceutical Co., Ltd.             | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 7  | 0250187 | EP | B1 | 1987-12-23 | Johnson & Johnson Consumer Products, Inc.  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 8  | 0259749 | EP | B1 | 1988-03-16 | Desitin Arzneimittel GmbH                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 9  | 0273069 | EP | B1 | 1988-07-06 | Uni Colloid Kabushiki Kaisha               | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 10 | 0381194 | EP | A2 | 1990-08-08 | Nitto Denko Corporation                    | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 11 | 0452446 | EP | B1 | 1991-10-23 | Desitin Arzneimittel GmbH                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 12 | 0514691 | EP | B1 | 1992-11-25 | Euroresearch S.r.L.                        | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 13 | 1110546 | EP | A1 | 2001-06-27 | Johnson & Johnson Consumer Companies, Inc. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 14 | 9105540 | WO |    | 1991-05-02 | Desitin Arzneimittel GMBH                  | <input type="checkbox"/> |



|   |                        |                  |                     |  |
|---|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|--|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |  |
|   | Filing Date            |                  | 2013-09-10          |  |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |  |
|   | Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |  |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |  |
|   | Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |  |

|        |    |         |    |  |            |                             |                          |
|--------|----|---------|----|--|------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| /A.D./ | 15 | 9215289 | WO |  | 1992-09-17 | Noven Pharmaceuticals, Inc. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 16 | 9505416 | WO |  | 1995-02-23 | Cygnus Therapeutic Systems  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 17 | 9518046 | WO |  | 1995-07-06 | Frank, Richard, D.          | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button

#### NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|--------------------|---------|---|--------------------------|
|                    | 1       |   | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button

#### EXAMINER SIGNATURE

|                    |                             |                 |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Examiner Signature | /Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013) | Date Considered |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

|   |                        |                     |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            | 2013-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

See attached certification statement.

Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

None

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

|            |   |                     |            |
|------------|---|---------------------|------------|
| Signature  | /Daniel A. Scola, Jr., Reg. No. 29,855/ | Date (YYYY-MM-DD)   | 2013-01-29 |
| Name/Print | Daniel A. Scola, Jr.                    | Registration Number | 29,855     |

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

|   |                        |                  |                     |  |
|---|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|--|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |  |
|   | Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |  |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |  |
|   | Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |  |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |  |
|   | Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |  |

| U.S.PATENTS       |         |               |                        |            |   |  |
|-------------------|---------|---------------|------------------------|------------|---|--|
| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Patent Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Issue Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
| /A.D./            | 1       | 0307537       |                        | 1884-11-04 | Foulks  |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 0688446       |                        | 1901-12-10 | Stempel   |  |
| /A.D./            | 3       | 2142537       |                        | 1939-01-03 | Tisza   |  |
| /A.D./            | 4       | 2277038       |                        | 1942-03-24 | Curtis  |  |
| /A.D./            | 5       | 2352691       |                        | 1944-07-04 | Curtis  |  |
| /A.D./            | 6       | 2501544       |                        | 1950-03-21 | Shrontz   |  |
| /A.D./            | 7       | 2980554       |                        | 1961-04-18 | Gentile et al                                   |  |
| /A.D./            | 8       | 3249109       |                        | 1966-05-03 | Maeth et al                                     |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |            |
|------------------------|---------------------|------------|
| Application Number     |                     | 95002170   |
| Filing Date            |                     | 2012-09-10 |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |            |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |            |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |            |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |            |

|        |    |         |  |            |                |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|----------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 9  | 3444858 |  | 1969-05-20 | Russell        |  |
| /A.D./ | 10 | 3536809 |  | 1970-10-27 | Applezweig     |  |
| /A.D./ | 11 | 3551556 |  | 1970-12-29 | Kliment et al  |  |
| /A.D./ | 12 | 3598122 |  | 1971-08-10 | Zaffaroni      |  |
| /A.D./ | 13 | 3632740 |  | 1972-01-04 | Robinson et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 14 | 3640741 |  | 1972-02-08 | Etes           |  |
| /A.D./ | 15 | 3641237 |  | 1972-02-08 | Gould et al    |  |
| /A.D./ | 16 | 3731683 |  | 1973-05-08 | Zaffaroni      |  |
| /A.D./ | 17 | 3753732 |  | 1973-08-21 | Boroshok       |  |
| /A.D./ | 18 | 3814095 |  | 1974-06-04 | Lubens         |  |
| /A.D./ | 19 | 3892905 |  | 1975-07-01 | Albert         |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                    |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|--------------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 20 | 3911099 |  | 1975-10-07 | DeFoney et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 21 | 3972995 |  | 1976-08-03 | Tsuk et al         |  |
| /A.D./ | 22 | 3996934 |  | 1976-12-14 | Zaffaroni          |  |
| /A.D./ | 23 | 3998215 |  | 1976-12-21 | Anderson et al     |  |
| /A.D./ | 24 | 4029757 |  | 1977-06-14 | Mlodozieniec et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 25 | 4029758 |  | 1977-06-14 | Mlodozieniec et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 26 | 4031200 |  | 1977-06-21 | Reif               |  |
| /A.D./ | 27 | 4123592 |  | 1978-10-31 | Rainer et al       |  |
| /A.D./ | 28 | 4128445 |  | 1978-12-05 | Sturzenegger et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 29 | 4136145 |  | 1979-01-23 | Fuchs et al        |  |
| /A.D./ | 30 | 4136162 |  | 1979-01-23 | Fuchs et al        |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                   |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-------------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 31 | 4139627 |  | 1979-02-13 | Lane et al        |  |
| /A.D./ | 32 | 4226848 |  | 1980-10-07 | Nagai et al       |  |
| /A.D./ | 33 | 4251400 |  | 1981-02-17 | Columbus          |  |
| /A.D./ | 34 | 4292299 |  | 1981-09-29 | Suzuki et al      |  |
| /A.D./ | 35 | 4294820 |  | 1981-10-13 | Keith et al       |  |
| /A.D./ | 36 | 4302465 |  | 1981-11-24 | AF Ekenstam et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 37 | 4307075 |  | 1981-12-22 | Martin            |  |
| /A.D./ | 38 | 4325855 |  | 1982-04-20 | Dickmann et al    |  |
| /A.D./ | 39 | 4373036 |  | 1983-02-08 | Chang et al       |  |
| /A.D./ | 40 | 4406708 |  | 1983-09-27 | Hesselgren        |  |
| /A.D./ | 41 | 4432975 |  | 1984-02-21 | Libby             |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**

( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |             |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 42 | 4438258 |  | 1984-03-20 | Graham      |  |
| /A.D./ | 43 | 4460562 |  | 1984-07-17 | Keith et al |  |
| /A.D./ | 44 | 4466973 |  | 1984-08-21 | Rennie      |  |
| /A.D./ | 45 | 4478658 |  | 1984-10-23 | Wittwer     |  |
| /A.D./ | 46 | 4503070 |  | 1985-03-05 | Eby, III    |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

**U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS**

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Publication Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| /A.D./            | 1       | 20010022964        | A1                     | 2001-09-20       | Leung et al                                     |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 20010006677        | A1                     | 2001-07-05       | McGinity et al                                  |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button.

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup> | Country Code <sup>2</sup> | Kind Code <sup>4</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages, Columns, Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | T <sup>5</sup> |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|----------------|
|                   |         |                                      |                           |                        |                  |   |  |                |

/Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013)



|   |                        |                     |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|   |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |                          |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--------------------------|
| 1 |  |  |  |  |  |  |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
|---|--|--|--|--|--|--|--|--------------------------|

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|--------------------|---------|---|--------------------------|
| /A.D./             | 1       | XP-002298105, Poluethylenglykole; Internet www.roempp.com (09/20/2004).   | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

|                    |                             |                 |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Examiner Signature | /Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013) | Date Considered |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.

|   |                        |                     |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     | 95002170            |
|   | Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

See attached certification statement.

Fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.

None

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

|            |   |                     |            |
|------------|---|---------------------|------------|
| Signature  | /Daniel A. Scola, Jr., Reg. No. 29,855/ | Date (YYYY-MM-DD)   | 2013-01-29 |
| Name/Print | Daniel A. Scola, Jr.                    | Registration Number | 29,855     |

This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

|   |                        |                     |            |
|---|------------------------|---------------------|------------|
| <b>INFORMATION DISCLOSURE<br/>STATEMENT BY APPLICANT</b><br>( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99) | Application Number     |                     | 95002170   |
|   | Filing Date            |                     | 2012-09-10 |
|   | First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |            |
|   | Art Unit               | 3991                |            |
|   | Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |            |
|   | Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |            |

| U.S.PATENTS       |         |               |                        |            |   | Remove   |
|-------------------|---------|---------------|------------------------|------------|---|--|
| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Patent Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Issue Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
| /A.D./            | 1       | 5656297       |                        | 1997-08-12 | Bernstein et al.                                |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 5045445       |                        | 1991-09-03 | Schultz   |  |
| /A.D./            | 3       | 5380529       |                        | 1995-01-10 | Heusser et al.                                  |  |
| /A.D./            | 4       | 5506046       |                        | 1996-04-09 | Andersen et al.                                 |  |
| /A.D./            | 5       | 5605698       |                        | 1997-02-25 | Ueno  |  |
| /A.D./            | 6       | 5653993       |                        | 1997-08-05 | Ghanta et al.                                   |  |
| /A.D./            | 7       | 5679145       |                        | 1997-10-21 | Andersen et al.                                 |  |
| /A.D./            | 8       | 5681873       |                        | 1997-10-28 | Norton et al.                                   |  |

/Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013)

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                  |                     |
|------------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     |                  | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            |                  | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang   |                     |
| Art Unit               |                  | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D. |                     |
| Attorney Docket Number |                  | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                  |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|------------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 9  | 5750145 |  | 1998-05-12 | Patell           |  |
| /A.D./ | 10 | 5750157 |  | 1998-05-12 | Grosswald et al. |  |
| /A.D./ | 11 | 5766839 |  | 1998-06-16 | Johnson et al.   |  |
| /A.D./ | 12 | 5792494 |  | 1998-08-11 | Kanca et al.     |  |
| /A.D./ | 13 | 5264024 |  | 1993-11-23 | Bosvot et al.    |  |
| /A.D./ | 14 | 5906742 |  | 1999-05-25 | Wang et al.      |  |
| /A.D./ | 15 | 5316717 |  | 1994-05-31 | Koepff et al.    |  |
| /A.D./ | 16 | 3237596 |  | 1966-03-01 | Grass et al.     |  |
| /A.D./ | 17 | 4562020 |  | 1985-21-31 | Hijiya et al.    |  |
| /A.D./ | 18 | 5891461 |  | 1999-04-06 | Jona et al.      |  |
| /A.D./ | 19 | 6103266 |  | 2000-08-15 | Tapolsky et al.  |  |

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |    |         |  |            |                   |  |
|--------|----|---------|--|------------|-------------------|--|
| /A.D./ | 20 | 6667060 |  | 2003-12-23 | Vandecruys et al. |  |
| /A.D./ | 21 | 5881476 |  | 1999-03-16 | Strobush et al.   |  |
| /A.D./ | 22 | 4136145 |  | 1979-01-23 | Fuchs et al.      |  |
| /A.D./ | 23 | 6552024 |  | 2003-04-22 | Chen et al.       |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Patent citation information please click the Add button.

**Add**

**U.S.PATENT APPLICATION PUBLICATIONS**

**Remove**

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Publication Number | Kind Code <sup>1</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|
| /A.D./            | 1       | 20040156901        | A1                     | 2004-08-12       | Thakur et al.                                   |  |
| /A.D./            | 2       | 20030124176        | A1                     | 2003-07-03       | Hsu et al.                                      |  |

If you wish to add additional U.S. Published Application citation information please click the Add button.

**Add**

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

**Remove**

| Examiner Initial* | Cite No | Foreign Document Number <sup>3</sup> | Country Code <sup>2</sup> | Kind Code <sup>4</sup> | Publication Date | Name of Patentee or Applicant of cited Document | Pages,Columns,Lines where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|-------------------|---------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|------------------|---|--|--------------------------|
| /A.D./            | 1       | 0440462                              | EP                        | A1                     | 1991-08-07       | Merck & Co., Inc.                               |  | <input type="checkbox"/> |

/Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013)

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

|        |   |            |    |  |            |                                   |                          |
|--------|---|------------|----|--|------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|
| /A.D./ | 2 | 1061557    | GB |  | 1967-03-15 | Ashe Chemical Limited             | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 3 | 741362     | AU |  | 2001-11-29 | LTS Lohmann Therapie Systeme GmbH | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 4 | 196465392  | DE |  | 1998-04-14 | LTS Lohmann Therapie Systeme GmbH | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 5 | 1997031621 | WO |  | 1997-09-04 | Warner-Lambert Company            | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./ | 6 | 2005102287 | WO |  | 2005-11-03 | Duo-Cort AB                       | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional Foreign Patent Document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**NON-PATENT LITERATURE DOCUMENTS**

**Remove**

| Examiner Initials* | Cite No | Include name of the author (in CAPITAL LETTERS), title of the article (when appropriate), title of the item (book, magazine, journal, serial, symposium, catalog, etc), date, pages(s), volume-issue number(s), publisher, city and/or country where published. | T <sup>5</sup>           |
|--------------------|---------|---|--------------------------|
| /A.D./             | 1       | Stella, V., et al., "Gliadin Films. I: Preparation and in vitro evaluation as a carrier for controlled drug release", Int., J. Pharmaceutics, 121: pp 117-121 (1995).   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./             | 2       | Bodmeier, Roland, "Evaluation of Drug-Containing Polymer Films Prepared from Aqueous Latexes", Pharmaceutical Research, Vol. 6, No. 8 (1989).   | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./             | 3       | Senel, S., et al., "Chitosan films and hydrogels of chlorhexidine gluconate for oral mucosal delivery", Int. J. Pharmaceutics, 193: pp 197-203 (2000).  | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| /A.D./             | 4       | Peh et al., "Polymeric Films as Vehicle for Buccal Delivery: Swelling, Mechanical, and Bioadhesive Properties", J. Pharm Pharmaceut Sci 2(2): pp. 53-61 (1999)  | <input type="checkbox"/> |

If you wish to add additional non-patent literature document citation information please click the Add button **Add**

**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |
| Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |

**EXAMINER SIGNATURE**

|                    |                             |                 |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|
| Examiner Signature | /Alan Diamond/ (07/11/2013) | Date Considered |  |
|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|--|

\*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through a citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.

<sup>1</sup> See Kind Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at [www.USPTO.GOV](http://www.USPTO.GOV) or MPEP 901.04. <sup>2</sup> Enter office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). <sup>3</sup> For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. <sup>4</sup> Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. <sup>5</sup> Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language translation is attached.



**INFORMATION DISCLOSURE  
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT**  
( Not for submission under 37 CFR 1.99)

|                        |                     |  |  |
|------------------------|---------------------|--|--|
| Application Number     | 95002170            |  |  |
| Filing Date            | 2012-09-10          |  |  |
| First Named Inventor   | Robert K. Yang      |  |  |
| Art Unit               | 3991                |  |  |
| Examiner Name          | Diamond, Alan D.    |  |  |
| Attorney Docket Number | 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |  |  |

**CERTIFICATION STATEMENT**

Please see 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98 to make the appropriate selection(s):

That each item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was first cited in any communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(1).

**OR**

That no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application, and, to the knowledge of the person signing the certification after making reasonable inquiry, no item of information contained in the information disclosure statement was known to any individual designated in 37 CFR 1.56(c) more than three months prior to the filing of the information disclosure statement. See 37 CFR 1.97(e)(2).

- See attached certification statement.
- The fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17 (p) has been submitted herewith.
- A certification statement is not submitted herewith.

**SIGNATURE**

A signature of the applicant or representative is required in accordance with CFR 1.33, 10.18. Please see CFR 1.4(d) for the form of the signature.

|            |   |                     |            |
|------------|---|---------------------|------------|
| Signature  | /Daniel A. Scola, Jr., Reg. No. 29,855/ | Date (YYYY-MM-DD)   | 2013-01-29 |
| Name/Print | Daniel A. Scola, Jr.                    | Registration Number | 29,855     |


This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 1 hour to complete, including gathering, preparing and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, U.S. Department of Commerce, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. **DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450.**

## Privacy Act Statement

The Privacy Act of 1974 (P.L. 93-579) requires that you be given certain information in connection with your submission of the attached form related to a patent application or patent. Accordingly, pursuant to the requirements of the Act, please be advised that: (1) the general authority for the collection of this information is 35 U.S.C. 2(b)(2); (2) furnishing of the information solicited is voluntary; and (3) the principal purpose for which the information is used by the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office is to process and/or examine your submission related to a patent application or patent. If you do not furnish the requested information, the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office may not be able to process and/or examine your submission, which may result in termination of proceedings or abandonment of the application or expiration of the patent.

The information provided by you in this form will be subject to the following routine uses:

1. The information on this form will be treated confidentially to the extent allowed under the Freedom of Information Act (5 U.S.C. 552) and the Privacy Act (5 U.S.C. 552a). Records from this system of records may be disclosed to the Department of Justice to determine whether the Freedom of Information Act requires disclosure of these records.
2. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, in the course of presenting evidence to a court, magistrate, or administrative tribunal, including disclosures to opposing counsel in the course of settlement negotiations.
3. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Member of Congress submitting a request involving an individual, to whom the record pertains, when the individual has requested assistance from the Member with respect to the subject matter of the record.
4. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a contractor of the Agency having need for the information in order to perform a contract. Recipients of information shall be required to comply with the requirements of the Privacy Act of 1974, as amended, pursuant to 5 U.S.C. 552a(m).
5. A record related to an International Application filed under the Patent Cooperation Treaty in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the International Bureau of the World Intellectual Property Organization, pursuant to the Patent Cooperation Treaty.
6. A record in this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to another federal agency for purposes of National Security review (35 U.S.C. 181) and for review pursuant to the Atomic Energy Act (42 U.S.C. 218(c)).
7. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the Administrator, General Services, or his/her designee, during an inspection of records conducted by GSA as part of that agency's responsibility to recommend improvements in records management practices and programs, under authority of 44 U.S.C. 2904 and 2906. Such disclosure shall be made in accordance with the GSA regulations governing inspection of records for this purpose, and any other relevant (i.e., GSA or Commerce) directive. Such disclosure shall not be used to make determinations about individuals.
8. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to the public after either publication of the application pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 122(b) or issuance of a patent pursuant to 35 U.S.C. 151. Further, a record may be disclosed, subject to the limitations of 37 CFR 1.14, as a routine use, to the public if the record was filed in an application which became abandoned or in which the proceedings were terminated and which application is referenced by either a published application, an application open to public inspections or an issued patent.
9. A record from this system of records may be disclosed, as a routine use, to a Federal, State, or local law enforcement agency, if the USPTO becomes aware of a violation or potential violation of law or regulation.

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <b><i>Index of Claims</i></b><br><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|  | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |


|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 1        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 2        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 3        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 4        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 5        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 6        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 7        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 8        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 9        | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 10       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 11       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 12       | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 13       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 14       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 15       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 16       | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 17       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 18       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 19       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 20       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 21       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 22       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 23       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 24       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 25       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 26       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 27       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 28       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 29       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 30       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 31       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 32       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 33       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 34       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 35       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 36       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <b><i>Index of Claims</i></b><br><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|  | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |


|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 37       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 38       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 39       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 40       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 41       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 42       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 43       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 44       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 45       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 46       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 47       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 48       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 49       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 50       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 51       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 52       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 53       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 54       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 55       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 56       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 57       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 58       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 59       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 60       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 61       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 62       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 63       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 64       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 65       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 66       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 67       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 68       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 69       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 70       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 71       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 72       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Index of Claims</b><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|   | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |


|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 73       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 74       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 75       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 76       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 77       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 78       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 79       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 80       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 81       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 82       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 83       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 84       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 85       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 86       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 87       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 88       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 89       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 90       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 91       | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 92       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 93       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 94       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 95       | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 96       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 97       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 98       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 99       | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 100      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 101      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 102      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 103      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 104      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 105      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 106      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 107      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 108      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Index of Claims</b><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|   | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |


|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 109      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 110      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 111      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 112      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 113      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 114      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 115      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 116      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 117      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 118      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 119      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 120      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 121      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 122      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 123      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 124      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 125      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 126      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 127      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 128      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 129      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 130      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 131      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 132      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 133      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 134      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 135      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 136      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 137      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 138      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 139      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 140      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 141      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 142      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 143      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 144      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Index of Claims</b><br><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|   | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |


|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 145      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 146      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 147      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 148      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 149      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 150      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 151      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 152      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 153      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 154      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 155      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 156      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 157      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 158      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 159      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 160      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 161      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 162      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 163      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 164      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 165      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 166      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 167      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 168      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 169      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 170      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 171      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 172      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 173      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 174      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 175      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 176      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 177      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 178      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 179      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 180      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <b><i>Index of Claims</i></b><br><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|  | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |

|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |


|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 181      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 182      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 183      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 184      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 185      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 186      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 187      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 188      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 189      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 190      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 191      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 192      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 193      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 194      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 195      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 196      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 197      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 198      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 199      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 200      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 201      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 202      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 203      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 204      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 205      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 206      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 207      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 208      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 209      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 210      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 211      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 212      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 213      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 214      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 215      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 216      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |



|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Index of Claims</b><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|   | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |


|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 217      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 218      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 219      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 220      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 221      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 222      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 223      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 224      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 225      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 226      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 227      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 228      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 229      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 230      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 231      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 232      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 233      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 234      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 235      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 236      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 237      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 238      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 239      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 240      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 241      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 242      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 243      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 244      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 245      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 246      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 247      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 248      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 249      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 250      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 251      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 252      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|  |  |   |
|--|--|---|
| <b><i>Index of Claims</i></b><br><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br>7897080 |
|  | <b>Examiner</b><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |


|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|   |                     |
|---|---------------------|
| N | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| I | <b>Interference</b> |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| A | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| O | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 253      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 254      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 255      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 256      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 257      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 258      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 259      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 260      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 261      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 262      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 263      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 264      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 265      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 266      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 267      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 268      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 269      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 270      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 271      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 272      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 273      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 274      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 275      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 276      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 277      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 278      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 279      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 280      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 281      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 282      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 283      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 284      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 285      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 286      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 287      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 288      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

|   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| <b>Index of Claims</b><br><br> | <b>Application/Control No.</b><br><br>95002170 | <b>Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination</b><br><br>7897080 |
|   | <b>Examiner</b><br><br>ALAN DIAMOND            | <b>Art Unit</b><br><br>3991                                   |

|   |                 |
|---|-----------------|
| ✓ | <b>Rejected</b> |
| = | <b>Allowed</b>  |

|   |                   |
|---|-------------------|
| - | <b>Cancelled</b>  |
| ÷ | <b>Restricted</b> |

|          |                     |
|----------|---------------------|
| <b>N</b> | <b>Non-Elected</b>  |
| <b>I</b> | <b>Interference</b> |

|          |                 |
|----------|-----------------|
| <b>A</b> | <b>Appeal</b>   |
| <b>O</b> | <b>Objected</b> |

Claims renumbered in the same order as presented by applicant
  CPA
  T.D.
  R.1.47

| CLAIM |          | DATE       |            |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|-------|----------|------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| Final | Original | 10/08/2012 | 07/11/2013 |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 289      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 290      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 291      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 292      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 293      | ✓          | -          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 294      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 295      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 296      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 297      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 298      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 299      | ✓          | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 300      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 301      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 302      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 303      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 304      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 305      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 306      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 307      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 308      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 309      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 310      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 311      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 312      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 313      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 314      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 315      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 316      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 317      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |
|       | 318      |            | ✓          |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**Amendment to the Claims**

1. (Amended) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said [making a ]film having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting film, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a masterbatch pre-mix comprising a solvent and a polymer selected from the group consisting of water-soluble polymers, water-swellaable polymers and combinations thereof;

(b) adding [an]said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, to a pre-determined amount of said masterbatch pre-mix to form a flowable polymer matrix, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(c) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(d) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first [10]4 minutes [or fewer]by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less; [and]

(e) forming [a]said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained; and

(f) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of the active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

2. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said pre-determined amount of master batch pre-mix is controllably fed via a first metering pump and a control valve to a first mixer and a second mixer.

3. (Original) The process of claim 2, wherein said first mixer and said second mixer are arranged in parallel, series or a combination thereof.

4. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

5. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

6. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl

cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

7. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

8. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

9. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly(d-esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

10. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said solvent is selected from the group

consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

11. (Original) The process of claim 10, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

12. (Cancelled)

13. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, [anti-tumor drugs, ]anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, [anti-convulsants, ]neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-

spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, [anti-asthmatics, ]cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

14. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of [cosmetic actives, ]antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, [mouthwash components, flavors, fragrances, ]enzymes, [preservatives, sweetening agents, colorants, spices, ]vitamins and combinations thereof.

15. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a bioactive active.

16. (Cancelled)

17. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.

18. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.

19. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.

20. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphines, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.

21. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a protein.

22. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is insulin.

23. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.

24. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an antihistamine.



25. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
26. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
27. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatics.
28. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea preparation.
29. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
30. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
31. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
32. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
33. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
34. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
35. (Original) The process of claim 34, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, acceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
36. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
37. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
38. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.

39. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
40. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
41. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
42. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
43. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
44. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
45. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
46. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
47. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
48. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
49. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is nabilone.
50. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
51. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
52. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
53. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an analgesic.

54. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a hormone.
55. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a decongestant.
56. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a loratadine.
57. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
58. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
59. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.
60. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
61. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
62. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a hypnotic.
63. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is taste-masked.
64. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
65. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
66. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.

67. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
68. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.
69. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.
70. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a particulate.
71. (Original) The process of claim 1, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said masterbatch premix.
72. (Original) The process of claim 1, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.
73. (Original) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting film.
74. (Original) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting film.
75. (Original) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting film.
76. (Original) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting film.

77. (Original) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting film.

78. (Original) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film is laminated onto said resulting film.

79. (Original) The process of claim 72, further comprising laminating said resulting film to another film.

80. (Original) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer comprises an active.

81. (Amended) The process of claim [72]80, wherein said active in said second film is different than said active in said resulting film.

82. (Amended) A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said [making a ]films having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and [an]said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives[, drugs, medicaments] and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first [10]4 minutes [or fewer] by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%; [and]

(d) forming [a]said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;

(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and

(f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests.

83. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

84. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected

from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

85. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

86. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

87. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextrans, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

88. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol

copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

89. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

90. (Original) The process of claim 89, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

91. (Cancelled)

92. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein the active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management



agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, [anti-tumor drugs, ]anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, [anti-convulsants, ]neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, [anti-asthmatics, ]cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

93. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of [cosmetic actives, ]antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, [mouthwash components, flavors, fragrances, ]enzymes, [preservatives, sweetening agents, colorants, spices, ]vitamins and combinations thereof.

94. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a bioactive active.

95. (Cancelled)

96. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.

97. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.

98. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.

99. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphine, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.

100. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a protein.
101. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is insulin.
102. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
103. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
104. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
105. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
106. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatics.
107. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea preparation.
108. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
109. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
110. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
111. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
112. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
113. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.

114. (Amended) The process of claim [82]113, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
115. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
116. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
117. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
118. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
119. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
120. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
121. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
122. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
123. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
124. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
125. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
126. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
127. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.

128. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is nabilone.
129. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
130. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
131. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
132. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an analgesic.
133. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a hormone.
134. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a decongestant.
135. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a loratadine.
136. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
137. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
138. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.
139. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
140. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
141. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a hypnotic.

142. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is taste-masked.
143. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
144. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
145. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
146. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
147. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.
148. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.
149. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a particulate.
150. (Original) The process of claim 82, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.
151. (Original) The process of claim 82, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.
152. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting film.

153. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting film.
154. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting film.
155. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting film.
156. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting film.
157. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting film.
158. (Original) The process of claim 151, further comprising laminating said resulting film to another film.
159. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film comprises an active.
160. (Amended) The process of claim [151]159, wherein said active in said second film is different than said active in said resulting film.
161. (Amended) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said[making a] film capable of being administered to a body surface and having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting film, comprising the steps of:

- (a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and [an]said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;
- (b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;
- (c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first [10]4 minutes [or fewer] by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;
- (d) forming [a]said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained; [and]
- (e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, and

[(e)](f) administering said resulting film to a body surface.

162. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said body surface is a mucous membrane.

163. (Original) The process of claim 162, wherein said mucous membrane is oral, anal, vaginal or ophthalmological.

164. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said body surface is the surface of a wound.

165. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

166. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

167. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

168. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic



acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

169. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

170. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

171. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

172. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

173. (Cancelled)

174. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, [anti-tumor drugs, ]anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, [anti-convulsants, ]neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, [anti-asthmatics, ]cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

175. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of [cosmetic actives, ]antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, [mouthwash components, flavors, fragrances, ]enzymes, [preservatives, sweetening agents, colorants, spices,

]vitamins and combinations thereof.

176. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a bioactive active.
177. (Cancelled)
178. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.
179. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.
180. (Original) The process of claim 161 wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.
181. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphines, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.
182. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a protein.
183. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is insulin.
184. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
185. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
186. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
187. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
188. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatics.

189. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea preparation.
190. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
191. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
192. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
193. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
194. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
195. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
196. (Original) The process of claim 195, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
197. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
198. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
199. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
200. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
201. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.

202. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
203. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
204. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
205. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
206. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
207. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
208. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
209. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
210. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is nabilone.
211. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
212. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
213. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
214. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an analgesic.
215. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a hormone.
216. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a decongestant.

217. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a loratadine.
218. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
219. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
220. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.
221. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
222. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
223. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a hypnotic.
224. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is taste-masked.
225. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
226. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
227. (Original) The process of claim 226, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
228. (Original) The process of 226, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
229. (Original) The process of claim 226, wherein said controlled release composition

provides a sustained release.

230. (Original) The process of claim 226, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.

231. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a particulate.

232. (Original) The process of claim 161, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.

233. (Original) The process of claim 161, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.

234. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting film.

235. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting film.

236. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting film.

237. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting film.

238. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting film.

239. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting film.

240. (Original) The process of claim 233, further comprising laminating said resulting film to another film.
241. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film comprises an active.
242. (Amended) The process of claim [233]241, wherein said active in said second film is different than said active in said resulting film.
243. (Original) The process of claim 1, said active is an anti-nauseant.
244. (Amended) The process of claim 1, said active is an erectile dysfunction drug.
245. (Original) The process of claim 1, said active is a vasoconstrictor.
246. (Original) The process of claim 1, said active is a stimulant.
247. (Original) The process of claim 1, said active is a migraine treatment.
248. (Original) The process of claim 1, said active is granisetron hydrochloride.
249. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through the buccal cavity of said individual.
250. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through gingival application of said individual.
251. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through sublingual application of said individual.



252. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through a mucosal membrane of said individual.
253. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual by administration within the body of the individual during surgery.
254. (Cancelled)
255. (Cancelled)
256. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said resulting film contains less than about 6% by weight solvent.
257. (Cancelled)
258. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said resulting film is orally administrable.
259. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said active is in the form of a particle.
260. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said matrix comprises a dispersion.
261. (Original) The process of claim 82, said active is an anti-nauseant.
262. (Amended) The process of claim 82, said active is an erectile dysfunction drug.
263. (Original) The process of claim 82, said active is a vasoconstrictor.
264. (Original) The process of claim 82, said active is a stimulant.
265. (Original) The process of claim 82, said active is a migraine treatment.

266. (Original) The process of claim 82, said active is granisetron hydrochloride.
267. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through the buccal cavity of said individual.
268. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through gingival application of said individual.
269. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through sublingual application of said individual.
270. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through a mucosal membrane of said individual.
271. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual by administration within the body of the individual during surgery.
272. (Cancelled)
273. (Cancelled)
274. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said resulting film contains less than about 6% by weight solvent.
275. (Cancelled)
276. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said resulting film is orally administrable.
277. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said active is in the form of a particle.

278. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said matrix comprises a dispersion.
279. (Original) The process of claim 161, said active is an anti-nauseant.
280. (Amended) The process of claim 161, said active is an erectile dysfunction drug.
281. (Original) The process of claim 161, said active is a vasoconstrictor.
282. (Original) The process of claim 161, said active is a stimulant.
283. (Original) The process of claim 161, said active is a migraine treatment.
284. (Original) The process of claim 161, said active is granisetron hydrochloride.
285. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through the buccal cavity of said individual.
286. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through gingival application of said individual.
287. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through sublingual application of said individual.
288. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through a mucosal membrane of said individual.
289. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual by administration within the body of the individual during surgery.

290. (Cancelled)

291. (Cancelled)

292. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said resulting film contains less than about 6% by weight solvent.

293. (Cancelled)

294. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said resulting film is orally administrable.

295. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said active is in the form of a particle.

296. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said matrix comprises a dispersion.

297. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said matrix comprises an emulsion, a colloid or a suspension.

298. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said matrix comprises an emulsion, a colloid or a suspension.

299. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said matrix comprises an emulsion, a colloid or a suspension.

300. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 5%.

301. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 2%.

302. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 1%.

303. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 0.5%.

304. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 5%.

305. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 2%.

306. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 1%.

307. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 0.5%.

308. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 5%.

309. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 2%.

310. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 1%.

311. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 0.5%.

312. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.

313. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.

314. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.

315. (New) A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes

by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of said active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, such that uniformity of content in the amount of the active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%;

(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in said substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said sampled resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of the active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and

(f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of said active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests.

316. (New) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said film having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting film, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%; and

(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in said substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said sampled resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.



317. (New) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said film having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting film, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of said flowable polymer matrix during drying, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by no more than 10%, and wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film by further controlling drying by continuing evaporation to a water content of said resulting film of 10% or less and wherein said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said

active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%; and

(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said sampled resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

318. (New) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said film having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting film, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus at a temperature of about 60 °C and using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix during drying, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-

elastic film, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by less than 5%, and wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film by further controlling by continuing evaporation to a water content of said resulting film of 10% or less and wherein said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by less than 5%; and

(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said sampled resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by less than 5% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.



# UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE  
United States Patent and Trademark Office  
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450  
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NO.  | FILING DATE | FIRST NAMED INVENTOR | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. | CONFIRMATION NO. |
|--|-------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 95/002,170   | 09/10/2012  | 7897080              | 117744-00023        | 6418             |
| 23869  | 7590        | 04/12/2013           | EXAMINER            |                  |
| Hoffmann & Baron LLP<br>6900 Jericho Turnpike<br>Syosset, NY 11791 |             |                      | DIAMOND, ALAN D     |                  |
|  |             |                      | ART UNIT            | PAPER NUMBER     |
|  |             |                      | 3991                |                  |
|  |             |                      | MAIL DATE           | DELIVERY MODE    |
|  |             |                      | 04/12/2013          | PAPER            |

**Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.**

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.



UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

Address : COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS
P.O. Box 1450
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450

Table with 4 columns: APPLICATION NO./CONTROL NO., FILING DATE, FIRST NAMED INVENTOR / PATENT IN REEXAMINATION, ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.

Table with 3 columns: Applicant information (Hoffmann & Baron LLP), Examiner (Alan Diamond), and Art Unit/Paper (3991/20130405)

DATE MAILED:

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

Commissioner for Patents

On March 13, 2013, Patent Owner filed a response to the Notice re Defective Paper in Inter Partes Reexamination mailed on February 26, 2013. The Third Party Requester response filed February 28, 2013 will be closed since the Patent Owner papers filed January 29, 2013 are not entered. Patent Owner's non-entered papers filed January 29, 2013 will likewise be closed.

Third Party Requester is given 30 days from the mail date of this notice to file comments to the Patent Owner response of March 13, 2013.

/Alan Diamond/
Patent Reexamination Specialist
Central Reexamination Unit 3991



# EXHIBIT A

**COMPARISON OF INDEPENDENT CLAIMS RELATIVE TO CLAIM 82**

| <b><i>Claim 82 as Amended</i></b>   | <b><i>Claim 1 as Amended</i></b>   |
|---|--|
| A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:  | A process for manufacturing <b>a</b> resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of <b>a desired amount of</b> said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:  |
| (a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water-swallowable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;  | (a) forming a masterbatch pre-mix <b>flowable polymer matrix</b> comprising <b>a solvent and</b> a polymer selected from the group consisting of <b>a water-soluble polymers, a water-swallowable polymers</b> and combinations thereof, <b>a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</b>   |
|   | (b) adding said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, to a pre-determined amount of said masterbatch pre-mix to form a flowable polymer matrix, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;  |
| (b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;  | (c) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;   |
| (c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%; | (d) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, <b>and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;</b> |
| (d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;   | (e) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained; <b>and</b>   |
| (e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and   | (f) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of <b>the said</b> active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; <b>and</b>  |
| (f) repeating steps (g) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests.   |  |



| <i>Claim 82 as Amended</i>   | <i>Claim 161 as Amended</i>  |
|--|--|
| <p>A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>  | <p>A process for manufacturing <b>a</b> resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films <b>capable of being administered to a body surface and</b> having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of <b>a desired amount of</b> said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>  |
| <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water-swallowable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>  | <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising <b>a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water-swallowable polymer and combinations thereof</b>, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>   |
| <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p>  | <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p>  |
| <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;</p> | <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;</p> |
| <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;</p>   | <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;</p>   |
| <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and</p>   | <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration, and</p>   |
| <p>(f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests</p>  |  |
|  | <p>(f) administering said resulting film to a body surface.</p>  |

| <i>Claim 82 as Amended</i>  | <i>Claim 315 (New)</i>   |
|---|--|
| A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:  | A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:   |
| (a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;  | (a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising <b>a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof</b> , a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;   |
| (b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps,  | (b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;   |
| (c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%; | (c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said <b>flowable</b> polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent: <b>from said flowable polymer matrix</b> to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said <b>flowable</b> polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, <b>and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%.</b> |
| (d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;   | (d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of said active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, <b>such that uniformity of content in the amount of the active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%;</b>   |
| (e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and   | (e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in <b>said</b> substantially equal sized individual dosage units <b>of said</b> sampled <b>from different locations of said</b> resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of the active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and   |
| (f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests  | (f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of said active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests.   |

| <b>Claim 82 as Amended</b>   | <b>Claim 316 (New)</b>  |
|--|---|
| <p>A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>  | <p>A process for manufacturing <b>a</b> resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of <b>a desired amount of</b> said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>   |
| <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>  | <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising <b>a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof</b>, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>  |
| <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p> <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;</p> | <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p> <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said <b>flowable</b> polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent: <b>from said flowable polymer matrix</b> to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said <b>flowable</b> polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, <b>and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%.</b></p> |
| <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;</p>   | <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of <b>said</b> active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, <b>such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%; and</b></p>   |
| <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and</p>   | <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in <b>said</b> substantially equal sized individual dosage units <b>of said</b> sampled <b>from different locations of said</b> resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; <b>and.</b></p>  |
| <p>(f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests</p>  |   |

| <i>Claim 82 as Amended</i>   | <i>Claim 317 (New)</i>  |
|--|---|
| <p>A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, and regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>   | <p>A process for manufacturing a resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of <del>a desired amount of</del> said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>   |
| <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water-swellaible polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>   | <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising <del>a polymer selected from the group consisting of</del> a water-soluble polymer, <del>a water swellaible polymer and combinations thereof</del>, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>  |
| <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p>  | <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p>   |
| <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;</p> | <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus <b>using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from</b> said flowable polymer matrix during drying, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, <b>such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by no more than 10%, and wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;</b></p> |
| <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;</p>   | <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film <b>wherein said resulting film has by further controlling drying by continuing evaporation to a water content of said resulting film of 10% or less and wherein said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%; and</b></p>  |
| <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and</p>   | <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said <del>sampled from different locations of said</del> resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; <b>and</b>.</p>   |
| <p>(f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said</p>  |   |

|  |  |
|--|--|
| additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests. |  |
|--|--|

| <b><i>Claim 82 as Amended</i></b>  | <b><i>Claim 318 (New)</i></b>  |
|--|--|
| <p>A process for manufacturing resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components, comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>  | <p>A process for manufacturing a resulting films suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units, said films having a substantially uniform distribution of components comprising a substantially uniform distribution of <b>a desired amount of</b> said active in individual dosage units of said resulting films, comprising the steps of:</p>  |
| <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>  | <p>(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising <b>a polymer selected from the group consisting of</b> a water-soluble polymer, <b>a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof</b>, a solvent and said active, said active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;</p>  |
| <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p> <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less, and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;</p> | <p>(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;</p> <p>(c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus <b>at a temperature of about 60°C and using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from</b> the <b>said flowable</b> polymer matrix <b>during drying</b>, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, <b>such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by less than 5%, and wherein during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less and wherein uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%.</b></p> |
| <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;</p>   | <p>(d) forming said resulting film from said visco-elastic film, <b>wherein said resulting film has by further controlling by continuing evaporation to a water content of said resulting film of 10% or less and wherein said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by less than 5%; and</b></p>   |
| <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of said resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by no more than 10% and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; and</p>   | <p>(e) performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units <b>of said</b> sampled <b>from different locations of said</b> resulting film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said active varies by less than <b>10% 5%</b> and said resulting film is suitable for commercial and regulatory approval, wherein said regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration; <b>and.</b></p>  |
| <p>(f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting</p>  |  |

films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active as indicated by said analytical chemical tests.

# EXHIBIT C



**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

|                                       |                              |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| In re Inter Partes Reexamination of:  | )                            |
|                                       | )                            |
| US Patent No. 7,897,080               | )                            |
|                                       | )                            |
| Issued: March 1, 2011                 | ) Confirmation No.: 6418     |
|                                       | )                            |
| Named Inventor: Robert K. Yang et al. | ) Group Art Unit: 3991       |
|                                       | )                            |
| Control No.: 95/002,170               | ) Examiner: Diamond, Alan D. |
|                                       | )                            |
| Filed: September 10, 2012             | ) M&E Docket: 117744-00023   |
|                                       | )                            |
| Title: Polyethylene-oxide based       | ) H&B Docket: 1199-26        |
| RCE/CON/REX                           | )                            |
| films and Drug delivery               | )                            |
| systems made therefrom                | )                            |

***Mail Stop Inter Partes Reexam***  
Attn: Central Reexamination Unit  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**Declaration of Jason O. Clevenger under 37 C.F.R. § 1.132**

I, Jason O. Clevenger, Ph.D., declare:

1. I am a Principal Scientist at Exponent, a science and engineering consulting firm. My expertise focuses on materials characterization and process engineering for specialty manufacturing, including regulated products such as medical devices and pharmaceuticals. Specifically with regard to pharmaceuticals, my experience includes process engineering and method development for transdermal and solid oral formulations, regulatory compliance and CMC (Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Controls) related issues including root cause analysis, corrective and preventive action plans, and regulatory submissions. Attached is my *curriculum vitae*.

2. While Exponent is being paid for my time, I am not an employee of, nor do I have any financial interest in, BioDelivery Sciences International, Inc.

3. I have carefully reviewed U.S. Patent No. 7,897,080 (“the ‘080 Patent”), International Publication No. WO 00/42992 (“Chen”), the Declaration of B. Arlie Bogue, Ph.D. submitted to the U.S. Patent Office on March 13, 2013 (“Bogue Declaration”) and the Declaration of David T. Lin, Ph.D. submitted to the U.S. Patent Office on March 13, 2013 (“Lin Declaration”).

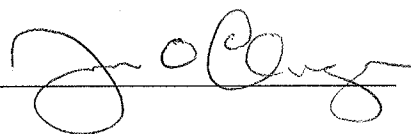
4. In my experience, the route to regulatory approval is an ongoing negotiation with the FDA through the New Drug Application (NDA) process. In this negotiation process, analytical testing and standards are determined for each product depending on its particular properties and characteristics. Different active agents and dosage forms have different properties, and would thus generally have different standards and testing requirements. Also, standardized test methods can change over time (e.g., USP <905> was revised in 2007 and 2011), so regulations from 2000 will not provide adequate information for present approval processes.

5. An FDA New Drug Application (“NDA”) is a long and very detailed document. The CMC Section alone is often many hundreds to thousands of pages long. Patents are not intended to be part of an NDA and would not be expected to have the same disclosure, at least because the two documents have different requirements and very different purposes. To the extent that Chen does not provide sufficient information to comply with all of the information required in an NDA, neither does the ‘080 Patent.

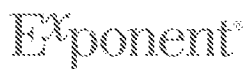
6. The analysis in the Bogue Declaration is not consistent with the currently adopted definition of content uniformity as described in USP <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units. The calculation in paragraphs 9 and 10 of the Bogue Declaration are not included within the definition of content uniformity as described in USP <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units.

All statements herein of my own knowledge are true and all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code and that such willful false statements may jeopardize the validity of this application or any patent issuing thereon

Dated: 12 April 2013

Signature: 

Jason O. Clevenger, Ph.D.  
Principal Scientist  
Exponent



Failure Analysis Associates®

Exponent  
9 Strathmore Road  
Natick, MA 01760

telephone 508-652-8500  
facsimile 508-652-8599  
www.exponent.com

**Jason O. Clevenger, Ph.D.**  
**Principal Scientist**

**Professional Profile**

Dr. Jason O. Clevenger is a Principal Scientist in Exponent's Polymer Science and Materials Chemistry practice. His expertise focuses on materials characterization and process engineering for specialty manufacturing, with a particular emphasis on regulated products such as medical devices and pharmaceuticals.

Dr. Clevenger's physical chemistry experience is applicable to problems involving materials such as semiconductors, MEMS, metal films, dielectrics, polymers, materials processing, materials characterization, pharmaceutical process chemistry, identification of trace contaminants including organics and particulates, and corrosion processes.

His pharmaceutical experience includes process engineering and optimization for transdermal and solid oral formulations, regulatory compliance and CMC (Chemistry, Manufacturing, and Controls) related issues involving root cause analysis, corrective and preventive action plans, quality assurance, and Quality by Design initiatives. His medical device experience includes method development for regulatory submissions, product development and manufacturing support, and technology due diligence assessment.

His characterization background encompasses a broad range of advanced technologies and techniques including laser spectroscopy, X-ray photoelectron spectroscopy (XPS), Auger spectroscopy, Raman, FTIR, solid/liquid-NMR, optical emission/absorption spectroscopy, energy dispersive spectroscopy (EDS), white-light interferometry, spectroscopic ellipsometry, atomic force microscopy (AFM), and secondary ion mass spectrometry (SIMS). In addition, he has extensive experience with plasma chemistry and spectroscopy, thin film metrology and reliability, high vacuum technology and semiconductor processing.

**Academic Credentials and Professional Honors**

Ph.D., Physical Chemistry, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 2002

B.A., Chemistry, Vanderbilt University (*magna cum laude* with *high honors*), 1995

Phi Beta Kappa and Omicron Delta Kappa

High Honors in Chemistry for Undergraduate Thesis, 1995; Outstanding Senior in Chemistry Award, 1995; T.W. Martin Award and D.E. Pearson Award for Excellence in Undergraduate Research and Study of Physical Chemistry, 1995; J.M. Breckenridge Scholarship, 1994; Barry M. Goldwater Foundation Scholarship, Goldwater Excellence in Education Foundation, 1994;

Stephen H. Cook Summer Research Fellowship, 1994; Top-Tennessee Scholars Tuition Scholarship, 1993; Eastman Kodak National Merit Scholarship, 1991

## **Publications**

Kou PM, Clevenger JO. A Coat for All Weathers: A Survey of the Hydrophilic Coatings Market. *Med Device Develop* 2012; May.

Clevenger JO, Ralston B. Rapid development. *Med Device Develop* 2009; Oct.

Steffey D, Ostarello A, Clevenger J, Villarraga, M. Troubleshooting analyses of production data. *Int J Ind Eng* 2009; 16(3):206–213.

Clevenger JO. Sticky situations: Hydrophilic coatings. *Med Device Develop* 2008; Dec.

Poliskie M, Clevenger JO. FTIR spectroscopy for characterization and failure analysis. *Met Finish* 2008; 5:44.

Goldsmith C, Forehand D, Scarborough S, Peng Z, Palego C, Hwang J, Clevenger J. Understanding and Improving Longevity in RF MEMS Capacitive Switches. Reliability, Packaging, Testing, and Characterization of MEMS/MOEMS VII, Proc. of SPIE Vol. 6884, 2008.

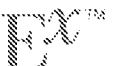
Clevenger JO. Safe surface—Anti-microbial coatings for implants. *Med Device Develop*, 2007; Sep.

Ibarreta A, Davis S, Clevenger JO. Flammability of electrical crimp connectors subjected to heating. Proceedings, Fire and Materials 10<sup>th</sup> International Conference, 2007.

Kay JJ, Byun DS, Clevenger JO, Jiang X, Petrovic VS, Seiler R, Barchi JR, Merer AJ, Field RW. “Spectrum-only” assignment of core-penetrating and core-nonpenetrating Rydberg states of calcium monofluoride. *Can J Chem* 2004; 82(6):791–803.

Brooks CB, Anderson RB, Clevenger JO, Collard C, Halim M, Sahin T, Mak, AW. Optimization of chrome dry etch in Tetra II using asymmetrically loaded patterns. Proceedings, SPIE-The International Society for Optical Engineering, 2003, 5256 (Pt. 2, 23<sup>rd</sup> Annual BACUS Symposium on Photomask Technology, 2003), pp. 749–757.

Collard C, Anderson SA, Anderson RB, Clevenger JO, Halim M, Brooks CB, Buie MJ, Sahin T. Examination of various endpoint methods for chrome mask etch. Proceedings, SPIE-The International Society for Optical Engineering, 2003) 5256 (Pt. 2, 23<sup>rd</sup> Annual BACUS Symposium on Photomask Technology, 2003), pp. 744–748.



Hammond E, Clevenger JO, Buie MJ. Plasma and flow modeling of photomask etch chambers. Proceedings, SPIE-The International Society for Optical Engineering, 5256 (Pt. 2, 23<sup>rd</sup> Annual BACUS Symposium on Photomask Technology, 2003), pp. 713–723.

Anderson SA, Anderson RB, Buie MJ, Chandrachood M, Clevenger JO, Lee Y, Sandlin NL; Ding J. Optimization of a 65-nm alternating phase-shift quartz etch process. Proceedings, SPIE-The International Society for Optical Engineering, 2003, 5256 (Pt. 1, 23<sup>rd</sup> Annual BACUS Symposium on Photomask Technology, 2003), pp. 66–75.

Clevenger JO, Buie MJ, Sandlin NL. Effect of chamber seasoning on the chrome dry etch process. Proceedings, SPIE-The International Society for Optical Engineering, 2003, 5130 (Photomask and Next-Generation Lithography Mask Technology X), pp. 92–100.

Li L, Dai X, Liu Y, Clevenger JO, Field RW, Jeung GH, Geum N, Lyyra AM. The Predissociation of the  $1^3\Sigma_g^-$  State of  $^7\text{Li}_2$ . J Molecul Spectrosc 2001; 205(1):139–145.

Dai X, Clevenger JO, Liu Y, Song M, Shang J, Chen D, Field RW; Li L. The  $2^3\Delta_g$  State of  $^7\text{Li}_2$ . J Molecul Spectrosc 2000; 200(1):120–122.

Clevenger JO, Harris NA, Field RW, Li J. The predissociation mechanism for  $2^2\Sigma^+$  Rydberg states of CaCl. J Molecul Spectrosc 1999; 193(2):412–417.

Clevenger JO, Tellinghuisen, J. The  $B(1/2^2P_{3/2}) - X(1/2^2\Sigma^+)$  transition in XeBr. J Chem Phys 1995; 103(22):9611–9620.

Clevenger JO, Tellinghuisen J. High-resolution spectroscopy with a CCD array detector. The  $B - X$  transition in  $^{136}\text{Xe}^{81}\text{Br}$ . Chem Phys Lett 1994; 231(4,5,6):515–520.

Clevenger JO, Ray QP, Tellinghuisen J, Zheng X, Heaven MC. Spectroscopy of metastable species in a free-jet expansion: The  $\beta - A$  transition in IBr. Can J Phys 1994; 72(11&12):1294–1306.

Radzykewycz DT, Littlejohn CD, Carter MB, Clevenger JO, Purvis JH, Tellinghuisen J. The  $D' - A'$  transition in IBr: A deperturbation analysis. J Molecul Spectrosc 1994; 166(2):287–303.

### **Prior Experience**

Process Technologist (Etch and CVD), Applied Materials, Inc., 2002–2004

### **Professional Affiliations**

- American Association of Pharmaceutical Scientists—AAPS
- American Chemical Society—ACS
- Society of Photo-Optical Instrumentation Engineers—SPIE



# EXHIBIT D



Quizzes & Games Word of the Day Video New Words My Favorites

uniform

Subscr

# Uniform

8 ENTRIES FOUND

- Uniform
- uniform flow
- uniform resource locator

Save Popularity



Quiz

Name That Thing  
Take Our 10-Question Quiz



Ads by Google

## Stage 4 Cancer Treatments

Chat w/ a Cancer Info Expert About Stage 4 Cancer Treatment Options.  
[www.CancerCenter.com](http://www.CancerCenter.com)

# Uniform

Definition of UNIFORM

Like

—a communications code word for the letter *u*

First Known Use of UNIFORM

1956

Other Alphabet Terms

cuneiform, linear, minuscule, pictograph, rune, symbology, wedge

**uni·form** *adjective* (yū-nī-*form*)

Definition of UNIFORM

- 1 : having always the same form, manner, or degree : not varying or variable <uniform procedures>
- 2 : consistent in conduct or opinion <uniform interpretation of laws>
- 3 : of the same form with others : conforming to one rule or mode : CONSONANT
- 4 : presenting an unvaried appearance of surface, pattern, or color <uniform red brick houses>
- 5 : relating to or being convergence of a series whose terms are functions in such manner that the absolute value of the difference between the sum of the first *n* terms of the series and the sum of all terms can be made arbitrarily small for all values of the domain of the functions by choosing the *n*th term sufficiently far along in the series

— uni-formly *adverb*  
— uni-form-ness *noun*

See uniform defined for English-language learners »

Top 10 Words for Unusual Colors Worth Looking At  
Paintings, Flowers, Fleas & More

Our Most Popular Quick Quizzes? The Answer Is ...  
Top 10 Quick Quizzes





See *uniform* defined for kids »

#### Examples of UNIFORM

The museum is kept at a *uniform* temperature to protect the artifacts.

All departments have *uniform* training standards.

#### Origin of UNIFORM

Middle English *uniforme*, from Middle French, from Latin *uniformis*, from *uni-* + *-formis* -form

First Known Use: 15th century

#### Related to UNIFORM

##### Synonyms

even, invariant, steady, unchanging, undeviating, unvarying, unwavering

##### Antonyms

changing, deviating, nonuniform, unsteady, varying

##### Related Words

fixed, immutable, invariable, set, unalterable, unchangeable

more

#### Rhymes with UNIFORM

chiroform, cruciform, dendriform, dentiform, disciform, fungiform, funneliform, fusiform, land reform, letterform, microform, multiform, nonconform, racing form, thunderstorm, up a storm, vermiform

## <sup>2</sup>uniform *transitive verb*

#### Definition of UNIFORM

**1** : to bring into uniformity

**2** : to clothe with a uniform

#### First Known Use of UNIFORM

circa 1681

## <sup>3</sup>uniform *noun*

#### Definition of UNIFORM

: dress of a distinctive design or fashion worn by members of a particular group and serving as a means of identification;  
*broadly* : distinctive or characteristic clothing

☞ See *uniform* defined for English-language learners »

#### Examples of UNIFORM

<the band *uniform* was brown with red and white stripes>

#### First Known Use of UNIFORM

1748

#### Related to UNIFORM

##### Synonyms

livery, outfit



Related Words

fatigues, full dress, regimentals, costume, finery, regalia

more

Other Clothing Terms

babushka, brogue, bumbershoot, cravat, dishabille, furbelow, layette, raiment, spectator

Browse

Next Word in the Dictionary: uniformal  
 Previous Word in the Dictionary: unifoliate  
 All Words Near: Uniform

Seen & Heard

What made you want to look up *Uniform*? Please tell us where you read or heard it (including the quote, if possible).

6 comments

Add a comment.

Comment using...

---

 **Krishna Kumar Mangalam** · New Delhi, India  
 wanted to know whether uniform has a plural form, 'uniforms'!  
 Reply · Like · March 21, 2011 at 8:42am

---

 **Alonzo D. Letas III** · General Santos City  
 SOMEONE PLS TELL ME WHAT IS THE MEANING OF UNIFORM!  
 Reply · Like · June 30, 2011 at 4:46am

---

 **Andrew Regan** · Sparhawk School  
 balls  
 Reply · Like · October 5, 2011 at 2:34pm

---

 **Marilyn Tackett Wilson** · George Washington High School, Indy  
 homework for thir grade  
 Reply · Like · January 6, 2012 at 4:12am

[View 1 more](#)

Facebook social tags:

View Seen & Heard highlights from around the site »

Merriam-Webster on Facebook · Like · 128k

The Merriam-Webster Unabridged Dictionary



Online access to a legendary resource. Log in or Sign Up »

Learning English? We can help.



Visit our free site designed especially for learners and teachers of English. [LearnersDictionary.com »](#)



Our Dictionary, On Your Devices


Merriam-Webster. With Voice Search. Get the Free Apps! »


Merriam-Webster's Visual Dictionary



The new edition of the remarkable reference features 8,000 illustrations. [Learn More »](#)









COACH LEGACY WEEKEND COLORBLOCK LEATHER MEDIUM ZIP TOP TOTE. \$295.00. [SHOP NOW »](#)

ENJOY FREE SHIPPING ON ORDERS OF \$150+. [SHOP COACH.COM »](#)

Join Us

[Merriam-Webster on Twitter »](#)

[Merriam-Webster on Facebook »](#)

Bookstore: Digital and Print

Merriam-Webster references for Mobile, Kindle, print, and more. [See all »](#)

Other Merriam-Webster Dictionaries

[Webster's Unabridged Dictionary »](#)  
[WordCentral for Kids »](#)

[Learner's ESL Dictionary »](#)  
[Visual Dictionary »](#)

[Home](#) [Help](#) [About Us](#) [Shop](#) [Advertising Info](#) [Dictionary API](#)

[Privacy Policy](#) [About Our Ads](#) [Contact Us](#) [Browser Tools](#)

© 2013 Merriam-Webster, Incorporated

[Browse the Dictionary](#)

[Browse the Thesaurus](#)

[Browse the Spanish-English Dictionary](#)

[Browse the Medical Dictionary](#)

[Browse the Concise Encyclopedia](#)

# EXHIBIT E

**APPROXIMATE VISCOSITIES OF SOME COMMON LIQUIDS**

| Liquid                    | Specific Gravity at 16°c | Absolute Viscosity Cp | Temperature C° | Viscosity Type<br>N = Newtonian<br>T = Thixotropic |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|--|
| <b>DAIRY PRODUCTS</b>     |                          |                       |                |  |
| Butter Fat                |                          | 42                    | 43             | N  |
| Butter Fat                |                          | 20                    | 65             | N  |
| Butter Deodorised         |                          | 45                    | 50             | N  |
| Cottage Cheese            |                          | 30,000                | 18             | T  |
| Cocoa Butter              | 0.92                     | 50                    | 60             | N  |
| Cocoa Butter              | 0.87                     | 0.5                   | 100            | N  |
| Condensed Milk            |                          | 40-80                 | 40-50          | N  |
| Condensed Milk 75% Solids | 1.3                      | 2160                  | 20             | T  |
| Cream 30% Fat             | 1.0                      | 14                    | 16             | N  |
| Cream 45% Fat             | 0.99                     | 48                    | 16             | N  |
| Cream 50% Fat             | 0.98                     | 112                   | 16             | N  |
| Cream 50% Fat             |                          | 55                    | 32             | N  |
| Milk                      | 1.02-1.05                | 2.0                   | 18             | N  |
| Milk                      | 1.02-1.05                | 1.0                   | 52             | N  |
| Milk Whey 48% Sugar       |                          | 800-1500              | 40             | T  |
| Process Cheese            |                          | 6500                  | 80             | T  |
| Process Cheese            |                          | 30,000                | 18             | T  |
| Whole Egg                 |                          | 150                   | 4.5            | T  |
| Yoghurt                   | 1.15                     | 152                   | 40             | T  |
| <b>FOOD PRODUCTS</b>      |                          |                       |                |  |
| Batter                    |                          | 29,500                | 30             | T  |
| Baby Food                 |                          | 1400                  | 93             | T  |
| Beet Sauce                |                          | 1950                  | 76             | T  |
| Biscuit Cream Premix      |                          | 29,200                | 18             | T  |
| Brewers Yeast             |                          | 368                   | 18             | T  |
| Broth Mix                 |                          | 430                   | 18             | T  |
| Carob Bean Sauce          |                          | 1500                  | 30             | T  |
| Chocolate                 |                          | 280                   | 49             | T  |
| Citrus Fruit Pulp         | 1.27                     | 600                   | 20             | T  |
| Coffee Liquor 30-40%      |                          | 10-100                | 20             | T  |
| Custard                   | 1.6                      | 1500                  | 85-90          | T  |
| Edible Oil                | 0.9                      | 65                    | 20             | N  |
| Gelatine 37% Solids       |                          | 1190                  | 43             | T  |
| Glucose                   | 1.3                      | 4300-8600             | 25-30          | T  |

| Liquid                   | Specific Gravity at 16°C | Absolute Viscosity Cp | Temperature C° | Viscosity Type<br>N = Newtonian<br>T = Thixotropic |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|--|
| Gravy Slurry             | 1.0                      | 110                   | 80             | T  |
| Fruit Juice              | 1.04                     | 55-75                 | 18             | N  |
| Jam Garnish              |                          | 8440                  | 16             | T  |
| Malt Extract 80%         |                          | 9500                  | 18             | T  |
| Malt Extract             | 1.4                      | 3000                  | 60             | T  |
| Mayonnaise               |                          | 20,000                | 20             | T  |
| Mincemeat                |                          | 100,000               | 30             | T  |
| Mousse Mix               |                          | 1200                  | 5              | T  |
| Pectin                   |                          | 300                   | 38             | N  |
| Pectin                   |                          | 345                   | 27             | N  |
| Orange Juice Concentrate | 30 Brix                  | 630                   | 20             | N  |
| Orange Juice Concentrate | 30 Brix                  | 91                    | 80             | N  |
| Orange Juice Concentrate | 50 Brix                  | 2410                  | 20             | N  |
| Orange Juice Concentrate | 50 Brix                  | 330                   | 80             | N  |
| Rice Pudding             |                          | 10,000                | 100            | T  |
| Salad Cream              |                          | 1300-2600             | 18             | T  |
| Sauce – Apple            | 1.1                      | 500                   | 80             | T  |
| Sorbitol                 | 1.29                     | 200                   | 20             | N  |
| Tomato Ketchup           |                          | 1000                  | 30             | T  |
| Tomato Paste 30%         |                          | 195                   | 18             | T  |
| Vinegar                  |                          | 12-15                 | 20             | N  |
| Yeast Surry              |                          | 20                    | 18             | T  |
| Soya Bean Slurry         |                          | 5000-10,000           | 50-90          | T  |
| PHARMACEUTICALS          |                          |                       |                |  |
| Detergents               |                          | 1470                  | 70             | T  |
| Hand Cream               |                          | 780                   | 18             | T  |
| Latex Emulsion           | 1.0                      | 200                   | 24             | T  |
| Latex Emulsion           |                          | 48                    | 65             | T  |
| Paraffin Emulsion        | 1.2                      | 3000                  | 18             | T  |
| Shampoos                 |                          | 3000                  | 36             | T  |
| Soap Arylan              | 1.0 at 40°C              | 630                   | 60             | T  |
| Soap Solution            | 1.03 at 60°C             | 82                    | 60             | T  |
| Toothpaste               |                          | 70,000-100,000        | 18             | T  |
| Wax                      | 0.9                      | 500                   | 93             | T  |
| FISH AND ANIMAL OILS     |                          |                       |                |  |
| Bone Oil                 | 0.92                     | 48                    | 54             | N  |
| Cod Oil                  | 0.93                     | 32                    | 38             | N  |
| Lard                     | 0.96                     | 62                    | 38             | N  |

| Liquid              | Specific Gravity at 16°C | Absolute Viscosity Cp | Temperature C° | Viscosity Type<br>N = Newtonian<br>T = Thixotropic |
|---------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|--|
| Lard Oil            | 0.91-0.93                | 40-47                 | 38             | N  |
| Sperm Oil           | 0.88                     | 24                    | 38             | N  |
| Whale Oil           | 0.93                     | 25-39                 | 38             | N  |
| VEGETABLE OILS      |                          |                       |                |  |
| Castor Oil          | 0.96                     | 580                   | 27             | N  |
| Castor Oil          |                          | 36                    | 80             | N  |
| Chinawood Oil       | 0.94                     | 300                   | 21             | N  |
| Coconut Oil         | 0.93                     | 55                    | 24             | N  |
| Coconut Oil         |                          | 30                    | 38             | N  |
| Corn Oil            | 0.92                     | 28                    | 57             | N  |
| Cotton Seed Oil     | 0.88                     | 62                    | 24             | N  |
| Cotton Seed Oil     | 0.93                     | 24                    | 52             | N  |
| Linseed Oil Raw     | 0.93-0.94                | 29                    | 38             | N  |
| Olive Oil           | 0.91                     | 40                    | 38             | N  |
| Palm Oil            | 0.92                     | 43                    | 38             | N  |
| Peanut Oil          | 0.92                     | 38                    | 38             | N  |
| Soya Bean Oil       | 0.93                     | 60                    | 24             | N  |
| Soya Bean Oil       |                          | 12                    | 80             | N  |
| Turpentine          | 0.86                     | 2.0                   | 16             | N  |
| INDUSTRIAL PRODUCTS |                          |                       |                |  |
| Acetate Glue        |                          | 1200-1400             | 20             | T  |
| NaOH 20%            | 1.22                     | 1.0                   | 18             | N  |
| NaOH 30%            | 1.33                     | 1.0                   | 18             | N  |
| NaOH 40%            | 1.43                     | 20                    | 18             | N  |
| Cresol Crystals     |                          | 10                    | 18             | T  |
| Glycerine 100%      | 1.26 at 20°C             | 648                   | 20             | N  |
| Glycerine 100%      |                          | 176                   | 38             | N  |
| Isopropyl Alcohol   | 1.11                     | 1.9                   | 85             | N  |
| Lacquer 25% Solids  |                          | 3000                  | 18             | T  |
| Polyester           | 1.1 at 30%               | 3000                  | 30             | T  |
| Polypropylene       |                          | 240,000               | 50             | T  |
| Polyisobutylene     | 1.09 at 85°              | 12,500                | 85             | T  |
| Plastisol           | 2.5                      | 28,000                | 18             | T  |
| Printers Ink        |                          | 550-2200              | 38             | T  |
| Printers Ink        |                          | 238-660               | 54             | T  |
| Resin Solution      |                          | 880                   | 24             | T  |
| Resin Solution      |                          | 975                   | 21             | T  |
| Resin Solution      |                          | 7140                  | 18             | T  |

| Liquid          | Specific Gravity at 16°C | Absolute Viscosity Cp | Temperature C° | Viscosity Type<br>N = Newtonian<br>T = Thixotropic |
|-----------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|----------------|--|
| Sulphonic Acid  | 1.04                     | 125                   | 30             | T  |
| Triacetate Dope |                          | 48,000/60,000         | 40             | T  |
| GLYCOL PRODUCTS |                          |                       |                |  |
| Propylene       | 1.04                     | 52                    | 21             | N  |
| Triethylene     | 1.12                     | 40                    | 21             | N  |
| Diethylene      | 1.12                     | 32                    | 21             | N  |
| Ethylene        | 1.12                     | 18                    | 21             | N  |



# EXHIBIT F



**CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and MARSHALL H. KRONE,  
Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Appellee.**

**01-1144**

**UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FEDERAL CIRCUIT**

*289 F.3d 1367; 2002 U.S. App. LEXIS 9173; 62 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1917*

**May 13, 2002, Decided**

**SUBSEQUENT HISTORY:** [\*\*1] As Corrected June 19, 2002. Rehearing Denied June 10, 2002, Reported at: *2002 U.S. App. LEXIS 13283*.

**PRIOR HISTORY:** Appealed from: United States District Court for the Western District of Wisconsin. Senior Judge John C. Shabaz.

**DISPOSITION:** AFFIRMED-IN-PART, REVERSED-IN-PART, AND REMANDED.

**COUNSEL:** Joseph T. Leone, DeWitt Ross and Stevens, S.C., of Madison, Wisconsin, argued for plaintiffs-appellants. With him on the brief was Joseph A. Ranney.

Gregory E. Upchurch, Thompson Coburn LLP, of St. Louis, Missouri, argued for defendant-appellee. With him on the brief were Kenneth R. Heineman, and Dudley W. Von Holt.

**JUDGES:** Before LOURIE, CLEVINGER, and GAJARSA, Circuit Judges.

**OPINION BY:** GAJARSA

**OPINION**

[\*1370] GAJARSA, Circuit Judge.

Crown Operations International, Ltd., and Mr. Marshall H. Krone (collectively "Crown"), appeal the decision of the United States District Court for the Western District of Wisconsin denying Crown declaratory relief that Solutia's *U.S. Patent No. 4,973,511* ("the '511 patent") is invalid for lack of novelty and non-obviousness, and that Solutia's *U.S. Patent No. 5,091,258* ("the '258 patent") is invalid for lack of enablement and written description. *Crown Operations Int'l, Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc.*, No. 99-C-802-S, slip op. at 8 (W.D. Wis. Aug. 30, 2000) (memorandum decision and order granting [\*\*2] summary judgment) ("August 30 Order"); *Crown Operations Int'l, Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc.*, No. 99-C-802-S, slip op. at 24, 27 (W.D. Wis. Aug. 22, 2000) (same) ("August 22 Order"). Because we find no error in the district court's opinion with respect to the '511 patent, we affirm that portion of the district court's decision. However, because the district court erred in its analysis of enablement for the '258 patent, and did not address the written description issue for the '258 patent, we reverse the district court's grant of summary judgment on that issue and remand for additional proceedings consistent with this opinion.

**I. BACKGROUND**

The patents at issue in this appeal relate to layered films used to create safety and solar control glass. An example is an automobile windshield. Most windshields have two layers of glass with a multi-layer film between the glass layers. The multi-layer film adds properties to

the glass assembly, such as impact resistance or providing a conductive layer that facilitates defrosting the windshield. An inner layer of the film has solar control properties to selectively reflect, absorb (and thus convert to heat) or transmit defined percentages [\*\*3] of certain wavelengths of light. This inner layer is called the solar control film. It is made of a substrate coated by one or more layers of metal or metallic substances. '511 patent, col. 3, l. 64 to col. 4, l. 2. Typically, manufacturers laminate the solar control film between layers of plasticized polyvinyl butyral ("PVB") (sometimes called the "safety film") in a process known as encapsulation. Then, the encapsulated solar control film is sandwiched between two pieces of glass for a final assembly of multi-layer glass with safety and solar control properties.

#### A. The '511 Patent

The '511 patent is directed to the problem that the metal-coated substrate, i.e., solar control film, tends to wrinkle during encapsulation causing visual distortions. The '511 patent claims to mask the wrinkles from detection by the human eye by [\*1371] limiting to two percent or less the visible light reflection contribution of the solar control film compared to reflection from a complete assembly of glass, PVB and solar control film. '511 patent, col. 4, ll. 46-49, col. 8, l. 66 to col. 9, l. 6, col. 14, l. 67 to col. 15, l. 2. Figure 1 from the '511 patent, set forth below, shows the layers in a complete [\*\*4] assembly.

[SEE FIGURE 1 IN ORIGINAL]

The complete safety and solar control glass assembly 10 includes two outer glass layers 28 & 30, PVB layers 22 & 23, and the solar control film 20. The solar control film is comprised of a substrate layer 16 and solar control coating 18. '511 patent, col. 3, ll. 41-53, col. 7, ll. 2-4, col. 10, l. 15. Figure 3 from the '511 patent, set forth below, shows the sub-layers of the solar control coating 18.

[SEE FIGURE 3 IN ORIGINAL]

Layer 18 is made of multiple sub-layers. Layers 34 and 36 are metal oxide, and layer 38 is metal. '511 patent, col. 5, ll. 12-14. In addition, the '511 patent notes that "prior automotive windshields have visible light reflection contributions for their solar films of three percent or greater." Further, it relates that the primary method of achieving a low solar control film reflectance

contribution is by providing a specially-designed solar coating. '511 patent, col. 4, ll. 56-65.

On December 16, 1999, Crown sued Solutia (the "Initial Complaint"), seeking, among various other relief, a declaration that the '511 patent was invalid for anticipation and obviousness. Upon the parties' cross-motions for summary judgment, [\*\*5] the district court found the '511 patent not anticipated and not invalid for obviousness. August 22 Order at 24, 27. We discuss herein only those portions of the August 22 Order relevant to the issues on appeal, which relate solely to the summary judgment finding that the '511 patent was not [\*1372] invalid on the grounds of anticipation and obviousness.

Claim 1, the only independent claim of the '511 patent, is set forth below, with the element numbers from Figure 1 inserted into the claim.

1. A composite solar/safety film [24] for use in a laminated window assembly [10] comprising:

a flexible, transparent plastic substrate layer [16] having a carrier surface and an opposing back surface;

a multilayer solar control coating [18] on said carrier surface, said coated substrate defining a solar control film [20]; and

at least one flexible, transparent, energy absorbing plastic safety layer [23 and/or 22] bonded to a surface of said solar control film;

wherein said *solar control film contributes no more than about 2% visible reflectance*, based on total visible incident radiation, in a laminated window assembly containing [\*\*6] said composite solar/safety film laminated to at least one rigid transparent member [30 and/or 28].

'511 patent, col. 14, l. 57 to col. 15, l. 4 (emphasis added and emphasized numbers added to identify elements shown in Figure 1 above).

Crown argued that *U.S. Patent No. 4,017,661* to

Gillery (the "Gillery patent") anticipates the '511 patent. The district court held otherwise, because, while the Gillery patent discloses the first three limitations of claim 1 of the '511 patent, it does not disclose the two percent visible reflectance limitation. The court found that neither the Gillery patent claims nor its description expressly disclose a two percent limit on reflectance contribution from the solar control film layer. Crown argued that the two percent limitation was inherently present in the Gillery patent's teachings because the Gillery patent disclosed an assembly with PVB layers, substrate layer, and substrate metal-coating - arguably of the same composition and thickness of the films disclosed by the '511 patent. Thus, Crown argued, because the structure, thickness and materials of the assembly were the same or within the same range(s), the Gillery patent must [\*7] inherently disclose a two percent limitation. The district court rejected this argument because it found that none of the embodiments disclosed by the Gillery patent meet the two percent visible light reflectance limit.<sup>1</sup>

1 The district court, applying a similar analysis, also found that UK Patent Application GB 2 057 355 (the "UK patent") did not anticipate the '511 patent because it did not have the two percent limitation.

In its August 22 Order, the district court also held that the '511 patent was not rendered invalid for obviousness by Gillery or the other prior art cited by Crown because no prior art discloses: (i) that reflectance below two percent will mask wrinkles; (ii) a solar control film layer with reflectance below two percent; or (iii) any suggestion, motivation or teaching to reduce solar control film visible light reflectivity below two percent. Although the prior art generally sought to reduce visible light reflectivity, it also taught disadvantages of a very thin metal-coating on the [\*8] substrate, including sacrificing infrared reflectivity. Thus, it taught that the proper compromise to achieve the conflicting goals of infrared (non-visible light) reflectance, visible light transmission and conductivity [\*1373] was a solar control film with a visible light reflectivity greater than two percent.

#### B. The '258 Patent

The '258 patent is directed at eliminating optical distortion, called "applesauce," in safety and solar control glass assemblies of the type discussed above for the '511 patent. The '258 patent discloses a method to control

distortion otherwise caused by the safety and solar film layer by measuring and controlling the texture of the surface of the PVB layers. The method expresses texture using a "wave index" and a "roughness value." The wave index calculation is at issue in this appeal. Wave index indicates the relative waviness of the surface of the PVB. Determining wave index involves measuring the surface of the PVB and then aggregating the measurements into a single number, the wave index, through a calculation purportedly described in the '258 patent.

The '258 patent directs one to use an instrument to physically measure the waviness of the surface of the [\*9] PVB and capture the measurement into an electronic "trace line" representing the contours of the PVB surface. '258 patent, col. 7, ll. 54-65. Since the "trace line" is stored electronically, a computer program is used to calculate wave index from the trace. Three figures from the '258 patent, given below, provide examples of PVB surface trace lines.

[SEE FIGURES 7, 8, AND 9 IN ORIGINAL]

The rules for calculating the wave index implement a "smoothing" function. The smoothing process seeks to eliminate minor inflection points (peaks or valleys) to simplify the calculation of wave index. '258 patent, col. 7, l. 66 to col. 8, l. 2.

In the Initial Complaint, Crown sought a declaration that the '258 patent was invalid for anticipation and obviousness. Then, on May 26, 2000, Crown amended the complaint (the "Amended Complaint") to additionally claim in Count VI that the '258 patent is invalid under 35 U.S.C. § 112, first paragraph, because it lacked enablement and written description due to ambiguities in the disclosed wave index calculation. In its August 22 Order, the district court found the '258 patent not anticipated and not invalid for obviousness. [\*10] August 22 Order at 28-29.

With respect to Count VI of Crown's amended complaint, Solutia moved for [\*1374] summary judgment on Crown's enablement and written description claim. Crown opposed Solutia's summary judgment motion, arguing that the '258 patent did not meet the enablement and written description requirements. The district court found the '258 patent not invalid for lack of enablement, but did not discuss in its opinion the written description requirement. August 30 Order at 8-13. We discuss herein only those portions of the August 30 Order

relevant to the issues on appeal, which relate to summary judgment finding the '258 *patent* not invalid on the grounds of enablement and the procedural disposition of the written description issue.

Claim 1 of the '258 *patent* is set forth below. In the language of this claim, "laminate" refers to the complete glass, PVB and solar control film assembly, and "functional performance layer" refers to the solar control coating. '258 *patent*, col. 3, ll. 45-65.

1. A laminate which is substantially free of reflected distortion when used in a safety glazing comprising:

a transparent, thermoplastic substrate layer, optionally surface treated [\*\*11] or coated, bearing one or more functional performance layers; and

at least one layer of plasticized polyvinyl butyral bonded on one side to a functional performance layer or the substrate layer and having a roughened de-airing surface on its other side characterized by a roughness value, Rz, of at least 10 micrometers;

said at least one plasticized polyvinyl butyral [PVB] layer, before bonding to the substrate layer or functional performance layer, *possessing low surface waviness on each side characterized by a wave index value, WI, of less than 15,000 square micrometers.*

'258 *patent*, col. 12, ll. 2-16 (emphasis added).

Crown argued that the rules disclosed by the '258 *patent* for calculating wave index are not sufficiently precise to enable a person of ordinary skill in the art to practice the '258 *patent* without undue experimentation. The wave index calculation as described by the '258 *patent* is set forth below.

In this regard, considering the waviness profile as a series of peaks and valleys, the smoothing rules of the program consider an inflection point to be a true peak or valley if it is: i) at least 100 micrometers away from the immediately preceding

[\*\*12] prior peak or valley and ii) at least 0.5 micrometer above or below the immediately preceding prior peak or valley, a valley being at least 0.5 micrometer below the immediately preceding prior peak. Pitch (P) is the distance between one valley and the next valley or in other words across the base of a peak. Average amplitude (H avg) and average pitch (P avg) are determined by the program for the smoothed trace of ten 12.5 mm tracing lengths (the second five lengths being 90 degrees to the first five lengths). From the average of the averaged H's and P's, a WI value is computed from the equation: Wave Index (WI) = (H avg) x (P avg) where H avg and P avg are in microns.

'258 *patent*, col. 8, ll. 3-19.

Crown asserted that according to the disclosed wave index "calculation," one of ordinary skill in the pertinent art would not know whether to instruct the smoothing program to disregard a peak by comparing it to an immediately preceding peak, or to a valley. The district court held that common sense and the clarifying clause "a valley being at least 0.5 micrometer [\*1375] below the immediately preceding prior peak" defeated Crown's argument. Thus, the district court held that the alleged [\*\*13] grammatical ambiguities in the rules disclosed for calculating wave index did not invalidate the patent for lack of enablement.

Crown timely appealed the district court's two orders, raising the issues of anticipation and obviousness of the '511 *patent*, and lack of enablement and written description of the '258 *patent*. We have jurisdiction pursuant to 28 U.S.C. § 1295(a)(1).

## II. STANDARD OF REVIEW

We review a district court's grant of summary judgment without deference. *Atmel Corp. v. Info. Storage Devices, Inc.*, 198 F.3d 1374, 1378, 53 USPQ2d 1225, 1227 (Fed. Cir. 1999). Summary judgment is appropriate when the moving party demonstrates that "there is no genuine issue as to any material fact and that the moving party is entitled to a judgment as a matter of law." *Fed. R. Civ. P. 56(c)*; *Celotex Corp. v. Catrett*, 477 U.S. 317, 322-23, 91 L. Ed. 2d 265, 106 S. Ct. 2548

(1986). On summary judgment, the evidence must be viewed in the light most favorable to the party opposing the motion, *Poller v. Columbia Broad. Sys., Inc.*, 368 U.S. 464, 473, 7 L. Ed. 2d 458, 82 S. Ct. 486 (1962), with doubts resolved in favor [\*\*14] of the nonmovant, *Cantor v. Detroit Edison Co.*, 428 U.S. 579, 582, 49 L. Ed. 2d 1141, 96 S. Ct. 3110 (1976); *Transmatic, Inc. v. Gulton Indus., Inc.*, 53 F.3d 1270, 1274, 35 USPQ2d 1035, 1038 (Fed. Cir. 1995). Once the moving party has satisfied its initial burden, the opposing party must establish a genuine issue of material fact and cannot rest on mere allegations, but must present actual evidence. *Anderson v. Liberty Lobby, Inc.*, 477 U.S. 242, 248, 91 L. Ed. 2d 202, 106 S. Ct. 2505 (1986). Issues of fact are genuine only "if the evidence is such that a reasonable jury could return a verdict for the nonmoving party." *Id.* A disputed fact is material if it might affect the outcome of the suit such that a finding of that fact is necessary and relevant to the proceeding. *Id.*; *General Mills, Inc. v. Hunt-Wesson, Inc.*, 103 F.3d 978, 980, 41 USPQ2d 1440, 1442 (Fed. Cir. 1997).

A patent is invalid for anticipation when the same device or method, having all of the elements contained in the claim limitations, is described in a single prior art reference. *Richardson v. Suzuki Motor Co.*, 868 F.2d 1226, 1236, 9 USPQ2d 1913, 1920 (Fed. Cir. 1989); [\*\*15] *Perkin-Elmer Corp. v. Computervision Corp.*, 732 F.2d 888, 894, 221 USPQ 669, 673 (Fed. Cir. 1984). An anticipating reference must describe the patented subject matter with sufficient clarity and detail to establish that the subject matter existed in the prior art and that such existence would be recognized by persons of ordinary skill in the field of the invention. See *In re Spada*, 911 F.2d 705, 708, 15 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1655, 1657 (Fed. Cir. 1990); *Diversitech Corp. v. Century Steps, Inc.*, 850 F.2d 675, 678, 7 USPQ2d 1315, 1317 (Fed. Cir. 1988).

Obviousness is a legal conclusion based on underlying facts of four general types, all of which must be considered by the trier of fact: (1) the scope and content of the prior art; (2) the level of ordinary skill in the art; (3) the differences between the claimed invention and the prior art; and (4) any objective indicia of nonobviousness. See *Graham v. John Deere Co.*, 383 U.S. 1, 17-18, 15 L. Ed. 2d 545, 86 S. Ct. 684 (1966); *Continental Can Co. USA, Inc. v. [\*1376] Monsanto Co.*, 948 F.2d 1264, 1270, 20 USPQ2d 1746, 1750-51 (Fed. Cir. 1991); *Panduit Corp. v. Dennison Mfg. Co.*,

810 F.2d 1561, 1566-68, 1 USPQ2d 1593, 1594 (Fed. Cir. 1987). [\*\*16]

"Determination of obviousness cannot be based on the hindsight combination of components selectively culled from the prior art to fit the parameters of the patented invention." *ATD Corp. v. Lydall, Inc.*, 159 F.3d 534, 546, 48 USPQ2d 1321, 1329 (Fed. Cir. 1998). There must be a teaching or suggestion within the prior art, within the nature of the problem to be solved, or within the general knowledge of a person of ordinary skill in the field of the invention, to look to particular sources, to select particular elements, and to combine them as combined by the inventor. See *Ruiz v. A.B. Chance Co.*, 234 F.3d 654, 665, 57 USPQ2d 1161, 1167 (Fed. Cir. 2000); *ATD Corp.*, 159 F.3d at 546, 48 USPQ2d at 1329; *Heidelberger Druckmaschinen AG v. Hantscho Commercial Prods., Inc.*, 21 F.3d 1068, 1072, 30 USPQ2d 1377, 1379 (Fed. Cir. 1994) ("When the patented invention is made by combining known components to achieve a new system, the prior art must provide a suggestion or motivation to make such a combination.").

The written description inquiry is a factual one and must be assessed on a case-by-case basis. See *Vas-Cath Inc. v. Mahurkar*, 935 F.2d 1555, 1561, 19 USPQ2d 1111, 1116 (Fed. Cir. 1991) [\*\*17] (quoting *In re Smith*, 59 C.C.P.A. 1025, 458 F.2d 1389, 1395, 173 USPQ 679, 683 (CCPA 1972) ("Precisely how close the original description must come to comply with the description requirement of § 112 must be determined on a case-by-case basis.")). In order to satisfy the written description requirement, the disclosure as originally filed does not have to provide in haec verba support for the claimed subject matter at issue. See *Fujikawa v. Wattanasin*, 93 F.3d 1559, 1570, 39 USPQ2d 1895, 1904 (Fed. Cir. 1996). Nonetheless, the disclosure must convey with reasonable clarity to those skilled in the art that the inventor was in possession of the invention, *Vas-Cath Inc.*, 935 F.2d at 1563-64, 19 USPQ2d at 1116-17, although we have also clarified that the possession test alone is not always sufficient to meet the written description requirement, *Enzo Biochem, Inc. v. Gen-Probe Inc.*, 285 F.3d 1013, 62 U.S.P.Q. 2d 1289, at \*7 (Fed. Cir. Apr. 2, 2002). As such, "the written description requirement is satisfied by the patentee's disclosure of 'such descriptive means as words, structures, figures, diagrams, formulas, etc., that fully [\*\*18] set forth the claimed invention.'" *Enzo Biochem*,

2002 WL at \*7 (quoting *Lockwood v. American Airlines, Inc.*, 107 F.3d 1565, 1572, 41 USPQ2d 1961, 1966 (Fed. Cir. 1997)). Put another way, one skilled in the art, reading the original disclosure, must reasonably discern the limitation at issue in the claims. *Waldemar Link GmbH & Co. v. Osteonics Corp.*, 32 F.3d 556, 558, 31 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1855, 1857 (Fed. Cir. 1994).

Whether a claim is enabled under 35 U.S.C. § 112, first paragraph is a question of law, although based upon underlying factual findings. See *PPG Indus., Inc. v. Guardian Indus. Corp.*, 75 F.3d 1558, 1564, 37 USPQ2d 1618, 1623 (Fed. Cir. 1996); *In re Goodman*, 11 F.3d 1046, 1049-50, 29 USPQ2d 2010, 2013 (Fed. Cir. 1993).

## DISCUSSION

### A. The '511 Patent

On appeal, Crown describes various purported errors in the district court's analysis [\*1377] of the validity of the '511 patent. Despite Crown's contentions, we ascertain no error requiring reversal of the district court's determination of validity over Crown's claims of anticipation and obviousness.

Regarding alleged anticipation by the [\*\*19] Gillery patent, on its face the Gillery patent does not disclose or discuss a two percent limitation for the reflectance contribution of the solar control film. Crown maintains that the '511 patent merely claims a preexisting property inherent in the structure disclosed in the prior art. Crown urges us to accept the proposition that if a prior art reference discloses the same structure as claimed by a patent, the resulting property, in this case, two percent solar control film reflectance, should be assumed. We decline to adopt this approach because this proposition is not in accordance with our cases on inherency. If the two percent reflectance limitation is inherently disclosed by the Gillery patent,<sup>2</sup> it must be necessarily present and a person of ordinary skill in the art would recognize its presence. *In re Robertson*, 169 F.3d 743, 745, 49 USPQ2d 1949, 1950-51 (Fed. Cir. 1999); *Continental Can*, 948 F.2d at 1268, 20 USPQ2d at 1749. Inherency "may not be established by probabilities or possibilities. The mere fact that a certain thing may result from a given set of circumstances is not sufficient." 948 F.2d at 1269, 20 USPQ2d at 1749 [\*\*20] (quoting *In re Oelrich*, 666 F.2d 578, 581, 212 USPQ 323, 326 (CCPA 1981)).

<sup>2</sup> In order to claim "equivalent structure"

between the Gillery patent and the '511 patent, Crown's inherency argument rests on a precondition of its own making - that the Gillery patent discloses use of TiO<sub>2</sub>, even though it specifies TiO<sub>x</sub>, where x is greater than 1.0 but less than 2.0. Although Crown vigorously argues this point, we do not reach this issue because even if Crown is correct that the structures are equivalent, Crown's inherency argument fails for the reasons set forth herein.

In arguing inherent disclosure of the two percent limitation in the Gillery patent, Crown bears an evidentiary burden to establish that the limitation was necessarily present.<sup>3</sup> The moving party in a summary judgment motion has the burden to show "that there is an absence of evidence to support the non-moving party's case;" the non-moving party must affirmatively demonstrate by specific factual allegations that a genuine issue [\*\*21] of material fact exists for trial. *Celotex Corp. v. Catrett*, 477 U.S. 317, 322-23, 91 L. Ed. 2d 265, 106 S. Ct. 2548 (1986). A patent enjoys a presumption of validity, see 35 U.S.C. § 282, which can be overcome only through clear and convincing evidence, see *United States Surgical Corp. v. Ethicon, Inc.*, 103 F.3d 1554, 1563, 41 USPQ2d 1225, 1232 (Fed. Cir. 1997). Given the presumption of validity afforded the '511 patent, Crown has failed to meet its burden because it has not presented sufficient evidence to rebut the facial evidence offered by Solutia that the Gillery patent does not [\*1378] disclose the two percent limitation. See *Eli Lilly & Co. v. Barr Lab. Inc.*, 251 F.3d 955, 962, 58 USPQ2d 1869, 1874 (Fed. Cir. 2001) ("[A] moving party seeking to have a patent held not invalid at summary judgment must show that the nonmoving party, who bears the burden of proof at trial, failed to produce clear and convincing evidence on an essential element of a defense upon which a reasonable jury could invalidate the patent."); *In re Robertson*, 169 F.3d at 745 (recognizing that extrinsic evidence may be [\*\*22] required to establish inherency). Instead, Crown offers only an assumption and its own contentions.<sup>4</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Crown's reliance on *Pall Corp. v. Micron Separations, Inc.*, 66 F.3d 1211, 36 USPQ2d 1225 (Fed. Cir. 1995), and *O.I. Corp. v. Tekmar Co.*, 115 F.3d 1576, 42 USPQ2d 1777 (Fed. Cir. 1997), to characterize the two percent limitation as a "performance limitation" similar to the claim terms at issue in those cases is unpersuasive and

overbroad. Respectively, Pall and Tekmar dealt with the claim terms "skinless" and "passage." Beyond the readily apparent difference between these potentially broad terms and the precise specification of a two percent limit in the '511 patent, characterizing a claim limitation as a "performance characteristic" is not helpful as to whether the "necessarily present" requirement of inherency is met.

4 As indicated by this Court's questions at oral argument concerning the seemingly direct route to prove that the Gillery patent contains the two percent limitation - implementing an embodiment of the Gillery patent and testing it - this Court finds puzzling Crown's reluctance regarding this approach to generate extrinsic proof that the Gillery patent inherently meets the two percent limitation.

[\*\*23] Crown also argues that the district court erred by comparing reflectance values in the Gillery patent to non-corresponding values in the '511 patent. August 22 Order at 23-24. While perhaps the district court could have been more careful to explain the basis of its comparison, on a close reading of the district court's analysis we find that the alleged improper comparison only supported the district court's primary point - that no embodiment of the Gillery patent disclosed the two percent limitation, a conclusion that Crown has not shown to be in error.

Finally, Crown argues that various prior art references invalidate the '511 patent as obvious in view of such prior art. Crown's arguments lack merit because it has not shown that the prior art contains a teaching, suggestion or motivation to reduce the reflectance contribution of the solar control film to "no more than about two percent," and the district court properly concluded that there was no such teaching, suggestion or motivation in the prior art cited by Crown. See *Ruiz*, 234 F.3d at 665, 57 USPQ2d at 1167; *In re Rouffet*, 149 F.3d 1350, 1359, 47 USPQ2d 1453, 1459 (Fed. Cir. 1998).

#### B. [\*\*24] The '258 Patent

On appeal, Crown argues that the district court erred in analyzing the impact of the ambiguities in the wave index calculation on the enablement requirement for the '258 patent. In addition to its enablement attack, Crown also argues that the '258 patent does not meet the written description requirement of § 112, first paragraph.

The two requirements, while related and springing from the same factual predicates,<sup>5</sup> each carry a separate purpose. The purpose of the enablement requirement is to "ensure[] that the public [\*1379] knowledge is enriched by the patent specification to a degree at least commensurate with the scope of the claims." *Nat'l Recovery Techs., Inc. v. Magnetic Separation Sys.*, 166 F.3d 1190, 1196, 49 USPQ2d 1671, 1675 (Fed. Cir. 1999). One of our predecessor courts has held the enablement and written description requirements to be separate and distinct, and has held that a "specification may contain a disclosure that is sufficient to enable one skilled in the art to make and use the invention and yet fail to comply with the description of the invention requirement." *In re Barker and Pehl*, 559 F.2d 588, 591, 194 USPQ 470, 472 (CCPA 1977). [\*\*25] Subsequently, this court has held that the purpose of the written description is distinct from merely explaining how to make and use the invention. See *Enzo Biochem*, 285 F.3d 1013 \*7-8; *Vas-Cath*, 935 F.2d at 1563-64, 19 USPQ2d at 1117. In light of the odd procedural setting of the written description issue in this appeal, our disposition of this appeal based on enablement, and given that the two requirements are distinct and each are necessary, we do not reach the written description issue except to note that it appears to remain available for adjudication or disposition by the district court on remand.<sup>6</sup>

5 Also springing from these same underlying factual predicates is the § 112, second paragraph, definiteness requirement. This requirement is distinct from the enablement and description requirements, which arise from § 112, first paragraph.

Definiteness and enablement are analytically distinct requirements, even though both concepts are contained in 35 U.S.C. § 112. The definiteness requirement of 35 U.S.C. § 112, P 2 is a legal requirement, based on the court's role as construer of patent claims . . . . Definiteness requires the language of the claim to set forth clearly the domain over which the applicant seeks exclusive rights. . . . The test for whether a claim meets the definiteness requirement is "whether one skilled in the art



would understand the bounds of the claim when read in light of the specification."

*Process Control Corp.*, 190 F.3d 1350 at 1358 n.2, 52 USPQ2d 1029 at 1034 n.2 (internal citations omitted). See also 3 Donald S. Chisum, *Chisum on Patents*, § 8.03 at 8-14 (2001) (noting the difference between the requirements of "definiteness, which claims must meet, from the requirements of enablement, which the disclosures of the specification must meet").

[\*\*26]

6 Based on the record before us, the written description issue has the following procedural posture: (i) Crown's Count VI of its amended complaint raised the written description issue; (ii) Solutia's summary judgment motion argued that the '258 patent met the written description requirement; (iii) in opposition Crown argued that the written description requirement was not met; (iv) the district court did not dispose of the written description issue or discuss the issue in its opinion in a way that enables our review; and (v) Crown preserved the written description issue in its appeal to this court and thus has not waived its further adjudication on remand.

Turning to the enablement issue, we agree with Crown that the ambiguities and lack of specified boundary conditions, and Crown's proffered evidence concerning the same, raise a genuine issue of material fact as to whether a person of ordinary skill in the pertinent art could make or use the invention of the '258 patent<sup>7</sup> without undue experimentation. *White Consol. Indus. v. Vega Servo-Control*, 713 F.2d 788, 791, 218 USPQ 961, 963-64 (Fed. Cir. 1983). [\*\*27] The district court found otherwise. However, it appears not to have considered the statements of Crown's expert concerning the effect of unspecified boundary conditions on the calculation of wave index.

7 All seventeen claims of the '258 patent refer to wave index, thus they all stand or fall together.

Following the reasoning of the district court, Solutia argues that a person of ordinary skill in the pertinent art could overcome any ambiguities in the wave index calculation without undue experimentation by testing a limited number of possibilities for computing the wave

index. In response, Crown offers statements of its expert that the '258 patent does not define amplitude and that a person of ordinary skill in the art would not know whether to measure amplitude: (i) from a centerline running horizontally through the "middle" of the trace; (ii) from "peak-to-peak," i.e., from the bottom of a valley to the top of a peak; or (iii) from some other baseline or reference running horizontally somewhere through [\*\*28] the trace. On its face, the '258 patent does not define amplitude. However, average amplitude directly impacts the wave index calculation because wave index [\*1380] is the result of multiplying average amplitude by average pitch. Simply put, the wave index calculation would produce two separate numbers if calculated with a centerline versus a "peak-to-peak" amplitude. Worse yet, a range of various wave index values are possible for amplitude baselines running horizontally somewhere through the trace at various locations. To show that the wave index calculation is enabled, Solutia cites various details from the '258 patent concerning how to perform the test to generate a trace of the PVB surface to calculate wave index. However, Solutia does not present sufficient evidence to rebut Crown's demonstration of the amplitude ambiguity in the wave index calculation. This is so because: (i) the amplitude is a direct input to the critical claim limitation, a wave index of less than 15,000 square micrometers; and (ii) the novel aspects of the invention must be disclosed and not left to inference, that is, a patentee may not rely on the inference of a person of ordinary skill in the pertinent art to [\*\*29] supply such novel aspects. See *Genentech Inc. v. Novo Nordisk A/S*, 108 F.3d 1361, 1366, 42 USPQ2d 1001, 1005 (Fed. Cir. 1997) (stating that the knowledge of a hypothetical person of ordinary skill in the art cannot be used to supply the patentable aspects of the invention).

Compounding the amplitude ambiguity, Crown also notes that the wave index is the result of two independently varying, unbounded terms: average pitch and average amplitude. On its face, this does not seem to be a problem. However, Crown's expert noted that because boundary conditions are not specified, the claim covers inoperative embodiments. For example, a wave index of 15,000 square micrometers results from an average height of 1000 micrometers multiplied by an average pitch of 15 micrometers. Yet, according to Crown's expert, an average height of 1000 micrometers would not be acceptable for the PVB. As with the amplitude ambiguity, the problem goes well beyond this single example because a full range of resulting

inoperative embodiments are possible for values of average height and average pitch that, when multiplied, produce a wave index value that meets the limitation of the claim. Such inoperative [\*\*30] embodiments do not necessarily invalidate the claim. See *Atlas Powder Co. v. E.I. du Pont de Nemours & Co.*, 750 F.2d 1569, 1576-77, 224 USPQ 409, 414 (Fed. Cir. 1984); *In re Cook*, 58 C.C.P.A. 1049, 439 F.2d 730, 735, 169 USPQ 298, 302 (CCPA 1971) (noting that although claims may read on some inoperative embodiments, this does not necessarily invalidate the claim if the necessary information to limit the claims to operative embodiments is known to a person of ordinary skill in the art).<sup>8</sup> However, the inoperative embodiments support Crown's assertion that there is a genuine issue of material fact with respect to enablement. See *Atlas Powder*, 750 F.2d at 1576-77; see also *Process Control Corp. v. HydReclaim Corp.*, 190 F.3d 1350, 1358-59, 52 USPQ2d 1029, 1034-35 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (holding that the district court failed in its [\*1381] claim construction to consider the effect of inoperative embodiments on invalidity due to lack of enablement).<sup>9</sup>

8 The court in *In re Cook* further notes that a claim may be invalid if it reads on significant numbers of inoperative embodiments. *In re Cook*, 439 F.2d at 734, 169 USPQ at 301-02 (citing *Graver Tank & Mfg. Co. v. Linde Air Products Co.*, 336 U.S. 271, 276-77, 80 USPQ 451, 453, 93 L. Ed. 672, 69 S. Ct. 535 (1949)). See also *In re Moore*, 58 C.C.P.A. 1042, 439 F.2d 1232, 1236 169 USPQ 236, 239 (CCPA 1971) (noting that the question is whether the scope of enablement conveyed by the disclosure to a person of ordinary skill in the art is commensurate with the scope of protection taught by the claims); *Chisum*, § 7.03[7][a] at 7-108 & n.6.

[\*\*31]

9 The inoperative embodiment inquiry informs the enablement inquiry; they are not the same inquiry. *Nat'l Recovery Techs.*, 166 F.3d at 1196, 49 USPQ2d at 1676.

Further compounding the ambiguities with the wave index rules, the '258 patent's rules for determining which inflection points are "true" inflection points additionally support Crown's argument that it has raised a genuine issue of material fact. Crown demonstrated in various ways through its experts and arguments the potential indeterminacy in the rules. Solutia's expert admitted that

there was some ambiguity in the rules with respect to whether a preceding peak or valley was the reference point in selecting a "true" peak or valley.

Solutia argues that even if the disclosed wave index calculation has ambiguities and is indeterminate, a person of ordinary skill in the pertinent art would be able to make and use the invention with some experimentation, but less than "undue" experimentation. Solutia argues that such a skilled person would only have to try two possibilities for amplitude, centerline and "peak-to-peak," [\*\*32] and that experimenting to discover which of two possibilities to use is well within the boundary of undue experimentation. Crown counters that the amplitude ambiguity and potential inoperative embodiments, combined with the ambiguities in the smoothing rules, seems to suggest a wide range of possibilities which one must try.<sup>10</sup> With this wide range of possibilities, we agree that Crown has raised a genuine issue of material fact as to the amount and type of experimentation required, facts that will determine whether such experimentation is undue. See *Enzo Biochem Inc., v. Calgene Inc.*, 188 F.3d 1362, 1371, 52 USPQ2d 1129, 1135-36 (Fed. Cir. 1999) (holding that a reasonable amount of experimentation does not invalidate a patent, but undue experimentation does invalidate, and holding that the Wands factors, which determine whether a patent's disclosure is insufficient such that the experimentation required would be undue, apply to inter partes litigation).<sup>11</sup> While ultimately a trier of fact may reach the conclusion that any required experimentation is not undue, Crown has shown that sufficient potential for undue experimentation exists such that disposal on summary [\*\*33] judgment is improper.

10 We note that the specification for the '258 patent states that in the disclosed embodiment the wave index is calculated using a software program running on a personal computer being fed the trace line. '258 patent, col. 7, ll. 64-68. Undoubtedly, Solutia took care to ensure that the program contained the necessary boundary conditions and other information to calculate wave index to practice the invention. It appears, however, that Solutia took substantially less care in transcribing the information from the program into the specification's rules for calculating wave index. This incongruity will be relevant to the question of enablement upon remand. See *Chisum*, § 7.03[4][e] at 7-86 & n.77 ("A

specification that claims an invention requiring implementation through computer software but fails to set forth the details of computer programming may present issues of whether the experimentation required to write the programming is reasonable or unreasonable.") (summarizing the teachings of various cases).

11 The Wands factors are:

(1) the quantity of experimentation necessary, (2) the amount of direction or guidance presented, (3) the presence or absence of working examples, (4) the nature of the invention, (5) the state of the prior art, (6) the relative skill of those in the art, (7) the predictability or unpredictability of the art, and (8) the breadth of the claims.

*In re Wands*, 858 F.2d 731, 737, 8 USPQ2d 1400, 1404 (Fed. Cir. 1988).

[\*\*34] [\*1382] CONCLUSION

Because we hold that the '511 patent has not been shown to be invalid due to anticipation or obviousness and that a genuine issue of material fact exists with respect to facts underlying the determination of enablement for the '258 patent, we affirm-in-part and reverse-in-part the district court's decision and remand for additional proceedings consistent with this opinion.

AFFIRMED-IN-PART, REVERSED-IN-PART, AND REMANDED.

COSTS

Each party bears its own costs.

# EXHIBIT G

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: **2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)**)

☐  
Only the Westlaw citation is currently available.

United States District Court, W.D. Wisconsin.  
CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD.  
and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs,  
v.  
SOLUTIA INC., Defendant.

No. 99-C-0802-S.  
Aug. 22, 2000.

MEMORANDUM AND ORDER  
SHABAZ, J.

\*1 Plaintiffs Crown Operations International, Ltd. (Crown) and Marshall H. Krone (Krone) commenced this action against defendant Solutia Inc. (Solutia) alleging breach of contract, invalidity of a contractual covenant not to compete and violation of the Wisconsin Fair Dealership Law (WFDL). Plaintiffs also seek declaratory relief that defendant's United States Patents Nos. 4,973,511 (the '511 patent) and 5,091,258 (the '258 patent) are invalid. The Court has jurisdiction pursuant to 28 U.S.C. §§ 1338(a) and 1367, as well as 28 U.S.C. § 1332. The matter is presently before the Court on cross motions for summary judgment.

BACKGROUND

This case arises from the contractual relationships between several companies manufacturing prelaminate to be incorporated in auto and window glass. Prelaminates are multilayer films that are later incorporated between layers of glass to produce laminated glass with certain enhanced properties. When plasticized polyvinyl butyral ("PVB") film alone is added it imparts glass with additional impact resistance. Solar control prelaminate which reflect or filter out certain wavelengths of sunlight are made by placing metal-coated polyethylene terephthalate (PET) film between layers of PVB. The metal coating on the solar control film also acts as a conductor for defrosting a windshield. The process by which PET is placed between layers of PVB is known as encapsulation.

Plaintiff Crown encapsulates solar control pre-

laminates. Plaintiff Krone is Crown's sole shareholder. Defendant Solutia manufactures PVB and is successor in interest to Monsanto Chemical Company and to the contracts relevant in this action. In 1987 and 1988 Monsanto met with plaintiff Krone to discuss a relationship to develop laminating machinery designs and methods for encapsulating solar control prelaminate for Monsanto customers. Plaintiff Krone incorporated plaintiff Crown to conduct this encapsulation business.

In October 1988 Crown and Monsanto entered into an agreement (the Crown Agreement) whereby Crown would perform encapsulation services for Monsanto. Monsanto would provide PET it purchased from Southwall Technologies, Inc. ("Southwall") and its own Saflex brand of PVB. At Monsanto's request Crown erected a facility to encapsulate Solarflex. Monsanto had access to the Crown facility and had a major role in its design. Monsanto at all times owned the PVB, PET and finished product handled by plaintiff. Crown would fabricate the prelaminate (which was ascribed the Monsanto trade name "Solarflex") and receive a fee in return. Paragraph 13 of the Crown Agreement included a secrecy provision that forbade plaintiff Crown to use or disclose certain information Monsanto disclosed during the course of the relationship ("Monsanto Information") or to manufacture a solar "Saflex type product" except pursuant to their agreement.

In 1990 the '511 Patent was issued and assigned to Monsanto. The '511 patent is directed toward resolving the problem that functionally coated PET tends to wrinkle during the encapsulation process. "These wrinkles, which are particularly noticeable at oblique viewing angles, render the resulting windshield unacceptable...." The object of the invention is to produce a window assemble which "exhibits good solar rejection characteristics and acceptable low visible distorted reflection images from wrinkles in the solar control film." See column 1 line 58 through column 2 line 30. The invention is summarized as follows at column 8, line 58 through column 9, line 6 of the specification:

\*2 Thus, according to this invention the relationship between the substrate wrinkling and visible light

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: **2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)**)

reflection contribution from the solar film is recognized. More specifically, the adverse optical effects of these wrinkles are masked by controlling to two percent or less the visible light reflection contribution of the solar film to the overall laminate. In this manner, the wrinkles are not eliminated but rendered less visible to the human eye since the reflection contribution of substrate layer 16 is controlled below a predetermined visibility threshold.

Claim 1, the only independent claim of the '511 patent, is as follows:

1. A composite solar/safety film for use in a laminated window assembly comprising:

a flexible, transparent plastic substrate layer having a carrier surface and an opposing back surface;

a multilayer solar control coating on said carrier surface, said controlled substrate defining a solar control film; and

at least one flexible, transparent, energy absorbing plastic safety layer bonded to the surface of said solar control film;

wherein said solar control film contributes no more than 2% visible reflectance, based on total visible incident radiation, in a laminated window assembly containing said composite solar/safety film laminated to at least one rigid transparent member.

In 1992 the '258 patent was issued and assigned to Monsanto. The '258 patent is also directed to eliminating optical distortion, known as “applesauce”, in laminated glass. The patent describes a method to control distortion by measuring and controlling the texture of the surface of the PVB components of the laminate defined in terms of a “wave index” (WI) and a “roughness value” (Rz). Specification at column 2, lines 36-56. Claim 1 of the '258 patent is as follows:

1. a laminate which is substantially free of reflected distortion when used in a safety glazing comprising:

a transparent, thermoplastic substrate layer, optionally surface treated or coated, bearing one or more functional performance layers; and

at least one layer of [PVB] bonded on one side to a functional performance layer or the substrate layer and having a roughened deairing surface on the other side characterized by a roughness value, Rz, of at least 10 micrometers;

said at least one [PVB] layer, before bonding to the substrate layer of functional performance layer, possessing low surface waviness on each side characterized by a wave index value, WI, of less than 15,000 square micrometers.

In the early 1990's Monsanto decided to curtail its Solarflex operation. Consequently, the Crown Agreement underwent two amendments. In 1994 Monsanto agreed to partially waive the restrictions in Paragraph 13 of the Crown Agreement so that plaintiff could use the Monsanto Information and encapsulate prelaminate for Southwall if Monsanto PVB was used (“the 1994 Amendment”). In 1995 Monsanto agreed to further waive its Paragraph 13 restrictions so that plaintiff could encapsulate prelaminate for third parties other than Southwall so long as Monsanto PVB was used (“the 1995 Amendment”). The 1995 Amendment provided that the partial waiver of the restrictions was subject to revocation upon twelve months prior written notice.

\*3 Additionally, Monsanto and Southwall entered into a new agreement in 1994 (“the Southwall Agreement”) under which Monsanto agreed not to assert its '511 and '258 Patents and therefore to allow Southwall and certain third parties to produce, use and sell solar control prelaminate.

In July, 1999 defendant Solutia, as a successor to Monsanto's contracts, revoked its partial waiver of the Paragraph 13 restrictions pursuant to the Crown Amendments effective July 7, 2000. Plaintiffs filed this action in response.

#### MEMORANDUM

Both parties move for summary judgment under Federal Rule of Civil Procedure 56(c). A movant will prevail on its motion if “the pleadings, depositions, answers to interrogatories, and admissions on file show that there is no genuine issue as to any material fact and that the moving party is entitled to judgment as a matter of law.” Fed.R.Civ.P. 56(c). In other words, Rule 56(c) requires the entry of summary judgment against a party that fails to establish the

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: **2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)**)

existence of an element essential to the party's case when that party bears the burden of proof at trial. Celotex v. Catrett, 477 U.S. 317, 322 (1986).

The crux of the summary judgment inquiry lies in the phrase “no genuine issue as to any material fact.” Facts are “material” if they are outcome influencing under the substantive law governing the action. Anderson v. Liberty Lobby, Inc., 477 U.S. 242, 248 (1986). A dispute over a material fact is “genuine” if from the evidence a reasonable jury could find for the non-moving party. Id., at 248. In making this determination ambiguities and reasonable inferences are resolved against the moving party. See id., at 255. Where there are no genuine issues of material fact the district court need only determine whether the moving party is entitled to judgment as a matter of law.

#### *Breach of Contract*

Plaintiffs' amended complaint alleges that defendant is liable for breaching the Southwall Agreement. Under the Southwall Agreement, plaintiffs maintain that Crown has an unrestricted right to fabricate solar control prelamines for Southwall. Plaintiffs maintain that defendant's withdrawal of its waiver under the amended Crown Agreement made it impossible for Crown to encapsulate prelamines for Southwall—a violation of the Southwall Agreement.

It is undisputed that Crown is not a party to the Southwall Agreement. Nevertheless, plaintiffs allege that Crown is a third-party beneficiary with rights under it. The relevant language in the Agreement reads:

22. Monsanto agrees, on a worldwide basis, not to assert any patents, which it owns or controls, and that cover the composition, use or application of coated PET films or sheet (PVB, EVA, or other comparable product) adhered to or in combination with coated PET films ... which would impair the right of Southwall, or a customer or licensee of Southwall or their customers, to make, have made, use and/or sell laminates containing (a) sheet ... and (b) the Southwall product currently known as XIR coated PET film ...; provided, however, in the event such sheet is not purchased from Monsanto, Southwall will pay Monsanto a royalty in the amount of one cent (\$.01) per square foot of laminate sold.

\*4 Southwall Agreement ¶ 22. It is undisputed that plaintiff Crown is not a customer or licensee of Southwall. Plaintiff maintains that by exercising its right to revoke the waiver under the 1994 and 1995 Crown Amendments, thus effectively barring Crown from using Monsanto Information or encapsulating a solar “Saflex type product” for anyone but Monsanto, defendant impaired Southwall's right under the Southwall Agreement to “have [prelaminates] made” and Crown's asserted reciprocal third-party right to make those prelamines for Southwall.

The parties agree that New York law governs the Southwall Agreement. New York recognizes third-party beneficiaries to contracts, but only “intended beneficiaries” may recover as third-party beneficiaries. Fourth Ocean Putnam Corp. v. Interstate Wrecking Co., Inc., 485 N.E.2d 208, 211-12 (N.Y.1985) (citing with approval Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 302 (1977)). A third-party qualifies as an intended beneficiary where “the language of the contract clearly evidences an intent to permit enforcement by the third party...” Fourth Ocean, 485 N.E.2d at 212; see also Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 302(1)(b) (“intended beneficiary” where “the promisee intends to give the beneficiary the benefit of the promised performance”). Other courts examining New York law have added that the proposed third-party beneficiary need not be specifically mentioned by name in the contract. See e.g., Newman v. Schwartz v. Asplundh Tree Expert Co., 102 F.3d 660, 663 (2nd Cir.1996) (citations omitted). Nevertheless, these courts still recognize that New York law “requires that the parties' intent to benefit a third-party must be shown on the face of the agreement.” Id.

No language in Paragraph 22 of the Southwall Agreement shows an intent to confer a benefit upon Crown. The only language plaintiffs cite is that language recognizing the right of Southwall, its customers and licensees and its licensees' customers to “have [prelaminates] made”. See Southwall Agreement ¶ 22. Plaintiffs believe this includes a reciprocal contractual right vested with plaintiff Crown to make those prelamines for Southwall. However, no such right appears on the face of the Agreement which identifies only Southwall customers, licensees and licensee's customers as third party beneficiaries. Paragraph 22 is silent as to any impairment of rights of those fabricating prelamines for Southwall.

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.))

Plaintiffs rely not on the face of the contract but on the alleged circumstances surrounding the Monsanto-Southwall Agreement. Plaintiffs argue that the Southwall Agreement and the 1994 Crown Amendment were “intertwined”, and that the contracting parties knew, recognized and intended that plaintiff fabricate the prelaminate called for in the Southwall Agreement. To the contrary, the circumstances surrounding the 1994 Crown Amendment and the Southwall Agreement are compelling evidence that Crown was not an intended third party beneficiary of the Southwall Agreement. The 1994 Crown Agreement included carefully crafted restrictions on Crown's right to use Monsanto technology. It defies common sense that Monsanto and Southwall intentionally rendered those restrictions meaningless by providing Crown the unrestricted right to use the same technology as a third party beneficiary of the Southwall Agreement.

\*5 Plaintiffs argue that Crown must have been an intended beneficiary because it was the only company capable of offering Southwall the necessary encapsulation service. Acknowledging that plaintiff must be used or will be used for its encapsulation service is not the same as intending to benefit Crown with the promised performance under the contract. Plaintiff Crown is merely an incidental beneficiary. *See Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 302(2)*. The Restatement emphasizes this:

*e. Incidental beneficiaries.* Performance of a contract will often benefit a third person. But unless the third person is an intended beneficiary, as here defined, no duty to him is created.

17. B contracts with A to buy a new car manufactured by C. C is an incidental beneficiary, even the promise can only be performed if money is paid to C.

*Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 302* cmt. e, illus. 17. In both the illustration and the present case, the contracting parties understood that a third-party would be involved and would derive some benefit from their agreement. But in both agreements there was no indication that they intended to give the benefit of their performance to that third-party. Here, the benefit to the third-party upon performance is clear. However, more than the contracting parties' mere acknowledgment of a third-party benefit is required to

be an intended beneficiary.

New York law requires that to enforce a contract as a third-party beneficiary that third-party must be an intended beneficiary of the performance under the contract. Nothing appears on the face of the Southwall Agreement that would indicate that plaintiff Crown was such an intended beneficiary. While that alone is sufficient under New York law, the circumstances surrounding the Agreement do not support a conclusion of intent either. Plaintiffs can not show that Southwall or defendant intended the contract to benefit Crown or to permit it to enforce contractual rights.

#### WFDL

Plaintiffs seek to invoke the aegis of the Wisconsin Fair Dealership Law, alleging that defendant's revocation of its waiver of the Crown Agreement's Paragraph 13 constituted a termination that violated the WFDL's good cause and notice provisions. *See Wis. Stat. §§ 135.03 & 135.04*. To be eligible for the protections of the WFDL a plaintiff must first establish that it is a “dealer” within the meaning of the WFDL. It is with this first step that plaintiffs' WFDL claim falters.

The WFDL defines a “dealer” as a “grantee of a dealership situated in this state.” *Wis. Stat. § 135.02(2)*. The Wisconsin Supreme Court recently examined what it means to be “situated in this state.” *Baldewein Co. v. Tri-Clover, Inc.*, 606 N.W.2d 145 (Wis.2000). In *Baldewein*, the Supreme Court established guidelines for determining whether a dealership was “situated in this state”, including a non-exclusive nine factor test. *606 N.W.2d at 151-53*.

Although recognizing that in-state sales are an important factor, the Supreme Court rejected a singular focus on the putative dealer's in-state sales. The Supreme Court adopted instead a dual focus:

\*6 [The inquiry] must involve an analysis of the totality of the dealership investment that is specialized to the marketing of the grantor's products in this state; in other words, the amount of money and other resources the dealer has sunk into the development of the Wisconsin market, in addition to the amount of sales the dealer derives from this state.

*Baldewein*, 606 N.W.2d at 151-52.



Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.))

Under this general formulation it is apparent that Crown has no dealership “situated in this state”. It is undisputed that plaintiff Crown has no customers in Wisconsin. Consequently, it derives no revenue from the Wisconsin market. Moreover, there is no evidence that Crown has expended a single dollar to develop or cultivate a market in Wisconsin. Having no market in Wisconsin and not having attempted to develop one, plaintiff Crown cannot be deemed to be “situated” in Wisconsin under the broad principles announced in *Baldewein*.

Nevertheless, the Supreme Court in *Baldewein* continued to elucidate a more specific nine factor test in analyzing whether a dealership is “situated” in Wisconsin. The court announced that:

[T]o determine whether a dealership is “situated in this state” under the WFDL, courts should examine the following factors: 1) percent of total sales in Wisconsin (and/or percent of total revenue derived from Wisconsin); 2) how long the parties have dealt with each other in Wisconsin; 3) the extent and nature of the obligations imposed on the dealer regarding operations in Wisconsin; 4) the extent and nature of the grant of territory in this state; 5) the extent and nature of the use of the grantor's proprietary marks in this state; 6) the extent and nature of the dealer's financial investment in inventory, facilities, and good will of the dealership in this state; 7) the personnel devoted to the Wisconsin market; 8) the level of advertising and/or promotional expenditures in Wisconsin; 9) the extent and nature of any supplementary services provided in Wisconsin. We do not intend this list to be all-inclusive. The inquiry should focus on the nature and extent of the dealership's development of, investment in and reliance upon the Wisconsin market.

*Baldewein*, 606 N.W.2d at 152-53.

Plaintiffs attempt to apply these nine factors in a vacuum-ignoring the Supreme Court's admonition that the factors must be analyzed with an eye towards the dealer's relationship with the Wisconsin market. Taken in the proper context the factors show that plaintiff Crown has no dealership “situated in the state”.

First, plaintiff Crown makes no sales within the

state. Plaintiff's customers are all out-of-state or overseas. Plaintiff's formalistic argument that sales to out-of-state customers delivered FOB Crown's Sun Prairie, Wisconsin plant should be counted as in-state sales must be rejected. This same argument was rejected when the Wisconsin Supreme Court stated that where title and risk passes is irrelevant under the WFDL. *Baldewein*, 606 N.W.2d at 153. Sales revenues are not derived from the Wisconsin market merely because the out-of-state customers took possession of goods within the state.

\*7 No other factor favors plaintiffs. Although Crown and defendant had a commercial relationship spanning twelve years, that relationship is unrelated to the Wisconsin market; defendant imposes no obligations on Crown's operations affecting the Wisconsin market. Defendant has not granted Crown a Wisconsin territory and has not granted it commercial use of marks within Wisconsin. Plaintiff Crown has made no financial investments to reach the Wisconsin market, has no personnel devoted to it and engages in no advertising or promotion within it. No supplementary services are provided by plaintiff Crown within the Wisconsin market.

Plaintiff Crown's only connection with Wisconsin is its location, which is irrelevant in the “situated in the state” analysis. *Baldewein*, 606 N.W.2d at 153. The WFDL focuses on protecting investments in dealerships serving the Wisconsin market, not in businesses merely located in the state. Because plaintiff Crown can not show investment in the Wisconsin market nor revenue derived from it, Crown cannot be deemed to be a dealer with a dealership “situated” in Wisconsin. Accordingly, it can not invoke the protective measures in the WFDL.

#### *Covenant Not to Compete*

Defendant moves for summary judgment on plaintiffs' third claim which seeks a declaratory judgment that Paragraph 13 of the Crown Agreement is invalid and unenforceable.

Plaintiff characterizes Paragraph 13 as a covenant not to compete. It reads:

13. **SECURITY PROVISIONS.** [Crown] shall treat and maintain, and cause its employees and agents to treat and maintain, as Monsanto's confidential property, and not use or disclose to others or man-

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.))

ufacture a solar [sic] Saflex type product during the term of this Agreement and for fifteen (15) years thereafter, except as is necessary to perform the work hereunder ... any information ... regarding Monsanto's products, plans, programs, plants, processes, costs, equipment, operations or customers which may be heretofore or hereafter disclosed to, or come within the knowledge of, [Crown], its employees or agents in the performance of this Agreement, without in each instance securing the prior written consent of Monsanto.

1988 Crown Agreement ¶ 13. The quoted language imposes two restrictions on plaintiff Crown. First, it must treat as confidential specific information held by Monsanto and disclosed to Crown during the performance of the contract. Exceptions to this requirement are set forth later in Paragraph 13. Second, Crown must refrain from manufacturing a solar "Saflex type product" for anyone except Monsanto during the term of the Agreement and for fifteen years thereafter.

The parties agree that Missouri law governs the Crown Agreement. In Missouri, a promise not to compete, standing alone, is illegal and contrary to public policy as a restraint of trade. Renal Treatment Centers-Missouri, Inc. v. Braxton, 945 S.W.2d 557, 563 (Mo.Ct.App.E.D.1997) (citing John D. Calamari & Joseph Perillo, *Contracts*, Specific Performance §§ 16-19 (1977)). However, such an agreement as part of a larger legitimate transaction-making it an ancillary restraint-may be valid if it is reasonable in duration and scope. *Id.* Agreements with such ancillary restraints have been recognized between employer and employees, buyers and sellers of businesses and partners of a partnership. *Id.* (citing Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 188 (1979)). However, this list is not exclusive. The Restatement recognizes this principle is applicable in other contexts where the "a valid transaction or relationship gives the promisee a legitimate interest sufficient to sustain a promise not to compete." *Id.* (quoting Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 188 cmt. e (1979)).

\*8 Although no Missouri state court has reached the issue, the law of covenants not to compete is not designed to reach restrictions such as the first one imposed by Paragraph 13. This is a confidentiality provision. Plaintiff Crown may not use or disclose certain information described by the paragraph as

confidential. Such an agreement cannot be characterized as a covenant not to compete nor as an unreasonable restraint of trade. Other state courts that have addressed this issue have stated that a contract is not a restraint of trade if it does not seek to prevent a party from engaging in similar business in competition with the promisee, but instead seeks to prevent the disclosure or use of confidential information. State Farm Mut. Auto Ins. Co. v. Dempster, 344 P.2d 821, 826 (Cal.App.1959); Hayes-Albion v. Kuberski, 364 N.W.2d 609, 613 (Mich.1984); Glucol Mfg. Co. v. Schulist, 214 N.W. 152 (Mich.1927); ChemiMetals Processing, Inc. v. McEneny, 476 S.E.2d 374, 376 (N.C.Ct.App.1996). The District Court for the Eastern District of Missouri has noted the difference between covenants not to compete and confidentiality agreements: "A person bound to a covenant not to compete is restricted in his choice of occupation while an individual bound to a confidentiality agreement is merely prevented from disclosing certain information constituting 'trade secrets'." Coulter Corp. v. Leinert, 869 F.Supp. 732, 734 (E.D.Mo.1994).

Barring a dramatic departure by the Missouri Supreme Court from the substance of the decisions of other states it is apparent that Missouri law would not subject confidentiality agreements to the same standards as applied to covenants not to compete. Plaintiffs cite no authority for such a departure. Accordingly, the Court finds that plaintiffs' challenge to the validity of Paragraph 13 of the Crown Agreement fails to the extent it requires plaintiff Crown not to use or disclose information designated as confidential.

However, Paragraph 13 also forbids plaintiff Crown from producing a solar "Saflex type product" during the term of the Agreement and for fifteen years thereafter. Despite the absence of Missouri case law applying the law of non-compete covenants to contractual arrangements between corporations, the clause constitutes a promise to refrain from competition which could not otherwise be valid unless it was a restraint ancillary to a legitimate contract. See Renal Treatment Centers, 945 S.W.2d at 563; see also Restatement (Second) of Contracts §§ 187 & 188 (1979).

Covenants against competition, when properly identified as an ancillary restraint, must serve a proper interest of the promisee and must be reasonably limited in time and place to protect those interests. Osage Glass, Inc. v. Donovan, 693 S.W.2d 71, 74 (Mo.

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.))

banc.1985); *see also* Restatement (Second) of Contracts § 188 (1979). The promisees' interests protectable by such covenants are their interests in trade secrets and customer contacts. *See Superior Gearbox Corp. v. Edwards*, 869 S.W.2d 239, 247-48 (Mo.Ct.App.1993).

\*9 Here, Paragraph 13 and its promise not to compete is ancillary to the legitimate obligations in the Crown Agreement. Defendant has produced no evidence as to its interest in protecting confidential information and customer contacts nor as to the reasonableness of the non-compete clause in protecting those interests. It is unknown whether plaintiff could produce a competing solar "Saflex type product" without using or disclosing Monsanto Information and thereby violating the confidentiality portion of Paragraph 13. Likewise it is not even clear what constitutes a solar "Saflex type product". The confidentiality provision in Paragraph 13 is designed to protect defendant's trade secrets and customer contacts. Consequently, an important factual issue exists as to what extent a non-compete provision is reasonably necessary to protect those same trade secrets and customer contacts. This issue—the reasonableness of the non-compete provision—precludes defendant's motion for summary judgment as to the validity of the non-compete provision in Paragraph 13.

#### *The '511 Patent-Anticipation and Obviousness*

Plaintiffs move for summary judgment that the '511 patent is anticipated by U.S. Patent No. 4,017,661 to Gillery (the '661 patent), and is obvious under the '661 patent and other prior art. Defendant moves for summary judgment that the '511 patent is neither anticipated nor obvious.

A claim is anticipated when all the elements and limitations of the claim are found within a single prior art reference. *Scripps Clinic & Research Foundation v. Genentech, Inc.*, 927 F.2d 1565, 1576 (Fed.Cir.1991). There must be no difference between the reference and the patented invention as viewed by one of ordinary skill in the art. *Id.* In order to prevail on its anticipation defense defendant must also overcome the presumption that the patent examiner properly applied the prior art in issuing the patent and prove invalidity by clear and convincing evidence. *American Hoist & Derrick Co. v. Sowa & Sons, Inc.*, 725 F.2d 1350, 1359-60 (Fed.Cir.1984).

There is no question that the '661 patent is prior art, having been identified as such in the specification of the '511 patent at col. 1, lines 44 and 58. Accordingly, the relevant inquiry is whether each element and limitation of the challenged claims is found in the '661 patent. There is considerable dispute between the parties concerning whether the patent examiner considered the '661 patent and the resulting impact on the relevant burden of proof. As subsequent analysis reveals, the '661 patent does not anticipate the '511 patent or render it obvious and this conclusion would be the same regardless of whether it was considered by the examiner. Accordingly, the Court does not reach that issue.

The '661 patent, as well numerous other prior art inventions, disclose the first three elements of claim one. It was well known in the prior art to create a solar control film by coating a transparent plastic carrier surface with a multilayer solar control film and bonding it to a energy absorbing plastic safety layer. This is apparent from column 1 of the '511 specifications wherein it is recognized that these elements were well known in the art. The '511 patent further acknowledges that the general optical design of metallic interference coatings was known. Column 5, lines 30-56. Certainly the '661 patent includes these elements.

\*10 The only real issue is whether the limitation "wherein said solar control film contributes no more than about 2% visible reflectance, based on total visible incident radiation" is found in the '661 patent. Plaintiffs concede that the '661 patent does not explicitly disclose this limitation but contend that the disclosure is inherent in the '661 teachings.

To establish inherency, the extrinsic evidence must make clear that the missing descriptive matter is necessarily present in the thing described in the reference, and that it would be so recognized by persons of ordinary skill. Inherency, however, may not be established by probabilities or possibilities. The mere fact that a certain thing may result from given set of circumstances is not sufficient.

*In re Robertson*, 169 F.3d 743, 745 (Fed.Cir.1999) (citations omitted).

The disclosure of the '661 patent surely does not meet this standard for the 2% visible reflectance lim-

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: **2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)**)

itation. The '661 patent reveals nothing about the desirability of reducing solar control film reflectance to 2% or less. The two examples in the preferred embodiment suggest that the thickness of the silver layer in the coating stack should be 150 and 160 Angstroms—a thickness which is recognized by the '661 patent itself to produce about 14% reflectance. This reflectance is consistent with the disclosure of the '511 patent at column 13, table 2 and its related text. If none of the disclosed preferred embodiments of the '661 invention meet the 2% limitation, it can hardly be inherent in the disclosure.

While it is possible to produce a solar film assembly incorporating the elements of claim 1 of the '661 patent which also satisfies the elements and limitations of claim 1 of the '511 patent, a 2% reflectance is certainly not the necessary result of following the teachings of the '661 patent. The 2% limitation is not inherent in the '661 patent. Plaintiffs have also suggested that UK Patent Application GB 2 057 355, (the "GB '355 patent") which describes a solar control stack similar to that of the '661 patent, anticipates the '511 patent. There is no additional disclosure in the GB '355 patent which would alter the preceding analysis. Claim 1 of the '511 patent is not anticipated by either patent. Because claim 1 is the only independent claim of the '511 patent, it follows that none of the other dependent claims can be anticipated.

Relying primarily on the same prior art, plaintiffs argue that if the '511 patent is not anticipated it is at least rendered obvious under 35 U.S.C. § 103 because "the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time of the invention to a person having ordinary skill in the art." In order to prevail defendant must demonstrate obviousness by clear and convincing evidence. *Loctite Corp. v. Ultraseal, Ltd.*, 781 F.2d 861, 872 (Fed.Cir.1985). The ultimate issue of obviousness has been termed an issue of law. However, its determination is dependent on a series of factual issues as set forth in *Graham v. John Deere Co.*, 383 U.S. 1 (1966). Those inquiries are as follows: (1) determining the scope and content of prior art; (2) comparing the differences between the prior art and the claims at issue; (3) determining the level of ordinary skill in the art; and (4) considering objective evidence of obviousness or nonobviousness. *Miles Laboratories, Inc. v. Shandon, Inc.*, 997 F.2d 870 (Fed.Cir.1993). When a

defendant argues that a combination of prior art references renders the patented invention obvious, the defendant has the burden to establish some motivation in the prior art for one of ordinary skill in the art to make the combination. *In re Rouffet*, 149 F.3d 1350, 1357 (Fed.Cir.1998).

\*11 It was known to those skilled in the art and disclosed in the prior art to make a solar control film by coating PET with a multilayer reflective coating consisting of a metallic layer between two dielectric layers. It was also known and disclosed to design the film so as to maximize the reflection of infrared radiation and the transmission of visible light, and to include a metal layer in the stack with conductivity appropriate for use in electrical resistance defrosting of the window. However, no prior art identified by the plaintiffs discloses that reflectance below 2% will mask wrinkles or even discloses a solar film with reflectance below that threshold.

Perhaps more importantly, prior to the '511 patent there was no teaching in the prior art which provided motivation to reduce the solar film reflectivity contribution below 2% because there was no disclosure of the impact of such a reduction on obscuring wrinkles. Although the prior art generally sought to reduce visible light reflectivity and thereby enhance visible light transmission, it also recognized that superior infrared reflectivity was generally sacrificed by a very thin metal layer, GB '355 patent lines 5-44, as was the conductivity and continuity of the metal layer for defrosting purposes, '661 patent at col. 4, lines 25-38. Furthermore, the existing art made it clear that the required level of visible light transmission for a windshield application (between 70 and 80 percent) could readily be achieved in a composition where the solar film contributed considerably more than 2% visible light reflectivity. Accordingly, the prior art (including the '661 patent) taught that the proper compromise to achieve the conflicting goals of infrared reflectance, visible light transmission and conductivity was a solar film with a visible light reflectivity greater than 2%.

The contribution of the '551 patent of both the desirability of reducing the visible light reflectivity contribution of the solar film below 2% to mask wrinkles and the means to accomplish that goal while maintaining acceptable infrared reflectance and electrical properties was a nonobvious contribution to the

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.))

art.

*The '258 Patent-Anticipation and Obviousness*

Plaintiffs rely primarily upon a patent they identify as JP 59-223256A (the JP '256 patent) in support of their argument that the '258 patent is anticipated or obvious. Defendant initially objects on the basis that there is no foundation for the translation offered by plaintiffs and that they have identified the wrong patent in their submissions. Specifically, exhibit I to the Ranney affidavit referenced by plaintiffs, does not appear to be the document referred to in plaintiffs' brief. The Court does not address these preliminary arguments because assuming the document is correctly translated and identified it does not anticipate or render obvious the '258 patent.

The critical elements of the '258 patent are the final element of each independent claim which requires that the PVB layers of the patented laminate before bonding are "characterized by a wave index value, WI, of less than 15,000 square micrometers." This element is neither disclosed nor suggested by the JP '256 patent. The disclosure of JP '256 recognizes that PVB with a surface roughened for deairing produced wrinkles in the laminate after bonding. It suggests avoiding this problem by laminating smooth extruded PVB and embossing it after lamination with a prescribed roughening pattern. It teaches nothing about the characteristics of roughened PVB which causes wrinkling and suggests that PVB with a roughened surface before bonding will always produce wrinkles in a finished laminate.

\*12 The invention of the '258 patent is that pre-roughened PVB, whether extruded or embossed, can be incorporated in a laminate without wrinkling provided it falls within the wave index parameters prescribed and defined by the '258 specification. That element is clearly not disclosed or inherent in the JP '256 patent.

Plaintiffs also argue that if the JP '256 patent does not anticipate the '258 patent it renders it obvious when combined with the teachings of European Patent Application 0 185 863 (EP '863 Patent) which teaches a method for roughening PVB. To the contrary, the JP '256 patent teaches not to use a pre-roughened PVB sheet because such a procedure will result in reflective distortion. Furthermore, neither patent teaches the means to measure waviness or the threshold of wavi-

ness in PVB sheeting which will produce a distortion free laminate after bonding. Plaintiffs have not produced evidence to demonstrate that it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art to practice the invention of the '258 patent based on prior art at the time. Defendant is entitled to summary judgment on the claim.

*Invalidity for Failure to Name Inventor*

Plaintiff Krone claims that he was improperly excluded as a named inventor on both the '511 and '258 patents and therefore seeks to have them declared invalid or corrected to reflect that he is an inventor pursuant to 35 U.S.C. § 256. Defendant moves for summary judgment asserting that the undisputed facts establish that Krone was not an inventor.

Section 256 provides that the non-joinder of a joint inventor does not invalidate a patent if the omitted inventor was omitted by error without deceptive intention on his part. It further provides that the court may order correction of the inventors named on the patent if appropriate. There is no suggestion by either party that Krone was omitted from the patent through any deceptive intention. Accordingly, there is no basis to invalidate the patent and the sole issue is whether the present facts viewed most favorably to plaintiff Krone could permit a finding that he should be added to the patent as a joint inventor.

The undisputed facts establish that Krone is not an inventor within the meaning of the patent statute. In order to be found a co-inventor plaintiff must demonstrate by clear and convincing evidence that he contributed to the conception of at least one claim in of the patent. *Ethicon, Inc. v. United States Surgical Corp.*, 135 F.3d 1456, 1460-61 (Fed.Cir.1998). Unless there is a dispute of underlying facts, inventorship is a question of law. *Id.* One does not qualify as a joint inventor by assisting the actual inventor after conception of the invention, even if the specification discloses the means to practice the invention in the preferred embodiment. *Id.*

Plaintiff Krone developed a machine for laminating PET and PVB. Neither the '511 nor the '258 patent makes any claim relating to a laminating machine, even though it is clear that such a machine will be necessary to practice the invention of either patent. Under these circumstances it is impossible to conclude that Krone conceived of any aspect of the inventions.

Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)  
(Cite as: **2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.)**)

He admittedly did not make any contribution to the inventive concept of the '511 patent that a solar control film which contributes no more than 2% reflectance will mask wrinkles. He had no input into the design of the solar stack to achieve this result. Similarly, he did not conceive of the concepts of waviness or a waviness index and did not contribute to any experiments which led to the invention that PVB which met the low waviness standard could produce a distortion free laminate. Although he certainly contributed to the joint venture between the parties by the contribution of his mechanical modifications to laminating machinery, that contribution is simply not a part of the claims which are the inventions of the patents in suit.

ORDER

\*13 IT IS ORDERED that plaintiffs' motion for summary judgment is DENIED;

IT IS FURTHER ORDERED that defendant's motion for summary judgment is DENIED concerning the enforceability of the restrictive covenant at paragraph 13 of the Crown Agreement and is in all other respects GRANTED.

W.D.Wis.,2000.  
Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc.  
Not Reported in F.Supp.2d, 2000 WL 33906466  
(W.D.Wis.)

END OF DOCUMENT

## KEYCITE

**Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc., 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis., Aug 22, 2000) (NO. 99-C-0802-S)**

## History

## Direct History

- 1** COMPOSITE SOLAR/SAFETY FILM AND LAMINATED WINDOW ASSEMBLY MADE THEREFROM, US PAT 4973511, 1990 WL 895830 (U.S. PTO Utility Nov 27, 1990)  
*Ruled Valid by*
- => **2** **Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc., 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis. Aug 22, 2000) (NO. 99-C-0802-S)**  
*AND Ruled Valid by*
- 3** Crown Operations Intern. Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc., 2000 WL 33799740 (W.D.Wis. Aug 30, 2000) (NO. 99-C-0802-S)  
*Decision Affirmed in Part, Reversed in Part by*
- 4** Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. v. Solutia Inc., 289 F.3d 1367, 62 U.S.P.Q.2d 1917 (Fed.Cir.(Wis.) May 13, 2002) (NO. 01-1144), rehearing denied (Jun 10, 2002) (BNA Version)
- 5** COMPOSITE SOLAR/SAFETY FILM AND LAMINATED WINDOW ASSEMBLY MADE THEREFROM, US PAT 4973511, 1990 WL 895830 (U.S. PTO Utility Nov 27, 1990)  
*Ruled Valid by*
- 6** Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. v. Solutia Inc., 289 F.3d 1367, 62 U.S.P.Q.2d 1917 (Fed.Cir.(Wis.) May 13, 2002) (NO. 01-1144), rehearing denied (Jun 10, 2002) (BNA Version)
- 7** LAMINATE FOR A SAFETY GLAZING, US PAT 5091258, 1992 WL 1041346 (U.S. PTO Utility Feb 25, 1992)  
*Ruled Valid by*
- => **8** **Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc., 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis. Aug 22, 2000) (NO. 99-C-0802-S)**  
*AND Ruled Valid by*



9 Crown Operations Intern. Ltd. v. Solutia, Inc., 2000 WL 33799740 (W.D.Wis. Aug 30, 2000) (NO. 99-C-0802-S)

*Decision Affirmed in Part, Reversed in Part by*



10 Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. v. Solutia Inc., 289 F.3d 1367, 62 U.S.P.Q.2d 1917 (Fed.Cir.(Wis.) May 13, 2002) (NO. 01-1144), rehearing denied (Jun 10, 2002) ([BNA Version](#))

## Court Documents

### Appellate Court Documents (U.S.A.)

#### C.A.Fed. Appellate Petitions, Motions and Filings

11 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Cross Appellant., 2002 WL 32749297 (Appellate Petition, Motion and Filing) (C.A.Fed. May 28, 2002) **Petition of Plaintiffs-Appellants Crown Operations International, Ltd. and Marshall H. Krone for Panel Rehearing** (NO. 01-1144)

#### C.A.Fed. Appellate Briefs

12 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Cross Appellant., 2001 WL 34373090 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. Mar. 8, 2001) **Brief of Plaintiffs-Appellants Crown Operations International, Ltd. and Marshall H. Krone** (NO. -1156, 01-1144)

13 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Cross Appellant., 2001 WL 36088576 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. Mar. 8, 2001) **Brief of Plaintiffs-Appellants Crown Operations International, Ltd. and Marshall H. Krone** (NO. 01-1144, 01-1156)

14 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiff-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Appellee., 2001 WL 34373088 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. Apr. 20, 2001) **Brief of Appellee Solutia Inc.** (NO. -1156, 01-1144)

15 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL; LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiff-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Appellee., 2001 WL 36088574 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. Apr. 20, 2001) **Brief of Appellee Solutia Inc.** (NO. 01-1144)

16 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Cross Appellant., 2001 WL 34373089 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. May 4, 2001) **Reply Brief of Plaintiffs-Appellants Crown Operations International, Ltd. and Marshall H. Krone** (NO. 01-1144)

17 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Cross Appellant., 2001 WL 36088575 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. May 4, 2001) **Reply Brief of Plaintiffs-Appellants Crown Operations International, Ltd. and Marshall H. Krone** (NO. 01-1144)

### Trial Court Documents (U.S.A.)



### W.D.Wis. Trial Pleadings

- 18 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant/Counterclaim Plaintiff, v. Crown Operations International, Ltd., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Counterclaim Defendants., 2000 WL 35635270 (Trial Pleading) (W.D.Wis. Jun. 27, 2000) **Solutia Inc.'s Answer to Plaintiffs' Amended Complaint, Affirmative Defenses and Counterclaims** (NO. 99C802S)

### W.D.Wis. Expert Testimony

- 19 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, v. SOLUTIA, INC., 2000 WL 34606405 (Expert Report and Affidavit) (W.D.Wis. Apr. 14, 2000) **Expert Report of Max G. Lagally** (NO. 99-CV-802-S)
- 20 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA, INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant/Counterclaim Plaintiff, v. Crown Operations International, Ltd., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Counterclaim Defendants., 2000 WL 34606402 (Expert Deposition) (W.D.Wis. Jun. 27, 2000) **Videotape Deposition of: Max G. Lagally, Ph.D.** (NO. 99C802S)
- 21 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant., 2000 WL 34606404 (Expert Deposition) (W.D.Wis. Aug. 10, 2000) **Deposition of Professor Frederick J. McGarry** (NO. 99-C-802-S)
- 22 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA, INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant/Counterclaim Plaintiff, v. Crown Operations International, Ltd., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Counterclaim Defendants., 2000 WL 34606403 (Expert Deposition) (W.D.Wis. Aug. 14, 2000) **Deposition of Harry F. Manbeck, Jr.** (NO. 99C8025)

### W.D.Wis. Trial Motions, Memoranda And Affidavits

- 23 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA, INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant/Counterclaim Plaintiff, v. Crown Operations International, Ltd., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Counterclaim Defendants., 1999 WL 34871236 (Trial Motion, Memorandum and Affidavit) (W.D.Wis. 1999) **Solutia's Memorandum in Opposition to Plaintiffs' Motion for Reconsideration** (NO. 99C802S)
- 24 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant/Counterclaim Plaintiff, v. Crown Operations International, Ltd., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Counterclaim Defendants., 2000 WL 35635271 (Trial Motion, Memorandum and Affidavit) (W.D.Wis. Jun. 14, 2000) **Brief in Support of Solutia Inc.'s Motion for Summary Judgment on Plaintiffs' Fourth and Fifth Causes of Action (Patent Counts)** (NO. 99C802S)
- 25 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant., 2000 WL 35635272 (Trial Motion, Memorandum and Affidavit) (W.D.Wis. Jun. 15, 2000) **Plaintiffs' Memorandum in Support of Motion for Partial Summary Judgment** (NO. 99-C-802-S)
- 26 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant., 2000 WL 35635274 (Trial Motion, Memorandum and Affidavit) (W.D.Wis. Aug. 7, 2000) **Plaintiffs' Memorandum in Oppo-**

**sition to Solutia's Summary Judgment Motion on Counts VI, VII and VIII of Plaintiff's Amended Complaint (NO. 99-C-802-S)**

- 27 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant., 2000 WL 35635273 (Trial Motion, Memorandum and Affidavit) (W.D.Wis. Aug. 31, 2000) **Plaintiffs' Memorandum in Support of Motion for Reconsideration (NO. 99-C-802-S)**

**W.D.Wis. Expert Resumes**

- 28 Mark E. Hoffman, CPA, curriculum vitae filed in Crown Operations International v. Solutia, Inc, 1999 WL 34999843 (Court-filed Expert Resume) (W.D.Wis. 1999) **Expert Resume of Mark E. Hoffman, CPA (NO. 99-C-802-S)**
- 29 Harry F. Manbeck, Jr., curriculum vitae filed in Grown Secretions international v. Solution, Inc., 2000 WL 35923647 (Court-filed Expert Resume) (W.D.Wis. Jul. 6, 2000) **Expert Resume of Harry F. Manbeck, Jr. (NO. 99-C-802-S)**

**Dockets (U.S.A.)**

**C.A.Fed.**

- 30 CROWN OPERATIONS v. SOLUTIA INC, NO. 01-1144 (Docket) (C.A.Fed. Jan. 2, 2001)

**W.D.Wis.**

- 31 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. v. SOLUTIA, INC., NO. 3:99C0802S (Docket) (W.D.Wis. May 17, 2002)
- 32 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. v. SOLUTIA, INC., NO. 3:99CV00802 (Docket) (W.D.Wis. May 17, 2002)

**Expert Court Documents (U.S.A.)**

**C.A.Fed. Appellate Briefs**

- 33 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Cross Appellant., 2001 WL 34373090 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. Mar. 8, 2001) **Brief of Plaintiffs-Appellants Crown Operations International, Ltd. and Marshall H. Krone (NO. -1156, 01-1144)**
- 34 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiff-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Appellee., 2001 WL 34373088 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. Apr. 20, 2001) **Brief of Appellee Solutia Inc. (NO. -1156, 01-1144)**
- 35 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD. and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs-Appellants, v. SOLUTIA INC., Defendant-Cross Appellant., 2001 WL 34373089 (Appellate Brief) (C.A.Fed. May 4, 2001) **Reply Brief of Plaintiffs-Appellants Crown Operations International, Ltd. and Mar-**

shall H. Krone (NO. 01-1144)

#### W.D.Wis. Expert Testimony

- 36 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, v. SOLUTIA, INC., 2000 WL 34606405 (Expert Report and Affidavit) (W.D.Wis. Apr. 14, 2000) **Expert Report of Max G. Lagally** (NO. 99-CV-802-S)
- 37 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA, INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant/Counterclaim Plaintiff, v. Crown Operations International, Ltd., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Counterclaim Defendants., 2000 WL 34606402 (Expert Deposition) (W.D.Wis. Jun. 27, 2000) **Videotape Deposition of: Max G. Lagally, Ph.D.** (NO. 99C802S)
- 38 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant., 2000 WL 34606404 (Expert Deposition) (W.D.Wis. Aug. 10, 2000) **Deposition of Professor Frederick J. McGarry** (NO. 99-C-802-S)
- 39 CROWN OPERATIONS INTERNATIONAL, LTD., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Plaintiffs, v. SOLUTIA, INC., a Delaware corporation, Defendant/Counterclaim Plaintiff, v. Crown Operations International, Ltd., a Wisconsin corporation, and Marshall H. Krone, Counterclaim Defendants., 2000 WL 34606403 (Expert Deposition) (W.D.Wis. Aug. 14, 2000) **Deposition of Harry F. Manbeck, Jr.** (NO. 99C8025)

#### W.D.Wis. Expert Resumes

- 40 Mark E. Hoffman, CPA, curriculum vitae filed in Crown Operations International v. Solutia, Inc., 1999 WL 34999843 (Court-filed Expert Resume) (W.D.Wis. 1999) **Expert Resume of Mark E. Hoffman, CPA** (NO. 99-C-802-S)
- 41 Harry F. Manbeck, Jr., curriculum vitae filed in Grown Secretions international v. Solution, Inc., 2000 WL 35923647 (Court-filed Expert Resume) (W.D.Wis. Jul. 6, 2000) **Expert Resume of Harry F. Manbeck, Jr.** (NO. 99-C-802-S)

# EXHIBIT H



2 of 13 DOCUMENTS

**BRISTOL-MYERS SQUIBB COMPANY, Plaintiff-Appellant, v. BEN VENUE LABORATORIES, INC., BEDFORD LABORATORIES, and BOEHRINGER INGELHEIM CORPORATION, Defendants-Appellees, and IMMUNEX CORPORATION (ANDA now owned by Baker Norton Pharmaceuticals, Inc.), IVAX CORPORATION, and ZENITH GOLDLINE PHARMACEUTICALS, INC., Defendants-Appellees, and MARSAM PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. and SCHEIN PHARMACEUTICAL, INC., Defendants-Appellees, and MYLAN PHARMACEUTICALS, INC., Defendant-Appellee.**

00-1304

UNITED STATES COURT OF APPEALS FOR THE FEDERAL CIRCUIT

246 F.3d 1368; 2001 U.S. App. LEXIS 7262; 58 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1508

April 20, 2001, Decided

**SUBSEQUENT HISTORY:**     [\*\*1] Rehearing and Rehearing En Banc Denied June 13, 2001, Reported at: 2001 U.S. App. LEXIS 14223.

Rehearing, en banc, denied by *Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. v. Ben Venue Labs., Inc.*, 2001 U.S. App. LEXIS 14223 (Fed. Cir., June 13, 2001)

**PRIOR HISTORY:**     Appealed from: United States District Court for the District of New Jersey. Judge William H. Walls.

*Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. v. Boehringer Ingelheim Corp.*, 86 F. Supp. 2d 433, 2000 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 2153 (D.N.J., 2000)

*Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. v. Boehringer Ingelheim Corp.*, 86 F. Supp. 2d 433, 2000 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 2151 (D.N.J., 2000)

*Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. v. Immunex Corp.*, 86 F. Supp. 2d 447, 2000 U.S. Dist. LEXIS 2150 (D.N.J., 2000)

**DISPOSITION:**             AFFIRMED-IN-PART, VACATED-IN-PART, and REMANDED.

**COUNSEL:** Robert L. Baechtold, Fitzpatrick, Cella,

Harper & Scinto, of New York, New York, argued for plaintiff-appellant. With him on the brief were Nicholas M. Cannella, Bruce C. Haas, Jennifer A. Reda, and F. Christopher Mizzo. Of counsel on the brief were Evan R. Chesler, and Richard J. Stark, Cravath, Swaine & Moore, of New York, New York. Also of counsel on the brief was William J. O'Shaughnessy, McCarter & English, of Newark, New Jersey.

Martin B. Pavane, Cohen, Pontani, Lieberman & Pavane, of New York, New York, argued for defendants-appellees Ben Venue Laboratories, Inc. et al. With him on the brief were William A. Alper, and Mindy H. Chettih. Of counsel on the brief was Robert P. Raymond, Boehringer Ingelheim Corporation, of Ridgefield, Connecticut. Of counsel were Alfred H. Hemingway, Jr., and Yunling Ren.

William L. Mentlik, Lerner, David, Littenberg, Krumholz & Mentlik, LLP, of Westfield, New Jersey, argued for defendants-appellees Immunex Corporation, et al. With him on the brief were Arnold H. Krumholz, Roy H. Wepner, [\*\*2] and Michael H. Teschner. Of counsel on the brief was Jay B. Shapiro, Stearns Weaver Miller

Weissler Alhadeff & Sitterson, P.A., of Miami, Florida. Also of counsel on the brief were Gerson A. Zweifach, and Sharon L. Davis, Williams & Connolly LLP, of Washington, DC.

E. Anthony Figg, Rothwell, Figg, Ernst & Manbeck P.C., of Washington, DC, for defendant-appellee Mylan Pharmaceuticals, Inc. With him on the brief were Steven Lieberman, and Glenn E. Karta. Of counsel on the brief was Charles Guttman, Proskauer Rose LLP, of New York, New York, for defendant-appellee Marsam Pharmaceutical, Inc., et al. Of counsel was Frank Holahan, Harwood & Lloyd, LLC, of Hackensack, New Jersey.

**JUDGES:** Before LOURIE, GAJARSA, and DYK, Circuit Judges.

**OPINION BY:** LOURIE

## OPINION

[\*1371] LOURIE, *Circuit Judge*.

Bristol-Myers Squibb Company appeals from the decision of the United States District Court for the District of New Jersey granting the motion by Ben Venue Laboratories, Inc., Bedford Laboratories, Boehringer Ingelheim Corporation, Immunex Corporation, IVAX Corporation, Zenith Goldline Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Marsam Pharmaceuticals, Inc., Schein Pharmaceutical, Inc., and Mylan Pharmaceuticals, Inc. (collectively, [\*3] "the defendants") for summary judgment that claims 1-3 and 6 of *U.S. Patent 5,641,803* and claims 1, 2, 5, 6, 8 and 9 of *U.S. Patent 5,670,537* are invalid for anticipation. *Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. v. Boehringer Ingelheim Corp.*, 86 F. Supp. 2d 433 (D.N.J. 2000) ("*Bristol II*").

Because the district court did not err in holding claims 1-3 and 6 of the '803 patent and claims 1, 2, 5 and 8 of the '537 patent invalid, we affirm the court's judgment as to those claims. The district court erred in holding claims 6 and 9 of the '537 patent invalid, however. We therefore vacate the court's grant of summary judgment with respect to those two claims.

## BACKGROUND

Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. ("*Bristol*") is the assignee of the '803 and '537 patents, which relate to a three-hour

administration of the antitumor drug paclitaxel.<sup>1</sup> The patents derive from the same parent application and share the same specification. Claim 1 of the '803 patent reads as follows:

1. A method for reducing hematologic toxicity in a cancer patient undergoing taxol treatment comprising parenterally administering to said patient an antineoplastically effective amount of about 135-175 mg/m<sup>2</sup> [\*4] taxol over a period of about three hours.

'803 patent, col. 16, ll. 13-18 (emphasis added). The '537 patent is also directed to three-hour paclitaxel administration and additionally requires premedication, as shown in representative claims 1 and 5 below:

1. A method for treating a patient suffering from a taxol-sensitive tumor comprising

(i) premedicating said patient with a medicament that reduces or eliminates hypersensitivity reactions, and

(ii) parenterally administering to said patient about 135-175 mg/m<sup>2</sup> taxol over about three hours.

[\*1372]

5. A method for treating a cancer patient to effect regression of a taxol-sensitive tumor, said method being associated with reduced hematologic toxicity, said method comprising:

(i) premedicating said patient with a medicament that reduces or eliminates hypersensitivity reactions; and

(ii) parenterally administering to said patient about 135-175

mg/m<sup>2</sup> taxol over about 3 hours.

'537 patent, col. 15, ll. 45-51; col. 16, ll. 21-27 (emphasis added).

1 Paclitaxel is the generic name of the anticancer agent derived from the Pacific Yew tree. Taxol (R) is the registered trademark for Bristol's anticancer drug, which includes paclitaxel as its active ingredient.

[\*\*5] Claims 2 and 8 of the '537 patent differ from claims 1 and 5, respectively, only in the dosage amount, which is "about 135 mg/m<sup>2</sup> taxol." *Id.* at col. 16, ll. 5-6; ll. 41-42. Claims 6 and 9 of the '537 patent are directed to the same particular premedicants; claim 6 depends from claim 5 and claim 9 depends from claim 8. Claim 6 is reproduced below as representative of claims 6 and 9:

6. The method of claim 5 wherein the step of premedicating said patient comprises the administration of a medicament selected from the group consisting of *steroids, antihistamines, H<sub>2</sub> receptor antagonists,* and combinations thereof.

'537 patent, col. 16, ll. 28-32 (emphasis added).

The defendants filed Abbreviated New Drug Applications ("ANDAs") seeking approval to market paclitaxel prior to the patents' expiration, alleging that the patents were invalid over, *inter alia*, an article by Kris in which Kris treated patients with three-hour infusions of paclitaxel within the claimed dosage ranges but observed no antitumor response. Mark G. Kris, et al., *Phase I Trial of Taxol Given as a 3-Hour Infusion Every 21 Days*, 70 *Cancer Treatment Reports* 605-07 (1986) ("Kris"). [\*\*6] Patients treated with more than 190 mg/m<sup>2</sup> of paclitaxel, an amount greater than the claimed range of 135-175 mg/m<sup>2</sup>, showed treatment-limiting hypersensitivity reactions. In his concluding remarks, Kris commented:

Hypersensitivity reactions constitute a severe and unpredictable treatment-limiting toxicity for the present cremophor-containing formulation of taxol

given on this schedule. Further studies are needed to see if *pretreatment regimens, alternative schedules . . . or a reformulated preparation will permit the safe administration of this compound.*

*Id.* at 607. (emphasis added). Kris did not employ the suggested pretreatment regimens in that study.

Bristol sued for infringement based on the defendants' ANDAs under 35 U.S.C.A. § 271(e)(2) (*West Supp. 2000*); the defendants moved for summary judgment that the patents were invalid for anticipation under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b) (1994) and obviousness under 35 U.S.C. § 103 (*Supp. IV 1998*).

Following a *Markman* hearing, the district court construed the claims. *Bristol-Myers Squibb Co. v. Immunex Corp.*, 86 F. Supp. 2d 447 (D.N.J. 2000) [\*\*7] ("*Bristol I*"). The court first determined that the preamble expression in claim 5 of the '537 patent, "[a] method for treating a cancer patient to effect regression of a taxol-sensitive tumor, said method being associated with reduced hematologic toxicity," merely stated the intended use or purpose of the invention and did not limit the scope of the claim. *Id.* at 451. The court then held that the expression in the '803 claims, "an antineoplastically<sup>2</sup> effective amount," was inseparable from the specific concentrations [\*1373] described in the claims and only stated the purpose of the invention comprising the stated method steps. *Id.* at 454. Finally, the court held that the expression "reducing hematologic toxicity" meant a reduction in toxicity relative to that normally experienced in a twenty-four-hour paclitaxel infusion, which was the standard infusion time prior to Bristol's development of the three-hour infusion time. *Id.* at 455-456.

2 An "antineoplastic drug" is an agent "that is antagonistic to the growth of a neoplasm," which is a tumor. *McGraw-Hill Dictionary of Scientific and Technical Terms* 103, 1332 (5th ed. 1994).

[\*\*8] In *Bristol II*, the court granted the defendants' motion for summary judgment that the claims at issue were invalid, holding that Kris anticipated most of the claims in the '803 and '537 patents. *Bristol II*, 86 F. Supp. 2d at 442, 444. The court found that Kris disclosed all of the necessary steps to administer paclitaxel according to the claims, including dosage levels, duration of infusion, and premedication. *Id.* at 441. Although Kris did not actually premedicate the patients, the court determined

"that one skilled in the art would have known exactly what Kris's premedication 'suggestion' entailed and would have not have had to engage in further experimentation to gain possession of the patented invention." *Id.* The court relied on Bristol's statement during prosecution that the invention was drawn to "a novel method for administering taxol to patients that have been pretreated with conventional medication for minimizing hypersensitivity reactions" for its determination that Kris's suggestion of premedication would have enabled someone of skill in the art to pretreat patients according to the claims. *Id.*

Although the court did not consider [\*\*9] the preamble language of reducing toxicity levels and tumor regression to be limiting, the court determined that even if these claim terms were limiting, the claims would have been inherently anticipated because reducing toxicity and tumor regression were necessary consequences of practicing the method steps of Kris. *Id.* at 442. However, the court denied the defendants' motion for summary judgment that the claims were obvious over Kris and other references because it found a genuine factual dispute as to whether Kris would have led a person of ordinary skill in the art to have had a reasonable expectation of success from following his treatment regimens. Bristol then disclaimed claims 4 and 5 of the '803 patent and claims 3, 4, 7, and 10 of the '537 patent in a stipulation under *Fed. R. Civ. P. 54(b)* to obtain a final judgment. Bristol appeals from the court's claim construction and invalidity judgment. We have jurisdiction of this appeal pursuant to 28 U.S.C. § 1295(a)(1) (1994).

## DISCUSSION

Claim construction is an issue of law, *Markman v. Westview Instruments, Inc.*, 52 F.3d 967, 970-71, 34 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1321, 1322 (*Fed. Cir.* 1995) [\*\*10] (en banc), *aff'd*, 517 U.S. 370, 134 L. Ed. 2d 577, 116 S. Ct. 1384 (1996), that we review *de novo*, *Cybor Corp. v. FAS Techs., Inc.*, 138 F.3d 1448, 1456, 46 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1169, 1172 (*Fed. Cir.* 1998) (en banc). If the body of the claim sets out the complete invention, and the preamble is not necessary to give "life, meaning and vitality" to the claim, "then the preamble is of no significance to claim construction because it cannot be said to constitute or explain a claim limitation." [\*\*1374] *Pitney Bowes, Inc. v. Hewlett-Packard Co.*, 182 F.3d 1298, 1305, 51 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1161, 1166 (*Fed. Cir.*

1999).

Summary judgment is appropriate when there is no genuine issue of material fact and the moving party is entitled to judgment as a matter of law. *Fed. R. Civ. P. 56(c)*; *Anderson v. Liberty Lobby, Inc.*, 477 U.S. 242, 247-48, 91 L. Ed. 2d 202, 106 S. Ct. 2505 (1986). On motion for summary judgment, the court views the evidence and any disputed factual issues in the light most favorable to the party opposing the motion. *Matsushita Elec. Indus. Co. v. Zenith Radio Corp.*, 475 U.S. 574, 587, 89 L. Ed. 2d 538, 106 S. Ct. 1348 (1986). [\*\*11] A patent is presumed to be valid, 35 U.S.C. § 282 (1994), and this presumption can only be overcome by clear and convincing evidence to the contrary. *See, e.g., WMS Gaming Inc. v. Int'l Game Techs.*, 184 F.3d 1339, 1355, 51 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1385, 1396-97 (*Fed. Cir.* 1999). "[A] claim is anticipated if each and every limitation is found either expressly or inherently in a single prior art reference." *Celeritas Techs. Ltd. v. Rockwell Int'l Corp.*, 150 F.3d 1354, 1360, 47 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1516, 1522 (*Fed. Cir.* 1998). To anticipate, the reference must also enable one of skill in the art to make and use the claimed invention. *In re Donohue*, 766 F.2d 531, 533, 226 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) 619, 621 (*Fed. Cir.* 1985).

### A. Claim Construction

Bristol argues that the district court erred by not giving effect to the preamble "for reducing hematologic toxicity" and the expression "an antineoplastically effective amount" in the '803 claims. In particular, Bristol asserts that "an antineoplastically effective amount" is limiting because it was added by amendment to distinguish over Kris, who observed no antitumor efficacy. Similarly, Bristol argues that [\*\*12] the court improperly read out the phrase "[a] method for treating a cancer patient to effect regression of a taxol-sensitive tumor, said method being associated with reduced hematologic toxicity" from claims 5, 6, 8, and 9 of the '537 patent, asserting that this expression is the only difference between claims 1 and 5 and therefore must be given effect under the doctrine of claim differentiation. Finally, Bristol argues that these expressions are limitations because they distinguish the new use of the process over the prior art, which did not show usefulness for treating cancer in three-hour paclitaxel infusions.

The defendants respond that the expressions "reduced hematologic toxicity" and "antineoplastically effective amount" in the '803 patent claims merely state



the intended result of those claims and are non-limiting. Furthermore, the defendants point out that "antineoplastically effective amount" was not required by the examiner to distinguish over the prior art because Bristol voluntarily added the phrase to the claims after the examiner had found them allowable. The defendants also assert that the preamble language of the '537 claims, "to effect regression of a taxol-sensitive [\*13] tumor, said method being associated with reduced hematologic toxicity," only states an intended result of that claimed method. Moreover, the defendants assert that the doctrine of claim differentiation does not apply to distinguish the scope of claim 5, which recites that expression, from claim 1, which does not, because both claims are independent. The defendants also argue that Bristol's claim construction arguments violate the rule of consistency, which requires courts to construe claims consistently for both validity and infringement. Finally, the defendants respond to Bristol's argument that the asserted claim limitations [\*1375] are necessary to distinguish over the prior art on the basis of the discovery of the new "usefulness" of three-hour paclitaxel infusions, arguing that the prior art was directed to that same use -- treating cancer -- and that Bristol's sole contribution was in recognizing a new result of that same use, *i.e.*, that it worked to treat cancer.

We first address the preamble language of the claims in the '803 patent, "for reducing hematologic toxicity." We discern no error in the district court's interpretation of that language as non-limiting, and merely expressing [\*14] a purpose of reducing hematologic toxicity relative to the toxicity experienced by a patient undergoing a twenty-four-hour infusion. The steps of the three-hour infusion method are performed in the same way regardless whether or not the patient experiences a reduction in hematologic toxicity, and the language of the claim itself strongly suggests the independence of the preamble from the body of the claim. *See, e.g., In re Hirao*, 535 F.2d 67, 70, 190 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) 15, 16-17 (CCPA 1976) (holding that the preamble was non-limiting because it merely recited the purpose of the process, which was fully set forth in the body of the claim). Furthermore, this is not a case in which a new use of a process should be considered to be a limitation because that new use distinguishes the process over the prior art, as we will discuss *infra*. We therefore affirm the district court's construction of this expression as non-limiting.

We reach the same conclusion with respect to the expression "an antineoplastically effective amount," also in the '803 claims. That expression of intended result essentially duplicates the dosage amounts recited in the claims that are also described [\*15] in the specification as "antineoplastically effective." '803 patent, col. 5, ll. 40-44 ("It has also been surprisingly discovered that lower taxol dosages, such as about 135 mg/m<sup>2</sup> can be administered via infusions lasting about 3-hours to about 28-hours, and still be antineoplastically effective."). The express dosage amounts are material claim limitations; the statement of the intended result of administering those amounts does not change those amounts or otherwise limit the claim.

We also agree with the defendants that the amendment adding "antineoplastically effective amount" was voluntarily made after the examiner had already indicated to Bristol that the claims were allowable. *See* Supplemental Response for Application No. 08/544,594 (Jan. 10, 1997). These unsolicited assertions of patentability made during prosecution do not create a material claim limitation where we have determined that the language does not create one. Indeed, for purposes of infringement, Bristol apparently does not see this expression as requiring efficacy; Bristol stated its view in response to requests for admission that the claims of each patent would be infringed without a showing of an objective [\*16] response in every patient. Bristol cannot have an expression be limiting in this context and non-limiting in another. *W.L. Gore & Assocs., Inc. v. Garlock, Inc.*, 842 F.2d 1275, 1279, 6 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1277, 1280-81 (Fed. Cir. 1988) ("Having construed the claims one way for determining their validity, it is axiomatic that the claims must be construed in the same way for infringement."). We therefore affirm the district court's interpretation of "antineoplastically effective amount" as non-limiting.

We next construe the expression "[a] method for treating a cancer patient [\*1376] to effect regression of a taxol-sensitive tumor, said method being associated with reduced hematologic toxicity" in the preambles of claims 5 and 8 of the '537 patent. Again, we agree with the defendants that this language is only a statement of purpose and intended result. The expression does not result in a manipulative difference in the steps of the claim. Moreover, Bristol would have us construe the claims as limited to those instances of practicing the claimed method that achieve the stated result for purposes

of validity, but as encompassing all instances of carrying out the physical steps for purposes [\*\*17] of infringement. Again, Bristol cannot have it both ways. *W.L. Gore*, 842 F.2d at 1279, 6 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) at 1280-81.

We are also unpersuaded by Bristol's argument that this expression must be given effect under the doctrine of claim differentiation to distinguish between claims 1 and 5 and claims 2 and 8. The doctrine only creates a presumption that each claim in a patent has a different scope; it is not a "hard and fast" rule of construction. *Comark Communications, Inc. v. Harris Corp.*, 156 F.3d 1182, 1186, 48 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1001, 1005 (Fed. Cir. 1998). We decline to blindly apply the doctrine in this case to supplant other canons of claim construction that compel our conclusion that independent claims 1 and 5 have identical scope and that independent claims 2 and 8 have identical scope. We therefore affirm the district court's interpretation of claims 5 and 8 as limited only to the actual steps of those claims, without regard to the result of performing the claimed steps.

Finally, we address Bristol's argument that new uses of old processes are patentable, that we should treat the expressions of efficacy as limitations because they distinguish the new use of the [\*\*18] process over the prior art, and that claims should be read to preserve their validity. Bristol is correct that new uses of known processes may be patentable. *See* 35 U.S.C. § 101 (1994) ("Whoever invents or discovers any new and useful process . . . may obtain a patent therefor."); 35 U.S.C. § 100(b) (1994) ("The term 'process' means process, art or method, and includes a new use of a known process, machine, manufacture, composition of matter, or material."). However, the claimed process here is not directed to a new use; it is the same use, and it consists of the same steps as described by Kris. Newly discovered results of known processes directed to the same purpose are not patentable because such results are inherent. *In re May*, 574 F.2d 1082, 1090, 197 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) 601, 607 (CCPA 1978); *Verdegaal Bros., Inc. v. Union Oil Co.*, 814 F.2d 628, 633, 2 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1051, 1054 (Fed. Cir. 1987) (holding claimed process for making fertilizer anticipated by a disclosure of the same process for making fertilizer even though prior art did not disclose the "inventive concept"); *cf. Mehl/Biophile Int'l Corp. v. Milgraum*, 192 F.3d 1362, 1366, 52 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1303, 1306-1307 (Fed. Cir. 1999) [\*\*19] (finding anticipation of a method of hair depilation by an article

teaching a method of skin treatment but recognizing the disruption of hair follicles).

In *May*, one of our predecessor courts held that claims to the method of effecting analgesic activity without producing physical dependency by administering a genus of non-addictive analgesic compounds were anticipated by a disclosure of a species of that genus that was used as an analgesic. *In re May*, 574 F.2d at 1090, 197 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) at 607. Although the prior disclosure was silent as to the addictiveness of the prior art compound, May's appealed claims [\*1377] merely recited a newly discovered result -- non-addictiveness -- of a known method directed to the same use, *i.e.*, treating pain with an analgesic. *Id.* The court therefore held that those claims were anticipated by the prior disclosure. *Id.* Similarly, Bristol has done no more than claim a result (efficacy) of three-hour paclitaxel infusions in cancer patients. As in *May*, the purpose -- treating cancer -- is no different from the purpose disclosed by Kris. Although in suitable cases we will construe claims so as to preserve their validity, *Wang Labs., Inc. v. Am. Online, Inc.*, 197 F.3d 1377, 1383, 53 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1161, 1165 (Fed. Cir. 1999), [\*\*20] the expressions "reduced hematologic toxicity," "antineoplastically effective amount," and "[a] method for treating a cancer patient to effect regression of a taxol-sensitive tumor, said method being associated with reduced hematologic toxicity" do not impart patentability to Bristol's claims because, as we hold here, they do not distinguish those claims over the prior art. We therefore affirm the district court's conclusion that these expressions of intended efficacy and reduced toxicity are non-limiting.

#### B. Anticipation

Bristol argues that Kris cannot anticipate the claims because Kris is a failed experiment and therefore that it does not describe the claimed invention for purposes of 35 U.S.C. § 102(b). Although acknowledging that we have found anticipation by references that disparage the claims at issue, Bristol asserts that the Supreme Court held in *United States v. Adams*, 383 U.S. 39, 148 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) 479, 15 L. Ed. 2d 572, 86 S. Ct. 708 (1966), that a reference that failed to achieve its intended result cannot anticipate. Bristol also argues that Kris does not enable premedication and that the court erred in relying on statements [\*\*21] made by Bristol during prosecution because these statements were made eight years after Kris was published and cannot demonstrate

the enablement of that earlier reference. Finally, Bristol argues that Kris does not anticipate claims 6 and 9 of the '537 patent because Kris does not disclose the particular premedicants recited in those claims.

The defendants respond that a negative reference that discloses each limitation of a claimed invention describes that invention for purposes of 35 U.S.C. § 102(b) even if it disparages that invention. The defendants distinguish *United States v. Adams*, arguing that the allegedly anticipatory disclosure in that case was different from the claimed invention as well as inoperative. The defendants take issue with Bristol's characterization of Kris as a "failed experiment," stating that Kris was only a Phase I trial under Food and Drug Administration ("FDA") procedures in which searching for efficacy was not his goal. The defendants also assert that Kris enabled the pretreatment limitations of the '537 patent and that the court properly relied on extrinsic evidence, such as Bristol's statements made during prosecution. The [\*\*22] defendants cite several additional references that demonstrate the enablement of Kris's suggestion to premedicate. Finally, the defendants argue that claims 6 and 9 are anticipated by Kris's suggestion to premedicate because they recite only drugs commonly used for premedication, and that the claims alternatively would have been obvious under 35 U.S.C. § 103.

#### 1. '803 Patent

We conclude that the district court did not err in granting summary judgment of invalidity on the basis of anticipation of claims 1-3 and 6 of the '803 [\*1378] patent. Kris administered three-hour infusions of 135 mg/m<sup>2</sup> paclitaxel to three patients and 160 mg/m<sup>2</sup> to four patients. *Kris* at 606. Kris therefore performed all of the claimed steps at dosage levels that anticipate those in the claims. Although Kris did not observe any anticancer effects, we have already determined that the claims only require the administration of specific amounts of paclitaxel and not the achievement of a particular result.

We are not persuaded by Bristol's argument that Kris cannot anticipate under the rationale of *United States v. Adams* because it is a failed experiment. In *Adams*, the Court stated that [\*\*23] "an inoperable invention or one which fails to achieve its intended result does not negative novelty." *Adams*, 383 U.S. at 50, 148 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) at 483. In that case, however, the alleged anticipatory disclosure used a different electrolyte and cathode than what was claimed. *Id.* Thus, the Court found

no anticipation because the asserted reference, while also lacking operability, simply did not anticipate. In *Celeritas*, we stated that "[a] reference is no less anticipatory if, after disclosing the invention, the reference then disparages it. Thus, the question whether a reference 'teaches away' from the invention is inapplicable to an anticipation analysis." *Celeritas*, 150 F.3d at 1361, 47 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) at 1522. Kris performed all the steps of the '803 claims at issue. No particular result is required by those claims as we have construed them. Moreover, Kris's failure to observe an antitumor response does not mean that the protocol he used would never result in an antitumor response, especially in the context of a small group of patients in a Phase I study in which the focus is safety, not efficacy. Bristol's own expert, Dr. O'Connell, testified that "anyone [\*\*24] who is experienced in oncology and read a Phase I trial would . . . only learn what drugs may become available in the future from further study and learn something about the toxicities to be expected but nothing about the efficacy." Kris simply performed the claimed method on patients who did not show any antitumor effect. Kris's performance of these same steps today would literally infringe the '803 claims; it is axiomatic that that which would literally infringe if later anticipates if earlier. *Lewmar Marine, Inc. v. Bariant, Inc.*, 827 F.2d 744, 747, 3 U.S.P.Q.2D (BNA) 1766, 1768 (*Fed. Cir.* 1987). Moreover, Kris enabled the performance of those steps even though he did not achieve a favorable outcome, which was not a requirement of the claim. We therefore conclude that the district court did not err in holding that Kris anticipates claims 1-3 and 6 of the '803 patent.

#### 2. '537 Patent

We also conclude that the district court did not err in granting summary judgment of invalidity on the basis of anticipation of claims 1, 2, 5 and 8 of the '537 patent, which are similar to the '803 claims but include the additional limitation of "premedicating said patient with a medicament [\*\*25] that reduces or eliminates hypersensitivity reaction." Bristol correctly asserts that Kris's suggestion of premedication is primarily directed to patients receiving higher doses who experienced hypersensitivity reactions, and that Kris did not actually employ premedication. Nevertheless, Kris did not confine his pretreatment suggestion only to patients given higher doses; rather, he stated that "hypersensitivity reactions constitute a severe and unpredictable treatment-limiting

toxicity for the present cremophor-containing formulation of taxol given [\*1379] on this schedule," referring to the dosage schedule of his entire study. *Kris* at 607. He then stated that "further studies are needed to see if pretreatment regimens . . . will permit the safe administration of this compound." *Id.* Furthermore, although he did not actually premedicate the patients himself, anticipation does not require actual performance of suggestions in a disclosure. Rather, anticipation only requires that those suggestions be enabling to one of skill in the art. *Donohue*, 766 F.2d at 533, 226 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) at 533 ("It is not, however, necessary that an invention disclosed in a publication shall have actually [\*\*26] been made in order to satisfy the enablement requirement.").

Enablement of an anticipatory reference may be demonstrated by a later reference. In *Donohue*, we accepted the use of a later reference, Lincoln, to show enablement of an earlier anticipatory reference, Nomura. *Id.* at 532, 226 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) at 620. Although anticipation requires a showing of each limitation of a claim in a single reference, we looked to Lincoln and another reference only "to show that the claimed subject matter, as disclosed in Nomura, was in the public's possession." *Id.* at 534, 226 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) at 622. Our predecessor court held in *In re Samour* that additional references may be relied on for anticipation under 35 U.S.C. § 102(b) "solely as evidence that, more than one year prior to appellant's filing date, a method of preparing the claimed subject matter . . . would have been known by, or would have been obvious to, one of ordinary skill in the art." *Samour*, 571 F.2d 559, 562, 197 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) 1, 4 (CCPA 1978). Furthermore, that court held that additional references used solely to show enablement of an anticipatory reference need not antedate that [\*\*27] reference, but must show that the claimed subject matter was in possession of the public more than one year prior to the applicant's filing date. *Id.* at 563, 197 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) at 4. We therefore may look to any references that establish that Kris's suggestion of pretreatment would have been enabling to one of skill in the art more than one year prior to Bristol's earliest filing date of August 3, 1992.

The district court relied on Bristol's "admission" made during prosecution that the claimed invention was drawn to "a novel method for administering taxol to patients that have been pretreated with conventional medication for minimizing hypersensitivity reactions" for

its conclusion that premedication was conventional, and thus Kris would have enabled someone to premedicate patients. *Bristol II*, 86 F. Supp. 2d at 441. Bristol's 1995 statement to the examiner, although perhaps characterizing the state of the art of premedication prior to filing, does not necessarily characterize the state of the art more than one year prior to filing. We therefore decline to rely on these statements as establishing enablement.

Nevertheless, the defendants assert that several [\*\*28] additional references show enablement of Kris for pretreatment prior to August 3, 1991, the critical date for purposes of anticipation. For example, Weiss et al., *Hypersensitivity Reactions from Taxol*, J. Clinical Oncology, Vol. 8, No. 7, 1263-68 (July 1990), discloses pretreating patients before giving them paclitaxel. Similarly, Rowinsky et al., *Taxol: A Novel Investigational Antimicrotubule Agent*, J. Nat'l Cancer Institute, Vol. 82, No. 15, 1247-1259 (1990), reports giving prophylactic "anti-allergic" regimens consisting of steroids and H[2]-histamine antagonists before six-hour paclitaxel infusions to patients. We agree with the defendants that [\*1380] these references and others demonstrate that Kris's pretreatment suggestion was enabling more than one year before Bristol filed its original application. We therefore hold that the district court did not err in concluding that claims 1, 2, 5, and 8 of the '537 patent are anticipated by Kris.

Bristol has asserted that its inventors achieved success, where Kris had assertedly failed, and that the patent system is supposed to encourage and reward success. Moreover, Bristol and its inventors persevered despite the discouraging tone [\*\*29] of Kris's paper. We appreciate the point. However, one cannot obtain a valid patent on a known use of a known process that has been described in the literature more than one year prior to the date of one's invention. Such processes are old, regardless of the relative success of the prior and later participants. We are not in a position to evaluate what other incentives and rewards Bristol and its inventors may have been subject to and benefited from. We can only apply the law to the facts in light of the decision of the district court. We are pleased that Bristol and its inventors persevered, but can only affirm the district court's decision of invalidity.

We do agree with Bristol, however, that the district court erred by granting summary judgment of

anticipation of claims 6 and 9 of the '537 *patent*. Kris discloses only the use of premedicants generally, not the specific classes of premedicants in those claims: steroids, antihistamines, and H[2]-receptor antagonists. Anticipation requires a showing that each limitation of a claim is found in a single reference, *Donohue*, 766 F.2d at 534, 226 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) at 621. Nevertheless, the disclosure of a small genus may anticipate [\*\*30] the species of that genus even if the species are not themselves recited. *In re Petering*, 49 C.C.P.A. 993, 301 F.2d 676, 682, 133 U.S.P.Q. (BNA) 275, 280 (CCPA 1962).

The record in this case does not establish whether the general class of premedicants that are suitable to prophylactically treat hypersensitivity reactions before administration of a cancer drug such as paclitaxel is small enough such that Kris's disclosure of premedicants effectively described the specific classes of premedicants in claims 6 and 9. The district court relied on Bristol's statement during prosecution concerning pretreatment as "conventional medication for minimizing hypersensitivity reactions" in its determination that Kris's general disclosure of premedicants anticipated the specific ones recited in claims 6 and 9. *Bristol II*, 86 F. Supp. 2d at 442 n.3. We are not persuaded that these statements, presumably relating to the state of the art around the time of filing, establish that suitable premedicants consisted of only a few classes of compounds such that a person of skill in the art would have been in possession of those classes as of the date of Kris for purposes of anticipation [\*\*31] under § 102(b). On summary judgment, we must draw all inferences in favor of the non-movant, Bristol.

We therefore vacate the district court's grant of summary judgment with respect to claims 6 and 9. On remand, the district court should determine whether, perhaps even as a matter of law upon a sufficient record, there were so few suitable classes of premedicants that Kris's general suggestion to premedicate would have been understood by one of skill in the art as a suggestion to premedicate with steroids, antihistamines, and H[2]-receptor antagonists, as in claims 6 and 9 of the '537 *patent*.

Finally, we decline the invitation by the defendants to hold these claims invalid in [\*1381] the alternative as obvious over Kris in combination with other references. The district court held that there were disputed factual issues as to whether one of ordinary skill in the art would have had a reasonable expectation of success based on Kris's disclosure, and we will not disturb this holding in light of Kris's discouraging conclusions about the three-hour paclitaxel schedule he disclosed.

#### CONCLUSION

Because the district court did not err in determining that claims 1-3 and 6 of the '803 *patent* and [\*\*32] claims 1, 2, 5, and 8 of the '537 *patent* are invalid for anticipation, we affirm the court's grant of summary judgment as to those claims. However, we vacate its grant of summary judgment with respect to claims 6 and 9 of the '537 *patent*. We therefore

*AFFIRM-IN-PART, VACATE-IN-PART, and  
REMAND.*

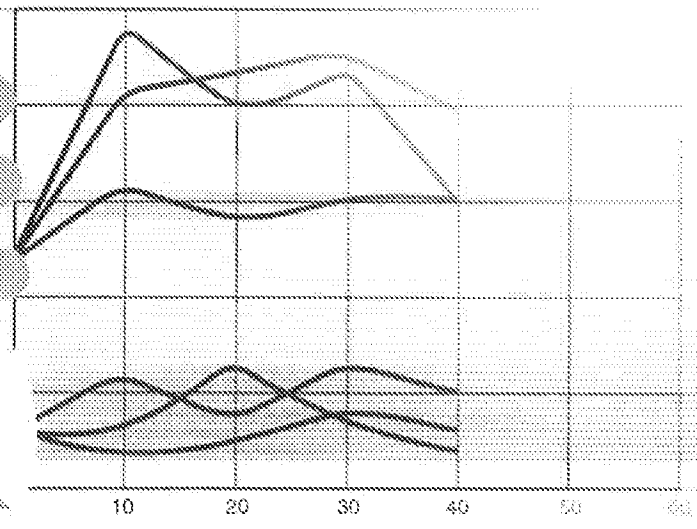
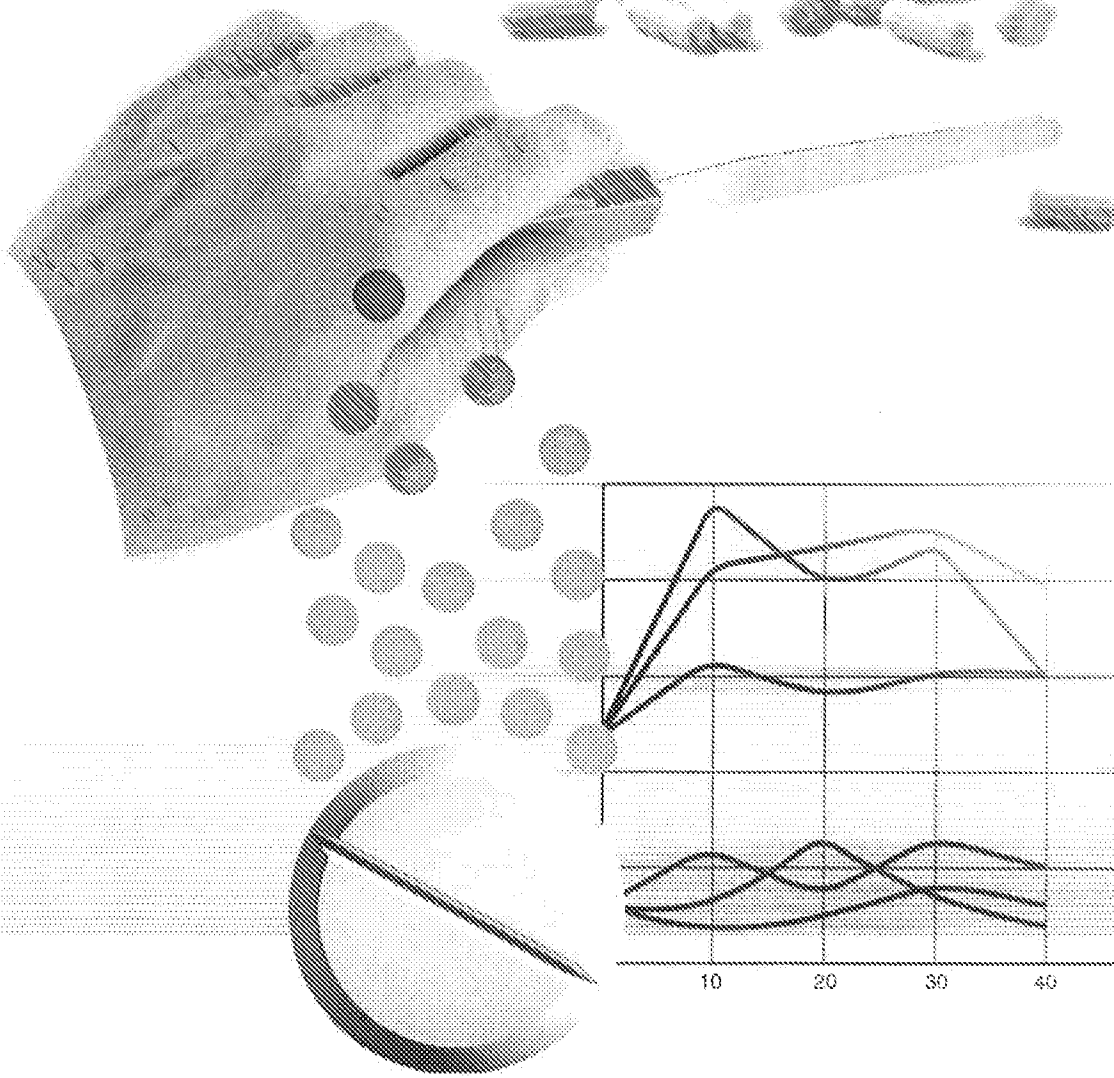
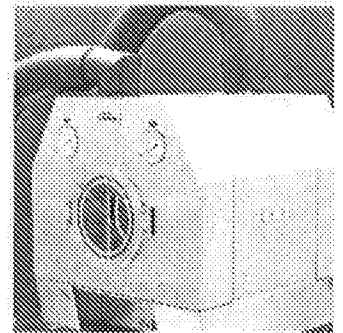
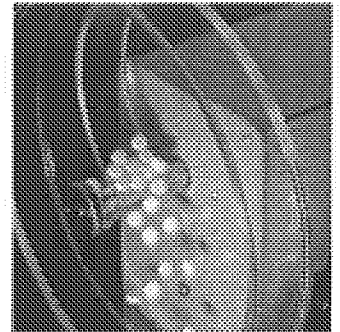
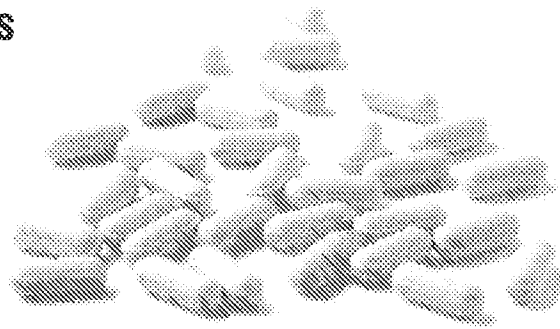
# EXHIBIT I



# METHOCEL Cellulose Ethers

## in Aqueous Systems

### for Tablet Coating







# Meet All Coating Quality Specifications, Improve Other Tablet Properties, and Maximize Production Speed

---

METHOCEL\* Premium cellulose ethers produce tough, printable, economical, and highly consistent tablet coatings whether they are aqueous, hydroalcoholic, or solvent-based. Coatings are micro-thin, noncaloric, nonnutritive, nonallergenic, and more resistant to microorganism growth than those formulated with natural gums, sugar, and most other celluloses.

Beyond producing coatings of the highest quality, METHOCEL products can improve other tablet physical properties and allow the coating process to be performed with optimum speed and efficiency.

This brochure explains the use of METHOCEL products in tablet coating systems in more detail. It also offers discussions of a general nature on the formulation and application of coatings in an effort to speed your development work. We hope you find it useful in anticipating and avoiding some of the common obstacles encountered during formulation and production.

\*Trademark of The Dow Chemical Company

# A Review of the Principle Advantages of METHOCEL in Tablet Coatings

Given the wide variety of routes available to a tablet coating of acceptable quality, why has the family of METHOCEL Premium products become the starting point for so many different applications?

## Formulation Versatility and the Ability To "Fine Tune"

One reason for the popularity of METHOCEL is simply that these products have been used successfully in tablet coatings for over 25 years. Their performance is well documented and there is a large body of data to reference and rely upon. This speeds development and reduces its expense.

Also important is that with seven separate products and the ability to blend different grades, this polymer family produces an extremely wide range of required viscosities, solids content, and film properties. As a result, the decision to begin formulating a coating system with METHOCEL is not only rewarded with a coating that's acceptable, but one that has been optimized by several measures.

## Improve Product Appearance, Help Assure Consumer Acceptance

First of all, coatings based on METHOCEL Premium cellulose ethers improve product appearance. They produce a glossy, quality finish that eliminates dusting. Films of METHOCEL make clear, sharp coatings that are nonionic and compatible with FD&C dyes, lakes, and pigments. They are excellent surfaces for printing, while clearly enhancing and displaying scoring, logos, and other distinguishing features of a tablet's surface.

Plus, although aqueous polymer films do not deliver the extraordinary high gloss of a sugar coating, tablet appearance is maintained at high levels with METHOCEL by careful process adjustments. Plasticizer selection, application rates, polymer concentration, and application of a second coat to specifically enhance sheen allow an even higher tablet gloss.

Coatings of METHOCEL also offer excellent barrier properties, limiting the migration of water and oxygen to protect sensitive cores. Properly done, an aqueous coating of

METHOCEL can be applied to multi-vitamin tablets, for example, without causing the cores to discolor or break down. Further evidence to support the excellent barrier properties of these films can be seen in their use as coatings for food products, such as nuts. Films of METHOCEL effectively improve shelf life of nutmeats.

Of course a primary objective with coatings is to ease swallowing. Clear coatings of METHOCEL begin to hydrate in the mouth, then become slick to allow a tablet to slide easily down the throat. Studies with simulated esophageal passages have documented improved swallowing ease with tablets bearing a coating with METHOCEL as compared with uncoated tablets.

In short, with METHOCEL Premium products you easily achieve a quality image that promotes consumer acceptance.

## Improve Tablet Physical Properties

Beyond providing the easy-to-swallow, micro-thin coatings consumers demand, METHOCEL also improves many other product properties. Compared to sugar, METHOCEL is a much better film former. Coatings can double tablet compressive strength and reduce friability while only increasing tablet size by 1-3 mil and product weight by 1-3%. Your products stand up to the rigors of handling and shipping. So the quality appearance achieved at the plant is maintained right to the consumer's home.

Another advantage with METHOCEL Premium products is the availability of low pH grades (pH 4 to 5) to inhibit bacterial growth yet maintain their viscosity under normal storage conditions. This feature, along with the fact that METHOCEL is compatible with a wide variety of preservatives and alone is relatively resistant to bacterial degradation, makes it easy to meet shelf life requirements.

## Production Speed and Simplicity

Coatings made with METHOCEL can minimize coating cycle time too. They allow the use of high productivity spray application equipment. And spraying and drying can be done in a single pan. (Also consider that the low viscosity of METHOCEL ES Premium LV permits high solids in the coating solution so less water must be removed.)

By permitting the use of automated equipment, coatings based on METHOCEL can contribute to lower labor costs in two ways. First, since the same procedures are used with each product there's less need for involvement by highly skilled and experienced personnel. Coating is no longer an "art form" but rather a highly controlled process. Second, fewer total people are involved in the process.

In short, METHOCEL meets all the primary goals for tablet coatings. Plus it improves other tablet properties while making sure production speed and economy are maintained.

### **Technical Assistance Every Step of the Way**

A final reason for the popularity of METHOCEL really has little to do with the product family. It involves the years of experience and knowledge we have accumulated and can bring to bear on your specific applications. Some of this information is contained on the pages that follow. But necessarily it is somewhat general in scope. Rest assured, however, that after several decades of involvement with the formulation of coating systems for virtually every pharmaceutical product category, chances are we can help meet your specific application needs quickly, efficiently, and with optimum results. Look to the rest of this brochure for additional evidence to support the conclusion that METHOCEL is worth further investigation.

# An Overview of METHOCEL Products For Tablet Coating

---

METHOCEL Premium products represent the hypromellose<sup>†</sup> product family of the highest quality. Here's why.

- METHOCEL is manufactured according to the stringent requirements of Good Manufacturing Practices (GMPs).
- Dow's manufacturing facilities are registered and regularly inspected by the FDA.
- METHOCEL products are produced from dedicated processes and equipment to assure the highest purity.
- Dow offers a Certificate of Analysis with every shipment so you have documentation of product quality and the consistency of that quality from shipment to shipment.

In short, when hypromellose is the product type of choice, METHOCEL Premium products should be the brand of choice to best ensure the production of consistently high quality products day in and day out.

## Available Grades

In tablet coating applications, only the Premium (USP, EP, JP) grades of METHOCEL "E" cellulose ethers should be used. These products will meet the requirements of FDA and USP as well as EP, JP if so specified. See Table 1.

---

### Product Description of METHOCEL Premium Products

---

Physical form    free-flowing white/off-white powder

---

Particle size    100% pass through 30 mesh screen;  
99% pass through 40 mesh screen

---

Packaging        available in 50-lb multi-wall  
bags or 50-kg fiber drums

---

<sup>†</sup>Previously referred to as hydroxypropyl methylcellulose or HPMC.

**TABLE 1: Properties of Select Premium METHOCEL E Cellulose Ethers<sup>1</sup>**  
(Not to be considered sales specifications)

| Product Description <sup>2</sup>                 | METHOCEL<br>E3<br>Premium LV | METHOCEL<br>E5 <sup>3</sup><br>Premium LV | METHOCEL<br>E6<br>Premium LV | METHOCEL<br>E15<br>Premium LV | METHOCEL<br>E50<br>Premium LV | METHOCEL<br>A15<br>Premium LV | METHOCEL<br>K3<br>Premium LV |
|--|------------------------------|---|------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Methoxyl, %                                      | 28-30                        | 28-30                                     | 28-30                        | 28-30                         | 28-30                         | 27.5-31.5                     | 19-24                        |
| Hydroxypropyl, %                                 | 7-12                         | 7-12                                      | 7-12                         | 7-12                          | 7-12                          | 0                             | 7-12                         |
| Moisture, % as packaged, max                     | 3.0                          | 3.0                                       | 3.0                          | 3.0                           | 3.0                           | 3.0                           | 5.0                          |
| Ash, max %                                       | 3.0                          | 3.0                                       | 3.0                          | 3.0                           | 1.5                           | 1.5                           | 3.0                          |
| Sodium chloride, max %                           | 1.0                          | 1.0                                       | 1.0                          | 1.0                           | 0.5                           | 1.0                           | 1.0                          |
| Arsenic, as As, max                              | 3 ppm                        | 3 ppm                                     | 3 ppm                        | 3 ppm                         | 3 ppm                         | 3 ppm                         | 3 ppm                        |
| Heavy metals, as Pb, max                         | 10 ppm                       | 10 ppm                                    | 10 ppm                       | 10 ppm                        | 10 ppm                        | 10 ppm                        | 10 ppm                       |
| Viscosity <sup>4</sup> , 2.0% in water,<br>mPa·s | 2.4-3.6                      | 4-6                                       | 5-7                          | 12-16                         | 40-60                         | 12-18                         | 2.4-3.6 cps                  |

<sup>1</sup> Also available in European Pharmacopoeia, EP, and Japanese Pharmacopoeia, JP grades.

<sup>2</sup> Meets all requirements in USP XXI monograph for hypromellose.

<sup>3</sup> Also available as METHOCEL E5 Premium LV low pH.

<sup>4</sup> Millipascal-seconds, mPa·s, is equivalent to cP (centipoise).

All solution viscosities are measured with Ubbelohde viscometers at a 2% concentration in water at 20°C (68°F).

# A Brief Review of the Coating Process

The following review of the process involved with aqueous polymeric film coatings is offered for those not intimately involved in the manufacturing process. As a result it is purposely basic and is not intended for the very experienced reader.

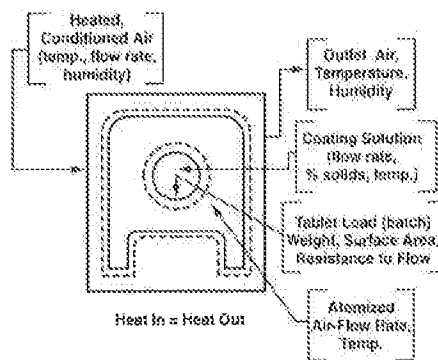
## A Matter of Equilibrium

The use of polymer film coatings has often been attempted for the first time with a sense of concern by the formulator. Will the coating have the proper characteristics? Will it coat easily? Will the product still be stable and acceptable? Particularly when formulating aqueous coatings, many are concerned that the stability of water-sensitive drugs will be affected. As a result, many turn to organic solvent coating systems. Today, however, aqueous film coatings are being used more often on a wide range of pharmaceutical products, many of which were considered to be very sensitive to water.

To use aqueous coatings on different drug substrates, you simply need to understand the coating process. It is most easily viewed as a simple, black box thermodynamic model as shown in Figure 1.

First, consider the amount of fluid being applied to the tablet surface as the hydraulic load. One can calculate the need for the amount of incoming air, the temperature of the air, and the humidity of the air required to evaporate the incoming water. The goal is to enable the coating equipment to evaporate the water at the same rate as it is being put into the process.

Figure 1: "Black Box" Model



$$(C_{p, \text{air}})(AFR)(\Delta T) = (212^{\circ}\text{F} - T_{in})(C_{p, \text{sol}}) + (\text{Water vol})(H_{\text{vap}})$$

$C_{p, \text{air}}$  --- heat capacity of air  
 $AFR$  --- air flow rate  
 $\Delta T$  --- difference between inlet and outlet air temperature  
 $T_{in}$  --- initial temperature of coating solution  
 $C_{p, \text{sol}}$  --- heat capacity of solution  
 $H_{\text{vap}}$  --- heat of vaporization

Too high a temperature can cause spray drying of the coating solution or instability of the drug due to high tablet core temperatures.

In conclusion, it is simply necessary to monitor the amount of liquid being applied to the coating surface, the ability of the air to evaporate the material under the fixed conditions of air flow rates, humidity, air temperature, and the tablet surface area. (A more complete thermodynamic model is discussed in an article published by *Pharmaceutical Technology* entitled "A Thermodynamic Model for Aqueous Film Coating," April 1987, by Glen C. Ebey.)

Whether you complete a thorough thermodynamic analysis of the process or simply monitor important parameters like exhaust air temperature and the various fluid and air flow rates, aqueous coating can be done with relative ease.

With this in mind let's review the individual factors which must be controlled by the formulator to assure the quality of the coating.

## The Coating Solutions

Regardless of the delivery system, the coating solution must be formulated to have a sprayable solution viscosity. Generally this means a viscosity of the coating solution in the range of 150-400 mPa·s, although higher viscosities may be possible under certain equipment conditions. Formulations may contain optional surfactants, plasticizers, or pigments. It should be noted, however, that these additional excipients can affect the viscosity of the coating solution. Yet the major factor controlling the formulation is the viscosity of the polymer grade being used and the concentration of polymer in the solution.

A variety of solvents may be used with tablet coating systems of METHOCEL hypromellose. At its inception, organic solvent systems of methylene chloride/alcohol blends were used. This allowed very fast drying at relatively low temperatures or air volumes.

In some cases, hydroalcoholic solvent systems are used where the water content in the solvent mixture may range from 20-80% by weight.

Hypromellose is not soluble in absolute alcohol but may be applied if more than 20% water is included in the alcohol.

The use of alcohol/water solvents also allowed for relatively fast coating but was slower than the methylene chloride/alcohol system.

Finally, in more recent times, aqueous coating has become the preferred choice. This did require increased air handling and heat exchange to facilitate rapid coating. Aqueous systems can be formulated at varying water or solids content depending on the choice of polymer, molecular weight, and the use of pigments. The effect of formulation variables on film properties will be discussed later, but in general the higher the coating solids content the faster the tablet may be coated.

# Coating Formulation Guidelines

## Typical Formulation Ingredients

### Polymer

METHOCEL cellulose ethers are available in a variety of pharmaceutical grades as shown on page 7. Most often, METHOCEL E Premium products, hypromellose 2910 USP grade, are preferred for use in aqueous film coatings. These products tend to have the best clarity, color, and film properties. METHOCEL E products are available in a range of molecular weights. The viscosity of a 2% solution of these products are available as 3, 5, 6, 15, and 50 mPas.

METHOCEL K products can also be considered for tablet coating, but they are not highly recommended except when sugar coatings are also involved. See page 23 for further discussion of the use of METHOCEL K products.

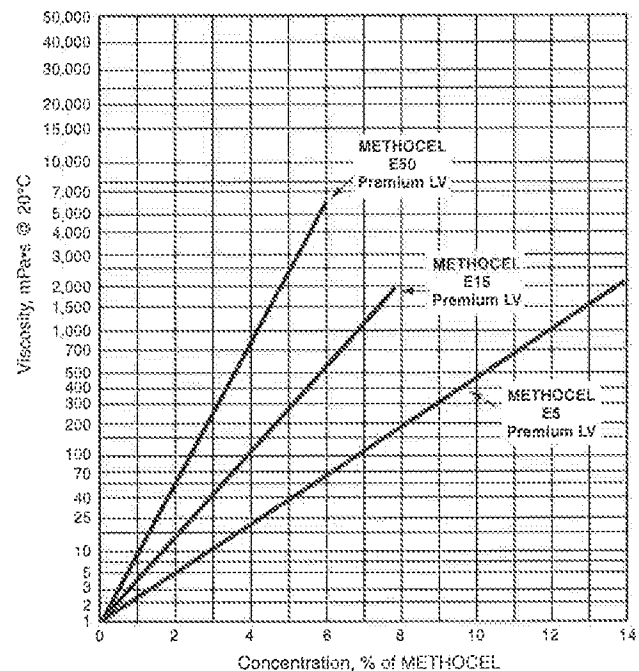
In those countries where only methylcellulose is approved as a food coating material, METHOCEL A15 Premium LV can be used for tablet coating. This product also produces a good coating on tablet surfaces with similar properties to the hypromellose product. All METHOCEL Premium products are available in USP, European Pharmacopoeia, and Japanese Pharmacopoeia grades.

### Solvent

METHOCEL products can be formulated in organic, hydroalcoholic, and aqueous solvent systems. As mentioned, each solvent system has a specific impact on the coating process. Any of the METHOCEL products may be formulated in these solvent systems. It is recommended, however, that METHOCEL E products be used in organic or hydroalcoholic systems where better polymer compatibility is desired.

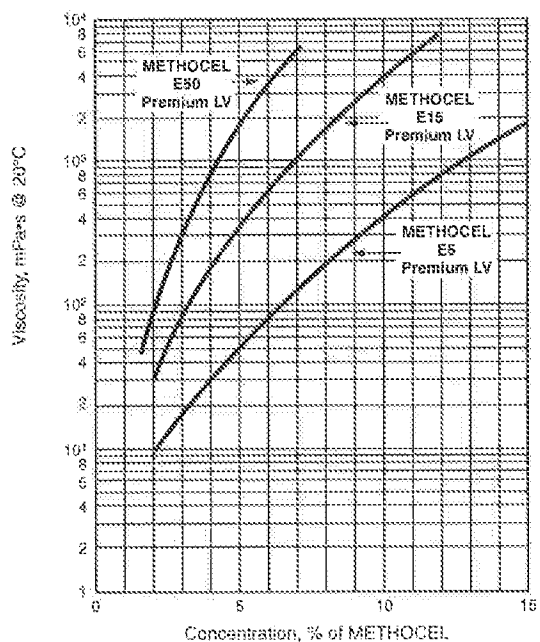
The viscosity-concentration relationship for different solvents varies slightly with the choice of solvents. The information given in Figures 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10 may be useful in predicting polymer concentrations necessary to achieve sprayable coating solution viscosities.

Figure 2: Viscosity Concentration Chart for Low Viscosity METHOCEL E Premium Products in Water

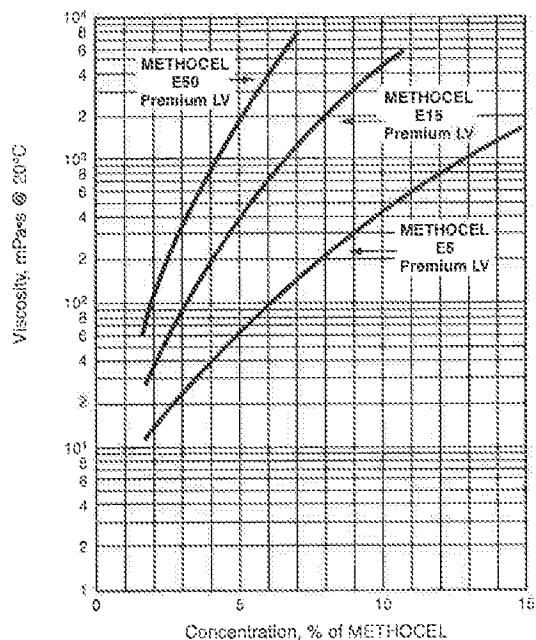




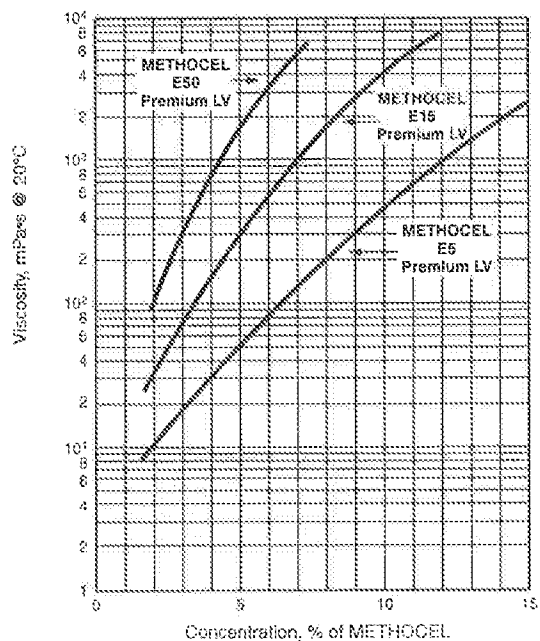
**Figure 3: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in an 80:20 Wt/Wt Water-Ethanol Mixture**



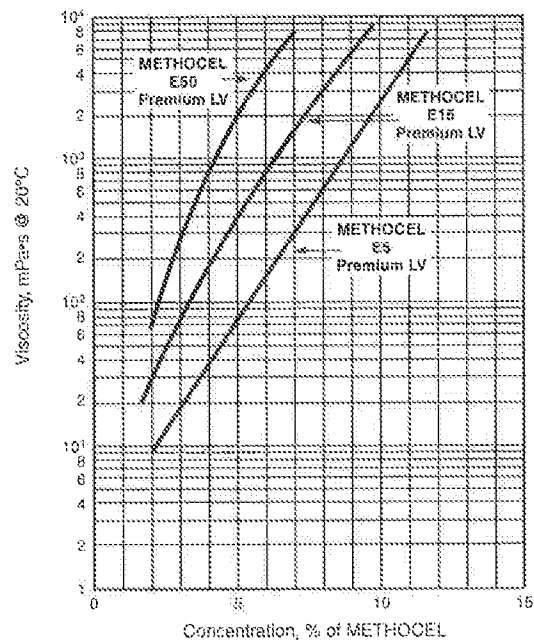
**Figure 4: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in a 60:40 Wt/Wt Water-Ethanol Mixture**



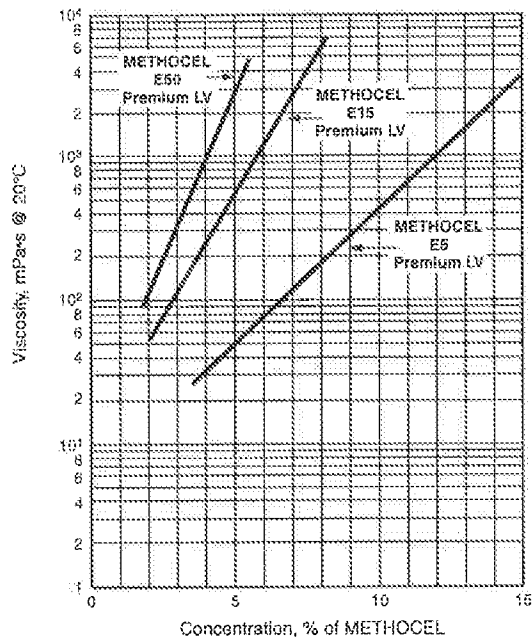
**Figure 5: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in a 40:60 Wt/Wt Water-Ethanol Mixture**



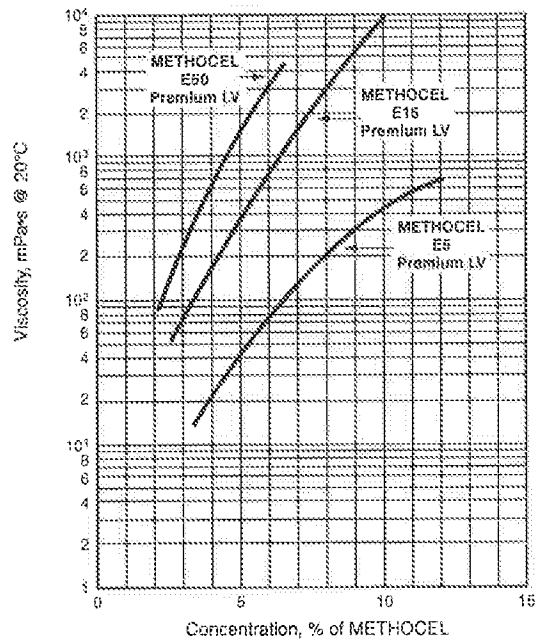
**Figure 6: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in a 20:80 Wt/Wt Water-Ethanol Mixture**



**Figure 7: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in a 80:20 Wt/Wt Methylene Chloride-Ethanol Mixture**



**Figure 8: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in a 60:40 Wt/Wt Methylene Chloride-Ethanol Mixture**



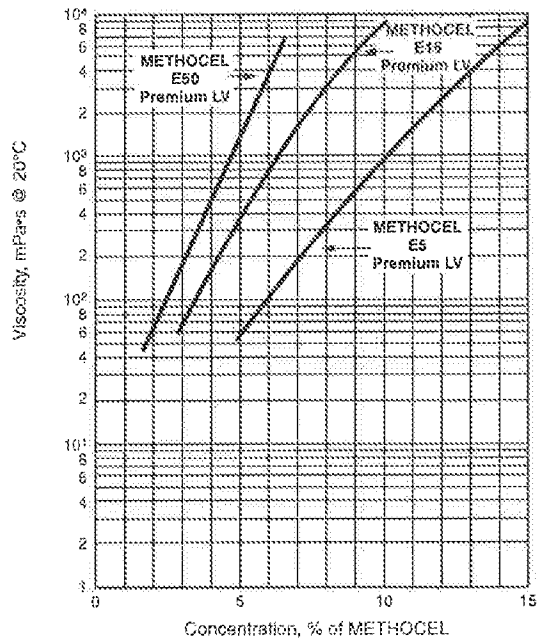
### Plasticizer

The function of a plasticizer in a coating formulation is to soften films or make them less brittle. This is particularly important when using very low molecular weight grades of hypromellose. Generally, water-soluble plasticizers are chosen for use in aqueous systems and solvent-soluble plasticizers are used with organic solvent systems. Using a plasticizer can lead to smoother films, increase adhesion to the tablet surface, reduce logo bridging, and actually reduce cracking or chipping by improving film toughness.

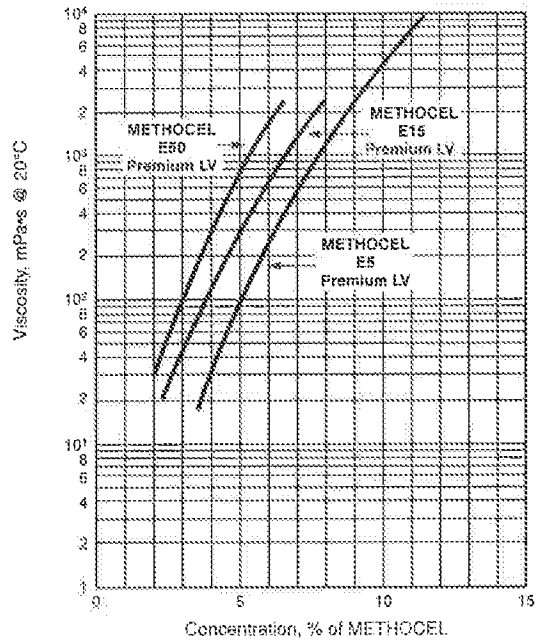
### Pigments

Pigments are used to allow coloration of tablets. The use of aluminum lake or iron oxide pigments has essentially replaced the use of soluble dyes. Pigments or pigment dispersions are added to polymer solutions in amounts required to achieve the desired coloring while hiding or masking taste effects. Generally, the level of pigment used will be from 50-200% of the polymer weight in a coating solution.

**Figure 9: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in a 40:60 Wt/Wt Methylene Chloride-Ethanol Mixture**



**Figure 10: Viscosity Concentration for METHOCEL in a 20:80 Wt/Wt Methylene Chloride-Ethanol Mixture**



### Surfactants

Surfactants are sometimes used to aid in color dispersion and development of the tablet coating. The use of surfactants may also depress the viscosity of the polymer solution. Reduction of pigment flocculation through the use of surfactants can also improve the coating gloss. We generally do not recommend the use of surfactants except to solve specific performance problems.

# Evaluation of Films Containing METHOCEL in Tablet Coating

Many methods have been used and reported on the evaluation of polymer films for tablet coating. Besides actual tablet coating evaluations we have found that the physical evaluation of free films provides useful information. The following data and observations have been made through testing of 1 mil dry films made by casting on glass and drying at 50°C. While there is a substantial amount of data scatter, trends may be clearly seen when formulation parameters were changed. Film testing was done on an Instron, testing in 50% RH at 75°F. Measurement of tensile at break, work to break, elongation at break, and Young's Modulus were recorded and evaluated. We find that toughness is the best predictor of overall film performance as it includes both the film strength and ability to deform without breakage. Young's Modulus has been reported as useful in predicting adhesion. The lower the Young's Modulus the better the film adhesion to tablet substrates.

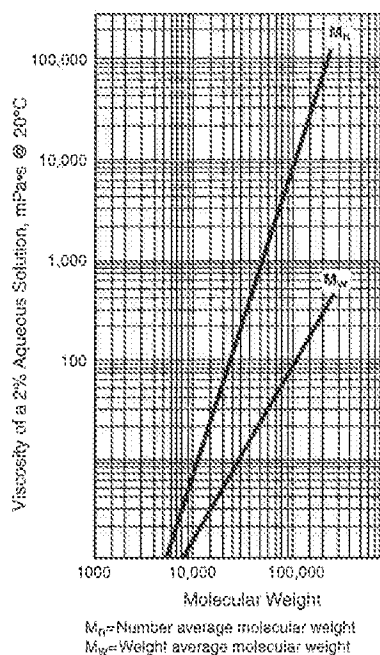
## Formulation Factors That Affect Film Properties

### Polymer Molecular Weight (Viscosity Grade)

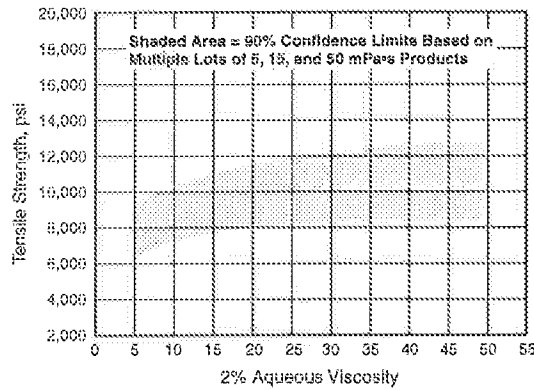
It has often been reported that polymer molecular weight will dramatically affect the strength of films. Since the molecular weight of polymers and the 2% viscosity can be directly correlated we will use viscosity and molecular weight interchangeably. See Figure 11. The names for METHOCEL products specify the 2% aqueous solution viscosity so it is more useful to think of molecular weight in terms of viscosity.

In general, as viscosity decreases the strength of a film will decrease. It will also become more brittle.

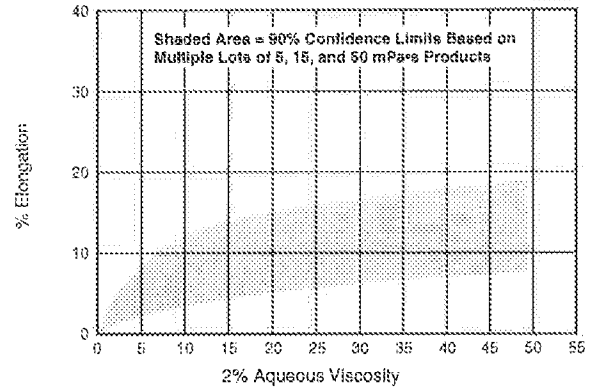
Figure 11: Approximate Molecular Weight/Viscosity Correlation for Hypromellose, 20°C



**Figure 12: Film Properties of Low Molecular Weight METHOCEL E Products**



**Figure 13: Film Properties of Low Molecular Weight METHOCEL E Products**



**Figure 14: Film Properties of Low Molecular Weight METHOCEL E Products**

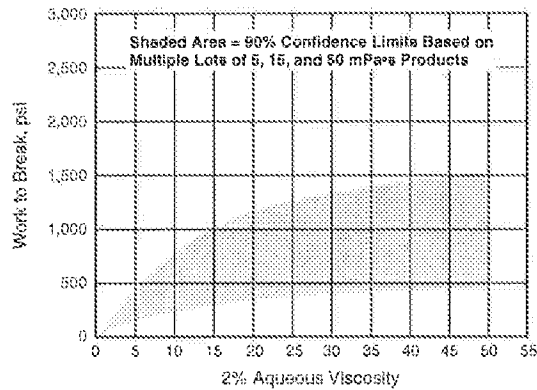
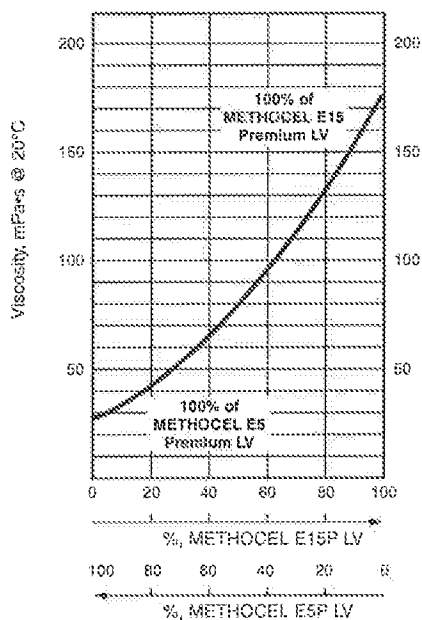
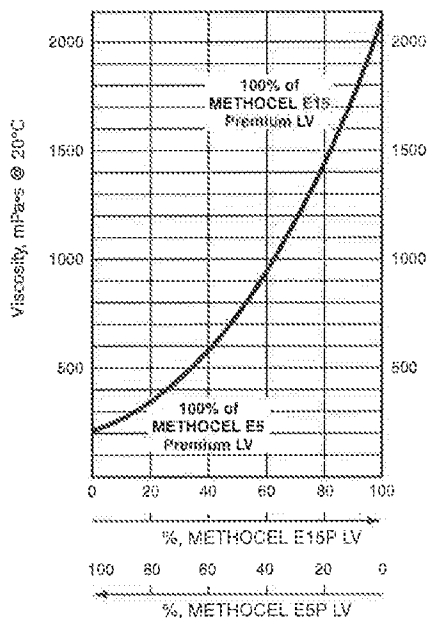


Figure 12 shows how the tensile strength of a film decreases with decreasing viscosity. The shaded area represents the 90% confidence limits for data from many different lots and viscosities. Enough data have been taken to use these results as a standard for comparison of new products or blends. In Figure 13 the increasing brittleness at low viscosity is shown by the reduction in elongation. At 3 mPa·s it becomes very difficult to remove the films from glass plates because of the film brittleness. Figure 14 shows the combined effects of strength loss and brittleness by depicting the reduction in film toughness (work to break) with decreasing molecular weight.

**Figure 15: Blending Chart for METHOCEL E5 and E15 Premium LV (USP) (5% concentration in water)**



**Figure 16: Blending Chart for METHOCEL E5 and E15 Premium LV (USP) (10% Concentration in Water)**

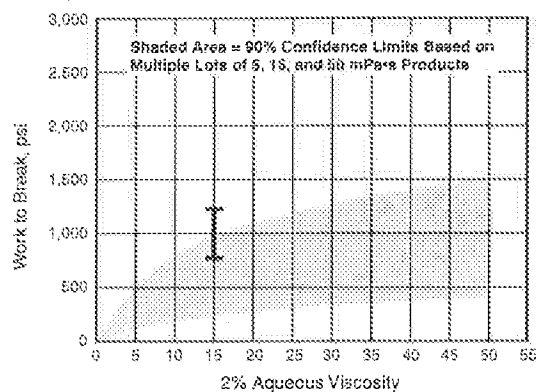


Most companies that coat tablets wish to use the lowest viscosity possible to maximize production efficiency. One can see, however, that there is a trade-off in physical properties with lowering molecular weight. This is why METHOCEL E3P LV is seldom used alone as the coating polymer.

Reduction of film properties usually causes problems like logo bridging or cracking. The level at which this becomes a problem is very dependent on the tablet substrate, geometry, and engraving. For example, one of our customers experienced a 10-fold increase in the incidence of cracking when the polymer viscosity varied from 6 to 5 mPa·s.

Although a wide variety of viscosity grades are available, intermediate viscosity grades may be available on request or can be manufactured through blending (Figures 15 and 16).

**Figure 17: Film Properties of Low Molecular Weight METHOCEL E Products (Comparison to E5/E50P LV Blends)**



### **Blending Different Molecular Weight Grades of METHOCEL**

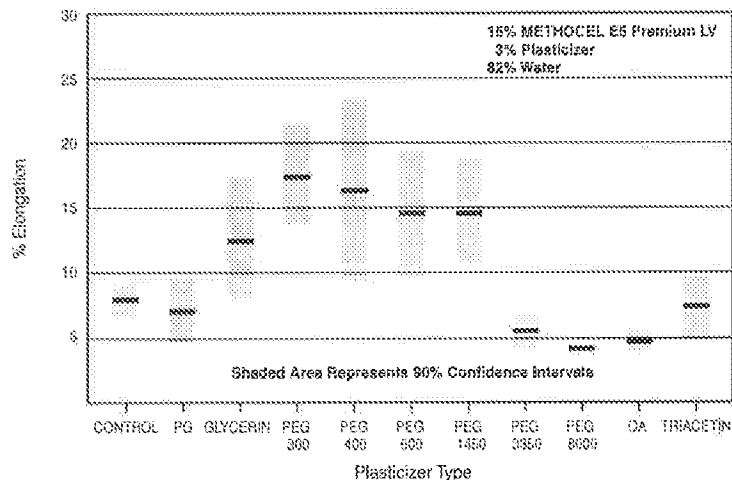
Experimentation has shown that wide blends of viscosity grades often give better results than the narrower molecular weight distribution of a manufactured product. For example we have found that a blend of METHOCEL E5P LV and METHOCEL E50P LV to achieve a nominal viscosity of 15 mPa·s generally outperformed the typical METHOCEL E15P LV product (Figure 17). While blending of product viscosities is usually not necessary, improvements in coverage, cracking, or logo bridging may be achieved on difficult tablet substrates.

## Effects of Plasticizers

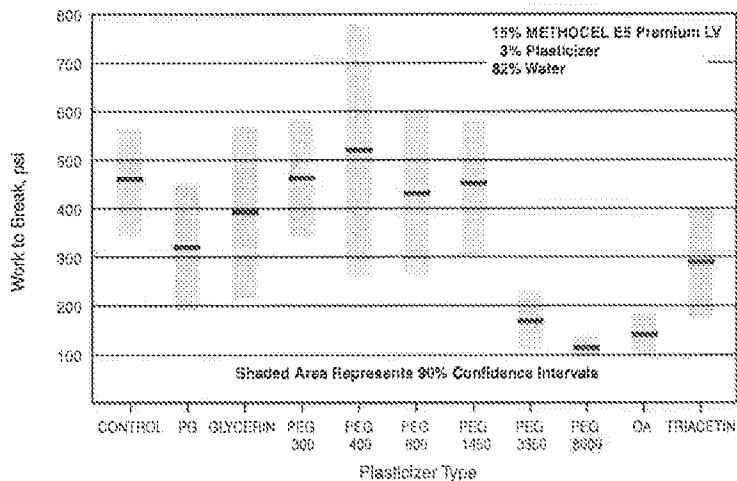
The use of plasticizers with hypromellose film coatings is very common. However, many different types have been reported in use. We chose to evaluate the effect of various plasticizers on film properties of METHOCEL as well as evaluate the optimum plasticizer level.

Since the most common level of plasticizer in use today is about 20% based on polymer solids, we chose to evaluate a variety of plasticizers with hypromellose at that level. A control of METHOCEL E5 Premium LV with no plasticizer was included for reference. As expected, most plasticizers made the films less brittle and increased elongation results. Interestingly, the higher molecular weight polyethylene glycols often used in film coating actually decreased elongation (Figure 18). Other plasticizers like oleic acid, triacetin, and propylene glycol (PG) had little effect.

**Figure 18: Effects of Plasticizers on METHOCEL E5 Premium LV Films (Elongation)**

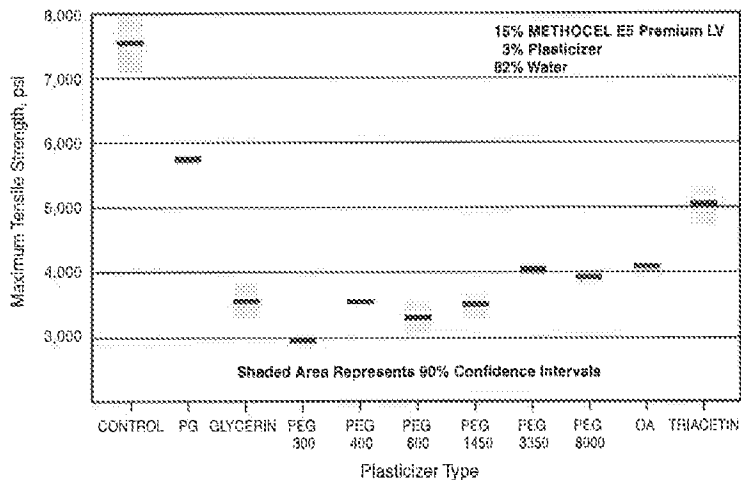


**Figure 20: Effects of Plasticizers on METHOCEL E5 Premium LV Films (Toughness)**



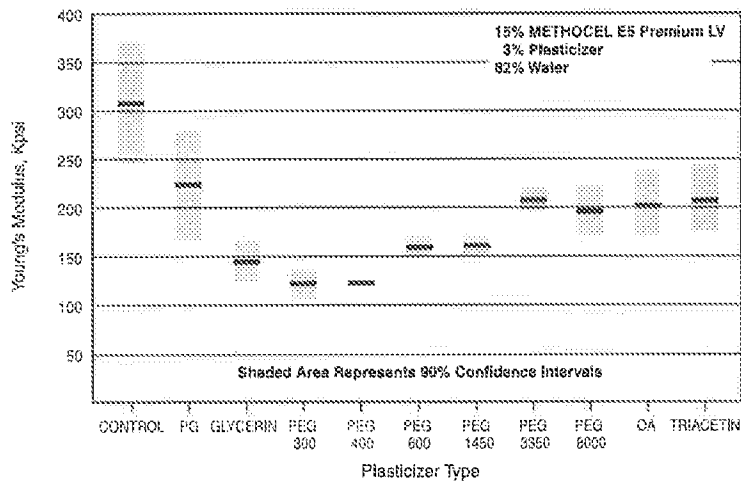


**Figure 19: Effects of Plasticizers on METHOCEL E5 Premium LV Films (Tensile Strength)**



Again, as expected, the use of plasticizer reduced the tensile strength of all the films (Figure 19). An evaluation of film toughness, however, shows that equivalent to improved performance was seen with the low molecular weight polyethylene glycols from PEG 300 to PEG 1450 (Figure 20). All of the plasticizers tended to reduce the value for Young's Modulus and may indicate an increase in adhesion (Figure 21). Finally, in aqueous systems, it is generally recommended that water-soluble plasticizers be used. In nonaqueous systems, plasticizers like triethylcitrate, triacetin, castor oil, acetylated monoglycerides, and oleic acid may be preferred.

**Figure 21: Effects of Plasticizers on METHOCEL E5 Premium LV Films (Young's Modulus)**



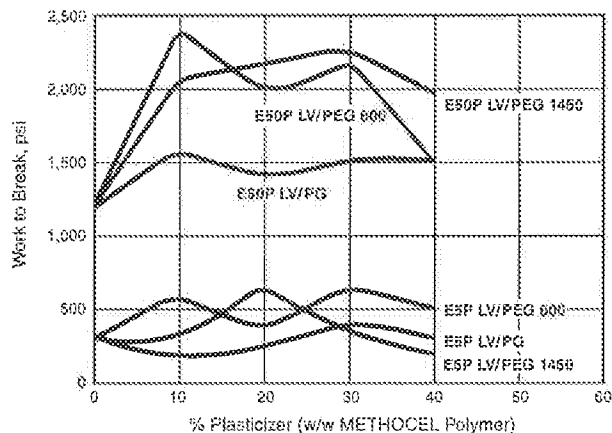
The amount of plasticizer used is very important to film properties. If the film is over-plasticized it will lose toughness or may exceed the capacity of the polymer to hold the plasticizer. For example, increasing the level of propylene glycol in a film of METHOCEL demonstrated that an optimum level is 20-30% based on polymer solids. Levels of propylene glycol greater than this do not significantly degrade film properties, possibly due to compatibility limitations or volatility of the plasticizer. With the less volatile polyethylene glycol PEG 600 and PEG 1450, an optimum is reached at 20-30% plasticizer based on polymer solids. Beyond this optimum a continual decrease in film toughness is experienced. In Figure 22 the optimum film toughness is shown for METHOCEL E50 Premium LV. With the lower molecular weight METHOCEL E5 Premium LV the optimum is more difficult to interpret.

### Polymer Blends

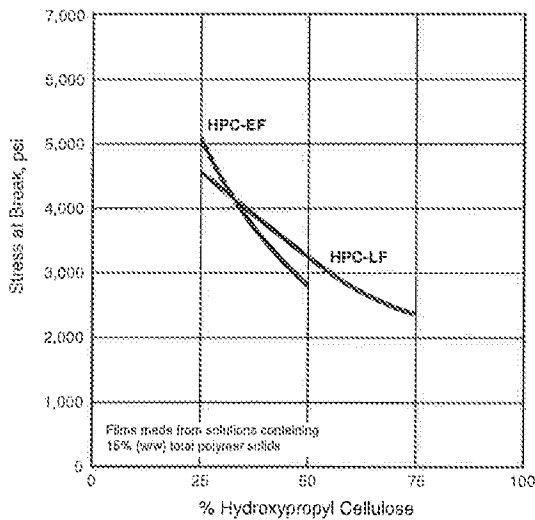
It may at times be advantageous to blend polymers of varying types. Hydroxypropyl cellulose (HPC), for example, has been used in film coating. While HPC typically is much more brittle than hypromellose it does have the property of being a better adhesive. Used alone the film may be tacky and cause problems in sticking or picking of tablets. But when used in combination with hypromellose, the HPC product imparts better adhesion. For example, when HPC-EF and HPC-LF were added to METHOCEL E5P LV in increasing concentrations, the films lost strength (Figure 23), toughness (Figure 24), and became brittle (Figure 25). It was noticed, however, that the films adhered very tightly to glass plates. It was theorized and has been shown in practice that the use of HPC in hypromellose films will increase adhesion. This can be predicted from the reduction in Young's Modulus seen in Figure 26. We recommend that if adhesion needs to be increased to solve problems such as logo bridging, that HPC-EF or -LF be used at a maximum of 25% of the total polymer solids. Additional amounts may weaken the films too much to be useful.

Other polymer blends have been used at times by the industry. Blends of methylcellulose and polyvinyl pyrrolidone (PVP) have been used commercially. While PVP has poor film formation properties, it can be used at very high concentrations with very low viscosity in water. This could be a method of increasing polymer concentration without detrimentally raising solution viscosity. Care should be taken, however, to evaluate the properties of the film or coated tablet to ensure successful formulation.

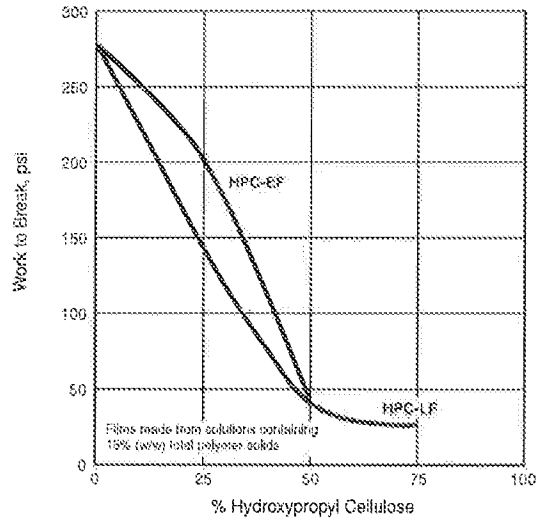
**Figure 22: Effects of Plasticizer Concentration on METHOCEL E Premium LV Films (Toughness)**



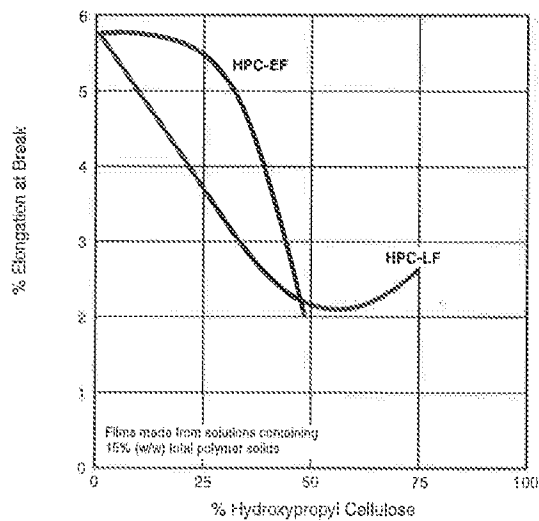
**Figure 23: Film Tensile Strength of Blends of METHOCEL E5P LV Hypromellose/Hydroxypropyl Cellulose**



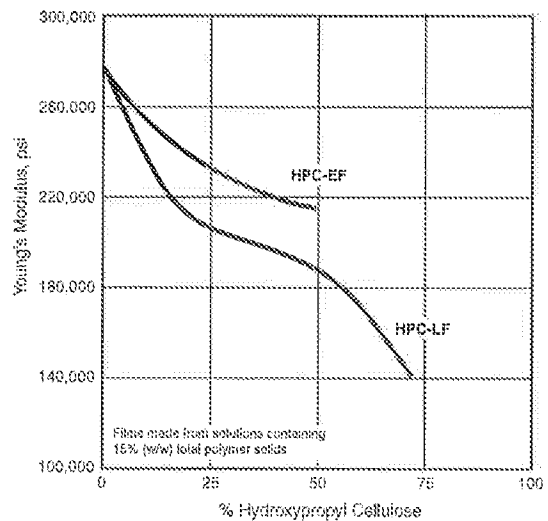
**Figure 24: Film Strength of Blends of METHOCEL E5P LV Hypromellose/Hydroxypropyl Cellulose**



**Figure 25: Film Elongation of Blends of METHOCEL E5P LV Hypromellose/Hydroxypropyl Cellulose**



**Figure 26: Young's Modulus of Blends of METHOCEL E5P LV Hypromellose/Hydroxypropyl Cellulose**



# Pigmented Coatings

---

Very often it is desirable to apply opaque, pigmented coatings. Pigmented coatings can provide additional light stability to dosage forms and help differentiate tablets by color. Most pigments are supplied as color dispersions in alcohol, propylene glycol, or water. Pigments used in tablet coatings generally are either aluminum lakes or iron oxides, with titanium dioxide and talc used in white or pastel colors.

When pigments are used in tablet coatings they have a significant effect on the film properties. As with any plastic, when pigments are added a reduction in flexibility and strength is usually experienced. Additionally, because the pigments are usually dispersed in a plasticizer like propylene glycol, the plasticization effect may be entirely dependent on the ratio of pigment to polymer used in the formulation. In the plasticizer section of this brochure it was shown that additional levels of propylene glycol in an unpigmented film did not necessarily lead to reduced film properties.

To examine the effect of the plasticizer supplied in pigment dispersions, a series of pigmented films was prepared using pigment and METHOCEL B15 Premium LV at a ratio of 1 to 2. A variety of commercial pigments were used and film properties plotted in Figure 27 versus the amount of plasticizer contributed by the pigment dispersion. A control unpigmented METHOCEL B15 Premium LV is plotted as well.

It is clearly seen that the pigmented films exhibit a distinct loss of strength from the unpigmented control. The very high levels of propylene glycol found in some of the pigment dispersions did not detrimentally affect film strength.

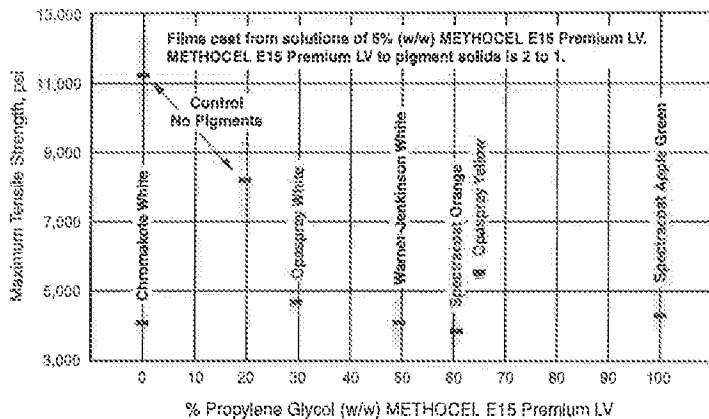
Normally, pigmented films are formulated with additional plasticizer even though there may be an excess available from the pigment dispersion. To evaluate the effect of additional plasticizer, an additional 20% polyethylene glycol 600 (PEG 600) was added to the pigmented film coatings. In every case an increase in film properties (Figure 28) was noted with the additional plasticizer. This strongly suggests the use of the optimal 20-30% additional polyethylene glycol plasticizer when formulating pigmented films.

## Microbiological Considerations

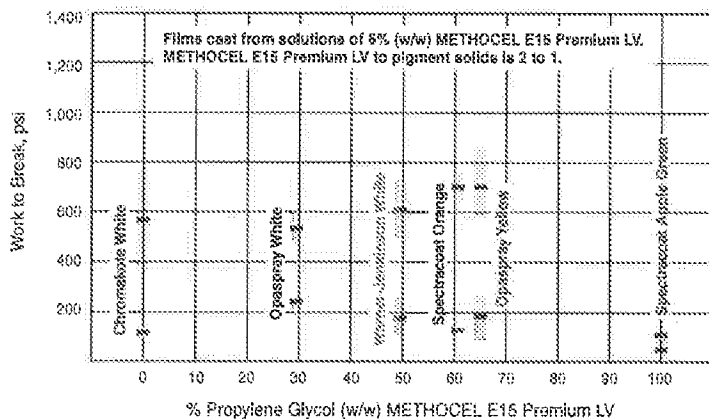
When working with aqueous solutions, the possibility of microbiological contamination is a valid concern. It has been reported in the literature that many cellulose-based polymers can support microbiological growth. With cellulose ethers the higher the level of chemical substitution, the more resistant to enzymatic breakdown the polymer becomes. METHOCEL E products have a relatively high level of substitution but will support microbiological growth in the very low viscosity grades. It is therefore important to take reasonable care in the preparation of coating solutions to keep all the equipment and excipients clean. Usually GMP standards will suffice. METHOCEL Premium products are supplied to meet USP guidelines for microbiological attributes and are certified to be free of the USP pathogenic organisms. The production process for METHOCEL products is essentially self-sterilizing so no significant contamination of METHOCEL has ever occurred.

It is normally recommended that aqueous solutions be made and used within one week's time. Additional protection can be obtained by the use of preservatives like propylparaben or methylparaben or the addition of alcohol to the solution.

**Figure 27: Effect of Various Pigment Dispersions on Film Properties of METHOCEL E15 Premium LV (Tensile Strength)**



**Figure 28: Effect of Adding PEG 600 to Pigmented METHOCEL E15 Premium LV Films (Toughness)**



### Use of METHOCEL in Sugar Coatings

METHOCEL products have found application in sugar coatings as a seed coating or as a film modifier. As a substrate, METHOCEL E15 Premium LV or METHOCEL E13 Premium LV can be used with or without plasticizer to place a protective layer over the tablet core. In cases where additional protection from moisture is desired, METHOCEL® hydrocellulose can be combined with METHOCEL in a consistent blend of methylene chloride, alcohol and applied to the tablet core. At 25% METHOCEL Standard 10 Premium and 75% METHOCEL E15 Premium LV, little effect is seen on drug dissolution. At higher levels of ethylcellulose (e.g., >75%) a delay in drug diffusion is experienced.

METHOCEL products may be used in sugar coatings to reduce coating brittleness. In cases where hydrocellulose is dispersed in sugar systems, we recommend the use of METHOCEL E15 Premium LV or possibly METHOCEL E13 Premium LV for sugar compatibility. Compatibility is improved if the polymer is fully hydrated before the addition of sugar. Use of both types for some of the sugar solids will also improve polymer compatibility in sugar systems. These hydrocellulose polymers may also replace the conventional use of acacia and/or gelatin in sugar coatings.

*Copyright © 1997, The Dow Chemical Company*

# Production Considerations

---

## Preparation of the Coating Solution

Proper preparation of the coating solution is necessary to achieve good coating in a reasonable amount of time.

METHOCEL polymers are supplied as a fine powder and will rapidly hydrate in cold water. The hydration is so rapid that without proper agitation, clumps of gels with dry powder inside can form. Once formed, additional agitation and time are needed to completely hydrate all the polymer.

Several methods are useful in aiding the timely preparation of coating solutions.

**1. Dispersion in hot water.** Since METHOCEL products are not soluble in hot water, lump-free dispersing can be easily accomplished by dispersion in hot water. Temperatures in excess of 80°C are recommended, but even temperatures of 60-80°C will slightly aid the polymer dispersion. The polymer dispersion is then cooled to cause polymer hydration. The cooling may be accomplished externally in jacketed vessels or part of the water may be reserved as cold water and added after polymer dispersion.

**2. Blending of ingredients.** Another method to minimize polymer agglomeration consists of separating polymer particles by dilution with other coating excipients. Combinations of dry pigments, dry plasticizer, and polymer can often be added directly to process water.

**3. Dispersion in a nonsolvent.** When formulating hydroalcoholic or organic solvent coatings of METHOCEL, solutions are easily made by dispersing the polymer in alcohol (a non-solvent) and then hydrated by the addition of water. In organic systems METHOCEL can be dispersed in alcohol and then hydrated by the addition of methylene chloride.

**4. Direct addition to room temperature water.** This method, while the most difficult, is often used in large scale coating operations due to equipment and heat transfer limitations. METHOCEL products may be added directly to process water if a slow controlled addition of the polymer is used in combination with good agitation. Care must be taken to control the agitation level to minimize foaming and allow sufficient time for complete polymer hydration.

---

## A Word about Foaming

Solutions of METHOCEL products have a tendency to foam under agitation because these polymers are surface active. Air entrapped in ingredients or that is introduced by excessive agitation can increase this tendency. However, once foaming had occurred, it can be reduced by defoamers like Dow Corning AF products or by settling over time.

When mixing solutions, the level of agitation should be changed as thickening occurs. Agitation should move the fluid surface in the vessel and start to pull a small vortex. As thickening occurs, the agitator speed will need to be increased to maintain sufficient mixing. Proper blade placement and baffling are necessary so consultation with equipment suppliers is recommended. A quiescent period of 15-45 minutes is usually recommended after mixing to allow most of the entrapped air to move to the surface.

## A Word about Filtration

It is often beneficial to subject coating solutions to filtration. This ensures that any lumps or incompletely hydrated polymers are removed. Use of a 60 to 80 mesh screen can normally be accomplished with commercial filtration devices. Gravity flow is possible, but air pressurization is preferred for rapid filtration.

## Application Rate

The rate of coating solution delivery is an important process control variable. While fast application of the coating solution is important to minimize batch times it must be remembered there are limitations for each type of equipment and coating solution being utilized. Practical limits can be determined by utilizing the basic thermodynamic relationships and monitoring exhaust air temperature. The flow rate of coating

solutions is generally controlled by a positive displacement pump, although other coating systems may rely upon an air pressure pot delivery system. When using positive displacement pumps, viscosity of the coating solution is not a critical factor in the flow rate. However, when using a pressure pot delivery system, the viscosity of the coating solution will affect the delivery rate. It should also be recognized that the temperature of the coating solution will affect viscosity of the coating solution. As with most polymers, when the solution temperature increases (while staying below the thermal gelation temperature) the coating viscosity will decrease. The application of shear to concentrated polymer solutions can also reduce viscosity.

## Air Atomization Pressure and Flow Rates

The amount of air being applied and the amount of pressure being utilized to atomize the liquid droplets can determine the efficiency and effectiveness of the coating system. It is important to make the smallest possible droplet size to ensure rapid drying. Air atomization is generally preferred with aqueous systems because it enhances initial liquid evaporation. Small droplets are necessary to achieve a fine, smooth surface on coating tablets. Changes in air flow rates and air atomization pressure can affect delivery rates when using a system other than a positive displacement pump.

---

## Spray Systems

The numbers and types of spray nozzles utilized in any coating pan are of critical importance and information should be obtained from the equipment manufacturer. It is particularly important that nozzles be selected that can achieve a proper pattern for uniform coating of the tablet surfaces. Nozzle fan angles, the number of nozzles, and the distance from the tablet bed must be optimized so uniform side-to-side coating of the tablet bed is achieved without tending to overwet tablets or spray dry the solution. We recommend you seek information from both the equipment manufacturers for nozzles and coating pans for further information.

## Coating Equipment

Modern film coating pans are manufactured by a variety of suppliers. Each supplier has its own configuration for the coating operation. Basic differences revolve around movement of air through the tablet bed. Some manufacturers move air upward through the tablet bed while others pass the air downward through the fluid bed. Some pans are fully perforated around the entire circumference while others have areas or regions of perforation. While there are some basic differences between these designs, each has its own beneficial features and can be effectively utilized for aqueous film coating. Some of the typical manufacturers of equipment today are: Driam of West Germany, Thomas Engineering, Vector Corporation, and Key Industries in the U.S.

Fluid bed coating of tablets may also be desirable for certain formulations. A variety of fluid bed coating equipment is manufactured with many application methods such as top spray, bottom spray, side spray, and tangential rotary spray. Fluid bed equipment is available from Glatt Air Techniques, Vector Corporation, and Aeromatic, as well as other companies.

## Drying Air

The volume, temperature, and humidity of the drying air are critical in optimization of the coating process. Generally it is desirable to deliver the greatest possible amount of air at the desired 70-90°C temperature without causing over-fluidization of the tablet bed. Often older equipment is limited by air handling capacity or heating capacity. Therefore we recommend measurement of air flow rates and consultation with equipment manufacturers if coating capacity appears limited. Air flow rates should be monitored during the coating process as exhaust air filters can become restricted with over-spray, dust, and tablet particles.

The condition of inlet air also affects the drying capacity. High humidity air dries tablets less effectively than dry air. Thus a process optimized for one day's atmospheric conditions may need daily adjustment if the inlet air is not conditioned and controlled.

Normally, inlet air is controlled to the range of 70-90°C. Higher or lower temperatures may be desired for specific temperature-sensitive products or for fast coating application.

## The Tablet Load

The pan loading and tablet dimensions will also affect coating efficiency. Most coating pans must be filled to an operative volume for tablet coating. Too few or too many tablets lead to inconsistent coating quality. Even the shape of tablets will affect the optimal loading and drying efficiency.



---

of the coating operation. Care must be taken in selection of the tablet shape to be coated. Friable tablets or soft tablets may be very difficult to coat. Tablets using a high level of waxy or hydrophobic ingredients may be difficult to coat due to poor adhesion or poor wetting.

### **Conclusion**

Reliable, tough, printable, and economic tablet coatings can be applied quickly and efficiently, meeting USP, EP, JP, and FDA requirements, from aqueous systems based on METHOCEL E Premium products.

Where desired, the carriers for such coatings can be blends of water with alcohol or other solvents ... up to 100% organic solvent if the coater has not yet initiated aqueous coating.

Dow has been making cellulose ethers for pharmaceutical applications since 1938. Years of experience in solving application needs and developing new products that optimize desired performance are available to Dow customers and prospects.

These resources include a comprehensive bibliography of medical articles on the use of METHOCEL products in pharmaceuticals. In addition, Dow maintains several drug master files, a repository of information that you and the FDA can use to gain quick approval of new formulations. Specialized technical services such as individual consultation or problem-solving assistance by experts who specialize in pharmaceutical applications or METHOCEL products are available on request.

### **For More Information**

To request additional information, complete literature, or product samples, you can reach a Dow representative by calling the phone numbers listed on the back cover. Or visit our web site at [www.methocel.com](http://www.methocel.com).

# Health Considerations

---

METHOCEL cellulose ether products resemble naturally occurring plant and seaweed gums in many of their chemical, physical, and functional properties since all these materials possess a basic carbohydrate structure.

Gums have a long history of use in food and pharmaceutical products. METHOCEL cellulose ether products have had extensive evaluation and testing in both acute and long-term feeding studies in a number of species, including humans. Their use as food additives in a wide variety of food items and their broad use in pharmaceutical products attest to the safety of METHOCEL Premium cellulose ether products.

Dow has been making cellulose ethers for pharmaceutical applications since 1938. Years of experience in solving application needs and developing new products that optimize desired performance are available to Dow customers and prospects.

While dusts from METHOCEL products could conceivably cause temporary mechanical irritation to the skin and eyes under extreme conditions, and may be considered as a nuisance when breathed, the products are not expected to present a significant health hazard in handling. Although no special precautions typically need to be observed to handle the products safely, the use of an approved dust respirator in dusty atmospheres is advised.

METHOCEL products are organic polymers that will burn under the right conditions of heat and oxygen supply. Fires can be extinguished by conventional means.

## Storage

In storage or use of any dusts or fine powders, good house-keeping is required to prevent dusts in air from reaching possibly explosive levels.

## Caution

Under certain conditions, a fine dust of this material in air may cause a dust explosion when exposed to heat, sparks, or open flame. See "METHOCEL Cellulose Ethers Technical Handbook" when handling large quantities. The National Fire Protection Association's NFPA 654, "*Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions in the Chemical, Dye, Pharmaceutical and Plastic Industries*," should also be followed.

With METHOCEL cellulose ether products with particle sizes of 74 $\mu$  or less (finer than 200 mesh), critical levels are reached at concentrations of 28  $\text{g}/\text{m}^3$  (0.03  $\text{oz}/\text{ft}^3$ ). The minimum ignition energy to cause a dust explosion is in the range of 28 mJ. Static of a human body has about 25 mJ.

It is also highly desirable to control dusts in order to prevent accidents caused by slippery floors and equipment.

As a USP grade item, Premium METHOCEL cellulose ethers should not be stored next to peroxides or other oxidizing agents, poisons, pesticides, or ill-smelling articles.

---

## Accidental Spills

To prevent employee falls and accidents, floor spills of dry powder should be thoroughly vacuumed or swept up. Any slight residual product on the walls or floor can then be flushed with water into a sewer. If the spill is a viscous solution it should be further diluted with water before disposal.

## Disposal

Dow studies show that METHOCEL cellulose ether products do not biodegrade (that is, they show no 5-, 10-, or 20-day BODs) in aquatic environments. They should therefore present no ecological hazard to aquatic life.

Since METHOCEL cellulose ether products and their formulations present no significant ecological problems they can be disposed of by industrial incineration or in an approved landfill, providing all federal, state, and local regulations are observed. Dow recommends that the material be buried in an approved landfill; incineration should be done under carefully controlled conditions to avoid possibility of dust explosion.

## Customer Notice

Dow encourages its customers to review their applications of Dow products from the standpoint of human health and environmental quality. To help ensure that Dow products are not used in ways for which they are not intended or tested, Dow personnel will assist customers in dealing with ecological and product safety considerations. Your Dow sales representative can arrange the proper contacts.





**For more information, complete literature, and product samples,  
you can reach a Dow representative at the following numbers:**

**From the United States and Canada:** .....call 1-800-447-4369  
.....fax 1-989-832-1465

**In Europe:** .....toll-free +800 3 694 6367<sup>1</sup>  
.....call +32 3 450 2240  
.....fax +32 3 450 2815

**From Latin America and Other Global Areas:** .....call 1-989-832-1560  
.....fax 1-989-832-1465

<sup>1</sup>Toll free from Austria (00), Belgium (00), Denmark (00), Finland (990), France (00), Germany (00), Hungary (00), Ireland (00), Italy (00), The Netherlands (00), Norway (00), Portugal (00), Spain (00), Sweden (00), Switzerland (00), and the United Kingdom (00).

Or you can contact us on the Internet at [www.methocel.com](http://www.methocel.com)

**NOTICE:** No freedom from any patent owned by Seller or others is to be inferred. Because use conditions and applicable laws may differ from one location to another and may change with time, Customer is responsible for determining whether products and the information in this document are appropriate for Customer's use and for ensuring that Customer's workplace and disposal practices are in compliance with applicable laws and other governmental enactments. Seller assumes no obligation or liability for the information in this document. **NO WARRANTIES ARE GIVEN; ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE EXPRESSLY EXCLUDED.**



# EXHIBIT J

## (905) UNIFORMITY OF DOSAGE UNITS

**Change to read:**

This general chapter is harmonized with the corresponding texts of the *European Pharmacopoeia* and the *Japanese Pharmacopoeia*. Portions of the general chapter text that are national *USP* text, and are not part of the harmonized text, are marked with symbols (†) to specify this fact.

\*NOTE—In this chapter, *unit* and *dosage unit* are synonymous.

To ensure the consistency of dosage units, each unit in a batch should have a drug substance content within a narrow range around the label claim. Dosage units are defined as dosage forms containing a single dose or a part of a dose of drug substance in each unit. The uniformity of dosage units specification is not intended to apply to suspensions, emulsions, or gels in unit-dose containers intended for external, cutaneous administration.

The term “uniformity of dosage unit” is defined as the degree of uniformity in the amount of the drug substance among dosage units. Therefore, the requirements of this chapter apply to each drug substance being comprised in dosage units containing one or more drug substances, unless otherwise specified elsewhere in this Pharmacopoeia.

The uniformity of dosage units can be demonstrated by either of two methods, *Content Uniformity* or *Weight Variation* (see Table 1). The test for *Content Uniformity* of preparations presented in dosage units is based on the assay of the individual content of drug substance(s) in a number of dosage units to determine whether the individual content is within the limits set. The *Content Uniformity* method may be applied in all cases.

The test for *Weight Variation* is applicable for the following dosage forms:

|      |   |
|------|---|
| (W1) | Solutions enclosed in unit-dose containers and into soft capsules;  |
| (W2) | Solids (including powders, granules, and sterile solids) that are packaged in single-unit containers and contain no active or inactive added substances;  |
| (W3) | Solids (including sterile solids) that are packaged in single-unit containers, with or without active or inactive added substances, that have been prepared from true solutions and freeze-dried in the final containers and are labeled to indicate this method of preparation; and  |
| (W4) | Hard capsules, uncoated tablets, or film-coated tablets, containing 25 mg or more of a drug substance comprising 25% or more, by weight, of the dosage unit or, in the case of hard capsules, the capsule contents, except that uniformity of other drug substances present in lesser proportions is demonstrated by meeting the requirements for <i>Content Uniformity</i> . |

The test for *Content Uniformity* is required for all dosage forms not meeting the above conditions for the *Weight Variation* test. <sup>25 (USP34)</sup>

**Table 1. Application of Content Uniformity (CU) and Weight Variation (WV) Tests for Dosage Forms**

| Dosage Form   | Type                | Subtype                                  | Dose & Ratio of Drug Substance |                |
|---|---------------------|--|--------------------------------|----------------|
|   |                     |  | ≥25 mg and ≥25%                | <25 mg or <25% |
| Tablets   | Uncoated            |  | WV                             | CU             |
|   |                     | Film                                     | WV                             | CU             |
|   | Coated              | Others                                   | CU                             | CU             |
| Capsules  | Hard                |  | WV                             | CU             |
|   |                     | Suspension, emulsion, or gel             | CU                             | CU             |
|   | Soft                | Solutions                                | WV                             | WV             |
| Solids in single-unit containers                          | Single component    |  | WV                             | WV             |
|   |                     | Solution freeze-dried in final container | WV                             | WV             |
|   | Multiple components | Others                                   | CU                             | CU             |
| Solutions in unit-dose containers and into soft capsules. |                     |  | WV                             | WV             |
| Others  |                     |  | CU                             | CU             |

**Change to read:**

### CONTENT UNIFORMITY

Select not fewer than 30 units, and proceed as follows for the dosage form designated.

Where different procedures are used for assay of the preparation and for the *Content Uniformity* test, it may be necessary to establish a correction factor to be applied to the results of the latter.

**Solid Dosage Forms**—Assay 10 units individually using an appropriate analytical method. Calculate the acceptance value (see Table 2).

**Liquid or Semi-Solid** <sup>25 (USP34)</sup> Dosage Forms—Assay 10 units individually using an appropriate analytical method. <sup>25 (USP34)</sup> Carry out the assay on the amount of well-mixed material that is removed from an individual container

\*European Pharmacopoeia and Japanese Pharmacopoeia text not accepted by the United States Pharmacopoeia. Alternatively, products listed in item (4) above that do not meet the 25 mg/25% threshold limit may be tested for uniformity of dosage units by Mass Variation instead of the Content Uniformity test if the concentration relative standard deviation (RSD) of the drug substance in the final dosage units is not more than 2%, based on process validation data and development data, and if there has been regulatory approval of such a change. The concentration RSD is the RSD of the concentration per dosage unit (w/w or w/v), where concentration per dosage unit equals the assay result per dosage unit divided by the individual dosage unit weight. See the RSD formula in Table 2. <sup>25 (USP34)</sup>



2 <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units

in conditions of normal use, and express the results as delivered dose. Calculate the acceptance value (see Table 2).

**Calculation of Acceptance Value**—Calculate the acceptance value by the formula:

$$|M - \bar{X}| + ks$$

in which the terms are as defined in Table 2.

Table 2

| Variable                                | Definition  | Conditions                          | Value   |
|---|---|-------------------------------------|---|
| $\bar{X}$                               | Mean of individual contents ( $\chi_1, \chi_2, \dots, \chi_n$ ), expressed as a percentage of the label claim |                                     |   |
| $\chi_1, \chi_2, \dots, \chi_n$         | Individual contents of the units tested, expressed as a percentage of the label claim                         |                                     |   |
| n                                       | Sample size (number of units in a sample)   |                                     |   |
| k                                       | Acceptability constant  | If n = 10, then k =                 | 2.4   |
|   |   | If n = 30, then k =                 | 2.0   |
| s                                       | Sample standard deviation   |                                     | $\left[ \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n (\chi_i - \bar{X})^2}{n-1} \right]^{1/2}$  |
| RSD                                     | Relative standard deviation (the sample standard deviation expressed as a percentage of the mean)             |                                     | $100s/\bar{X}$  |
| M (case 1) to be applied when T ≤ 101.5 | Reference value   | If 98.5% ≤ $\bar{X}$ ≤ 101.5%, then | M = $\bar{X}$ (AV = ks)   |
|   |   | If $\bar{X}$ < 98.5%, then          | M = 98.5%<br>(AV = 98.5 - $\bar{X}$ + ks)   |
|   |   | If $\bar{X}$ > 101.5%, then         | M = 101.5%<br>(AV = $\bar{X}$ - 101.5 + ks)   |
| M (case 2) to be applied when T > 101.5 | Reference value   | If 98.5 ≤ $\bar{X}$ ≤ T, then       | M = $\bar{X}$<br>(AV = ks)  |
|   |   | If $\bar{X}$ < 98.5%, then          | M = 98.5%<br>(AV = 98.5 - $\bar{X}$ + ks)   |
|   |   | If $\bar{X}$ > T, then              | M = T%<br>(AV = $\bar{X}$ - T + ks)   |
| Acceptance value (AV)                   |   |                                     | general formula:<br><br>$ M - \bar{X}  + ks$<br>(Calculations are specified above for the different cases.) |
| L1                                      | Maximum allowed acceptance value  |                                     | L1 = 15.0 unless otherwise specified  |

Table 2 (Continued)

| Variable | Definition  | Conditions   | Value                                |
|----------|---|--|--------------------------------------|
| L2       | Maximum allowed range for deviation of each dosage unit tested from the calculated value of M   | On the low side, no dosage unit result can be less than $[1-(0.01)(L2)]M$ , while on the high side no dosage unit result can be greater than $[1+(0.01)(L2)]M$ . (This is based on an L2 value of 25.0.) | L2 = 25.0 unless otherwise specified |
| T        | Target content per dosage unit at the time of manufacture, expressed as a percentage of the label claim. Unless otherwise stated, T is 100.0 per cent, or T is the manufacturer's approved target content per dosage unit. <small>(USP34)</small> |  |                                      |

**WEIGHT VARIATION**

Carry out an assay for the drug substance(s) on a representative sample of the batch using an appropriate analytical method. This value is result A, expressed as percent of label claim (see *Calculation of Acceptance Value*). Assume that the concentration (weight of drug substance per weight of dosage unit) is uniform. Select not fewer than 30 dosage units, and proceed as follows for the dosage form designated.

**Uncoated or Film-Coated Tablets**—Accurately weigh 10 tablets individually. Calculate the content, expressed as % of label claim, of each tablet from the weight of the individual tablet and the result of the Assay. Calculate the acceptance value.

**Hard Capsules**—Accurately weigh 10 capsules individually, taking care to preserve the identity of each capsule. Remove the contents of each capsule by a suitable means. Accurately weigh the emptied shells individually, and calculate for each capsule the net weight of its contents by subtracting the weight of the shell from the respective gross weight. Calculate the drug substance content of each capsule from the net weight of the individual capsule content, and the result of the Assay. Calculate the acceptance value.

**Soft Capsules**—Accurately weigh 10 intact capsules individually to obtain their gross weights, taking care to preserve the identity of each capsule. Then cut open the capsules by means of a suitable clean, dry cutting instrument such as scissors or a sharp open blade, and remove the contents by washing with a suitable solvent. Allow the occluded solvent to evaporate from the shells at room temperature over a period of about 30 minutes, taking precautions to avoid uptake or loss of moisture. Weigh the individual shells, and calculate the net contents. Calculate the drug substance content in each capsule from the weight of product removed from the individual capsules and the result of the assay. Calculate the acceptance value.

**Solid Dosage Forms Other Than Tablets and Capsules**—Proceed as directed for *Hard Capsules*, treating each unit as described therein. Calculate the acceptance value.

**Liquid Dosage Forms**—Accurately weigh the amount of liquid that is removed from each of 10 individual containers in conditions of normal use. If necessary, compute the equivalent volume after determining the density. Calculate the drug substance content in each container from the mass of product removed from the individual containers and the result of the assay. Calculate the acceptance value.

**Calculation of Acceptance Value**—Calculate the acceptance value as shown in *Content Uniformity*, except that the individual contents of the units are replaced with the individual estimated contents defined below.

|                                 |   |  |
|---------------------------------|---|--|
| $\chi_1, \chi_2, \dots, \chi_n$ | = | individual estimated contents of the units tested, where $\chi_i = w_i \times A/\bar{W}$     |
| $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n$          | = | individual weights of the units tested   |
| A                               | = | content of drug substance (% of label claim) obtained using an appropriate analytical method |
| $\bar{W}$                       | = | mean of individual weights<br>( $w_1, w_2, \dots, w_n$ )                                     |

**Change to read:**

**CRITERIA**

Apply the following criteria, unless otherwise specified.

**Solid, Semi-Solid, and Liquid Dosage Forms**—The requirements for dosage uniformity are met if the acceptance value of the first 10 dosage units is less than or equal to L1%. If the acceptance value is > L1%, test the next 20 units, and calculate the acceptance value. The requirements are met if the final acceptance value of the 30 dosage units is ≤ L1%, and no individual content of any dosage unit is less than  $[1-(0.01)(L2)]M$  nor more than  $[1+(0.01)(L2)]M$  as specified in the *Calculation of Acceptance Value* under *Content Uniformity* or under *Weight Variation*. Unless otherwise specified, L1 is 15.0 and L2 is 25.0.

# EXHIBIT K



## USP–NF General Chapter <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units

Type of Posting Explanatory Note  
Posting Date 20–Apr–2007

This explanatory note is intended to clarify the steps taken by USP to address issues regarding the harmonization of <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units. It includes current chapter revision status, background information, testing requirements, statistical basis, information about the upcoming revision, and frequently asked questions.

### Status of General Chapter <905>

As of January 1, 2007, the updated, harmonized revision of General Chapter <905> published as an Interim Revision Announcement in Pharmacopeial Forum 32(6) [November–December 2006] is official. This version also is published in the 1st Supplement to USP 30–NF 25.

### Revision History and Rationale

The ICH Steering Committee considers international harmonization of about 10 specific compendial test chapters as critical to attaining full utility of the ICH Q6A guideline. ICH Q6A recommended the harmonization of certain tests for dosage forms, including General Chapter <905>.

- USP published a revised, harmonized General Chapter <905> on pages 2505–2510 of USP 28–NF 23 with an implementation date of April 1, 2006. This chapter contains the global harmonized text approved by the Pharmacopeial Discussion Group (PDG) as well as USP–specific national text. The PDG consists of USP, the Japanese Pharmacopeia, and the European Pharmacopeia.
- In Pharmacopeial Forum 31(6) [November–December 2005], USP postponed the implementation date of the revised, harmonized General Chapter <905> to January 1, 2007, to allow USP to consider comments received on Weight Variation as a test alternative in certain cases.
- In USP 29–NF 24, both the official and the revised, harmonized versions of <905> appeared. The revised, harmonized version (pages 2760–2785) was to become official on January 1, 2007, but was superseded by the subsequent revision in the Sixth Interim Revision Announcement to USP 29–NF 24 in Pharmacopeial Forum 32(6) [November–December 2006].

### Official Harmonized Chapter <905>

The revision of General Chapter <905> that became official on January 1, 2007, was initially proposed in Pharmacopeial Forum 32(4) [July–August 2006] and made official through the Sixth Interim Revision Announcement to USP 29–NF 24 in Pharmacopeial Forum 32(6) [November–December 2006]. The official text includes changes based on the comments received.

### Harmonized Chapter Testing Requirements

<905> includes Content Uniformity and Weight Variation procedures and acceptance criteria to evaluate uniformity of dosage units. These apply to both newly registered and existing products.

Content Uniformity is the default test and may be applied in all cases. The test for Weight Variation is applicable for dosage forms specified as W1, W2, W3, and W4.

- The requirements for dosage uniformity are met if the acceptance value of the first 10 dosage units is less than or equal to L1%.
- If the acceptance value is greater than L1%, test the next 20 units and calculate the acceptance value. The requirements are met if the final acceptance value of the 30 dosage units is less than or equal to L1% and all individual dosage units fall within the ranges calculated using L2 factor.

### Statistical Basis of the New Content Uniformity Criteria

The primary concept underlying the criteria in the revised <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units is that of statistical tolerance intervals. The general idea of tolerance intervals is to use the available data to form an interval that covers a specified proportion of the distribution underlying the data. For content uniformity, this would be the distribution of content and the intent is to form an interval about the label claim within which a specified proportion of units would fall. Technically, an interval (a, b) is a 95% (the "confidence") tolerance interval for 90% of the distribution (the "coverage") if 95% of such intervals with repeated sampling would cover at least 90% of the distribution. The tolerance intervals can be parametric or nonparametric. Parametric intervals are based on an assumed distribution, usually the normal. When assuming the normal distribution, two–sided tolerance intervals are of the form,  $\bar{x} \pm kS$ , where  $\bar{x}$  is the average, S the standard deviation, and k depends on the coverage,

confidence, and sample size. (The multiplier, k, becomes smaller as sample size increases, but never to 0. For 95% coverage, for example, it will decrease to 1.96.) This is the form of the criteria used in General Chapter <905>.

The basic tolerance interval has been modified in four ways in constructing the criteria of General Chapter <905>:

1. The tolerance interval is modified to correspond to the standard two-stage testing of content uniformity; i.e., where 10 units are tested and then, if needed, an additional 20 are tested. This requires a  $k_1$  after the first stage and then a different  $k_2$  after the second stage, if needed, where the sample is larger.
2. The acceptance interval is allowed to be asymmetric with respect to the label claim in those cases where the potency range specified in the monograph is not symmetric. The T of General Chapter <905> is the center of the potency range.
3. A 1.5% interval about the label claim is included so deviations of the mean content from the label claim count only to the extent they are greater than this percentage. This is reflected in the calculation of M.
4. The k's are chosen so that the new procedure has operating characteristics similar to those of the prior General Chapter <905> criteria. Having similar operating characteristics does NOT mean that data that would pass by the prior criteria will pass by the new criteria and similarly for data that would fail. What it means is that is for data drawn from a distribution that is acceptable for content uniformity, the probability of passing is similar with the old and new criteria.

Statistical References

Further information regarding the statistical basis of the chapter is available in the references noted below.

1. Katori, N, Aoyagi N, Kojima S, A Proposal for Revision of the Content Uniformity Test and Weight Variation Test, PF 23(6), 5325-5333, 1997.
2. Content Uniformity—Evaluation of the USP Pharmacopeial Preview, Members of the Statistics Working Group PhRMA, PF 24(5), 7029-7044, 1998.
3. Content Uniformity—Alternative to the USP Pharmacopeial Preview, Members of the Statistics Working Group PhRMA, PF 25(2), 7939-7948, 1999.
4. Recommendation for a Globally Harmonized Uniformity of Dosage Units Test, Members of the Statistics Working Group PhRMA, PF 25(4), 8609-8624, 1999.
5. Recommendations for a Globally Harmonized Uniformity of Dosage Units Test, Members of the Statistics Working Group PhRMA, PF 25(4), 8609-8624, 1999.

Calculation Examples

On the following pages are 3 examples involving different outcomes.

Please submit comments or further inquiries on this topic to William Brown, Senior Scientist at [web@usp.org](mailto:web@usp.org) or +1-301-816-8380.

|   |  |       |         |
|---|--|-------|---------|
| <b>Example 1: Pass on First</b>                             |  |       |         |
|   |  |       |         |
| 95  | lower monograph limit  |       |         |
| 110   | upper monograph limit  | 102.5 | T value |
|   |  |       |         |
| 15.0  | L1 (use 15.0 unless monograph specifies a different value)   |       |         |
| 25.0  | L2 (use 25.0 unless monograph specifies a different value)   |       |         |
|   |  |       |         |
| Step 1 --- content (or weight) of 10 units --- X1, ..., X10 |  |       |         |
| 102.00000   | Average of the 10 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) --<br>-- AVERAGE(X1, ..., X10) |       |         |

|   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| 4.60000   | Standard deviation of the 10 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) — STDEV(X1, ..., X10) |  |  |
| 102.00000   | M value  |  |  |
| 11.04000  | AV   |  |  |
| Result:   | Pass, stop here  |  |  |
|   | (USP rounding applied)   |  |  |
| Step 2 — content (or weight) of 20 additional units — X11, ..., X30 |  |  |  |
|   | Average of the 30 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) — AVERAGE(X1, ..., X30)          |  |  |
|   | Standard deviation of the 30 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) — STDEV(X1, ..., X30) |  |  |
|   | Minimum value of the 30, expressed as % of the label claim   |  |  |
|   | Maximum value of the 30, expressed as % of the label claim   |  |  |
|   | M value  |  |  |
|   | AV   |  |  |
|   | Minimum allowed value of 30, expressed as % of label claim   |  |  |
|   | Maximum allowed value of 30, expressed as % of label claim   |  |  |
| Result:   |  |  |  |
|   | (USP rounding applied)   |  |  |

|                             |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| <b>Example 2: Fail-Pass</b> |  |  |
|                             |  |  |

|  |  |       |         |
|--|--|-------|---------|
| 90   | lower monograph limit  |       |         |
| 110  | upper monograph limit  | 100.0 | T value |
| 15.0   | L1 (use 15.0 unless monograph specifies a different value)   |       |         |
| 25.0   | L2 (use 25.0 unless monograph specifies a different value)   |       |         |
| Step 1 --- content (or weight) of 10 units --- X1, ..., X10            |  |       |         |
| 107.00000  | Average of the 10 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) --<br>-- AVERAGE(X1, ..., X10)     |       |         |
| 4.60000  | Standard deviation of the 10 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) --- STDEV(X1, ..., X10) |       |         |
| 101.50000  | M value  |       |         |
| 18.54  | AV   |       |         |
| Result:  | Does not pass; proceed to step 2   |       |         |
|  | (USP rounding applied)   |       |         |
| Step 2 ---content (or weight) of 20 additional units --- X11, ..., X30 |  |       |         |
| 106.50000  | Average of the 30 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) --<br>-- AVERAGE(X1, ..., X30)     |       |         |
| 4.60000  | Standard deviation of the 30 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) --- STDEV(X1, ..., X30) |       |         |
| 78.00000   | Minimum value of the 30, expressed as % of the label claim   |       |         |
| 118.20000  | Maximum value of the 30, expressed as % of the label claim   |       |         |
| 101.50000  | M value  |       |         |
| 14.20000   | AV   |       |         |

|         |  |  |  |
|---------|--|--|--|
| 76.1    | Minimum allowed value of 30, expressed as % of label claim |  |  |
| 126.9   | Maximum allowed value of 30, expressed as % of label claim |  |  |
| Result: | Passes   |  |  |
|         | (USP rounding applied)                                     |  |  |

|   |  |     |         |
|---|--|-----|---------|
| <b>Example 3: Fail-Fail</b>   |  |     |         |
| 90  | lower monograph limit  |     |         |
| 110   | upper monograph limit  | 100 | T value |
| 15.0  | L1 (use 15.0 unless monograph specifies a different value)   |     |         |
| 25.0  | L2 (use 25.0 unless monograph specifies a different value)   |     |         |
| Step 1 — content (or weight) of 10 units — X1, ..., X10             |  |     |         |
| 107.00000   | Average of the 10 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) — AVERAGE(X1, ..., X10)          |     |         |
| 4.60000   | Standard deviation of the 10 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) — STDEV(X1, ..., X10) |     |         |
| 101.50000   | M value  |     |         |
| 18.54000  | AV   |     |         |
| Result:   | Does not pass; proceed to step 2   |     |         |
|   | (USP rounding applied)   |     |         |
| Step 2 — content (or weight) of 20 additional units — X11, ..., X30 |  |     |         |



|           |  |  |  |
|-----------|--|--|--|
| 106.50000 | Average of the 30 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) — AVERAGE(X1, ..., X30)          |  |  |
| 5.20000   | Standard deviation of the 30 values expressed as % of the label claim (do not round) — STDEV(X1, ..., X30) |  |  |
| 94.70000  | Minimum value of the 30, expressed as % of the label claim   |  |  |
| 127.10000 | Maximum value of the 30, expressed as % of the label claim   |  |  |
| 101.50000 | M value  |  |  |
| 15.40000  | AV   |  |  |
| 76.1      | Minimum allowed value of 30, expressed as % of label claim   |  |  |
| 126.9     | Maximum allowed value of 30, expressed as % of label claim   |  |  |
| Result:   | Fails  |  |  |
|           | (USP rounding applied)   |  |  |

Frequently Asked Questions

**Question:** What is meant by the term "special procedure" as found under Content Uniformity in the official chapter?

**Answer:** Typically, the Content Uniformity determination is made on individual dosage units using the procedure found in the Assay. For certain products, a separate procedure is given in the monograph. Where that is the case, the monograph procedure would be considered a special procedure for content uniformity. Theophylline Extended-Release Capsules is an example of a monograph requiring a special procedure for content uniformity.

**Question:** The harmonized <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units became official on January 1, 2007. Does the harmonized chapter completely replace the current text?

**Answer:** Yes. As of January 1, 2007, only the revised, harmonized chapter text is official.

**Question:** I have heard from European colleagues that existing products may be exempt from the requirements of the harmonized chapter and that it will only apply to new formulations. Will the USP allow such grandfathering?

**Answer:** The harmonized chapter text applies to any monograph, new or existing, that includes a test for Uniformity of Dosage Units.

**Question:** What is the maximum allowable acceptance value for Content Uniformity testing at level 2, where a total of 30 dosage units have been tested? Our confusion is in the use of the L1 and L2 values (15.0 and 25.0, respectively).

**Answer:** Content Uniformity testing can be performed in two stages. The first stage has a total of 10 dosage units tested, and an additional 20 dosage units are tested to complete testing at the second stage. L1 is used as the limit for the acceptance value for both stages of test. L2 is used only in the second stage of testing where a total of 30 dosage units have been tested, and it is only used in the calculation of the allowed limits for individual dosage unit content.

**Question:** Weight Variation is allowed for hard capsules, uncoated tablets, and film-coated tablets containing 25 mg or more of the drug substance comprising 25% or more of the weight of the dosage unit. If a product, such as an uncoated tablet, contains two drug substances but only one of them meets the requirement for weight variation, how can the requirement be met?

Answer: Weight Variation is generally seen as requiring less lab work than the procedure for Content Uniformity. Thus, the allowance to substitute Weight Variation for Content Uniformity may be seen as offering a benefit to manufacturers. In the case of a two-component tablet, the Uniformity of Dosage Units test requirement will be met by the Weight Variation procedure for the component that is present at 25 mg or more and also comprising 25% of the total dosage unit mass. The other component will require the Content Uniformity procedure.

Copyright © 2013 The United States Pharmacopeial Convention

# EXHIBIT L

- [54] **METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DRYING COATED SHEET MATERIAL**
- [75] Inventors: **Thomas C. Arter**, Rochester; **Eugene H. Barbee**, East Rochester, both of N.Y.
- [73] Assignee: **Eastman Kodak Company**, Rochester, N.Y.
- [21] Appl. No.: **247,976**
- [22] Filed: **Mar. 27, 1981**
- [51] Int. Cl.<sup>3</sup> ..... **F26B 3/04; F26B 13/02**
- [52] U.S. Cl. .... **34/23; 34/34; 34/155; 34/231; 34/233; 118/58; 427/372.2**
- [58] Field of Search ..... **34/155, 231, 233, 225, 34/23, 34; 427/372.2, 377; 118/58, 62, 63**

[56] **References Cited**  
**U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

|           |         |                 |           |
|-----------|---------|-----------------|-----------|
| 1,144,896 | 2/1915  | Fosbraey        | 34/62     |
| 2,320,702 | 6/1943  | Marchese et al. | 154/1     |
| 3,012,335 | 12/1961 | Allander et al. | 34/155    |
| 3,287,815 | 11/1966 | Yunghahn        | 34/7      |
| 3,374,106 | 3/1968  | Thygeson        | 117/105.3 |
| 3,404,025 | 10/1968 | Wootten         | 117/120   |
| 3,500,741 | 3/1970  | Bok             | 98/115    |
| 3,508,947 | 4/1970  | Hughes          | 117/34    |
| 3,525,164 | 8/1970  | Brown           | 34/155    |
| 3,599,341 | 8/1971  | Darcy et al.    | 34/23     |
| 3,632,374 | 1/1972  | Greiller        | 117/34    |
| 3,710,758 | 1/1973  | Hoff            | 118/63    |
| 4,023,472 | 5/1977  | Grunder et al.  | 98/40     |
| 4,051,278 | 9/1977  | Democh          | 427/326   |
| 4,061,082 | 12/1977 | Shuler          | 98/40     |
| 4,064,832 | 12/1977 | Chujo et al.    | 118/323   |
| 4,075,976 | 2/1978  | Clayton         | 118/324   |
| 4,113,903 | 9/1978  | Choinski        | 427/420   |
| 4,170,930 | 10/1979 | Lind            | 98/40     |
| 4,245,397 | 1/1981  | Larr et al.     | 34/155    |
| 4,287,240 | 9/1981  | O'Connor        | 427/402   |

**OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

Pp. 250-255 from textbook, "Electrostatic Precipitation," by Sabert Oglesby, Jr. et al, published by Marcel Dekker Inc., New York, N. Y. 1978.  
H. L. Dryden and G. B. Schubauer, Journal of the

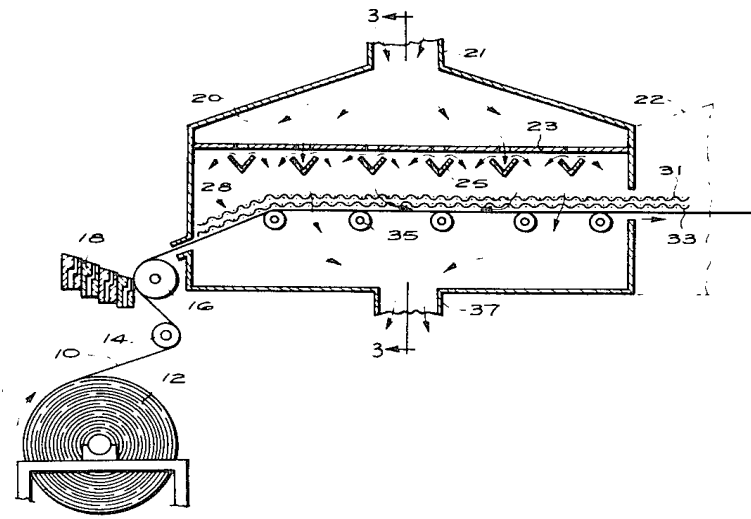
Aeronautical Sciences, vol. 14, No. 4, pp. 221-228, Apr. 1947.  
Research Disclosure, Item 18916, Jan. 1980, published by Industrial Opportunities, Ltd., Homewell, Havant Hampshire, PO9 1EF United Kingdom.  
Pp. 262-272 from textbook, "Industrial Electrostatic Precipitation," by H. J. White, published by Addison-Wesley Publishing Co., Inc., 1963.  
Pp. 45.8, 45.9, 46.0, 46.1, 46.2 and 46.3 from "The Electrostatic Precipitator Manual," Chapter II, Section 8, copyright 1977, by The McIlvaine Company.

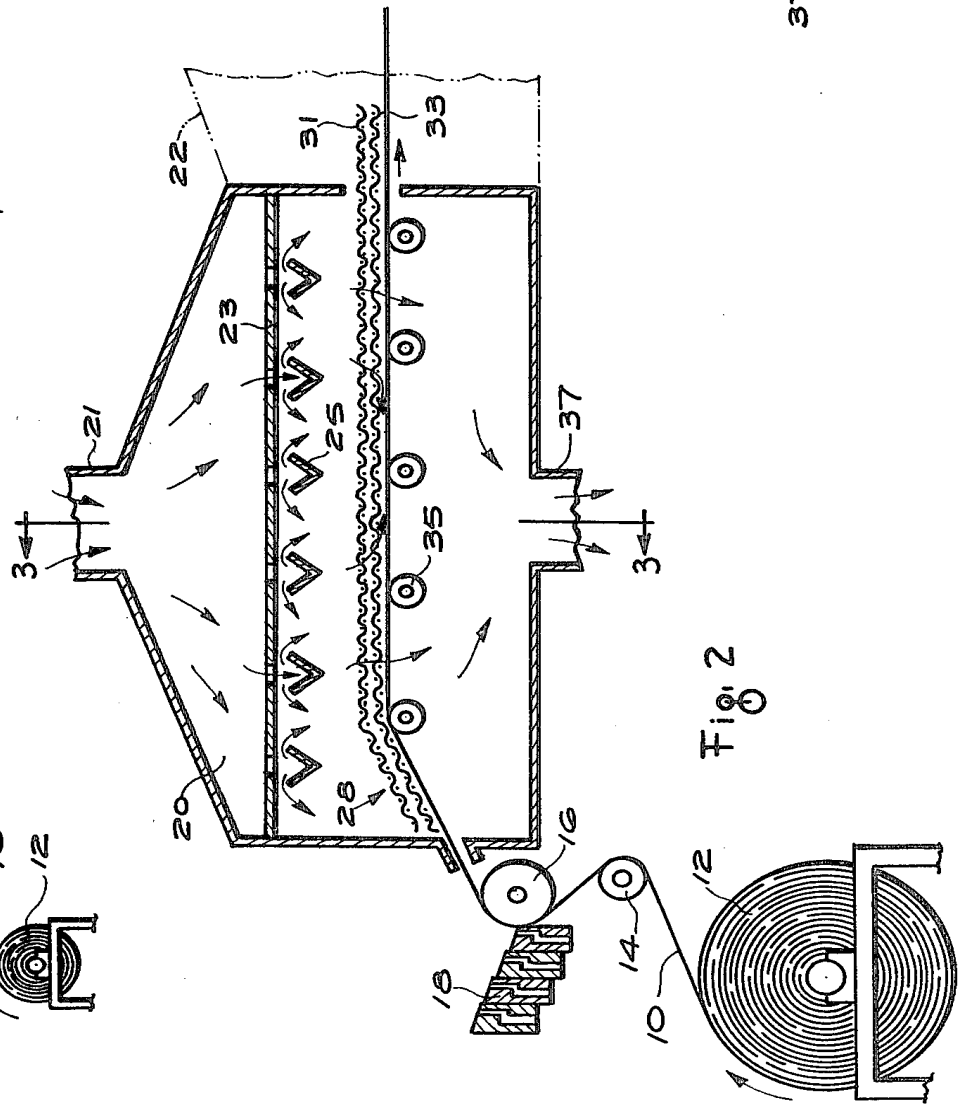
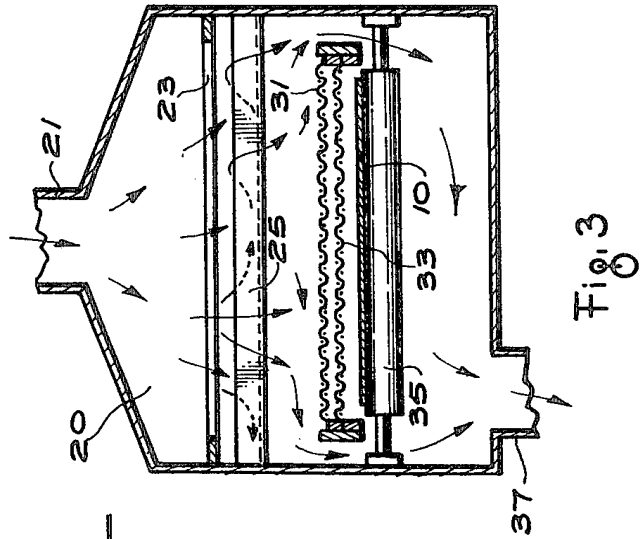
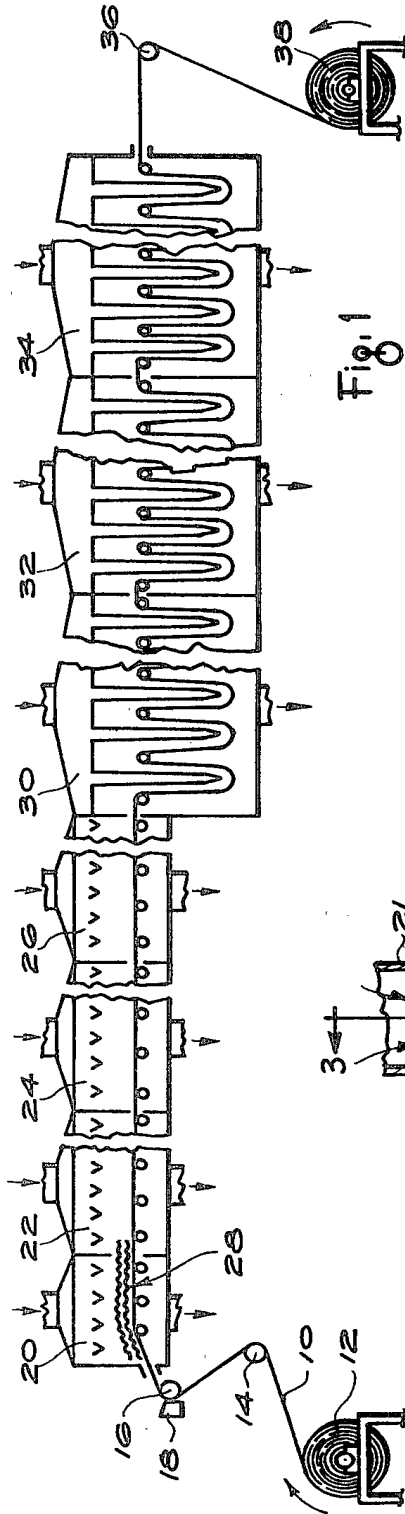
*Primary Examiner*—Larry I. Schwartz  
*Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—Alfred P. Lorenzo

[57] **ABSTRACT**

In the drying of sheet materials which have been coated with a layer, or with two or more superposed layers, of liquid coating composition, improved drying conditions which result in less formation of mottle are provided by the use of a foraminous shield, such as a screen or perforated plate, located in close proximity to the coated surface. The sheet material, for example a web of paper or polymeric film or a succession of discrete sheets of paper or polymeric film is conveyed through a drying zone, along a predetermined path, while a gaseous drying medium, such as air maintained at an elevated temperature, which serves to promote evaporation of the liquid medium in the coating composition, is directed through the foraminous shield onto the coated surface. The foraminous shield functions to promote uniform heat transfer conditions and restricts the extent to which spent gaseous drying medium, which is discharged from the drying zone, comes into contact with the surface of the coating, thereby minimizing mottle formation. While the foraminous shield is useful in any drying operation in which mottle formation is a problem, it is especially advantageous in the drying of photographic materials, particularly those comprising one or more layers formed from coating compositions that contain volatile organic solvents.

**28 Claims, 4 Drawing Figures**





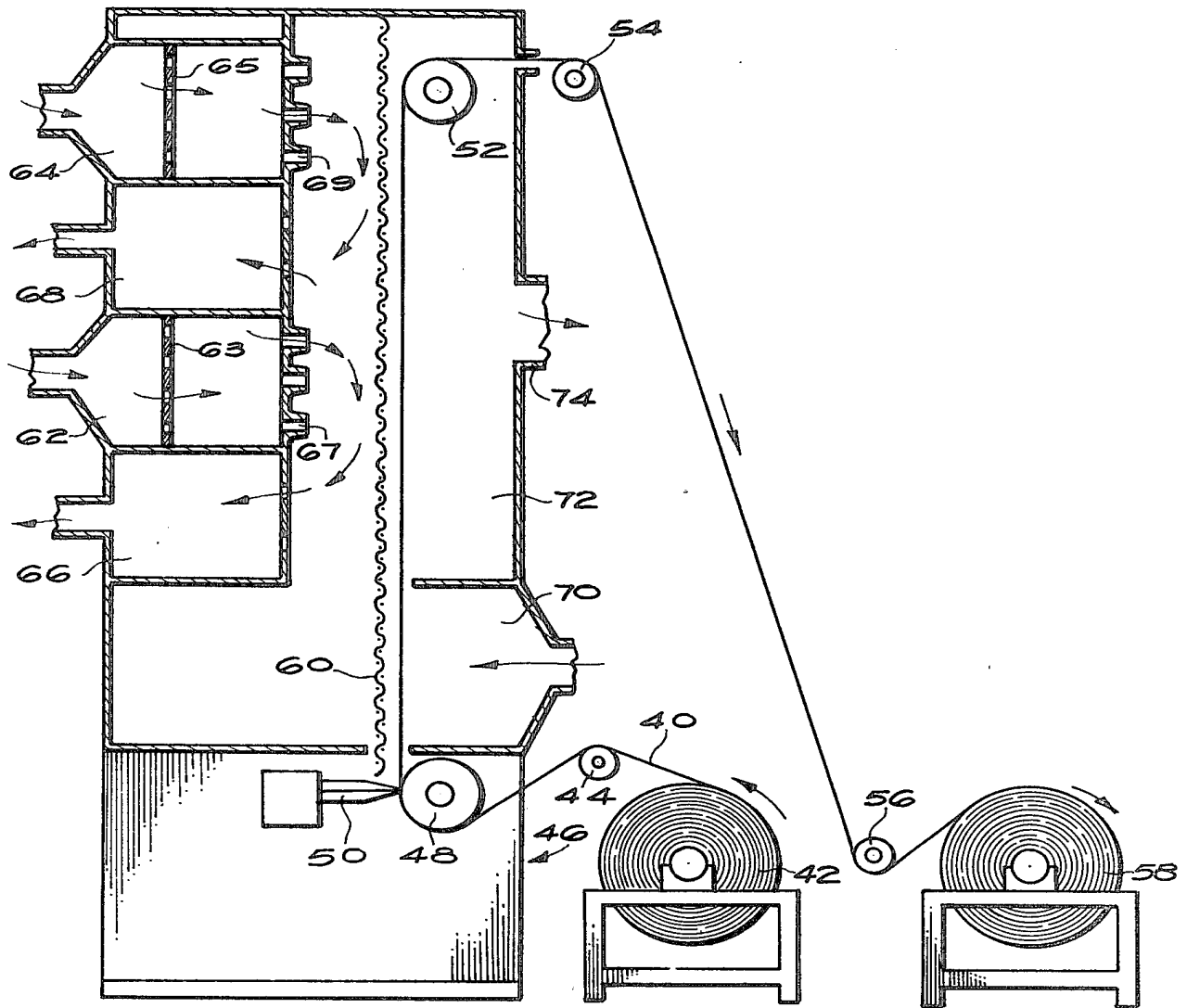


Fig. 4

## METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DRYING COATED SHEET MATERIAL

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates in general to the drying of liquid coating compositions that have been coated in the form of a layer, or in the form of two or more superposed layers, on a sheet material; for example, coating compositions that have been coated on web supports in the manufacture of photographic films and papers or in the manufacture of lithographic printing plates. More specifically, this invention relates to an improved method and apparatus for drying coated sheet materials in which the tendency for mottle formation to occur during the drying process is significantly reduced.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

In the drying of sheet materials that have been coated with a layer of liquid coating composition, it is a common practice to utilize a drying apparatus in which a gaseous drying medium, usually air that has been heated to a suitable elevated temperature, is brought into direct contact with the coated layer in order to bring about evaporation of the liquid medium from the layer. In such driers, the gaseous drying medium is directed in a manner which distributes it uniformly over the surface of the coated layer under carefully controlled conditions that are designed to result in a minimum amount of disturbance of the layer. A common type of drier utilizes a plenum into which the gaseous drying medium is admitted and from which the gaseous drying medium is discharged through a multiplicity of holes, slots or nozzles onto the surface of the layer which is to be dried. In the operation of such driers, the sheet material, which is typically in the form of a web, is continuously conveyed through the drier along a predetermined path at a suitable rate commensurate with the drying load and the operating conditions utilized; while spent gaseous drying medium—that is, gaseous drying medium which has become laden with vapor evaporated from the layer of coating composition—is continuously discharged from the drier. As the web travels through the drier, the gaseous drying medium is directed from the plenum onto the coated surface and the spent medium flows away from the path of travel to be discharged.

A wide variety of different drier designs are known to the art. Thus, for example, the drier can be designed so that the flow of spent gaseous drying medium is essentially transverse to the path of travel of the web, i.e., the spent medium flows over the edges of the web so as to exit from the drier, or so that the flow of spent medium is essentially perpendicular to the path of travel of the web. Also, while it is usually most convenient for the sheet material to be in the form of a web, it can instead be in the form of a succession of discrete sheets conveyed through the drier by suitable means such as an endless belt.

The drying of sheet materials which have been coated with two or more superposed layers is carried out in the same manner as is described above in reference to a single layer coating. To facilitate description, reference is frequently made herein to the coating and drying of a "layer" of coating composition, but it is to be understood, unless the context otherwise requires, that the discussion applies also to the coating and drying of two or more superposed layers. Moreover, the method and apparatus of the present invention find

utility not only in manufacturing operations involving wet-on-wet coating techniques, but also in manufacturing operations involving sequential coating and drying steps. As will be readily understood by those skilled in the coating art, wet-on-wet coating techniques include simultaneous multi-layer coating methods, in which two or more distinct layers are applied to a web support at the same time and the resulting multi-layer composite is dried, and methods in which distinct layers are applied separately, but in close succession and the resulting multi-layer composite is dried, i.e., a first layer is coated on the web and then a second layer is coated over the first layer while it is still in a wet state, and so forth. In contrast, in operations involving sequential coating and drying steps, a first layer is coated and dried, a second layer is coated over the first layer and dried, and so forth.

One of the most common and difficult to avoid problems that is encountered in the drying of coating compositions is the formation of mottle. It is a problem that is encountered under a wide variety of circumstances. For example, mottle, or non-uniform density, is frequently encountered when compositions consisting of solutions of a polymeric resin in an organic solvent are coated in layer form onto sheet materials, such as webs of synthetic organic plastic material. Mottle is an especially severe problem when the coating solvent is a volatile organic solvent but can occur to a significant extent even with aqueous coating compositions or with coating compositions utilizing an organic solvent of low volatility. The mottle is an undesirable defect in some instances because it detracts from the appearance of the finished product and in some instances, such as in the photographic art, it is also undesirable because it adversely affects the functioning of the coated article. Various expedients have been employed heretofore in an effort to eliminate, or at least minimize, the formation of mottle in coated layers. For example, surfactants are often added to the coating compositions as described, for example, in U.S. Pat. No. 3,514,293. These are sometimes effective in reducing mottle, but in many cases the degree to which mottle forms is still excessive in spite of the inclusion of a surfactant in the coating composition. It is believed that there are a variety of factors which can contribute to the formation of mottle and the exact mechanism of its formation is not well understood. Regardless of the specific causes of mottle, its formation in coated layers, as well as the occurrence of other defects such as streaks and lines, is a long standing problem of serious concern in the manufacture of coated materials, and especially in the manufacture of photographic products.

Among the factors which contribute to mottle formation in the drying process are non-uniform drying conditions that commonly exist in driers of the type described hereinabove. Thus, for example, turbulent flow conditions within the gaseous drying medium can result in physical disturbance of the coated layer that manifests itself as mottle in the dried product. Also, non-uniformities with respect to temperature, with respect to heat transfer rates, and with respect to the concentration of vapor in the gaseous drying medium, lead to non-uniform rates of evaporation at different points within the coated layer. The cooling which results from evaporation causes the temperature at the surface of the coated layer to decrease, so that variation in the rate of evaporation leads to the establishment of temperature

differences within the layer. Such temperature differences are believed to function to induce convective flow in the layer which is a significant factor in contributing to the formation of mottle. Particular difficulty in this regard is caused by the flow of the spent gaseous drying medium in direct contact with the surface of the coated layer.

The present invention is directed toward the objective of providing an improved method and apparatus for drying coated sheet materials which reduces or eliminates many of the deficiencies in known drying methods and apparatus that contribute to the formation of mottle.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

In the method of this invention, a coated sheet material is advanced along a predetermined path through a drying zone and a gaseous drying medium is uniformly directed onto the coated surface of the sheet material so as to bring about evaporation of the liquid medium in the coating, with resulting formation of spent gaseous drying medium which flows away from the path of travel for discharge from the drying zone. In order to promote uniform heat transfer conditions and reduce the degree to which flowing spent gaseous drying medium contacts the coated surface, and thereby decrease the extent of mottle formation, a foraminous shield, such as a screen or perforated plate, which is permeable to the gaseous drying medium, is positioned in opposed closely-spaced relationship with the coated surface of the sheet material. The foraminous shield serves to promote flow of the spent gaseous drying medium adjacent the surface of the shield which is remote from the coated surface and to form a quiescent region between the shield and the coated surface which is rich in the vapor of the liquid medium and in which flow of the spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted.

The foraminous shield is believed to function in several ways to reduce mottle formation. For example, it functions to diffuse currents within the gaseous drying medium and thereby protect the coated layer from turbulence which can cause physical disruption and deformation of the coated layer by impacting thereon. It also suppresses dispersion of the vapor generated by evaporation of the liquid medium to thereby form a "barrier layer" of such vapor between it and the coated surface which helps to promote the maintenance of uniform conditions of temperature and heat transfer. Of particular importance, it suppresses flow of spent gaseous drying medium directly adjacent the coated surface and tends to confine most of such flow to a region on the side of the shield which is remote from the coated surface, to thereby protect the coated layer from the creation of non-uniform conditions which lead to the formation of mottle.

Apparatus for carrying out the method of this invention includes means for advancing the coated sheet material along a predetermined path through a drying zone, such as, for example, drive means and rollers which form a typical web conveyance system, means for uniformly directing a gaseous drying medium onto the coated surface of the sheet material, and a foraminous shield which is positioned in close proximity to the path along which the sheet material travels for performing the functions described hereinabove. In order to provide the uniform flow of gaseous drying medium, for example, warm dry air, the drying apparatus typi-

cally includes a plenum which is connected to the gaseous drying medium supply means and functions to provide a controlled uniform flow of the gaseous drying medium through a multiplicity of holes, slots or nozzles. The foraminous shield, for example a screen or perforated plate which is permeable to the gaseous drying medium, is interposed between the plenum and the path in opposing spaced relationship with the wall of the plenum having the multiplicity of holes, slots or nozzles through which the gaseous drying medium flows. The foraminous shield is located in close proximity to the path, so as to form a quiescent region between it and the coated surface in which flow of the spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted, and is spaced from the opposing wall of the plenum to form a region therebetween in which flow of the spent gaseous drying medium can occur without disturbing the coated surface.

While the foraminous shield that is employed in accordance with this invention can extend over the entire length of the drier, it is not ordinarily necessary for it to do so. It performs its essential function in the initial stage of the drying process and, accordingly, is also effective when used only in the initial portion of the drier. Good results are typically achieved with the foraminous shield extending from the start of the drying zone over a distance equal to about 5 to about 25 percent of the total length of the drying zone. On the other hand, the foraminous shield should preferably be of a width which is substantially commensurate with the width of the coated surface of the sheet material, and most preferably somewhat greater than such width, in order to provide protection for the entire coated surface. Under some conditions, optimum results are achieved when a foraminous shield is also utilized in the coating zone adjacent the inlet to the drier to protect the flow of coating composition from disturbance by ambient air currents during the coating operation. Such use of a foraminous shield is described in copending commonly assigned United States patent application Ser. No. 139,506, "Coating Apparatus Provided With A Protective Shield," by Thomas R. O'Connor, filed Apr. 11, 1980 and issued Sept. 1, 1981, as U.S. Pat. No. 4,287,240, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference. To achieve the maximum benefit, the foraminous shield should substantially enclose the flow of coating composition during the coating operation, should extend over the coated web in the region between the coating hopper and the drier, should extend over the coated web as it passes through the entrance slot into the drier, and should be positioned within the drier in close proximity to the path of the web over a suitable initial portion of the total length of the path.

Since the foraminous shield of this invention tends to suppress the evaporation rate by confining the evaporated vapor, and thereby slows down the driving process, it should preferably not extend into the drier further than is needed to achieve the objective of reducing mottle formation. In this way, the objective of achieving relatively rapid drying in a drier of reasonable length is achieved simultaneously with the objective of solving the mottle problem.

The "drying mottle" with which this invention is concerned is closely related to, but different from, "coating mottle." The formation of coating mottle occurs, as the name indicates, in the coating zone, whereas the formation of drying mottle occurs in the drying



zone. A coating process which is highly effective in alleviating coating mottle is described in Democh, U.S. Pat. No. 4,051,278 issued Sept. 27, 1977. In this process, at least two of (1) the temperature of the atmosphere in the coating zone, (2) the temperature of the coating composition at the point where it is coated on the support, and (3) the temperature of the support at the point where the coating composition is applied thereto, are maintained at a temperature substantially equivalent to the equilibrium surface temperature of the coated layer within the coating zone. The process of the U.S. Pat. No. 4,051,278 is advantageously utilized in combination with the present invention so as to minimize both coating mottle and drying mottle.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is a schematic representation of the apparatus of this invention illustrating a preferred embodiment in which the foraminous shield extends over only a small portion of the total length of the drier.

FIG. 2 is a representation to a larger scale of the first section of the drier of FIG. 1 illustrating in more detail the positioning and function of the foraminous shield.

FIG. 3 is a section taken along line 3—3 of FIG. 2.

FIG. 4 illustrates a further alternative embodiment of the invention in which the web travels within the drier along a vertical path rather than the horizontal path illustrated in FIG. 1.

#### DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

The invention is described herein with particular reference to the coating and drying of photographic materials. This field of manufacture involves highly exacting specifications so that the occurrence of mottle, streaks, lines, or other defects in the coated layer is of critical concern. However, the invention is in no way limited to use in the manufacture of photographic materials and can be advantageously employed in any process, used in the manufacture of any product, in which a gaseous drying medium is utilized in the drying of a coated layer formed from a mottle-prone coating composition and in which the formation of streaks, lines, or mottle in the coating is of concern. Examples of products to whose manufacture the invention is particularly applicable include photothermographic films, dielectric recording films and lithographic printing plates.

A significant reduction in mottle can be achieved by the method of this invention in the coating and drying of any film-forming material, or mixture of film-forming materials, which can be incorporated in a coating composition which comprises an evaporable liquid medium. It is particularly advantageous in the coating and drying of solutions of polymeric resins in organic solvents because such solvents are often relatively volatile in nature and, in consequence, coatings formed therefrom are prone to mottle formation. Among the numerous examples of film-forming materials with which the invention can be advantageously employed, the following polymers are representative: acetals, acrylics, acetates, cellulose, fluorocarbons, amides, ethers, carbonates, esters, styrenes, urethanes, sulfones, gelatins, and the like. The polymers can be homopolymers or they can be copolymers formed from two or more monomers. Liquid vehicles for use in the coating composition can be chosen from a wide range of suitable materials. For example, the coating composition can be an aqueous composition or an organic solution comprising an or-

ganic solvent. Typical organic solvents include ketones such as acetone or methyl ethyl ketone, hydrocarbons such as benzene or toluene, alcohols such as methanol or isopropanol, halogenated alkanes such as ethylene dichloride or propylene dichloride, esters such as ethyl acetate or butyl acetate, and the like. Combinations of two or more organic solvents can, of course, be utilized as the liquid vehicle or the liquid vehicle can be a mixed aqueous-organic system.

The weight percentage of solids in the coating composition can be as high as ninety percent, or more, but will more typically be in the range of about one to about twenty percent by weight. Optimum viscosity for the coating composition will depend on the type of coating apparatus employed and can be as high as 60,000 centipoise, or more, but will more typically be in the range from about 1 to about 1,000 centipoise. In addition to the film-forming material and the liquid vehicle, the coating composition can contain various optional ingredients such as pigments, surfactants, viscosity modifiers, leveling agents, antifoaming agents, and so forth. The incorporation of surfactants in the coating composition is advantageous in that they serve to reduce the surface tension of the composition and to reduce the rate of change of surface tension as a function of temperature. Accordingly, there is less force causing fluid motion as a result of temperature difference within the coated layer and, in consequence, a reduced tendency to form mottle.

Coating compositions which present particular difficulty because of their pronounced tendency to form mottle are those in which the liquid vehicle is relatively volatile, and it is with these coating compositions that the method and apparatus described herein are most useful. In particular, such compositions are those in which the liquid vehicle is an organic solvent having a boiling point at atmospheric pressure in the range of from about 40° C. to about 85° C.

The object which is coated and dried by the method of this invention can be composed of any material whatever, as long as it is a material which can be coated with a liquid coating composition. It will most typically take the form of a sheet material which is coated as a continuous web in a continuous coating process, but could also be in discrete form such as separate sheets carried through the coating and drying zones by a conveyor belt or similar device. Typical examples of useful sheet materials are polymeric films such as films of polyesters, polyolefins or cellulose esters; metal foils such as aluminum or lead foils, paper, polymer-coated paper such as polyethylene-coated paper; and laminates comprised of various layers of plastics or of plastic and metal foil.

Any suitable type of coating apparatus can be used in the method of this invention. Thus, for example, the coating composition can be coated by dip coating, air knife coating, roll coating, gravure coating, extrusion coating (for example as described in U.S. Pat. No. 2,681,294), multilayer bead coating (for example as described in U.S. Pat. No. 2,761,791), curtain coating (for example as described in U.S. Pat. Nos. 3,508,497 and 3,632,374), and so forth. The coating method used can be one in which only a single layer is coated or two or more layers can be coated simultaneously. The coating speed is limited only by the limitations of the particular coating equipment employed and can be as high as 400 meters per minute, or more. Typically, coating speeds of about 10 to about 300 meters per minute would generally be employed in practicing the method described

herein. Wet coverage of the coating composition is also a matter of choice and will depend upon many factors such as the type of coating apparatus employed, the characteristics of the coating composition, and the desired thickness of the coated layer after drying. Typically, wet coverages employed in the method of this invention will be in the range of from about 0.1 to about 1,000 cubic centimeters per square meter of support surface and more usually in the range of from about 5 to about 100 cubic centimeters per square meter. In the interests of decreasing the formation of mottle, it can be advantageous to utilize a high percentage of solids in the coating composition to thereby permit coating at a low wet coverage and with a high viscosity. This tends to immobilize the coating composition and thereby to reduce convective flow and minimize the formation of mottle.

The problem of mottle formation usually becomes increasingly severe as the speed of coating is increased. The reason is that as speed of coating is increased a greater quantity of liquid medium must be removed in the drier per unit of time, and this requires a greater volume of gaseous drying medium. In consequence, the gaseous drying medium must be supplied to the drying zone at a greater volumetric flow rate with resulting increased tendency to disturb the coating and cause mottle. Thus, in some instances, coating speed must be limited to that at which the level of mottle is tolerable. However, with use of the foraminous shield of this invention, it is feasible to substantially reduce the level of mottle while retaining the same coating speed or to substantially increase coating speed without any resulting increase in mottle.

As previously explained, the method and apparatus of this invention are especially useful in drying coating compositions that contain volatile organic solvents. In order to reduce the hazards associated with the drying of such compositions, it is advantageous to introduce drying air into the drier at a very high volumetric flow rate so that the average concentration of solvent in the drier will be maintained at a low level. The need for very high volumetric flow rates results in a requirement for relatively high pressures in the plenum and, as a consequence, the drying air can travel across the surface of the coated layer at relatively high velocities which can seriously disturb the coated layer. Under these circumstances, there is an especially acute need for protecting the coated layer against localized currents and the foraminous shield of this invention is very effective in performing this function. Moreover, since the foraminous shield can be located at a substantial distance from the plenum, a region of relatively large volume can exist therebetween and, accordingly, there is an adequate volume of drying air in this region at all times to keep the concentration of solvent in the air at a level far below that at which hazardous conditions could develop. In addition to facilitating safe operation of driers used to dry coatings containing volatile organic solvents, the method and apparatus of this invention are especially useful in such coating operations because the coatings are particularly prone to streaking and mottle information, and the foraminous shield greatly reduces the tendency for these defects to occur.

In the drying of coating compositions containing volatile organic solvents, the drier is typically operated under negative pressure. In this way, there is an intake of air from the surrounding atmosphere through openings in the drier, such as the web inlet and exit slots,

rather than an outflow of solvent laden air from the drier to the surroundings as would occur if the drier were operated under positive pressure. The intake of air at the inlet slot tends to create turbulent conditions adjacent thereto which can be a significant factor in the formation of mottle, but the foraminous shield of this invention is highly effective in protecting the coating from such turbulence.

It is with image-forming compositions that the formation of mottle is usually the greatest problem. Thus, it is in the coating of such compositions that the present invention is usually most valuable.

In the method of this invention, gaseous drying medium passes from the plenum through the foraminous shield to contact the coated layer. At the same time, spent gaseous drying medium, containing vapor generated by evaporation of the liquid medium in the coated layer, passes through the foraminous shield in the opposite direction and flows away from the path of the web to exit from the drier. By keeping the flow of the spent gaseous drying medium substantially out of contact with the surface of the coated layer, such common defects as streaking and mottle formation are greatly reduced. It should be noted that, under typical conditions, only a small fraction of the gaseous drying medium coming from the plenum passes through the foraminous shield, since most of it flows within the region between the foraminous shield and the plenum. Thus, the concentration of solvent in this region is quite low as compared to the much higher concentration in the quiescent region between the coated surface and the foraminous shield.

An important feature of the method and apparatus of this invention is that the foraminous shield structure which is utilized functions to suppress flow of spent gaseous drying medium in contact with the surface of the coated layer while leaving the spent gaseous drying medium free to flow from the drying zone, i.e., the foraminous shield structure does not block exit of the spent gaseous drying medium from the drying zone. Thus, for example, in a typical embodiment of the apparatus, the spent gaseous drying medium is able to flow along the surface of the foraminous shield that is remote from the coated layer and pass over the edges of such surface and thereafter over the edges of the moving web to exit from the drying zone. In this respect, the invention differs in a critical manner from a drier in which the plenum is positioned very close to the surface of the moving web. In such a drier, there is only the narrow zone between the web surface and the plenum where spent drying medium can exhaust, and this narrow zone will have a very high concentration of vapor which could pose considerable hazard when the liquid medium is an organic solvent. In marked contrast, in using the method and apparatus of this invention, there can be a relatively spacious zone between the foraminous shield and the plenum in which spent drying medium can exhaust, and in this zone the concentration of vapor is sufficiently low to present little or no hazard, even with solvents which have a low explosive limit.

Use of the foraminous shield of this invention can result in some degree of suppression of the drying rate. However, this is easily accommodated by extending the length of the drier or by utilizing drying air which impinges on the side of the web opposite the coated layer as well as drying air which impinges on the surface of the coated layer. The warm air which impinges on the side of the web opposite to the coated layer is

effective in introducing heat into the web to thereby promote evaporation of the liquid medium in the coated layer.

While the method of this invention is particularly useful in the coating of compositions containing organic solvents, it can also be advantageously employed in the coating of photographic materials comprising layers formed from aqueous solutions of hydrophilic colloids. Representative examples of such coating compositions are silver halide emulsions in which the hydrophilic colloid is gelatin. Coating compositions employed in the method of this invention can be of various types, such as solutions, dispersions, and suspensions. The invention is useful in the coating and drying of many types of photographic layers in addition to image-forming layers, such as, for example, subbing layers, interlayers, protective overcoat layers, antistatic layers and anti-halation layers.

The path of the sheet material within the drier is a matter of design choice and is dependent upon the particular design of drier that is best suited to accomplish the particular job involved. Generally, the sheet material is conveyed along a horizontal, or substantially horizontal, path. However, under particular conditions, it may be desirable to utilize a design in which the sheet material is conveyed along a path which is inclined from the horizontal or along a path which is vertical. If desired, the drier can utilize a flat-bed design in an initial portion thereof, in which the foraminous shield is utilized, and a festoon design in a subsequent portion.

As previously explained, the foraminous shield can extend throughout the length of the drier, but will most usually be utilized only in the initial portion, such as in a region extending over about 5 to about 25 percent of the total length of the drying zone. The foraminous shield is most effective in the initial stage of the drying process, but is also of some benefit at subsequent stages. Thus, if the design of a particular drier renders it impractical to incorporate the foraminous shield into the drier immediately adjacent to the point of entry of the web, it can be mounted within a region further along the path of travel where it can be conveniently accommodated.

The plenum can be of any design that is useful in providing the uniform distribution of gaseous drying medium that is required in driers of the type described herein. The fresh gaseous drying medium can be supplied to the plenum at a single inlet, but will more usually be supplied at several inlets depending on the length of the drier.

Air that has been heated to a suitable elevated temperature is usually used as the gaseous drying medium. However, inert gases, such as nitrogen gas, can be used in situations where the nature of the coating being dried requires their use.

The particular conditions utilized in the process of this invention will vary greatly, depending on the particular product being manufactured and the selection of optimum conditions for a given product is, in light of the disclosure herein, within the ordinary skill of the art. Factors affecting the process include the design of the foraminous shield, the thickness and composition of the coated layer or plurality of superposed layers, the speed with which the sheet material is conveyed through the drier, the design of the drier, and the volumetric flow rate, temperature, and moisture content at which the air, or other gaseous drying medium, is supplied to the drier. In optimization of the process, a key

objective is to provide a uniform rate of heat transfer at all points on the coated surface. Numerous factors affect such rate of heat transfer, including the temperature and humidity of the gaseous medium, the plenum pressure, and the spacing between the plenum and the coated surface.

The shield utilized in the practice of this invention can be constructed of any suitable foraminous material. Examples of useful foraminous materials include metal screening, perforated metal plates, plastic sheeting having a multiplicity of fine holes formed therein, perforated paper, netting such as nylon or other fabric netting stretched taut within a frame, and the like.

The foraminous shield structure of this invention can be made up of a single foraminous element, e.g., a screen or perforated plate, or of a plurality, i.e., two, three or more, of spaced foraminous elements positioned in relation to one another so as to leave a relatively narrow gap therebetween. In other words, the shield structure can be of single-walled construction or of multiple-walled construction, e.g., double-walled or triple-walled.

Factors affecting the performance of the foraminous shield structure of this invention include:

- (1) the size of the perforations,
- (2) the spacing of the perforations,
- (3) the shape of the perforations, e.g., whether they are round, square, oval, etc,
- (4) whether the structure is a single-wall or multi-wall structure,
- (5) the distance between the walls where it is a multi-wall structure,
- (6) whether or not the perforations are aligned when it is a multi-wall structure,
- (7) the thickness of the foraminous material,
- (8) the edge design of the shield structure,
- (9) the distance between the foraminous shield and the adjacent wall of the plenum, and
- (10) the distance between the foraminous shield and the coated surface of the sheet material.

All of the above factors are matters of design choice and can be varied widely to achieve optimum results with a particular drying system.

Both the size and spacing of the perforations are very important features in determining the efficiency with which the foraminous shield structures of this invention operate. Very good results are typically obtained with perforations having a size in the range of from about 0.1 to about 5 millimeters, and more preferably in the range of from about 0.25 to about 1.25 millimeters, and with a spacing such that the percentage of open area is in the range of from about 20 to about 65 percent, and more preferably in the range of from about 30 to about 50 percent. (As used herein, size ranges specified for perforation size refer to the diameter of the perforation where it is circular and to the maximum dimension where it is of a shape other than circular. An alternative way of referring to percentage open area is by reference to the "solidity" of the shield, by which is meant the fraction of the total flow area blocked by the shield. For example, a solidity of 0.40 means 40% blocked and 60% open). In contrast with the size and spacing of the perforations, the shape of the perforations is not a particularly important parameter and, generally speaking, the perforations can be of any desired shape.

It is greatly preferred that the foraminous shield structure be a multi-walled structure, i.e., a structure with two, three or more walls. In general, the greater

the number of walls the more efficient the structure. However, under typical conditions, a double-walled shield structure is so efficient that the added cost and complexity of constructing a triple-walled structure would not be justified even though the triple-walled structure would be somewhat more effective. There is usually little to be gained in terms of improved performance by having more than three walls. When two or more walls are used, the distance by which they are spaced from one another is an important design factor. Preferably, the walls are spaced apart a distance in the range of from about 0.1 to about 10 centimeters, and most preferably a distance in the range of from about 0.3 to about 1 centimeters. In multi-wall structures, the degree to which the perforations of one wall align with the perforations of an adjacent wall is also a design factor affecting the overall performance of the shield structure, and it is usually desirable that the perforations be positioned so that they are out of alignment with those of the adjacent wall. Construction of a type in which the spaced walls are parallel to one another is generally satisfactory, but they can also be positioned in non-parallel relationship if desired.

In using multi-wall shield structures, it is sometimes advantageous for the structure to be designed so that the size of the perforations diminishes progressively, with the outermost wall, which is closest to the adjacent plenum wall, having the largest perforations and the innermost wall, which is closest to the surface of the coated layer, having the smallest perforations. For example, a multi-wall shield structure could be comprised of an outermost wall having perforations with a size of 1.5 millimeters, an intermediate wall having perforations with a size of 1 millimeter, and an innermost wall, which would be located closest to the surface of the coated layer, having perforations with a size of 0.5 millimeters.

The thickness of the foraminous material from which the shield is formed is also a significant factor in determining operating effectiveness. Generally speaking, it is desirable that the foraminous material be as thin as is practical since, all other factors being equal, a thin material is more effective than a thick one in reducing turbulence. Good results are typically obtained using foraminous materials with a thickness of less than about 2 millimeters. Thus, whether the shield is constructed from a woven wire screen, in which the thickness is dependent on the diameter of the wire from which the screen is formed, or from a perforated plate material, it is usually advantageous for its thickness to be below the specified value of about 2 millimeters.

The edge design of the foraminous shield can also affect its performance. Thus, for example, it is preferred that the shield extend somewhat beyond the edges of the coated layer to avoid disturbance of the coated layer resulting from "edge-effect" turbulence. As an alternative to extending the shield beyond the edges of the coated layer, it can be angled sharply downward along its edges.

Perhaps the most important of all the design factors relating to the foraminous shield are the distances between the foraminous shield and the adjacent plenum wall and between the foraminous shield and the surface of the coated layer. The optimum distances are determined by many factors, including the pressure at which the drying medium is delivered, the size of the perforations, the number of walls, the percentage of open area, and so forth. Under typical conditions, good results are

obtained with a spacing between the foraminous shield and the adjacent plenum wall in the range of from about 5 to about 100 centimeters, and a spacing between the foraminous shield and the surface of the coated layer in the range of from about 1 to about 15 centimeters.

In the apparatus of this invention, the foraminous shield is positioned in close proximity to the surface of the coated layer, but it is often advantageous for it to be relatively widely spaced from the plenum. For example, in those instances in which the vapors generated in the drying process are explosive, it is desirable that the distance between the foraminous shield and the adjacent plenum wall be large relative to the distance between the foraminous shield and the surface of the coated layer, so as to maintain an average vapor concentration which is at a safe low level. Under such circumstances, it is preferred that these distances be in a ratio in the range of from about 2 to 1 to about 20 to 1 and more preferably, in the range of from about 4 to 1 to about 20 to 1.

A particular advantage of the use of a foraminous shield in accordance with this invention is that the air or other gaseous drying medium can be supplied from the plenum at a greater pressure, without detrimentally affecting the coating, than would be feasible without the use of the foraminous shield. The delivery of a greater volumetric flow of air that results from such increased pressure means that the percentage of vapor in the spent air is lower. This is highly advantageous in dealing with potentially hazardous vapors, such as those generated by organic solvents, since it provides a greater margin of safety in keeping well below the explosive limits.

While reference is frequently made herein to a "drying zone," it is to be understood that such zone can, and often will, be comprised of a series of sub-zones, each of which provides different drying conditions. For example, the drying zone may consist of a series of sub-zones utilizing progressively higher temperatures. Such practices are well established, and their purposes clearly understood in the coating and drying arts.

The method and apparatus of this invention are useful in a wide variety of processes. For example, they are useful in the drying of either single-layer or multiple-layer coatings; in the drying of non-settable coatings; in the drying of settable coatings by various processes including those in which a chill-setting zone is used in association with a drying zone; and in either or both of the drying steps of a sequential coating process in which a single or multiple-layer coating is applied over a previously applied and dried single or multiple-layer coating.

Referring now to the drawings, FIG. 1 schematically illustrates a drier equipped with a foraminous shield in accordance with this invention. As shown in FIG. 1, the sheet material which is coated is a continuous web 10 which is unwound from supply roll 12 and passes around guide roller 14 and then over coating roll 16 where it is coated with a plurality of layers of coating composition by coating hopper 18. In the coating of compositions containing organic solvents, the coating hopper would typically be enclosed within a chamber in order to keep the solvent from passing into the surrounding environment and to provide effective temperature control during the coating process, but in coating aqueous compositions, such a chamber is generally unnecessary. Immediately after being coated, web 10 passes through a series of drying chambers 20, 22, 24

and 26 in each of which warm dry air is uniformly impinged on the coated layers to effect drying thereof. The chambers 20, 22, 24 and 26 together define a first drying zone, and since this zone can comprise additional similar chambers to provide a sufficiently long path of travel for web 10, the series of chambers is illustrated as being broken at several places. A foraminous shield 28, composed of stainless steel screening mounted in close proximity to the path of web 10 and just above the coated surface thereof, extends throughout chamber 20 and partially into chamber 22. Web 10 moves rapidly through drying chamber 20 with the coated surface thereof spaced from, but in close proximity to, the opposing surface of stationary foraminous shield 28 to thereby create a quiescent zone, i.e., a zone in which there are no turbulent flow conditions, which is rich in the vapor resulting from evaporation of the liquid medium in the coating. After passing through the first drying zone defined by chambers 20, 22, 24 and 26, web 10 passes through a second drying zone defined by chambers 30, 32 and 34. Since the second drying zone can comprise additional similar chambers to extend the path of travel of web 10, this series of chambers is also illustrated as being broken at several places. The first drying zone functions to carry out the major portion of the drying of the coated layers, while the second drying zone serves to remove small amounts of residual liquid medium remaining in the coated layers and to remove liquid medium that has penetrated into web 10. As illustrated, the drying chambers in the first drying zone are of a flat-bed design while those in the second drying zone are of a festoon design in order to provide an extended residence time. After leaving the second drying zone, web 10 passes around guide roll 36 and is wound onto take-up roll 38.

FIG. 2 is an enlarged representation of drying chamber 20 which better illustrates the flow path of the drying air in relation to foraminous shield 28. As shown in FIG. 2, warm dry air is admitted to chamber 20 through inlet duct 21 and passes through distributing plate 23 beneath which are mounted a plurality of V-shaped baffles 25. The combined functioning of distributing plate 23 and baffles 25 serves to provide a uniform distribution of the air and to minimize the formation of air currents. Foraminous shield 28, which is comprised of upper and lower screen elements 31 and 33, is co-extensive in width with web 10 and mounted in a position in which it is parallel to the closely adjacent coated surface of web 10. The mounting of shield 28 is such as to permit precise up and down movement so that it can be adjusted to set an optimum spacing in relation to web 10. As web 10 travels through chamber 20 along a horizontal path defined by a plurality of guide rollers 35, a quiescent zone which is rich in solvent vapor is formed between the lower surface of screen element 33 and the surface of the coating on web 10. Spent gaseous drying medium flows transversely of the path of web 10 in the region between screen element 31 and distributing plate 23 and passes over the edges of web 10 to exit from chamber 20 via exit duct 37. Within the quiescent solvent-rich zone between screen element 33 and the coated surface of web 10, transverse flow of spent drying air is suppressed and the establishment of uniform heat transfer conditions is promoted.

As most clearly seen in FIG. 3, fresh drying air passes through distributing plate 23 and over the edges of baffles 25 to provide a steady, uniform, low velocity flow which promotes uniform drying. Spent drying air

flows transversely of the path of web 10 and over the edges of web 10 to exit from duct 37.

FIG. 4 illustrates a drier of different design than that shown in FIGS. 1 to 3. As shown in FIG. 4, web 40 is unwound from supply roll 42 and passes around guide roller 44 into coater-drier 46 and then over coating roll 48 where it is coated with a layer of organic-solvent-containing coating composition by extrusion hopper 50. After being coated, web 40 travels vertically upward, over guide roller 52, through the wall of coater-drier 46, over guide rollers 54 and 56 and onto take-up roll 58. As web 10 passes between coating roll 48 and guide roller 52, it travels with its coated surface in close proximity to foraminous shield 60 which is composed of a single layer of stainless steel screening. Drying air is supplied via chambers 62 and 64, each of which is connected to a suitable blower (not shown), and exhausted via chambers 66 and 68 each of which is connected to a suitable vacuum source. Drying air admitted to chambers 62 and 64, passes through distributing plates 63 and 65, respectively, and then through a plurality of nozzles 67 and 69, respectively, so as to provide a uniform gentle flow of air. Warm drying air is also introduced into chamber 70 by a blower (not shown) where it impinges onto the uncoated surface of web 10 and thereby provides heat to web 10 which assists in bringing about evaporation of the solvent in the coated layer. As well as exhausting through chambers 66 and 68, spent drying air is also exhausted through chamber 72 via discharge duct 74 which is connected to a suitable vacuum source. As web 40 passes through the drying zone, a quiescent solvent-rich zone is formed between shield 60 and the coated surface of web 40 in which flow of spent drying air is suppressed and the establishment of uniform heat transfer conditions is promoted.

A drier of the type illustrated in FIGS. 1 to 3 is particularly useful in drying a coated web which requires a prolonged residence time, as is often the case where the web material is of such a nature that the coating composition is able to penetrate into it, for example a paper web. A drier of the type illustrated in FIG. 4 is particularly useful in drying a coating composition which is relatively viscous and is applied as a very thin layer, so that it has no tendency to run during the vertical travel through the drier, and which does not penetrate into the web so that drying can be carried out with a brief residence time, for example the coating of an aluminum support with an organic polymeric composition in the manufacture of lithographic printing plates. Many other types of driers can, of course, be utilized with equal effectiveness in putting the principles of this invention into practice.

Use of the present invention in combination with the invention disclosed and claimed in the aforementioned copending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 139,506, the disclosure of which is incorporated herein by reference, is often advantageous. In this regard, the foraminous shield can be constructed as a single element which substantially encloses the coating apparatus, to protect the coating operation from disturbance by ambient air currents, and which extends into the drier through the web entrance slot. In this way, the foraminous shield protects the coating operation, protects the coated web as it traverses the distance from the coating apparatus to the drier entrance, protects the coated web in the critical region surrounding the entrance slot where turbulent conditions frequently tend to arise, and protects the coated web during the drying operation. The forami-

nous shield need not, of course, be of the same construction throughout to be used in this way. For example, it could be of double-walled construction in the region surrounding the coating apparatus but of single-walled construction within the drier itself, or the perforations in the foraminous shield could be of a size and spacing in the region surrounding the coating operation that is best suited for the purpose of protecting the flow of coating composition but of a different size and spacing in the region that is located within the drier so as to provide optimum conditions for the drying operation.

nous shield was formed from 20×20 mesh (per square centimeter) stainless steel screen composed of 0.023 cm diameter wire. The double-wall foraminous shield was formed from the same stainless steel screen with a 0.5 cm spacing between the walls. The test samples were visually inspected after drying and rated for mottle in accordance with a numerical rating scale in which 0 represents substantially no observable mottle and 10 represents severe mottle.

The conditions utilized and the results obtained are summarized in Table I below.

TABLE I

| Test No. | Type of Shield | Support Temperature (°C.) | Drier Temperature (°C.) | Pressure in Drying Chambers (Pascals) |       |      |       | Slot Velocity (cm/sec) | Mottle Rating |
|----------|----------------|---------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------|------|-------|------------------------|---------------|
|          |                |                           |                         | No. 1                                 | No. 2 | No.3 | No. 4 |                        |               |
| 1        | None           | 38                        | 60                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 355                    | 9             |
| 2        | None           | 38                        | 60                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 559                    | 8.5           |
| 3        | None           | 38                        | 60                      | 0                                     | 50    | 0    | 50    | 355                    | 10            |
| 4        | None           | 38                        | 21                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 355                    | 8             |
| 5        | None           | 21                        | 21                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 355                    | 5             |
| 6        | Single-Wall    | 38                        | 60                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 355                    | 4             |
| 7        | Double-Wall    | 38                        | 60                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 355                    | 3             |
| 8        | Double-Wall    | 38                        | 21                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 355                    | 3             |
| 9        | Double-Wall    | 21                        | 21                      | -50                                   | 50    | -50  | 50    | 355                    | 2             |
| 10       | Double-Wall    | 38                        | 60                      | -50                                   | 175   | -50  | 175   | 355                    | 3.5           |
| 11       | None           | 21                        | 21                      | -50                                   | 175   | -50  | 175   | 355                    | 7             |

Use of both the method of copending U.S. patent application Ser. No. 139,506 and the method of U.S. Pat. No. 4,051,278 in conjunction with the method of the present invention is often highly advantageous where it is important to achieve a very low level of mottle.

While the term "foraminous shield" is believed to be aptly descriptive of the device described herein, it could also be referred to as a "diffusion means" or as a "flow controlling means."

The invention is further illustrated by the following examples of its practice.

## EXAMPLE 1

Coating and drying apparatus similar to that shown in FIG. 4 herein was used in the preparation of a lithographic printing plate. In preparing the printing plate, an anodized aluminum web having a thickness of 0.00381 millimeters was coated at a web speed of 45.7 cm/sec with a 10 percent by weight solution of a light-sensitive polymeric resin dissolved in methylene chloride. The coating composition was applied at a wet coverage of 26.91 cc/m<sup>2</sup>. After passing the coating hopper, the web travelled a distance of about one meter within the coating compartment, and then passed through a slot into a drier composed of four chambers each about 0.3 meters in length. Drying of the coating was complete by the time the web left the fourth chamber, except for a small amount of residual solvent which was removed in a subsequent curing section.

Variables investigated in this example were the temperature of the aluminum support at the coating application point, the drier temperature, the pressure of air impingement, the air velocity through the slot between the coating compartment and the drier, and the use of a foraminous shield. Both single-wall and double-wall foraminous shields were utilized, with the shield, in each case, extending over the coated surface of the web from the coating hopper through the end of the fourth drying chamber, and being positioned at a distance of 2.6 cm from the surface of the coating and 7.6 cm from the adjacent wall of the plenum. The single-wall forami-

As indicated by the results reported in Table I, increasing slot velocity (compare test 1 with test 2) and decreasing drier temperature (compare test 1 with test 4) results in moderate improvement in the degree of mottle formation. Also, control of the support temperature and drier temperature in accordance with the principles of U.S. Pat. No. 4,051,278 (compare test 4 with test 5) brings about a significant improvement. On the other hand, increasing air impingement pressure (compare test 5 with test 11) causes a substantial increase in the degree of mottle formation.

Incorporation into the drier of a single-wall foraminous shield (compare test 1 with test 6) greatly improves the results obtained with respect to mottle formation. Even better results are achieved with use of a double-wall foraminous shield (compare test 6 with test 7) and such a shield is effective even under conditions of high air impingement pressure (see test 10). Optimum results were obtained when the principles of U.S. Pat. No. 4,051,278 were utilized in combination with the use of the foraminous shield of this invention (see test 9).

## EXAMPLE 2

Coating and drying apparatus having an enclosed coating zone, and a horizontally-disposed flat-bed drier similar to that shown in FIG. 1 herein, was used to coat a poly(ethylene terephthalate) web with a coating composition comprising a 10 percent by weight solution of a light-sensitive polymeric resin dissolved in methylene chloride. The web was coated at a speed of 15.2 cm/sec and the coating composition was applied at a wet coverage of 75.6 cc/m<sup>2</sup>. The time in the coating zone was 1.9 seconds, while the total time from the coating application point to the dry point was 27 seconds. The temperature in the drier was 93° C.

Variables investigated in this example were air impingement pressure and the use of a foraminous shield. Both single-wall and double-wall foraminous shields were utilized, and these shields were constructed in the same manner and of the same material as used in Example 1. In each case, the shield was positioned at a distance of 2.5 cm from the surface of the coating, and 7.5

cm from the adjacent wall of the plenum. Variations tested included the use of a shield in the coating zone and the use of a shield in the first and/or second sections of the drier. The residence time for the web in each of the first and second sections of the drier was 5.2 seconds.

The conditions utilized and the results obtained are summarized in Table II below.

TABLE II

| Test No. | Coating Zone | Type of Shield     |                    | Air Impingement Pressure (Pascals) | Heat Transfer Coefficient (Joules/m <sup>2</sup> sec °C.) <sup>(1)</sup> | Mottle Rating |
|----------|--------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------------------|--|---------------|
|          |              | Section 1 of Drier | Section 2 of Drier |                                    |  |               |
| 1        | None         | None               | None               | 250                                | 115  | 10            |
| 2        | None         | None               | None               | 125                                | 104  | 9             |
| 3        | None         | None               | None               | 63                                 | 93   | 7.5           |
| 4        | Single-Wall  | None               | None               | 125                                | 104  | 6             |
| 4        | Single-Wall  | Single-Wall        | None               | 125                                | 99   | 4             |
| 6        | Single-Wall  | Single-Wall        | Single-Wall        | 125                                | 95   | 3.5           |
| 7        | None         | Single-Wall        | Single-Wall        | 125                                | 95   | 7             |
| 8        | Double-Wall  | Double-Wall        | Double-Wall        | 125                                | 86   | 2             |
| 9        | Double-Wall  | Double-Wall        | None               | 125                                | 95   | 3             |
| 10       | Double-Wall  | Double-Wall        | Double-Wall        | 250                                | 86   | 3             |

<sup>(1)</sup>Estimated average heat transfer coefficient for drier sections 1 and 2.

As indicated by the results reported in Table II, a decrease in air impingement pressure results in an improvement in mottle (compare test 1 with test 3). Use of the foraminous shield substantially reduces mottle with best results being achieved where the shield is utilized close to the coating point (compare test 6 with test 7). The double-wall shield provides a significant improvement in performance as compared with the single-wall shield (compare test 6 with test 8).

### EXAMPLE 3

In this example, the same coating composition, web and apparatus as are described in Example 2 were used to evaluate the effect of variation in the size of the perforations in the foraminous shield. Two types of shields were used, the first being a single-wall shield formed of the same 20×20 mesh stainless steel screen that was used in Examples 1 and 2 and the second being a single-wall shield formed of a 9.5×9.5 mesh stainless steel screen composed of 0.036 cm diameter wire. In each case, the screen was positioned at a distance of 2.6 cm from the surface of the coating, and 6.4 cm from the adjacent wall of the plenum. The drier was operated at a temperature of 82° C. and an air impingement pressure of 125 Pascals.

The conditions utilized and the results obtained are summarized in Table III below:

TABLE III

| Test No. | Coating Zone | Type of Shield     |                    | Mottle Rating |
|----------|--------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|
|          |              | Section 1 of Drier | Section 2 of Drier |               |
| 1        | None         | None               | None               | 10            |
| 2        | 20 × 20      | None               | None               | 6             |
| 3        | 20 × 20      | 20 × 20            | None               | 4             |
| 4        | 20 × 20      | 20 × 20            | 20 × 20            | 4             |
| 5        | 9.5 × 9.5    | None               | None               | 8             |
| 6        | 9.5 × 9.5    | 9.5 × 9.5          | None               | 6             |
| 7        | 9.5 × 9.5    | 9.5 × 9.5          | 9.5 × 9.5          | 5.5           |

As indicated by the data reported in Table III, both types of screen provide a significant improvement in mottle, but the 20×20 screen, which is of finer mesh, is more effective than the 9.5×9.5 screen.

While applicants are not sure of the exact mechanisms whereby their invention functions, it is apparent that the

use of a foraminous shield, such as a screen or perforated plate, in close proximity to the surface of a coating, which is undergoing drying by a flowing gaseous medium, provides drying conditions which result in less formation of mottle, particularly with coating compositions that contain volatile organic solvents. This is an entirely unexpected result and provides a simple and easily implemented solution to the problem of mottle

formation which has long plagued the coating industry, and especially that portion of the industry involved with the coating of photographic materials.

The invention has been described in detail with particular reference to preferred embodiments thereof, but it will be understood that variations and modifications can be effected within the spirit and scope of the invention.

We claim:

1. In a method for drying a sheet material which has been coated on a surface thereof with at least one layer of a mottle-prone coating composition containing a liquid medium that is capable of being evaporated from said coating composition by contact with a gaseous drying medium, said method comprising the steps of advancing said coated sheet material along a predetermined path through a drying zone and uniformly directing a gaseous drying medium onto the coated surface of said sheet material so as to bring about evaporation of said liquid medium with resulting formation of spent gaseous drying medium which flows away from said path for discharge from said drying zone; the improvement which comprises advancing said sheet material with said coated surface in opposed closely spaced relationship with a foraminous shield which is permeable to said gaseous drying medium, so as to promote flow of said spent gaseous drying medium adjacent to the surface of said shield which is remote from said coated surface and to form a quiescent region between said shield and said coated surface which is rich in the vapor of said liquid medium and in which flow of said spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted, whereby formation of mottle in said coating is reduced.

2. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said sheet material is a synthetic organic polymeric film.

3. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said sheet material is a poly(ethylene terephthalate) film.

4. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said liquid medium comprises an organic solvent.

5. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said liquid medium comprises an organic solvent having a boiling

point at atmospheric pressure of from about 40° C. to about 85° C.

6. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said gaseous drying medium is warm dry air.

7. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said coating composition is a photographic coating composition.

8. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said foraminous shield is a single-walled structure.

9. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said foraminous shield is a multi-walled structure, each wall of which is comprised of a foraminous material.

10. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said foraminous shield is composed of screen material.

11. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said foraminous shield is composed of perforated plate material.

12. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said foraminous shield is composed of foraminous material having perforations with a size in the range of from about 0.25 to about 1.25 millimeters and a percentage open area in the range of from about 30 to about 50 percent.

13. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said foraminous shield extends from the start of said drying zone over a distance equal to about 5 to about 25 percent of the total length of said drying zone.

14. A method as claimed in claim 1 wherein said coated sheet material is a web comprised of aluminum coated with a layer of a coating composition adapted to form a lithographic printing plate, said coating composition comprising a light-sensitive polymeric resin dissolved in an organic solvent.

15. In a method for drying a web which has been coated on a surface thereof with at least one layer of a mottle-prone coating composition containing a liquid medium that is capable of being evaporated from said coating composition by contact with a gaseous drying medium, said method comprising the steps of advancing said coated web along a predetermined path through a drying zone and uniformly directing a gaseous drying medium onto the coated surface of said web so as to bring about evaporation of said liquid medium with resulting formation of spent gaseous drying medium which flows transversely to said path for discharge from said drying zone; the improvement which comprises advancing said sheet material with said coated surface in opposed closely spaced relationship with a foraminous shield which is substantially commensurate in width with said coated surface and permeable to said gaseous drying medium, so as to promote transverse flow of said spent gaseous drying medium adjacent to the surface of said shield which is remote from said coated surface and to form a quiescent region between said shield and said coated surface which is rich in the vapor of said liquid medium and in which transverse flow of said spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted, whereby formation of mottle in said coating is reduced.

16. A method for reducing mottle in the drying of a coated sheet material, said sheet material having been coated on a surface thereof with at least one layer of a mottle-prone coating composition containing a liquid medium that is capable of being evaporated from said coating composition by contact with a gaseous drying medium, and said drying being carried out by the steps of advancing said coated sheet material along a predetermined path through a drying zone and uniformly directing a gaseous drying medium onto the coated

surface of said sheet material so as to bring about evaporation of said liquid medium with resulting formation of spent gaseous drying medium which flows away from said path for discharge from said drying zone; said method comprising interposing a foraminous shield, which is permeable to said gaseous drying medium, in opposed closely spaced relationship with said coated surface so as to promote flow of said spent gaseous drying medium adjacent to the surface of said shield which is remote from said coated surface and to form a quiescent region between said shield and said coated surface which is rich in the vapor of said liquid medium and in which flow of said spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted, whereby formation of mottle in said coating is reduced.

17. Apparatus for drying a sheet material which is coated on a surface thereof with at least one layer of a mottle-prone coating composition containing a liquid medium that is capable of being evaporated from said coating composition by contact with a gaseous drying medium, said apparatus comprising:

means for advancing said coated sheet material along a predetermined path through a drying zone,

means adjacent to said path for uniformly supplying a gaseous drying medium to said coated surface so as to bring about evaporation of said liquid medium with resulting formation of spent gaseous drying medium which flows away from said path for discharge from said drying zone, and

shield means for reducing the tendency for mottle formation in said coating, said shield means being comprised of a foraminous material which is permeable to said gaseous drying medium and being interposed between said path and said supply means in close proximity to said coated surface, so as to promote flow of said spent gaseous drying medium adjacent to the surface of said shield means which is remote from said coated surface and form between said coated surface and said shield means a quiescent region which is rich in the vapor of said liquid medium and in which flow of said spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted, whereby formation of mottle in said coating is reduced.

18. Apparatus for drying a sheet material which is coated on a surface thereof with at least one layer of a mottle-prone coating composition containing a liquid medium that is capable of being evaporated from said coating composition by contact with a gaseous drying medium, said apparatus comprising:

means for advancing said coated sheet material along a predetermined path through a drying zone,

means for supplying said gaseous drying medium to said drying zone,

a plenum which is located within said drying zone adjacent to said path and is connected to said supply means, said plenum serving to uniformly direct said gaseous drying medium onto the coated surface of said sheet material so as to bring about the evaporation of said liquid medium with resulting formation of spent gaseous drying medium which flows away from said path for discharge from said drying zone, and

a foraminous shield which is interposed between said plenum and said path, said shield being permeable to said gaseous drying medium and having one surface thereof in opposing spaced relationship



21

with said plenum and the opposite surface thereof in opposing spaced relationship with said path, said shield being in close proximity to said path, so as to form a quiescent region between said shield and said coated surface which is rich in the vapor of said liquid medium and in which flow of said spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted, and being spaced from said plenum to form a region therebetween in which flow of said spent gaseous drying medium can occur without disturbing said coated surface, whereby formation of mottle in said coating is reduced.

19. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein said foraminous shield is a single-walled structure.

20. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein said foraminous shield is a multi-walled structure, each wall of which is comprised of a foraminous material.

21. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein said foraminous shield is composed of screen material.

22. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein said foraminous shield is composed of perforated plate material.

23. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein said foraminous shield is composed of foraminous material having perforations with a size in the range of from about 0.25 to about 1.25 millimeters and a percentage open area in the range of from about 30 to about 50 percent.

24. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein the spacing between said foraminous shield and the opposing surface of said plenum is in the range of from about 5 to about 100 centimeters.

25. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein the spacing between said foraminous shield and said path is in the range of from about 1 to about 15 centimeters.

26. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein the ratio between (1) the spacing between said foraminous shield and the opposing surface of said plenum, and, (2) the spacing between said foraminous shield and said path, is in the range of from about 4 to 1 to about 20 to 1.

22

27. Apparatus as claimed in claim 18 wherein said foraminous shield extends from the start of said drying zone over a distance equal to about 5 to about 25 percent of the total length of said drying zone.

28. Apparatus for drying a web which is coated on a surface thereof with at least one layer of a mottle-prone coating composition containing a liquid medium that is capable of being evaporated from said coating composition by contact with a gaseous drying medium, said apparatus comprising:

means for advancing said coated web along a predetermined path through a drying zone,  
means for supplying said gaseous drying medium to said drying zone,

a plenum which is located within said drying zone adjacent to said path and is connected to said supply means, said plenum serving to uniformly direct said gaseous drying medium onto the coated surface of said web so as to bring about the evaporation of said liquid medium with resulting formation of spent gaseous drying medium which flows transversely to said path for discharge from said drying zone, and

a foraminous shield which is substantially commensurate in width with said coated surface interposed between said plenum and said path, said shield being permeable to said gaseous drying medium and having one surface thereof in opposing spaced relationship with said plenum and the opposite surface thereof in opposing spaced relationship with said path, said shield being in close proximity to said path, so as to form a quiescent region between said shield and said coated surface which is rich in the vapor of said liquid medium, and in which transverse flow of said spent gaseous drying medium is suppressed and uniform heat transfer conditions are promoted, and being spaced from said plenum to form a region therebetween in which transverse flow of said spent gaseous drying medium can occur without disturbing said coated surface, whereby formation of mottle in said coating is reduced.

\* \* \* \* \*

45

50

55

60

65

# EXHIBIT M



US005881476A

**United States Patent** [19]  
**Strobush et al.**

[11] **Patent Number:** **5,881,476**  
[45] **Date of Patent:** **Mar. 16, 1999**

[54] **APPARATUS AND METHOD FOR DRYING A COATING ON A SUBSTRATE EMPLOYING MULTIPLE DRYING SUBZONES**

[75] Inventors: **Brian L. Strobush**, Kingwood, Tex.;  
**Thomas J. Ludemann**, Maplewood;  
**Roger K. Yonkoski**, Woodbury, both of  
Minn.

[73] Assignee: **Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Company**, St. Paul,  
Minn.

[21] Appl. No.: **820,245**  
[22] Filed: **Mar. 18, 1997**

**Related U.S. Application Data**

[63] Continuation of Ser. No. 625,469, Mar. 29, 1996, abandoned.

[51] **Int. Cl.<sup>6</sup>** ..... **F26B 3/00**  
[52] **U.S. Cl.** ..... **34/451**; 34/464; 34/501;  
34/540; 34/643; 34/210; 427/378  
[58] **Field of Search** ..... 34/273, 274, 364,  
34370, 421, 423, 464, 501, 507, 540, 620,  
643, 651, 654, 210, 222, 451; 432/8, 59;  
427/377, 378

[56] **References Cited**

**U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS**

|           |         |                      |          |
|-----------|---------|----------------------|----------|
| 2,107,275 | 2/1938  | Anderson et al. .    |          |
| 2,952,078 | 9/1960  | Litzler .            |          |
| 3,403,454 | 10/1968 | Smith, Jr. .         |          |
| 3,494,048 | 2/1970  | Du Fresne            | 34/307   |
| 3,554,502 | 1/1971  | Rye et al. .         |          |
| 3,577,653 | 5/1971  | McClenathan et al. . |          |
| 3,849,904 | 11/1974 | Villalobos           | 34/636   |
| 4,051,278 | 9/1977  | Democh               | 427/326  |
| 4,365,423 | 12/1982 | Arter et al.         | 34/463   |
| 4,569,658 | 2/1986  | Wiggins et al.       | 34/540 X |
| 4,594,266 | 6/1986  | Lemaire et al.       | 34/273 X |
| 4,634,840 | 1/1987  | Yamagishi et al.     | 219/388  |
| 4,698,914 | 10/1987 | Shu et al.           | 34/370   |
| 4,843,731 | 7/1989  | Vits                 | 34/364   |
| 4,872,270 | 10/1989 | Fronheiser et al.    | 34/421   |

|           |         |                |           |
|-----------|---------|----------------|-----------|
| 4,894,927 | 1/1990  | Ogawa et al.   | 34/507    |
| 4,999,927 | 3/1991  | Durst et al.   | 34/448    |
| 5,001,845 | 3/1991  | Norz et al.    | 34/452    |
| 5,010,649 | 4/1991  | Treleven       | 34/269    |
| 5,060,396 | 10/1991 | Hansen         | 34/452    |
| 5,077,912 | 1/1992  | Ogawa et al.   | 34/422    |
| 5,136,790 | 8/1992  | Hagen et al.   | 34/444    |
| 5,147,690 | 9/1992  | Faust et al.   | 427/372.2 |
| 5,394,622 | 3/1995  | Evans et al. . |           |
| 5,433,973 | 7/1995  | Wallack et al. | 427/128   |
| 5,528,839 | 6/1996  | Seidl          | 34/364    |

**FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS**

|              |         |                    |
|--------------|---------|--------------------|
| 236 186 A1   | 4/1986  | German Dem. Rep. . |
| 1 095 246    | 12/1960 | Germany .          |
| 975 392      | 11/1961 | Germany .          |
| 1 753 591    | 12/1969 | Germany .          |
| 42 29 804 A1 | 3/1994  | Germany .          |
| 620766       | 7/1978  | U.S.S.R. .         |
| 1276889      | 12/1986 | U.S.S.R. .         |

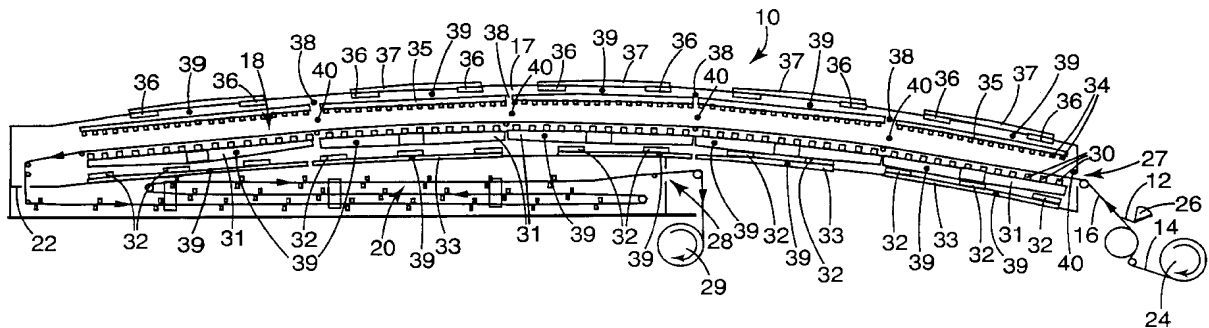
**OTHER PUBLICATIONS**

“Performance Study of a Laminar Flow Dryer for Applications in Film Coating,” Wagner et al., Published Paper from the University of Erlangen–Nürnberg, pp. 182–189 (after 1985).  
“Thin Film Drying,” *Modern Coating and Drying Technology*, Chapter 7, Cohen VCH Publishers, NY 1992, pp. 267–298.  
“Cellular Convection in Polymer Coatings—An Assessment,” Hansen et al., *Ind. Eng. Chem. Prod. Res. Develop.*, vol. 12, No. 1, 1973, pp. 67–69.  
“A Primer on Forming Coatings,” Cohen et al., *Chemical Engineering Progress*, Sep. 1990, pp. 30–36.  
“Take a Closer Look at Coating Problems,” Scriven et al., *Chemical Engineering Progress*, Sep. 1990, pp. 24–29.

*Primary Examiner*—Henry Bennett  
*Assistant Examiner*—Steve Gravini  
*Attorney, Agent, or Firm*—William K. Weimer

[57] **ABSTRACT**

An apparatus and method for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a first substrate surface of a substrate and for minimizing the formation of mottle as the coating solvent is evaporating. A drying oven includes an enclosure having an inlet and an outlet and defining a first drying zone.



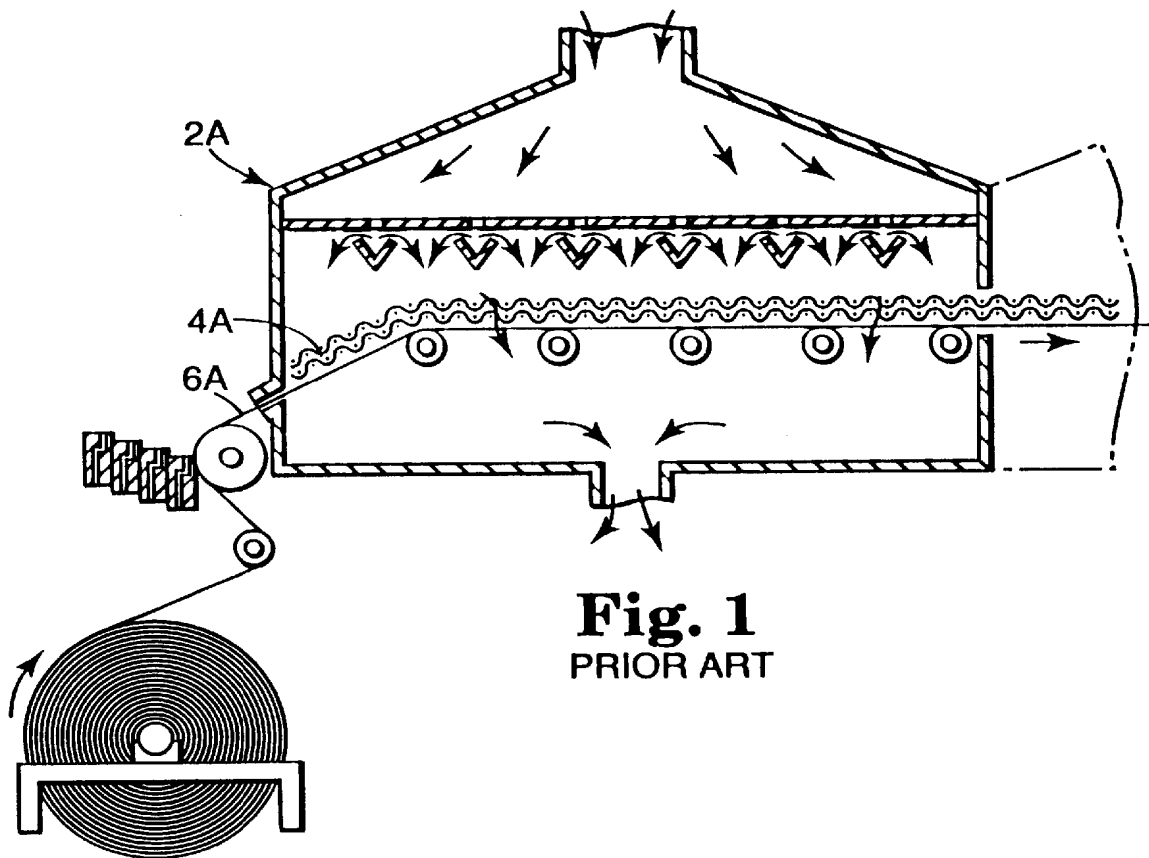
**5,881,476**

Page 2

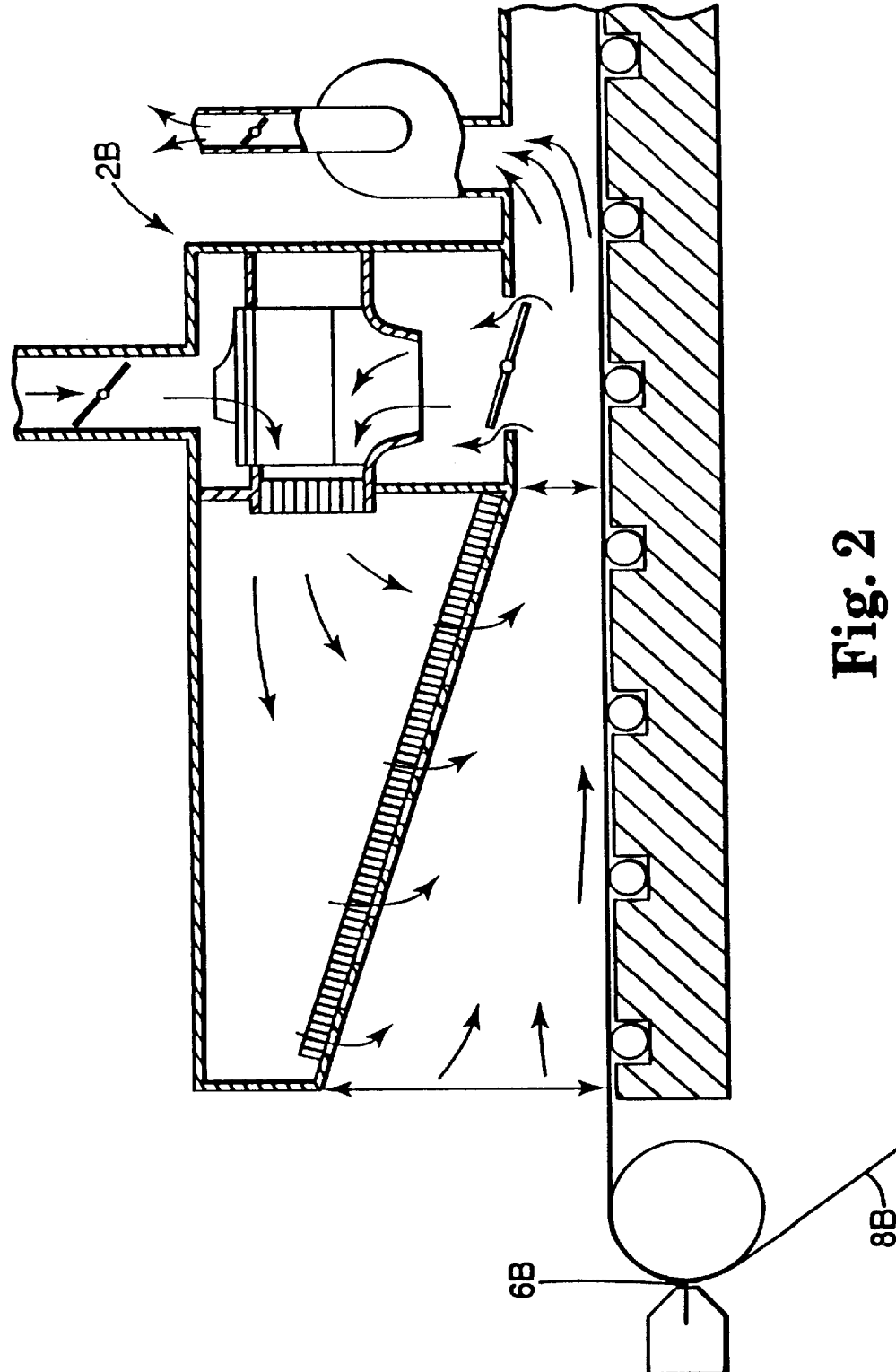
---

A plurality of drying subzones are within the first drying zone. At least two of the plurality of drying subzones employ different and controllable drying conditions. Physical barriers are not required to create the plurality of drying subzones.

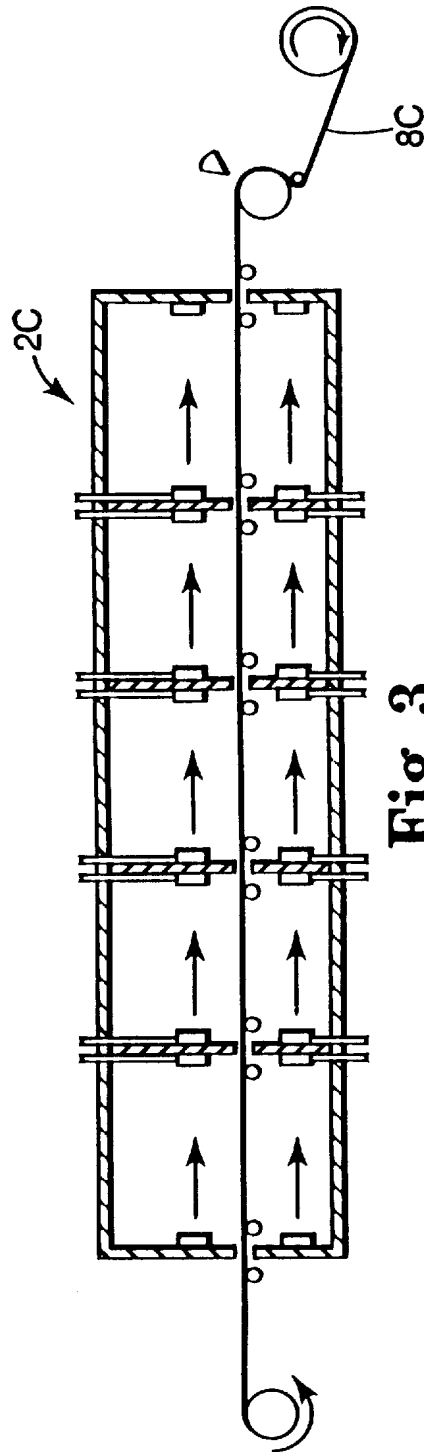
**59 Claims, 13 Drawing Sheets**



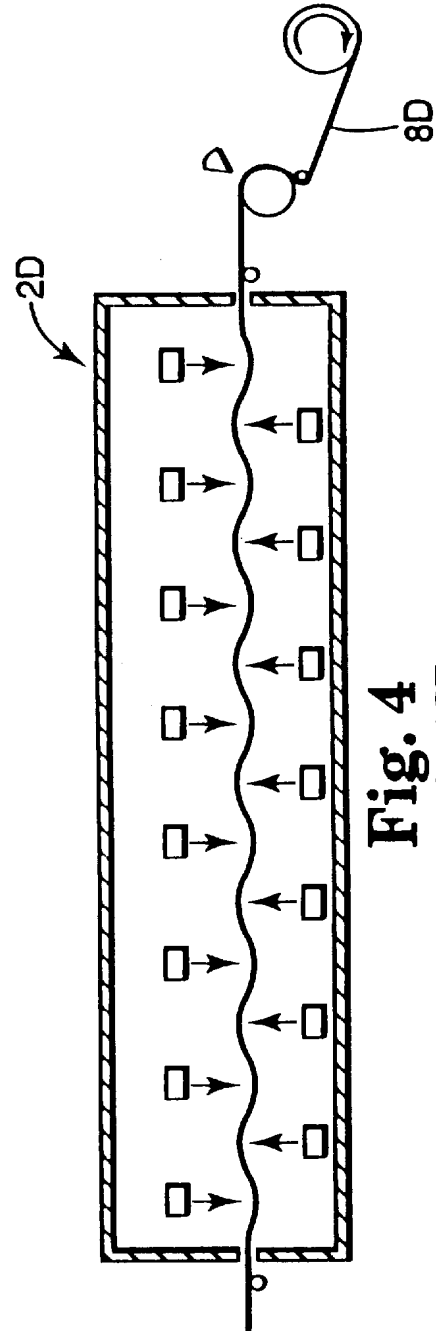
**Fig. 1**  
PRIOR ART



**Fig. 2**  
PRIOR ART



**Fig. 3**  
PRIOR ART



**Fig. 4**  
PRIOR ART

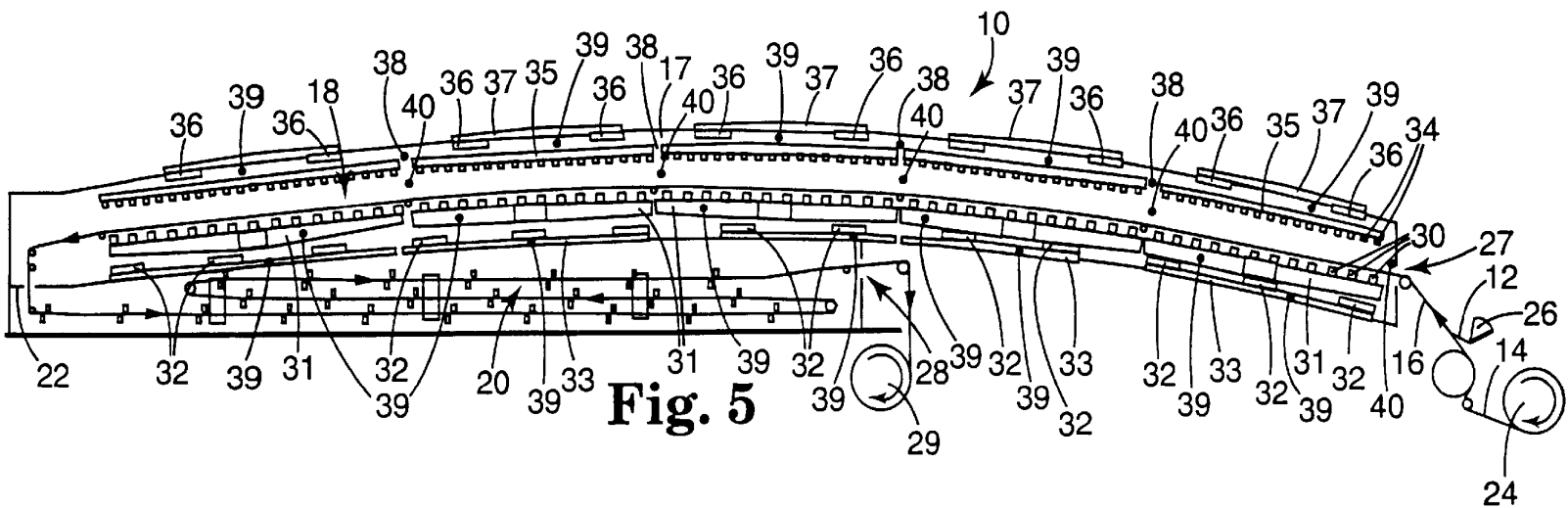


Fig. 5

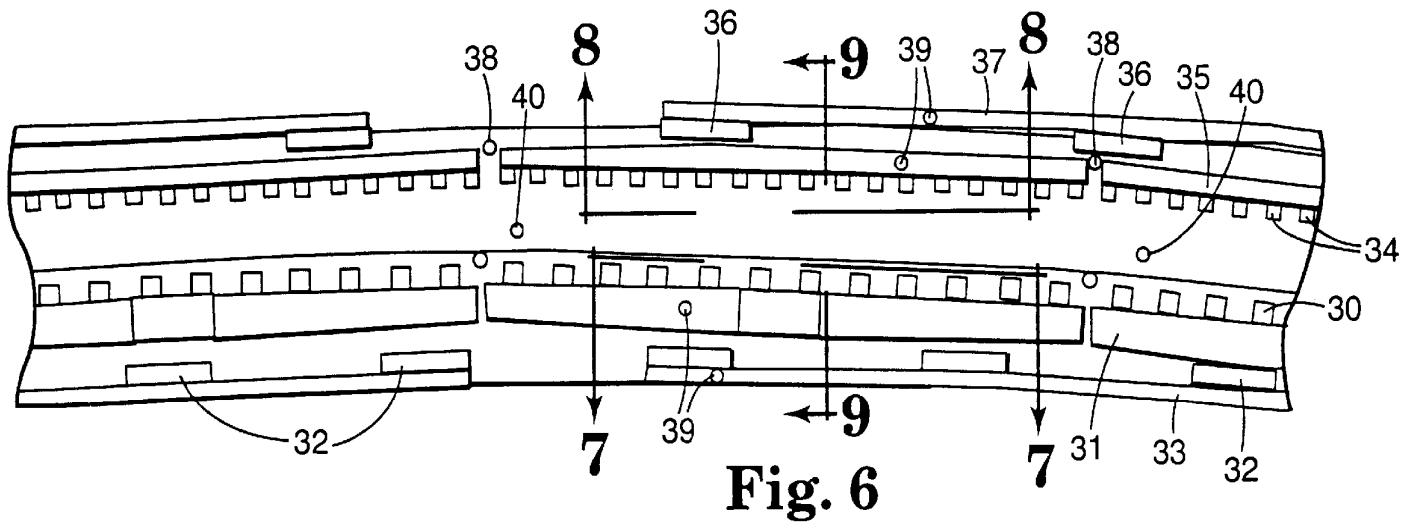
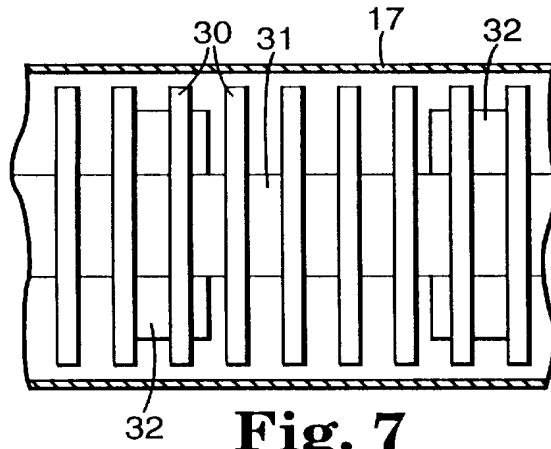
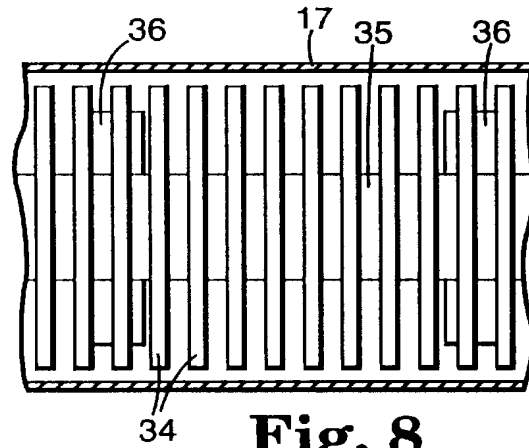


Fig. 6

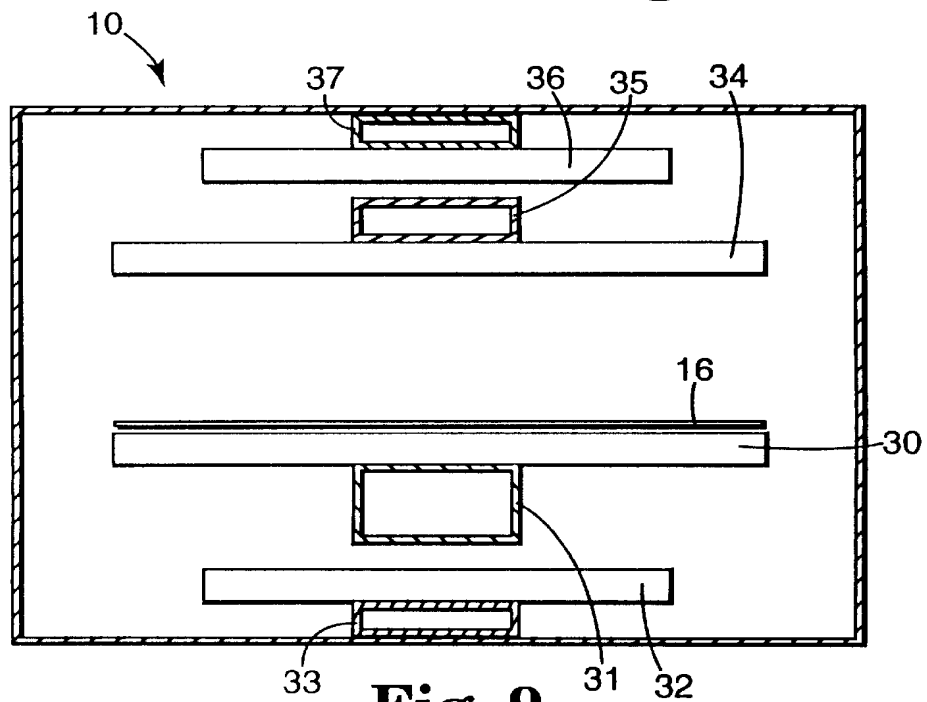




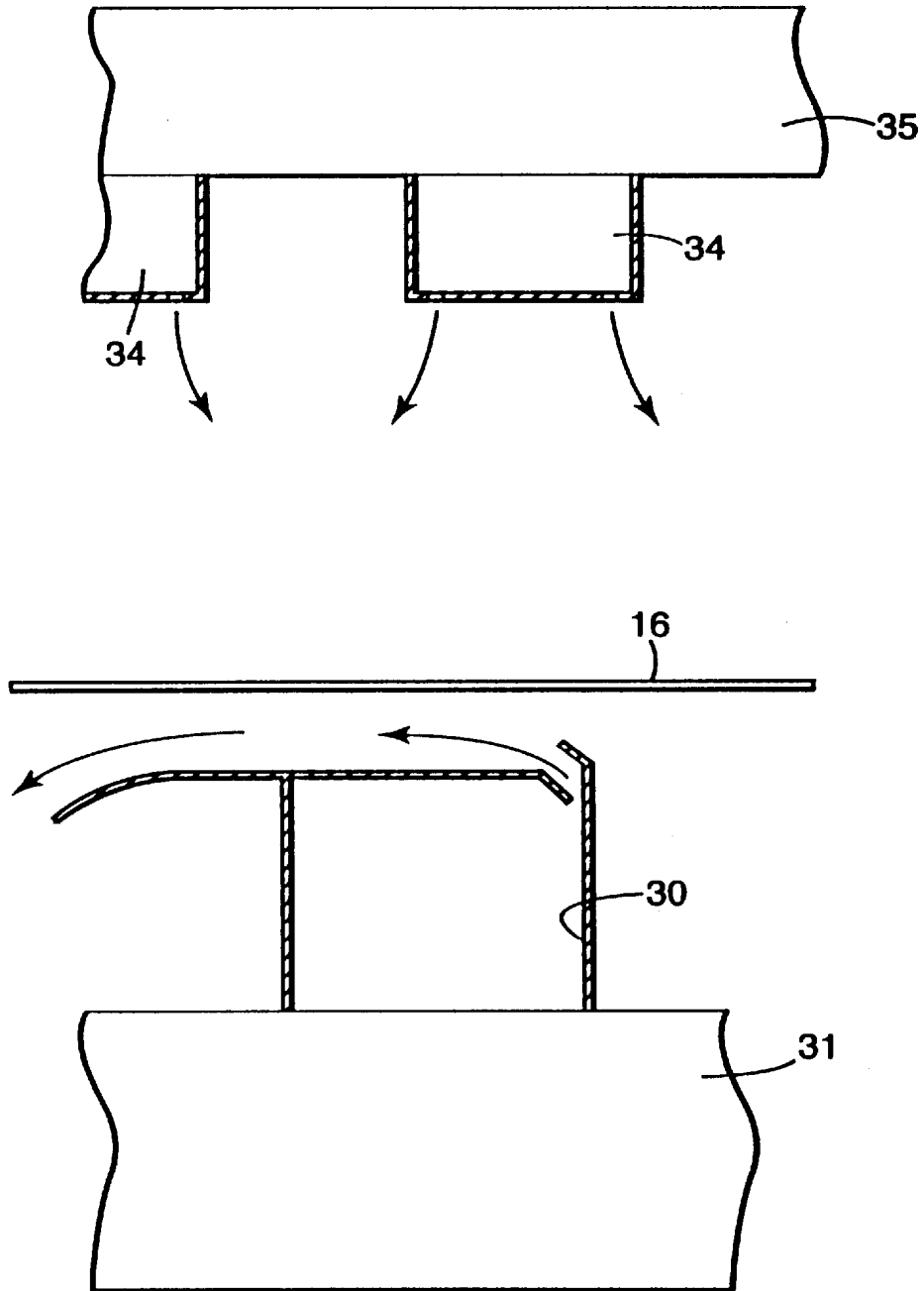
**Fig. 7**



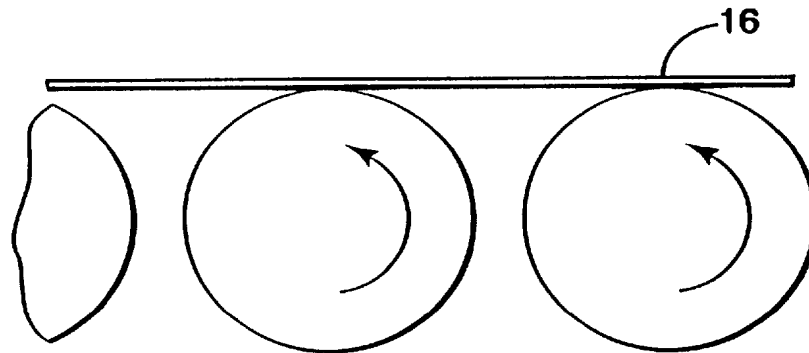
**Fig. 8**



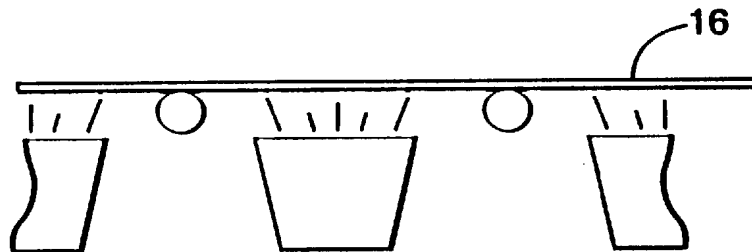
**Fig. 9**



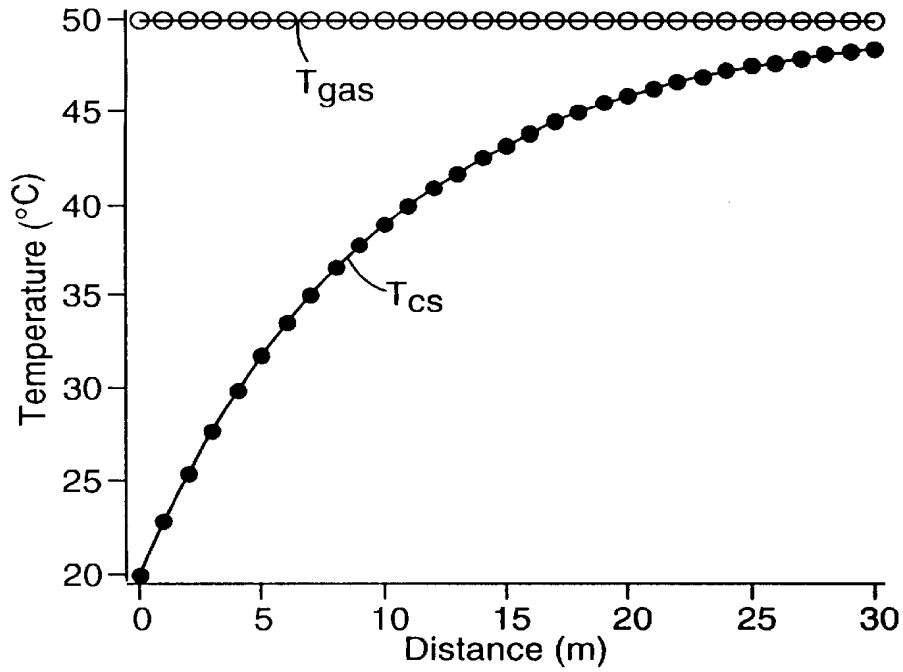
**Fig. 10**



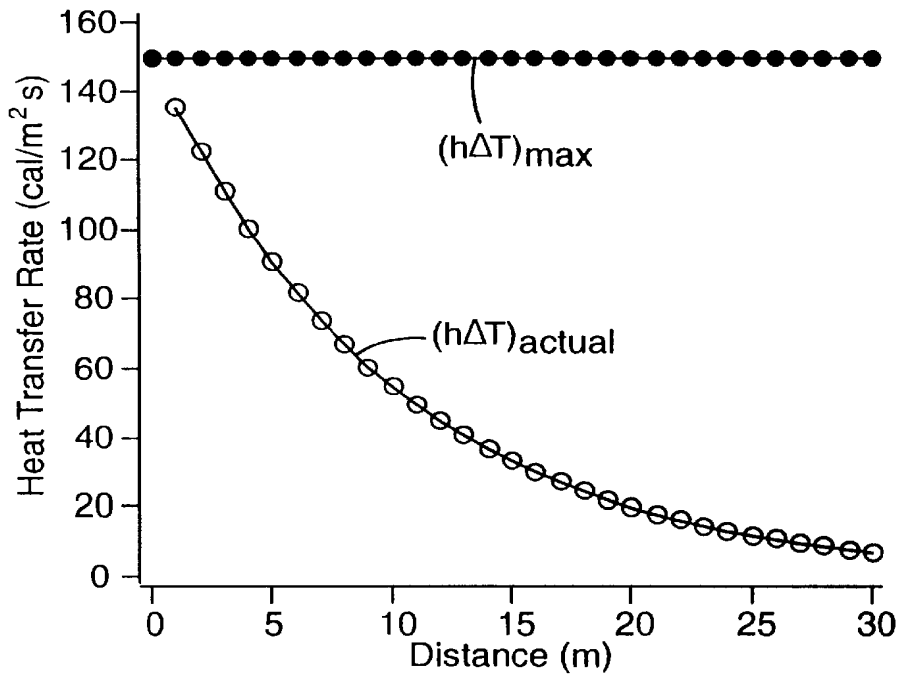
**Fig. 11**



**Fig. 12**



**Fig. 13**



**Fig. 14**

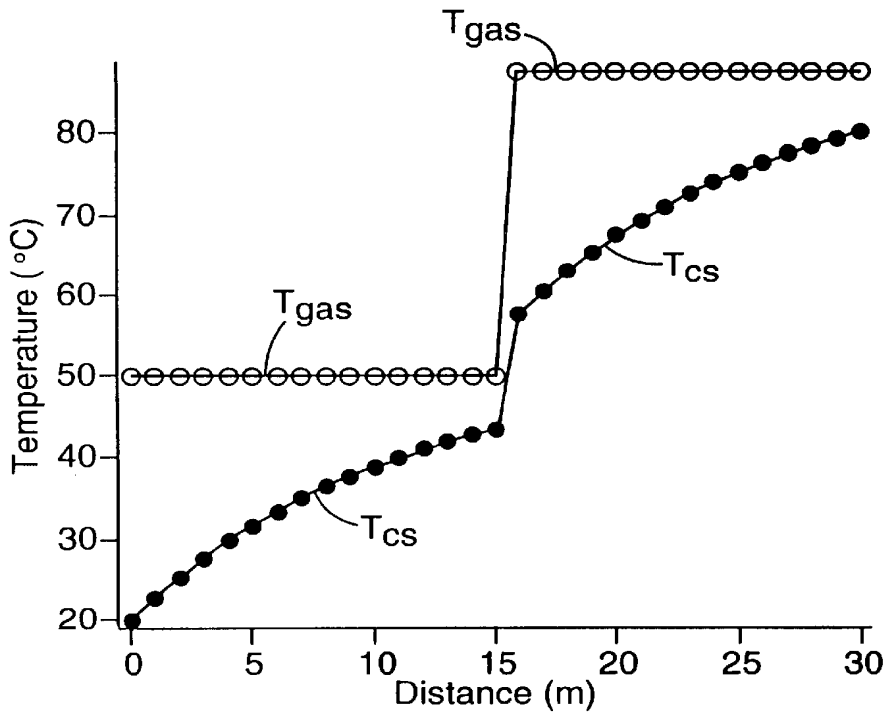


Fig. 15

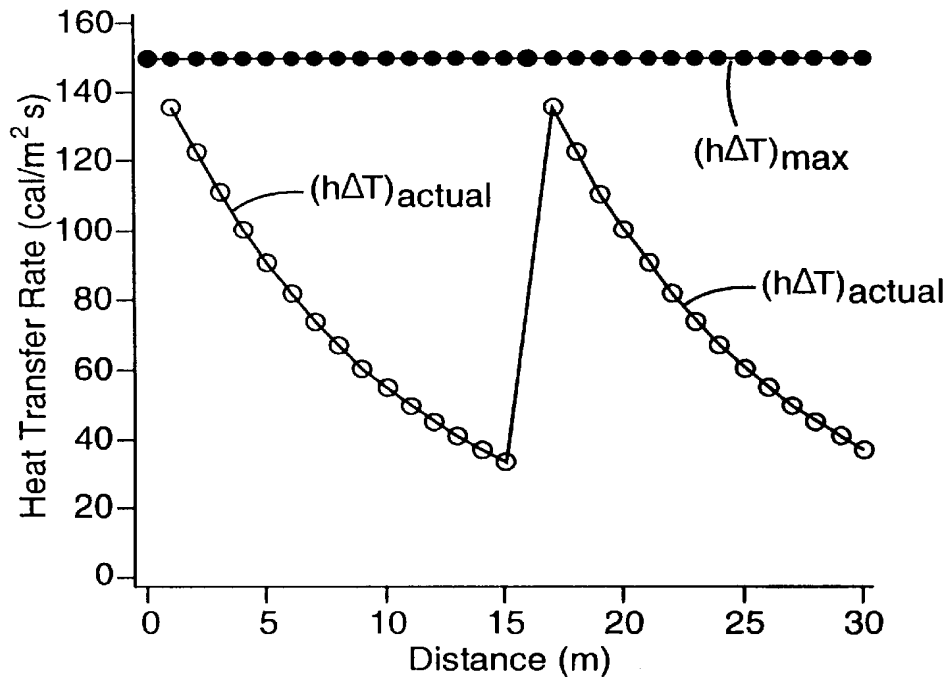
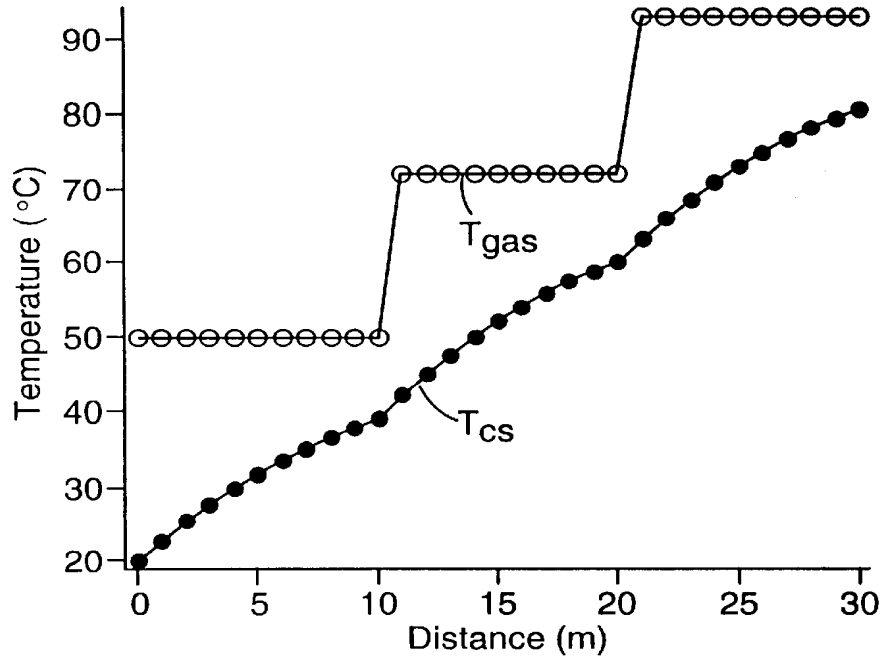
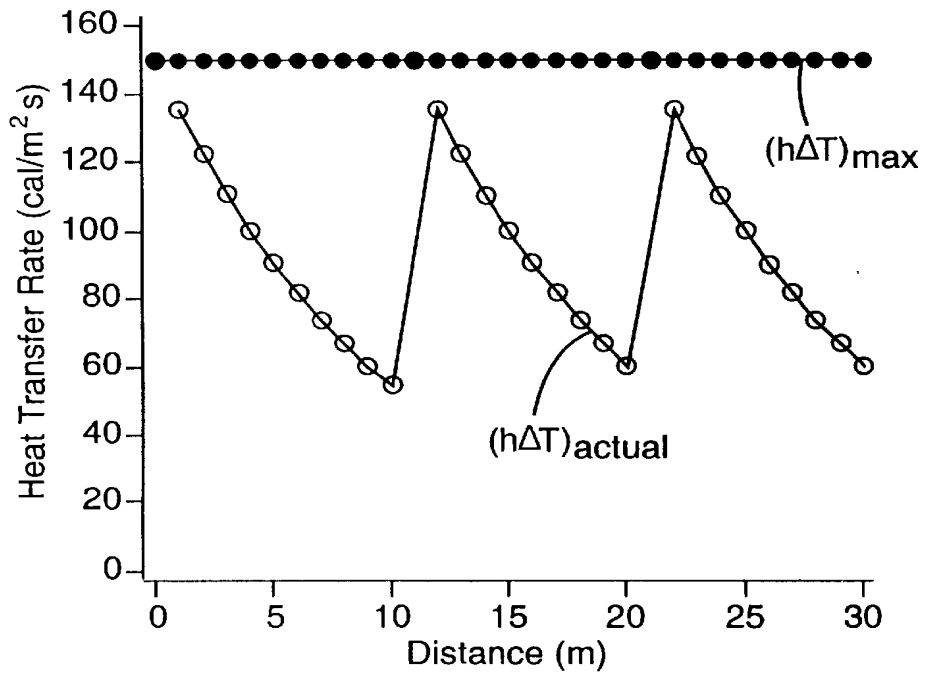


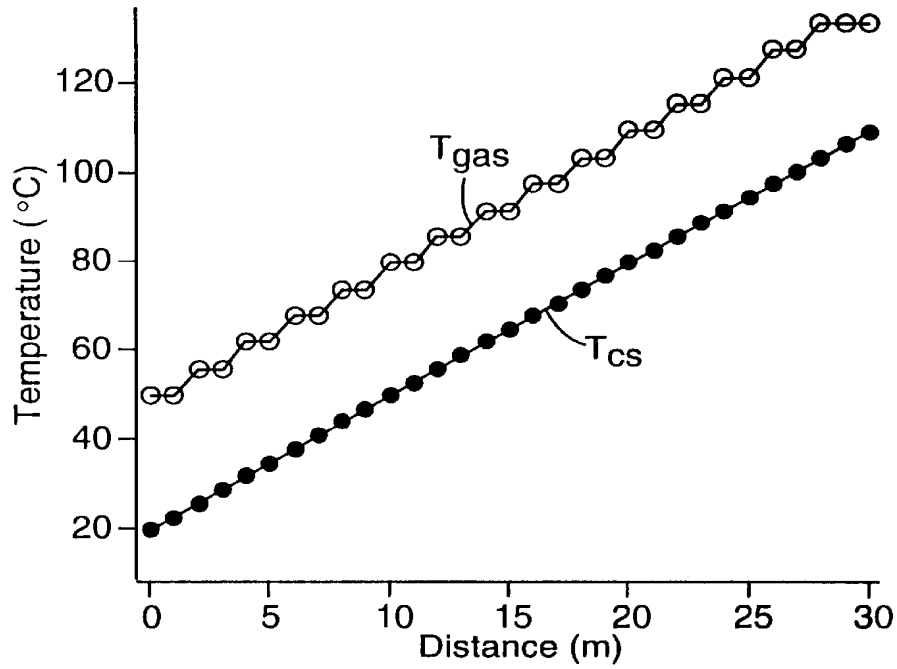
Fig. 16



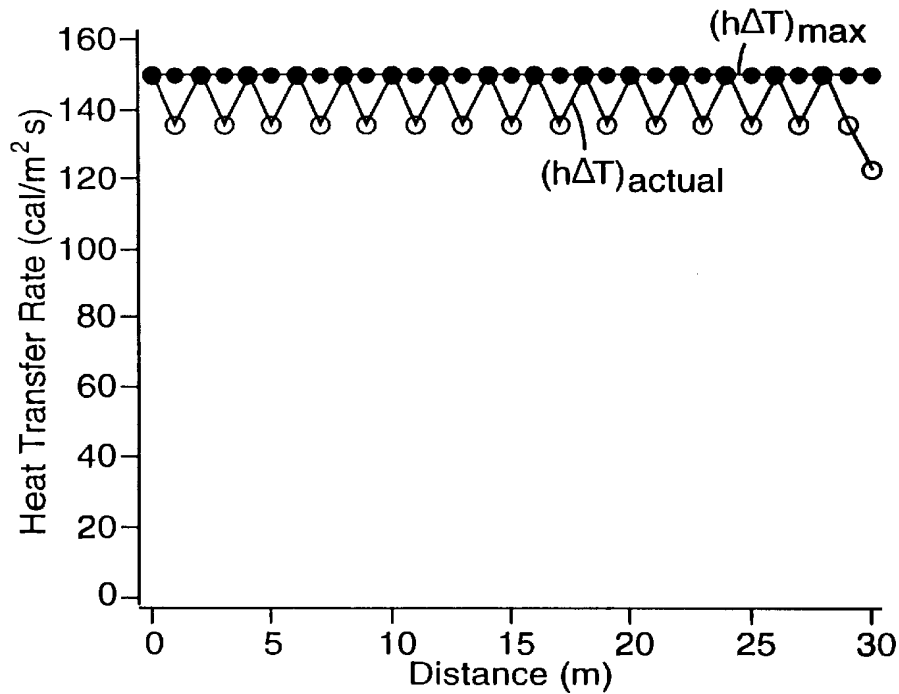
**Fig. 17**



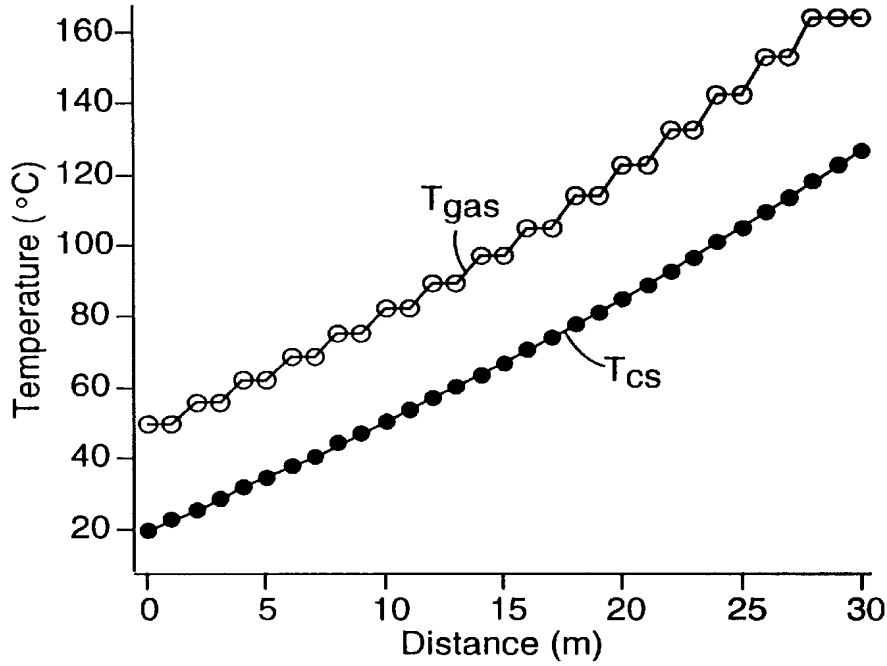
**Fig. 18**



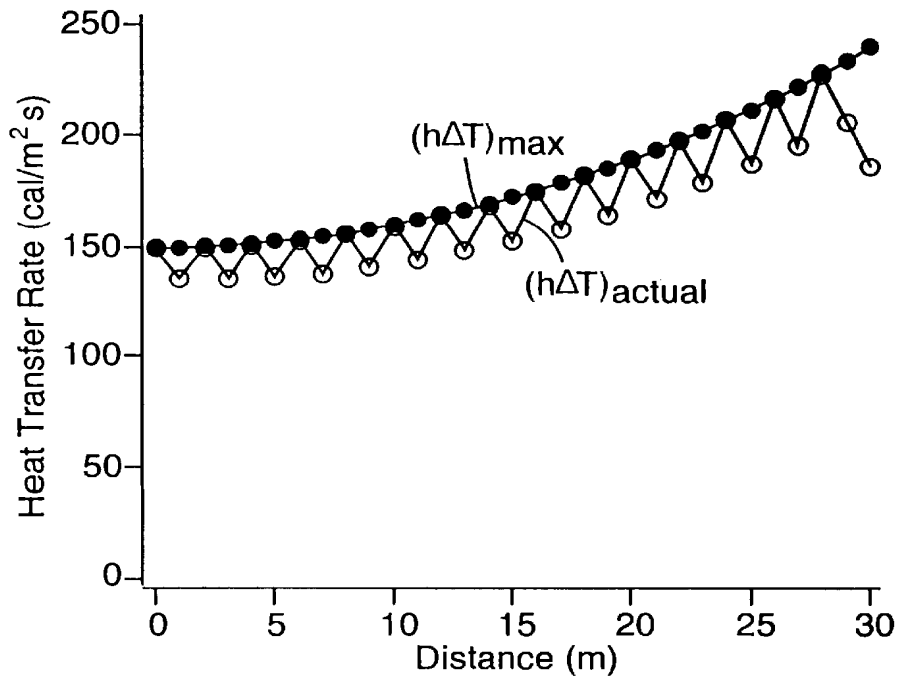
**Fig. 19**



**Fig. 20**



**Fig. 21**



**Fig. 22**



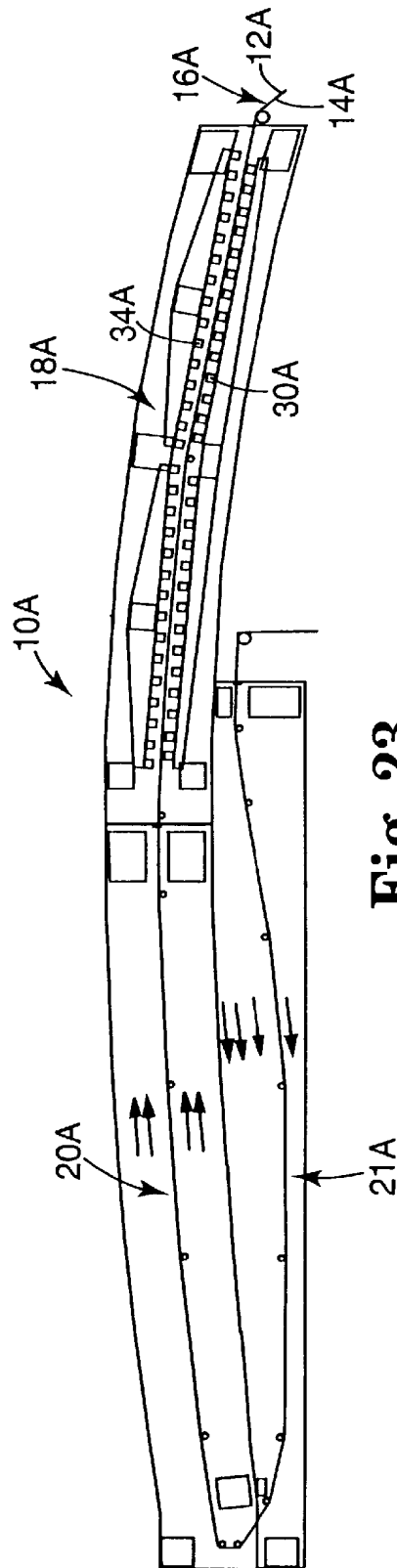


Fig. 23

5,881,476

1

## APPARATUS AND METHOD FOR DRYING A COATING ON A SUBSTRATE EMPLOYING MULTIPLE DRYING SUBZONES

This is a continuation of application Ser. No. 08/625,469 filed Mar. 29, 1996 abandoned.

### FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to methods for drying coatings on a substrate and more particularly to methods for drying coatings used in making imaging articles.

### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

The production of high quality articles, particularly photographic, photothermographic, and thermographic articles, consists of applying a thin film of coating solution onto a continuously moving substrate. Thin films can be applied using a variety of techniques including: dip coating, forward or reverse roll coating, wire-wound coating, blade coating, slot coating, slide coating, and curtain coating (see, for example, L. E. Scriven; W. J. Suszynski; *Chem. Eng. Prog.* 1990, September, p. 24). Coatings can be applied as single layers or as two or more superposed layers. While it is usually most convenient for the substrate to be in the form of a continuous substrate, it can also be in the form of a succession of discrete sheets.

The initial coating is either a mixture of solvent and solids or a solution and must be dried to obtain the final dried article. While the cost of a coating process is determined by the coating technique, the cost of a drying process is often proportional to the desired line speed (see E. D. Cohen; E. J. Lightfoot; E. B. Gutoff; *Chem. Eng. Prog.* 1990, September, p. 30). The line speed is limited by the capabilities of the oven. To reduce costs, it is desirable that the removal of solvent from the coating be as efficient as possible. This is generally accomplished by transferring heat to the coated article as efficiently as possible. This is often accomplished by increasing the velocity of the drying gas at the coating surface, thereby increasing heat transfer and solvent evaporation and thus drying the coating more quickly. The resulting turbulent air, however, increases the tendency for defect formation.

The process of applying a coating to and drying that coating on a substrate can inherently create defects, including Benard cells, orange peel, and mottle. Benard cells are defects arising from circulatory motion within the coating after it has been applied (see C. M. Hanson; P. E. Pierce; *Cellular Convection in Polymer Coatings-An Assessment*, 12 Ind. Eng. Chem. Prod. Res. Develop. 1973, p. 67).

Orange peel is related to Benard cells. Orange peel is most common in fluid coatings which have a high viscosity to solids ratio. This is due to the tendency of such systems to "freeze in" the topography associated with Benard cells upon loss of relatively small amounts of solvent. The topography can be observed as a small scale pattern of fine spots like the surface of an orange peel. The scale of the pattern is on the order of millimeters and smaller.

Mottle is an irregular pattern or non-uniform density defect that appears blotchy when viewed. This blotchiness can be gross or subtle. The pattern may even take on an orientation in one direction. The scale can be quite small or quite large and may be on the order of centimeters. Blotches may appear to be different colors or shades of color. In black-and-white imaging materials, blotches are generally shades of gray and may not be apparent in unprocessed articles but become apparent upon development. Mottle is

2

usually caused by air movement over the coating before it enters the dryer, as it enters the dryer, or in the dryer (see for example, "Modern Coating and Drying Technology," Eds. E. D. Cohen, E. B. Gutoff, VCH Publishers, NY, 1992; p. 288).

Mottle is a problem that is encountered under a wide variety of conditions. For example, mottle is frequently encountered when coatings comprising solutions of a polymeric resin in an organic solvent are coated onto webs or sheets of synthetic organic polymer substrates. Mottle is an especially severe problem when the coating solution contains a volatile organic solvent but can also occur to a significant extent even with aqueous coating compositions or with coating compositions using an organic solvent of low volatility. Mottle is an undesirable defect because it detracts from the appearance of the finished product. In some instances, such as in imaging articles, it is further undesirable because it adversely affects the functioning of the coated article.

Substrates that have been coated are often dried using a drying oven which contains a drying gas. The drying gas, usually air, is heated to a suitable elevated temperature and brought into contact with the coating in order to bring about evaporation of the solvent. The drying gas can be introduced into the drying oven in a variety of ways. Typically, the drying gas is directed in a manner which distributes it uniformly over the surface of the coating under carefully controlled conditions that are designed to result in a minimum amount of disturbance of the coated layer. The spent drying gas, that is, drying gas which has become laden with solvent vapor evaporated from the coating, is continuously discharged from the dryer.

Many industrial dryers use a number of individually isolated zones to allow for flexibility in drying characteristics along the drying path. For example, U.S. Pat. No. 5,060,396 describes a zoned cylindrical dryer for removing solvents from a traveling substrate. The multiple drying zones are physically separated, and each drying zone may operate at a different temperature and pressure. Multiple drying zones are desirable because they permit the use of successively lower solvent vapor composition. German Pat. No. DD 236,186 describes the control of humidity and temperature of each drying zone to effect maximum drying at minimum cost. Soviet Pat. No. SU 620766 describes a multistage timber dryer with staged temperature increases that reduce the stress within the timber.

Usually, when multiple zones are present in an oven, they are isolated from one another. The coated substrate is transferred between the zones through a slot. In order to minimize the air and heat flow between zones and to be able to effectively control the drying conditions in each zone, this slot typically has as small a cross-section as possible that will still allow the substrate to pass between zones. However, the adjacent zones are in communication with one another through the slot and thus there is typically a pressure difference between zones. Air flows from one zone to another; and since the dimensions of the slot are small, the air gas velocity is high. Therefore the slots between ovens tend to be sources for mottle defects.

U.S. Pat. No. 4,365,423 discloses an apparatus and method for drying to reduce mottle. FIG. 1 shows an embodiment of this invention. The drying apparatus 2A uses a foraminous shield 4A to protect the liquid coating 6A from air disturbances. The foraminous shield 4A is described to be a screen or perforated plate that sets up a "quiescent" zone above the substrate promoting uniform heat and mass trans-

5,881,476

3

fer conditions. The shield 4A is also noted to restrict the extent to which spent drying gas, which is impinged toward the liquid coating 6A, comes in contact with the surface of the coating. This method is reported to be especially advantageous in drying photographic materials, particularly those comprising one or more layers formed from coating compositions that contain volatile organic solvents. This apparatus and method has the limitation that it slows the rate of drying.

U.S. Pat. No. 4,999,927 discloses another apparatus and method for drying a liquid layer that has been applied to a carrier material moving through a drying zone and which contains both vaporizable solvent components and non-vaporizable components. FIG. 2 illustrates this apparatus 2B and method. Drying gas flows in the direction of the carrier material 8B and is accelerated within the drying zone in the direction of flow. In this manner, laminar flow of the boundary layer of the drying gas adjacent to the liquid layer on the carrier material is maintained. By avoiding turbulent air flow, mottle is reduced.

Examples of two other known drying apparatuses and methods are shown in FIGS. 3 and 4. FIG. 3 schematically shows a known drying apparatus 2C in which air flows (see arrows) from one end of an enclosure to the other end. The airflow is shown in FIG. 3 as being parallel and counter to the direction of travel of the coated substrate (i.e., counter-current). Parallel cocurrent airflow is also known.

FIG. 4 schematically shows a known drying apparatus 2D which involves the creation of impingement airflow (see arrows), that is more perpendicular to the plane of the substrate 8D. The impinging air also acts as a means for floating or supporting the substrate through the oven.

U.S. Pat. No. 4,051,278 describes a method for reducing mottle caused by solvent evaporation in the coating zone. Coating a substrate with reduced mottle, such as coating a composition comprising a film-forming material in an evaporable liquid vehicle onto a flexible web or synthetic organic polymer, is achieved by maintaining at least two of the following at a temperature substantially equivalent to the equilibrium surface temperature of the coated layer at the coating zone: (1) the temperature of the atmosphere at the location of coating; (2) the temperature of the coating composition at the location of coating; and (3) the temperature of the substrate at the coating zone. The equilibrium surface temperature is defined as the temperature assumed by the surface of a layer of the coating composition under steady state conditions of heat transfer following evaporative cooling of the layer at the coating zone. After coating, drying of the coated layer is carried out by conventional techniques. This invention includes methods of drying while preventing mottle formation by controlling temperature (i.e., by cooling) at the coating zone and does not address temperature control or mottle formation within the drying oven. Furthermore, this method would be useful only for coatings that cool significantly due to evaporative cooling which subsequently causes mottle.

U.S. Pat. No. 4,872,270 describes a method of drying latex paint containing water and one or more high boiling organic solvents coated onto a carrier film. The process yields a dried paint layer free of blisters and bubble defects. The coated film is passed continuously through a series of at least three drying stages in contact with warm, moderately humid air and more than half of the heat required for evaporation is supplied to the underside of the film. Drying conditions in at least each of the first three stages are controlled to maintain a film temperature profile which

4

causes the water to evaporate at a moderate rate but more rapidly than the organic solvents, thus achieving coalescence of the paint and avoiding the trapping of liquids in a surface-hardened paint layer. Bubble formation is reportedly eliminated by controlling the vapor pressure of the volatile solvent within the film. The formation of mottle occurs due to a different mechanism than blisters and requires different methods for control and elimination.

U.S. Pat. No. 4,894,927 describes a process for drying a moving web coated with a coating composition containing a flammable organic solvent. The web is passed through a closed-type oven filled with an inert gas and planer heaters on top and bottom of the web. The coating surface is reported to be barely affected by movement of the inert drying gases due to the small amounts of gas required. No discussion of the criticality of the gas flow system or of the need to prevent mottle is given.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,077,912 describes a process for drying a continuously traveling web coated with a coating composition containing an organic solvent. The coating is first dried using hot air until the coating is set-to-touch. It is sufficient that the drying conditions, such as temperature and hot air velocity, are adjusted so as to obtain the set-to-touch condition. Set-to-touch corresponds to a viscosity of  $10^8$  to  $10^{10}$  poise. Residual solvent is then removed using a heated roll. This method is said to reduce drying defects, decrease drying time, and reduce oven size. No discussion on the construction of the oven, methods of drying, or the criticality of the gas flow system and path is given.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,147,690 describes a process and apparatus for drying a liquid film on a substrate which includes a lower gas or air supply system and an upper gas or air supply system. Heated gas on the underside of the substrate forms a carrying cushion for the substrate and at the same time supplies drying energy to the substrate. The exhaust air is carried away through return channels. Slots for the gas supply and return are arranged alternately in the lower gas system. The upper gas or air supply system has a greater width than the lower gas or air supply system. In the upper gas or air supply system, the supply air or gas is diverted by baffles onto the substrate and returned over the substrate web as return air or gas. The upper gas or air supply system is subdivided into sections for the supply air and exhaust air, each section includes two filter plates of porous material.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,433,973 discloses a method of coating a magnetic recording media onto a substrate, wherein the coating is substantially free of Benard cells. The method comprises the steps of: (a) providing a dispersion comprising a polymeric binder, a pigment, and a solvent; (b) coating the dispersion onto the surface of a substrate; (c) drying the dispersion; (d) calculating values comprising  $\mu$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $d$  representing the viscosity, temperature gradient, and wet caliper of the dispersion respectively; and (e) during the course of carrying out steps (a), (b), and (c), maintaining the ratio

$$\beta d^2/\mu$$

below a threshold value sufficient to substantially prevent the formation of Benard Cells in the magnetic recording media coating. No discussion of the interior of the drying oven and arrangement of air inlets and exhausts is given.

A number of methods involve the control of the drying gas within the oven. For example, U.S. Pat. No. 5,001,845 describes a control system for an industrial dryer used to remove a flammable solvent or vapors from a traveling web of material. Sensors within each zone measure the oxygen content of the pressurized atmosphere. If the oxygen content

5,881,476

5

exceeds a given limit, an inert gas is added. At the same time, the pressure is maintained within the oven body by releasing excess gas to the atmosphere.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,136,790 describes a method and apparatus for drying a continuously moving web carrying a liquid, wherein the web is passed through a dryer in which the web is exposed to a recirculating flow of heated drying gas. Exhaust gas is diverted and discharged from the recirculating gas flow at a gas velocity which is variable between maximum and minimum levels, and makeup gas is added to the recirculating gas flow at a gas velocity which is also variable between maximum and minimum levels. A process variable is sensed and compared to a selected set point. A first of the aforesaid flow rates is adjusted to maintain the process variable at the selected set point, and a second of the aforesaid flow rates is adjusted in response to adjustments to the first drying gas velocity in order to insure that the first drying gas velocity remains between its maximum and minimum levels. No discussion of the interior of the drying oven and arrangement of air inlets and exhausts is given.

Soviet Pat. No. SU 1,276,889 describes a method for controlling drying gas by controlling the air gas velocity within the oven. In this method, fan speed in one zone is adjusted, controlling the air flow rate, in order to maintain the web temperature at the outlet to a specified temperature. This approach is limited in that increasing the air gas velocity in order to meet a drying specification can lead to mottle.

The physical state of the drying web can also be used to control the drying ovens. For example, in Soviet Pat. No. SU 1,276,889, noted above, the temperature of the web at the outlet of the oven was used to set the air flow rate.

U.S. Pat. No. 5,010,659 describes an infrared drying system for monitoring the temperature, moisture content, or other physical property at particular zone positions along the width of a traveling web, and utilizing a computer control system to energize and control for finite time periods a plurality of infrared lamps for equalizing physical property and drying the web. The infrared drying system is particularly useful in the graphic arts industry, the coating industry and the paper industry, as well as any other applications requiring physical property profiling and drying of the width of a traveling web of material. No discussion of the interior of the drying oven and arrangement of air inlets and exhausts is given.

U.S. Pat. No. 4,634,840 describes a method for controlling the drying temperature in an oven used for heat-treating thermoplastic sheets and films. A broad and continuous sheet or film is uniformly heated in a highly precise manner and with a specific heat profile by using a plurality of radiation heating furnaces, wherein in the interior of each radiation heating furnace, a plurality of rows of heaters are arranged rectangularly to the direction of delivery of the sheet or film to be heated. A thermometer for measuring the temperature of the sheet or film is arranged in the vicinity of an outlet for the sheet or film outside each radiation heating furnace. Outputs of heaters arranged within the radiation heating furnaces located just before the respective thermometers are controlled based on the temperatures detected by the respective thermometers by using a computer.

Two other patents address drying problems, but fail to address the problem of mottle. U.S. Pat. No. 3,849,904 describes the use of a mechanical restriction of air flow at the edge of a web. Adjustable edge deckles are noted as forming a seal with the underside of a fabric allowing for different heating conditions to occur at the edge. This allows the edge of the fabric to be cooled while the remainder of the fabric

6

is heated. This approach, however, is not advantageous when a polymer substrate is used. Possible scratching of the polymer substrate can generate small particulates which can be deposited on the coating. U.S. Pat. No. 3,494,048 describes the use of mechanical means to divert air flow at the edge of the web. Baffles are noted as deflecting air and preventing air from penetrating behind paper in an ink dryer and from lifting the paper from a drum. Keeping the paper on the drum prevents the drying ink from being smeared.

A need exists for a drying apparatus and method which reduces, if not eliminates, one or more coating defects such as mottle and orange peel, yet permits high throughput. In addition to the drying of coatings used to make photothermographic, thermographic, and photographic articles, the need for improved drying apparatus and methods extends to the drying of coatings of adhesive solutions, magnetic recording solutions, priming solutions, and the like.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention can be used to dry coated substrates, and particularly to dry coated substrates used in the manufacture of photothermographic, thermographic, and photographic articles. More importantly, the present invention can do this without introducing significant mottle and while running at higher web speeds than known drying methods.

One embodiment includes a method for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a first substrate surface of a substrate and minimizing the formation of mottle as the coating solvent is evaporating. The method includes the step of providing a drying oven having an enclosure having an inlet and an outlet and defining at least a first drying zone. The oven also includes the ability to create a plurality of drying subzones within the at least one first drying zone. At least two of the plurality of drying subzones employ different drying conditions. Physical barriers are not required to create the plurality of drying subzones. Another step includes controlling the drying conditions within the at least two of the plurality of drying subzones.

Another embodiment of the present invention is similar to the first embodiment but where a first plurality of subzones adjacent to the second substrate surface predominantly causes the evaporating of the coating solvent.

Another embodiment of the present invention is similar to the first embodiment but where an opening between the plurality of subzones is sufficiently large such that a pressure differential within the plurality of subzones created by the opening is insufficiently large to minimize the formation of mottle.

Another embodiment of the present invention is similar to the first embodiment but where the oven includes at least a first drying gas supply port and a second drying gas supply port and at least a first drying gas removal port and a second drying gas removal port. The first drying gas removal port is positioned relative to the first drying gas supply port to create a first drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port. The second drying gas removal port is positioned relative to the second drying gas supply port to create a second drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port.

Another embodiment of the present invention includes an apparatus for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a first substrate surface of a substrate and minimizing the

5,881,476

7

formation of mottle as the coating solvent is evaporating. The apparatus includes a drying oven having an enclosure having an inlet and an outlet and defining at least a first drying zone. The oven has the ability to create a plurality of drying subzones within the at least one first drying zone. At least two of the plurality of drying subzones employ different drying conditions. Physical barriers are not required to create the plurality of drying subzones. The apparatus has the ability to control the drying conditions within the at least two of the plurality of drying subzones.

Another embodiment of the present invention is similar to the previous embodiment, but where a first plurality of subzones adjacent to the substrate second surface predominantly causes the evaporating of the coating solvent.

Another embodiment is similar to the first apparatus embodiment noted above, but where an opening between the plurality of subzones is sufficiently large such that a pressure differential within the plurality of subzones created by the opening is insufficiently large to minimize the formation of mottle.

Another embodiment is similar to the first apparatus embodiment noted above, but includes a first drying gas supply port and a second drying gas supply port and at least a first drying gas removal port and a second drying gas removal port. The first drying gas removal port is positioned relative to the first drying gas supply port to create a first drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port. The second drying gas removal port is positioned relative to the second drying gas supply port to create a second drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port.

As used herein:

“photothermographic article” means a construction comprising at least one photothermographic emulsion layer and any substrates, top-coat layers, image receiving layers, blocking layers, antihalation layers, subbing or priming layers, etc.

“thermographic article” means a construction comprising at least one thermographic emulsion layer and any substrates, top-coat layers, image receiving layers, blocking layers, antihalation layers, subbing or priming layers, etc.

“emulsion layer” means a layer of a photothermographic element that contains the photosensitive silver halide and non-photosensitive reducible silver source material; or a layer of the thermographic element that contains the non-photosensitive reducible silver source material.

Other aspects, advantages, and benefits of the present invention are disclosed and apparent from the detailed description, examples, and claims.

**BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS**

The foregoing advantages, construction, and operation of the present invention will become more readily apparent from the following description and accompanying drawings.

FIG. 1 is a side view of a known drying apparatus;

FIG. 2 is a side view of another known drying apparatus;

FIG. 3 is a side schematic view of another known drying apparatus;

FIG. 4 is a side schematic view of another known drying apparatus;

FIG. 5 is a side view of a drying apparatus in accordance with the present invention;

8

FIG. 6 is a partial side view of the drying apparatus shown in FIG. 5;

FIG. 7 is a partial sectional view of the drying apparatus shown in FIG. 6;

FIG. 8 is a partial sectional view of the drying apparatus shown in FIG. 6;

FIG. 9 is a sectional front view of the drying apparatus shown in FIG. 6;

FIG. 10 is a side schematic view of an air foil and an air bar which are shown in FIGS. 5–9;

FIG. 11 is a side view of an alternative embodiment of the drying apparatus shown in FIGS. 5–10;

FIG. 12 is a side view of alternative embodiment of the drying apparatus shown in FIGS. 5–11;

FIG. 13 is a graph illustrating the constant temperature of a drying gas within a drying oven and the resulting coating temperatures as a function of distance traveled within the oven;

FIG. 14 is a graph illustrating the maximum allowable heat transfer rate and actual heat transfer rate to the coating as a result of the constant drying gas temperature illustrated in FIG. 13;

FIG. 15 is a graph illustrating the resulting coating temperatures as a function of distance traveled within an oven when the coating is subjected to two different drying gas temperatures;

FIG. 16 is a graph illustrating the maximum allowable heat transfer rate and the actual heat transfer rate to the coating as a result of being subjected to the two drying gas temperatures illustrated in FIG. 15;

FIG. 17 is a graph illustrating the resulting coating temperatures as a function of distance traveled within an oven when the coating is subjected to three different drying gas temperatures;

FIG. 18 is a graph illustrating the maximum allowable heat transfer rate and the actual heat transfer rate to the coating as a result of being subjected to the three drying gas temperatures illustrated in FIG. 17;

FIG. 19 is a graph illustrating the resulting coating temperatures as a function of distance within an oven when the coating is subjected to fifteen different drying gas temperatures;

FIG. 20 is a graph illustrating the maximum allowable heat transfer rate and the actual heat transfer rate to the coating as a result of being subjected to the fifteen drying gas temperatures illustrated in FIG. 19;

FIG. 21 is a graph illustrating the resulting coating temperatures as a function of distance within an oven when the coating is subjected to fifteen different drying gas temperatures where the maximum allowable heat transfer rate increases along the length of the oven;

FIG. 22 is a graph illustrating the maximum allowable heat transfer rate and the actual heat transfer rates to the coating as a result of being subjected to the fifteen drying gas temperatures illustrated in FIG. 19; and

FIG. 23 is a side view of another embodiment of the drying apparatus shown generally in FIG. 5.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

A drying apparatus 10 is illustrated generally in FIG. 5 and more specifically in FIGS. 6–10. This drying apparatus 10 is useful for drying a coating 12 which has been applied to (i.e., coated onto) a substrate 14 forming a coated sub-

5,881,476

9

strate **16**. When the coating **12** comprises a film-forming material or other solid material dissolved, dispersed, or emulsified in an evaporable liquid vehicle, drying means evaporating the evaporable liquid vehicle (e.g., solvent) so that a dried, film or solids layer (e.g., an adhesive layer or a photothermographic layer) remains on the substrate **14**. Hereinafter, the more generic “evaporable liquid vehicle” will herein be referred to as a “solvent.”

While suitable for a wide variety of coatings, the drying apparatus **10** is particularly suited for drying photothermographic and thermographic coatings to prepare photothermographic and thermographic articles. The drying apparatus **10** has the ability to dry such coatings in a relatively short period of time while minimizing the creation of drying-induced defects, such as mottle. The following disclosure describes embodiments of the drying apparatus **10**, embodiments of methods for using the drying apparatus **10**, and details pertaining to materials particularly suited for drying by the drying apparatus **10**.

The Drying Apparatus **10**

FIGS. 5–10 show an embodiment of the drying apparatus **10** which generally can include a drying enclosure **17** with a first zone **18** and a second zone **20**. The first and second zones **18**, **20** can be divided by a zone wall **22**. As will become more apparent later within this disclosure, the first zone **18** is of primary importance. The first zone **18** and the second zone **20** can each provide different drying environment. In addition, the first zone **18** can provide a plurality of drying environments therein, which will be discussed further.

The substrate **14** can be unwound by a substrate unwinder **24**, and the coating **12** is shown as being coated onto the substrate **14** by coating apparatus **26**. The coated substrate **16** can enter the drying apparatus **10** through a coated substrate entrance **27** and be dried when traveling through the first and second zones **18**, **20**. The coated substrate can exit the drying apparatus **10** through a coated substrate exit **28** then be wound at the coated substrate winder **29**. Although the coated substrate **16** is shown as following an arched path through the first zone **18**, the path could be flat or have another shape. And, although the coated substrate **16** is shown being redirected within zone **2** such that the coated web takes three passes through zone **2**, the drying apparatus **10** could be designed such that fewer or more passes occur.

The first zone **18** is more specifically shown in FIGS. 6–10 as including a number of air foils **30** which are located below the coated substrate **16** along the length of the first zone **18**. The air foils **30** supply drying gas (e.g., heated air, inert gas) toward the bottom surface of the coated substrate **16** such that the coated substrate can ride on a cushion of drying gas. Drying gas is supplied to a group of air foils **30** by an air foil plenum **31**.

The temperature and gas velocity of the drying gas supplied from a group of air foils **30** can be controlled by controlling the temperature and pressure of the drying gas in the corresponding air foil plenum **31**. Consequently, independent control of the temperature and pressure of the drying gas within each air foil plenum **31** allows for independent control of the temperature and gas velocity of the drying gas supplied by each group of air foils **30**.

Although each air foil plenum **31** is shown as supplying a group of either twelve or fifteen air foils **30**, other ducting arrangements could be used. An extreme example would be for one air foil plenum **31** to supply drying gas to only one air foil **30**. With this arrangement, independent control of the temperature and pressure for each air foil plenum **31** would result in independent control of the temperature and gas velocity of the drying gas exiting from each air foil **30**.

10

Each of the air foils can have a foil slot (the side view of which is shown in FIG. 10) through which a stream of drying gas enters into the drying apparatus **10**. The foil slot can have a slot width which is not significantly wider than the substrate width such that mottle on the first and second coating edges is minimized. Setting the width in this way affects the flow of the drying gas around the edges of the substrate. When the foil slot width is approximately equal to or narrower than the width of the substrate, mottle on the edges of the liquid is reduced.

FIG. 10 illustrates the flow of air out of a foil slot of an air foil **30** and FIG. 7 illustrates the length of air foils **30**. Because the slot can be made to extend to the ends of the air foil **30**, the slot length can virtually be as long as the length of the air foil **30**. Because the drying apparatus **10** can be used to dry coated substrates **16** having a widths which are significantly less than the foil slot length (as well coated substrates **16** having widths approximately equal to or even wider than the foil slot length), one or both of the ends of the foil slot can be deckled such that the foil slot length is approximately equal to the width of the narrower coated substrates. The length of the slots can be deckled or adjusted by covering more or less of the ends of the slots with a material such as an adhesive tape. Alternatively, a metal plate at each edge of the foil slots could be inwardly and outwardly movable to close off more or less of the foil slot. Also, ends of the slots could be plugged with a material, such as a conformable material (e.g., rubber).

Lower exhaust ports **32** are positioned below the air foils **30** to remove the drying gas, or at least a portion of the drying gas, supplied by the air foils **30**. The drying gas exhausted by a group of lower exhaust ports **32** is exhausted into a lower exhaust plenum **33**. Five lower exhaust plenums **33** are shown, each of which is connected to two lower exhaust ports **32**. Lower exhaust ports **32** are distributed throughout the lower interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** to remove drying gas throughout the drying apparatus **10** rather than at concentrated points. Other similar ducting arrangements are envisioned.

The velocity of the drying gas through a lower exhaust port **32** can largely be controlled by controlling the static pressure difference between the lower interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** (the interior portion below the coated substrate level) and some suitable reference point (e.g., the coating room in which the coating apparatus **26** is positioned; or, each lower exhaust plenum **33**). As a result, independent control of the static pressure difference between the lower interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** and each lower exhaust plenum **33** allows for independent control of the gas velocity exhausted by the group of lower exhaust ports **32** of each lower exhaust plenums **33**.

The combination of the ability to independently control the drying gas supplied by each air foil plenum **31** (temperature and gas velocity) and the ability to independently control the drying gas exhausted by each exhaust plenum **33** allows for the creation of lower subzones within the first zone **18** of the drying apparatus **10**. As shown, the first zone **18** has five lower subzones due to the independent control of five air foil plenums **31** and five lower exhaust plenums **33**. As a result, the five lower subzones can contain drying gas with a unique temperature and a unique gas velocity (or other heat transfer coefficient factor). In other words, the coated substrate **16** can be subjected to five different drying environments (subzones).

The flow direction of the drying gas from the air foils **30** can be controlled based on the configuration of the air foils. As shown in FIG. 10, the air foils **30** can be configured to

5,881,476

## 11

initially supply drying gas cocurrently with the travel direction of the coated substrate and against the bottom surface of the coated substrate **16** to create a cushion of air on which the coated substrate floats. The airfoils **30** can be designed such that the drying gas flows essentially parallel to the coated substrate **16** and such that the coated substrate **16** floats approximately 0.3 to 0.7 centimeters above the upper portion of the airfoils **30**. While shown as causing cocurrent gas flow to the substrate travel direction, the air foils **30** could be configured to cause the drying gas to impinge on the substrate second surface, to flow generally countercurrently to the substrate travel direction, to flow generally orthogonally to the substrate travel direction, or to flow generally diagonally to the substrate travel direction.

Air bars **34** are located above the coated substrate **16** along the length of the first zone **18**. The air bars **34** can be used to supply top-side gas (e.g., fresh air, inert gas) which can be useful for added drying, to carry away evaporated solvent, and/or to dilute the solvent if it is necessary to control the solvent level within the drying enclosure **17**. The top-side gas is supplied to a group of air bars **34** by an air bar plenum **35**. Although each air bar plenum **35** is shown as supplying a particular number of air bars **34**, other ducting arrangements are envisioned. If desired, the drying apparatus **10** can be used such that no gas is supplied by the air bars **34** when top-side gas is not needed or desired (e.g., when the drying apparatus **10** is filled with inert gas).

The velocity of the top-side gas supplied from a group of air bars **34** can be controlled by controlling the static pressure difference between the upper interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** (the portion above the coated substrate level) and the corresponding air bar plenum **35**. Independent control of the static pressure difference between the upper interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** and an air bar plenum **35** allows for independent control of the temperature and gas velocity of the top-side gas supplied by the corresponding group of air bars **34**.

Upper exhaust ports **36** are positioned above the air bars **34** to remove at least a portion of the gas supplied by the air bars **34** and can remove at least a portion of the solvent which is evaporating from the coated substrate **16**. The top-side gas exhausted by a group of upper exhaust ports **36** is exhausted into an upper exhaust plenum **37**. Five upper exhaust plenums **37** are shown, each of which is connected to two upper exhaust ports **36**. Upper exhaust ports **36** are distributed throughout the upper interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** to remove top-side gas throughout the drying apparatus **10** rather than at concentrated points. Other similar ducting arrangements are envisioned.

The gas velocity of the top-side gas through a group of upper exhaust ports **36** can largely be controlled by controlling the static pressure difference between the upper interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** and some suitable reference point (e.g., the coating room in which the coating apparatus **26** is positioned, or each upper exhaust plenum **37**). Consequently, independent control of the static pressure difference between the upper interior portion of the drying apparatus **10** and each upper exhaust plenum **37** allows for independent control of the gas velocity exhausted by the group of upper exhaust ports **36** of each upper exhaust plenum **37**.

FIG. **10** illustrates a side view of an air bar **34**. Top-side gas is shown exiting two openings. The length of the openings for the air bar **34** can be approximately equal to or less than the length of the air bar **34**. If each opening were instead a series of discrete holes rather than a single opening, the air bar **34** would be considered a perforated plate, or even

## 12

a foraminous plate. A perforated or foraminous plate could be used in place of the air bar **34**, as could other sources of top-side gas (e.g., air turn, air foil).

The locations of pyrometers **38**, static pressure gages **39**, and anemometers **40** are shown in FIG. **5**. These known instruments can be used to measure the temperature, static pressure, and gas velocity of the drying gas at various locations within the drying apparatus **10**. The measurements taken by these instruments can be directed to a central processing unit or other controlling mechanism (not shown) which can be used to control the conditions within the oven **10** by altering the drying gas temperature and pressure within the plenums.

To provide the necessary heat to the coated substrate to evaporate the coating solvent (i.e., the solvent portion of the coating), the drying gas can be air or an inert gas. Or, the use of a drying gas can be replaced or augmented with the use of heated rolls **50** on which the coated substrate can ride, as shown in FIG. **11**. Similarly, infrared heat can be used in place of the drying gas such as with the spaced infrared heaters shown in FIG. **12** or with a heated plate positioned above or below the coated substrate **16**. The temperature of each heated roller **50** or infrared heater **52** (or a group of rollers **50** or infrared heaters **52**) can be independently controlled.

Methods For Drying Using the Drying Apparatus **10**

It has been found that coatings can be dried without introducing significant mottle defects by controlling the heat transfer rate to the coating **12** and by minimizing disturbances of the gas adjacent to the coated side of the coated substrate **16** (i.e., top-side gas; see Examples Section). When the coating solvent is evaporated using a drying gas, as for example in a drying apparatus **10**, the heat transfer rate ( $h\Delta T$ ) to the coated substrate is the product of the heat transfer coefficient of the drying gas ( $h$ ) and the difference in temperature ( $\Delta T$ ), between the temperature of the drying gas in contact with it ( $T_{gas}$ ) and the temperature of the coated substrate ( $T_{cs}$ ). (The temperature of the coating **12** is assumed to be equivalent to the temperature of the coated substrate. The heat transfer rate to the coating **12** is the key to preventing or minimizing mottle formation.) In order to prevent mottle formation in the coating **12** during drying, this heat transfer rate ( $h\Delta T$ ) to the coating **12** must be kept below a threshold mottle-causing value. When a particular substrate **14** is used, the heat transfer rate to the coated substrate **16** must be kept below a corresponding threshold mottle-causing value.

As a particular coating **12** is dried (or otherwise solidified), it will eventually reach a point in which it becomes virtually mottle-proof. At this point, the heat transfer rate can be significantly increased by increasing the temperature difference  $\Delta T$  and/or by increasing the heat transfer coefficient  $h$  (e.g., by increasing the velocity of the drying gas on either the coated side or the non-coated side of the coated substrate **16**).

For a typical drying zone, the heat transfer coefficient  $h$  and the drying gas temperature  $T_{gas}$  are relatively constant and the temperature of the coated substrate **16** (and the coating **12**) increases as the coated substrate **16** is heated. Therefore, the product ( $h\Delta T$ ) has its maximum value at the initial point of the zone. Often, it is sufficient to keep the initial heat transfer rate to the coating ( $h\Delta T_i$ ) below a maximum allowable (threshold) value in order to avoid mottle in a particular drying zone.

The most efficient process for drying a coating (i.e., evaporating a coating solvent) will be one that adds heat most quickly without causing mottle. As the coated substrate

5,881,476

13

temperature  $T_{cs}$  increases, the heat transfer rate ( $h\Delta T$ ) decreases along the drying zone making the drying zone less efficient (due to the smaller  $\Delta T$ ). The total amount of heat transferred to the coated substrate ( $q$ ) can be calculated by integrating the product ( $h\Delta T$ ) across the length of the oven and the width of the coating. When the coating width is relatively constant, the total amount of heat transferred to the coated substrate **16** is proportional to the area under the heat transfer rate curves described and shown below. Maximizing the area under the curve maximizes the heat transferred to the coated substrate and maximizes the efficiency of the drying process.

The maximum allowable or threshold heat transfer rate of a particular coating varies proportionately to the viscosity of the coating **12**. A coating having less thickness or a higher viscosity would have a higher maximum allowable or threshold heat transfer rate. This also means that, as the coating **12** is further dried, the viscosity will increase and the coating thickness will decrease thereby increasing the threshold heat transfer rate. Consequently, the coating can be heated at an increasingly higher heat transfer rate as the threshold temperature curve allows. Furthermore, the coating **12**, as previously noted, will eventually be dried to a point of being mottle-proof (i.e., not susceptible to mottle by the gas temperature nor by the gas velocity and any other factor affecting the heat transfer coefficient  $h$ ).

In the following discussion, the heat transfer coefficient  $h$ , of the drying gas is kept constant and the drying gas temperature  $T_{gas}$  is allowed to vary. When there is a maximum heat transfer rate  $(h\Delta T)_{max}$  that can occur without causing mottle, there will then be a given maximum allowable difference between the temperature of the drying gas and the temperature of the coated substrate **16**.

Instead of varying the gas temperature, the temperature can be held constant while varying the heat transfer coefficient  $h$ . If the velocity of the drying gas is used to vary the heat transfer coefficient, the velocity must be kept below a maximum allowable or threshold velocity to prevent mottle.

The advantage of the additional zones is described in the Examples Section and illustrated in FIGS. **13–22**. Table 1 below shows typical drying gas and coated substrate temperatures for the drying conditions described below and for a particular coated substrate **16**. Cooling of the web due to solvent evaporation is assumed negligible for the discussion below.

TABLE 1

| Typical Drying Conditions Which Correspond With FIGS. 13–22.      |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| Heat Transfer Coefficient - $h$                                   | 5 cal/sec-m <sup>2</sup> -° C. |
| Initial Coated Substrate Temperature $T_{CSi}$                    | 20° C.                         |
| Maximum Heat Transfer Rate Without Mottle Formation - $h\Delta T$ | 150 cal/sec-m <sup>2</sup>     |
| Drying Length   | 30 m                           |
| Width of Coating on Substrate                                     | 1 m                            |

FIG. **13** shows typical temperature curves for the coated substrate **16**. The coated substrate **16**, initially at 20° C., is subjected to a constant drying gas temperature of 50° C. The temperature of the coated substrate **16** slowly increases over the length of the drying zone (30 m) until it reaches the temperature of the drying gas. FIG. **14** shows the product  $h\Delta T$  at any given location as drying proceeds. At all times, the heat transfer rate is at or below the maximum allowable heat transfer rate of 150 cal/sec-m<sup>2</sup> and mottle is not caused. The amount of heat transferred to the coated substrate **16** per

14

unit time drops off as the temperature of the coated substrate  $T_{cs}$  increases. At the end of the drying zone this amount is significantly less than the maximum allowable heat transfer rate. Thus, the process is much less efficient than it could be.

FIGS. **15** and **16**, demonstrate the advantage when the drying process is divided into two equal zones. The advantage of the second zone is that the drying gas temperature,  $T_{gas}$ , can be increased allowing the product  $h\Delta T$  to increase and drying in the second zone can take place more rapidly. Again, at all times the product  $h\Delta T$  is kept below 150 cal/sec-m<sup>2</sup>, the maximum allowable heat transfer rate without causing mottle. It should be noted that the total heat transferred to the coated substrate, represented by the area under the heat transfer rate curve in FIG. **16** is now considerably larger than for the case where only one zone is used.

Similarly, FIGS. **17** and **18** demonstrate that the total amount of heat transferred for drying is even greater and the process more efficient when three heating environments or zones are used. When 15 heating environments or zones are used as shown in FIGS. **19** and **20**, the process is even more efficient. In an extreme limit, where the drying environments or zones are infinitesimally small in size and infinite in number, the drying gas temperature can be continuously increased to maximize the allowable heat transfer rate to the coated substrate while still avoiding mottle.

FIGS. **13–20** represent a simplified case. In reality, as the coating solvent begins to evaporate (e.g., coating begins to dry), its viscosity increases and its thickness decreases. As a result, the maximum possible heat transfer rate ( $h\Delta T$ ) to the partially dried coating can be increased without formation of mottle. FIGS. **21–22** show that by increasing the heat transfer rate to correspond to the increasing maximum allowable heat transfer rate, the rate of drying can be increased even more rapidly than the simplified case shown in FIGS. **19–20** in which maximum allowable heat transfer rate is assumed constant.

Table 2 shows the total amount of heat ( $q$ ) transferred to the coated substrate for different numbers of drying environments or zones.

TABLE 2

| Drying Variables for FIGS. 13–19, and 22. |  |                     |
|---|--|---------------------|
| Subzones                                  | Total Amount of Heat Transferred (cal/sec) | Corresponding Figs. |
| 1   | 1427                                       | 13, 14              |
| 2   | 2389                                       | 15, 16              |
| 3   | 2936                                       | 17, 18              |
| 15  | 4269                                       | 19, 20              |
| ∞   | 4500                                       | No Fig.             |
| 15*                                       | 5070                                       | 21, 22              |

\*With increasing maximum allowable heat transfer rate.

Further advantages and efficiency can be gained by using subzones of unequal size. For example, a larger number of smaller subzones will be advantageous in regions where the maximum allowed heat transfer rate is changing most quickly. It is also possible for evaporative cooling to lower the temperature of the coated substrate  $T_{cs}$  within a drying subzone and the product ( $h\Delta T$ ) would then be at a maximum at some intermediate point within the subzone.

As previously noted, one aspect of a method for drying includes controlling the temperature and the heat transfer coefficient  $h$  within locations or subzones of the drying oven **10**, in particular, the first zone **18**. This can be accomplished primarily by controlling the temperature and gas velocity of the drying gas delivered by the air foil plenums **31** and



5,881,476

## 15

removed by the lower exhaust plenum **33**. The rate at which a particular air foil plenum **31** supplies drying gas and the rate at which the corresponding lower exhaust plenum **33** removes the drying gas allows a user to balance the two and virtually create a subzone having a particular gas temperature and velocity. Similar control of corresponding pairs of plenums **31**, **33** allow for control of the temperature and gas velocity of the drying gas within several subzones. As a result, the heat transfer rate to the coating **12** can be controlled and maximized within several subzones. Within a first subzone, for example, the velocity of the gas on the coated side and relative to the coated side should be not greater than a top-side gas velocity threshold, such as 150 ft/min (46 m/min) to protect a mottle-susceptible photothermographic coating **12** (e.g., the photothermographic coating described in Example 1 below).

It is important to further note that the first zone **18** is shown as an open body. In other words, the first zone **18** is shown as not including slotted vertical walls (or other physical structures with openings) to act as a barriers between the previously described subzones. Control of the heat transfer rate within individual subzones can be accomplished without the need for physical barriers. Although physical barriers could be used, they are not needed nor preferred due to possibly adverse air flow effects which can result (i.e., high velocity flow of drying gas through the slot in a vertical wall). In addition, physical barriers with openings between the subzones (to allow transport of the moving coated substrate) could be used. But, preferably, the openings would be sufficiently large to minimize the pressure differential between subzones such that the formation of mottle is minimized or prevented.

It is also important to note that the temperature and gas velocity of the drying gas within a particular subzone and within the first zone **18** as a whole can be controlled with the use of the previously noted pyrometers **38**, static pressure gauges **39**, anemometers **40**, and the previously noted controlling mechanism (not shown). The pyrometers **38** can sense the temperature of the coated substrate  $T_{cs}$ . The static pressure gauges **39** can sense the static pressure difference between a location within the interior of the drying apparatus **10** and some reference point (such as outside the drying apparatus **10** or within a nearby plenum). The anemometers **40** can sense the velocity of the drying gas.

The measurements from the pyrometers **38**, static pressure gauges **39**, and the anemometers **40** can allow the controlling mechanism and/or a user to adjust the heat transfer rate (temperature of the drying gas, heat transfer coefficient) to minimize mottle formation (at or below the maximum allowable or threshold heat transfer rate). For example, the pyrometers **38** can be positioned to sense the actual temperature of the coated substrate  $T_{cs}$  as the coated substrate is exiting one subzone and entering a downstream subzone. Based on that actual temperature versus a targeted temperature, the previously noted controlling mechanism can determine and set the heat transfer rate in the downstream subzone to be at or below the maximum allowable or threshold heat transfer rate. This controlling ability could be referred to as a feedforward strategy for a temperature set point.

Similarly, the controlling mechanism could compare the actual and the targeted temperatures and adjust the heat transfer rate in an upstream subzone to be at or below the maximum allowable or threshold heat transfer rate. This controlling ability could be referred to as a feedback loop or strategy. The targeted temperature, previously noted, can be experimentally determined so that the heat transfer rate to the coated substrate **16** can be monitored and adjusted accordingly.

## 16

Having both static pressure gauges **39** and anemometers **40**, a user has the choice as to how to control the gas velocity and direction. These two instruments could be used individually or in a coordinated fashion to control gas velocity and direction by controlling the volume of gas being exhausted from the drying apparatus **10**.

Control of the static pressure differences within the first zone **18** can be used to manage the gas flow through the first zone **18**. While the gas within each subzone was previously described as being managed such that gas flow from subzone to another is minimized, controlling static pressure differences across the entire first zone **18** can provide the ability to create a controlled degree of gas flow from one subzone to another. For example, the pressure  $P_1$  within an upstream upper exhaust plenum **37** could be slightly higher than the pressure  $P_2$  in a downstream upper exhaust plenum **37** such that the top-side gas flows at a low velocity in the downstream direction (i.e., cocurrent flow). This could be intentionally done to create a gas velocity of the top-side gas that approximately matches the velocity of the coated substrate **16**. Matching the velocities in this way can minimize disturbances on the coated side of the coated substrate **16**. Alternatively, a countercurrent flow could be induced instead of the cocurrent flow; or, a combination of cocurrent and countercurrent flows could be induced.

One can control static pressure differences to manage gas flow between the upper and lower interior portions of the drying apparatus **10**. For example, setting the pressure  $P_{top}$  above the coated substrate **16** at a higher value than the pressure  $P_{bottom}$  below the coated substrate **16** biases the exhaust of the gas to the lower interior portion. This approach may be desired to prevent the hotter drying gas below the coated substrate from flowing upwardly and contacting the coating. Alternatively, the pressures could be biased oppositely so that a portion of the drying gas below the coated substrate flows upwardly and is exhausted from the upper exhaust ports **36**, or the pressures could be adjusted such that flow between the upper and lower interior portions of the drying apparatus **10** is minimized.

It is also important to note that when the temperature of the coating **12** is increased to be virtually the same as the temperature of the drying gas, the flow of the drying gas can be reduced. Similarly, when the temperature of the coating **12** is increased to a desired temperature (even if different from the drying gas temperature), again, the flow of the drying gas can be reduced. This results in more a more efficient evaporating process. In other words, less energy is required and less cost is involved.

It is also important to note that the heat transfer coefficient  $h$  has been primarily discussed as being controlled by the velocity of the drying gas. Other factors that affect the heat transfer coefficient  $h$  include the distance between the air foil **30** and the coated substrate **16**, the density of the drying gas, and the angle at which the drying gas strikes or impinges upon the coated substrate **16**. For embodiments of the present invention which includes heating means other than air foils and air bars (e.g., perforated plates, infrared lamps, heated rollers, heated plates, and/or air turns), additional factors affecting the heat transfer coefficient are present.

Materials Particularly Suited For Drying By Drying Apparatus **10**

Any mottle-susceptible material, such as graphic arts materials and magnetic media, can be dried using the above-described drying apparatus **10** and methods. Materials particularly suited for drying by the drying apparatus **10** are photothermographic imaging constructions (e.g., silver halide-containing photographic articles which are developed

5,881,476

17

with heat rather than with a processing liquid). Photothermographic constructions or articles are also known as "dry silver" compositions or emulsions and generally comprise a substrate or support (such as paper, plastics, metals, glass, and the like) having coated thereon: (a) a photosensitive compound that generates silver atoms when irradiated; (b) a relatively non-photosensitive, reducible silver source; (c) a reducing agent (i.e., a developer) for silver ion, for example for the silver ion in the non-photosensitive, reducible silver source; and (d) a binder.

Thermographic imaging constructions (i.e., heat-developable articles) which can be dried with the drying apparatus 10 are processed with heat, and without liquid development, are widely known in the imaging arts and rely on the use of heat to help produce an image. These articles generally comprise a substrate (such as paper, plastics, metals, glass, and the like) having coated thereon: (a) a thermally-sensitive, reducible silver source; (b) a reducing agent for the thermally-sensitive, reducible silver source (i.e., a developer); and (c) a binder.

Photothermographic, thermographic and photographic emulsions used in the present invention can be coated on a wide variety of substrates. The substrate (also known as a web or support) 14, can be selected from a wide range of materials depending on the imaging requirement. Substrates may be transparent, translucent or opaque. Typical substrates include polyester film (e.g., polyethylene terephthalate or polyethylene naphthalate), cellulose acetate film, cellulose ester film, polyvinyl acetal film, polyolefinic film (e.g., polyethylene or polypropylene or blends thereof), polycarbonate film and related or resinous materials, as well as aluminum, glass, paper, and the like.

EXAMPLES

The following examples provide exemplary procedures for preparing and drying articles of the invention. Photothermographic imaging elements are shown. All materials used in the following examples are readily available from standard commercial sources, such as Aldrich Chemical Co., Milwaukee, Wis., unless otherwise specified. All percentages are by weight unless otherwise indicated. The following additional terms and materials were used.

Acryloid™ A-21 is an acrylic copolymer available from Rohm and Haas, Philadelphia, Pa.

Butvar™ B-79 is a polyvinyl butyral resin available from Monsanto Company, St. Louis, Mo.

CAB 171-15S is a cellulose acetate butyrate resin available from Eastman Kodak Co.

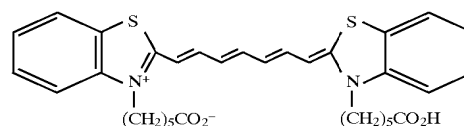
CBBA is 2-(4-chlorobenzoyl) benzoic acid.

1,1-bis(2-hydroxy-3,5-dimethylphenyl)-3,5,5-trimethylhexane [CAS RN=7292-14-0] is available from St-Jean Photo Chemicals, Inc., Quebec. It is a reducing agent (i.e., a hindered phenol developer) for the non-photosensitive reducible source of silver. It is also known as Nonox™ and Permanax™ WSO.

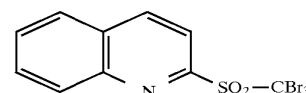
THDI is a cyclic trimer of hexamethylenediisocyanate. It is available from Bayer Corporation Co., Pittsburgh, Pa. It is also known as Desmodur™ N-3300.

Sensitizing Dye-1 is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,393,654 which is hereby incorporated by reference. It has the structure shown below.

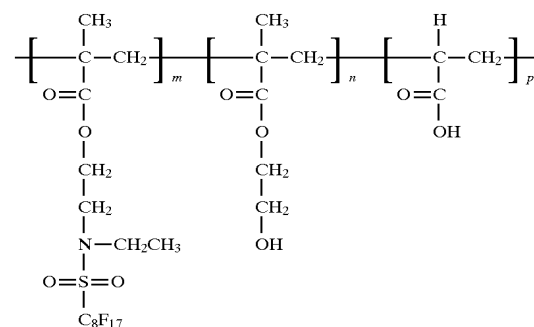
18



2-(Tribromomethylsulfonyl)quinoline is disclosed in U.S. Pat. No. 5,460,938 which is hereby incorporated by reference. It has the structure shown below.



The preparation of Fluorinated Terpolymer A (FT-A) is described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,380,644, which is hereby incorporated by reference. It has the following random polymer structure, where m=70, n=20 and p=10 (by weight % of monomer).



Example 1

A dispersion of silver behenate pre-formed core/shell soap was prepared as described in U.S. Pat. No. 5,382,504 which is hereby incorporated by reference. Silver behenate, Butvar™ B-79 polyvinyl butyral and 2-butanone were combined in the ratios shown below in Table 3.

TABLE 3

| Component       | Silver behenate dispersion Weight Percent |
|-----------------|---|
| Silver behenate | 20.8%                                     |
| Butvar™ B-79    | 2.2%                                      |
| 2-Butanone      | 77.0%                                     |

Then, a photothermographic emulsion was prepared by adding 9.42 lb. (4.27 Kg) of 2-butanone and a premix of 31.30 g of pyridinium hydrobromide perbromide dissolved in 177.38 g of methanol to 95.18 lb. (43.17 Kg) of the preformed silver soap dispersion. After 60 minutes of mixing, 318.49 g of a 15.0 wt % premix of calcium bromide in methanol was added and mixed for 30 minutes. Then, a premix of 29.66 g of 2-mercapto-5-methylbenzimidazole, 329.31 g of 2-(4-chlorobenzoyl)benzoic acid, 6.12 g of Sensitizing Dye-1, and 4.76 lb. (2.16 Kg) of methanol was added. After mixing for 60 minutes, 22.63 lb. (10.26 Kg) of Butvar™ B-79 polyvinyl butyral resin was added and allowed to mix for 30 minutes. After the resin had dissolved, a premix of 255.08 g of 2-(tribromomethylsulfonyl)

5,881,476

19

quinoline in 6.47 lb. (2.93 Kg) of 2-butanone was added and allowed to mix for 15 minutes. Then 5.41 lb. (2.45 Kg) of 1,1-bis(2-hydroxy-3,5-dimethylphenyl)-3,5,5-trimethylhexane was added and mixed for another 15 minutes. Then a premix of 144.85 g of THDI and 72.46 g of 2-butanone was added and mixed for 15 minutes. Next, 311.61 g of a 26.0% solution of tetrachlorophthalic acid in 2-butanone was added and mixed for 15 minutes. Finally, a solution of 243.03 g of phthalazine and 861.64 g of 2-butanone was added and mixed for 15 minutes.

A top-coat solution was prepared by adding 564.59 g of phthalic acid to 30.00 lb. (13.61 Kg) of methanol and mixing until the solids dissolved. After adding 174.88 lb. (79.3 Kg) of 2-butanone, 149.69 g of tetrachlorophthalic acid was added and mixed for 15 minutes. Then, 34.38 lb. (15.59 Kg) of CAB 171-15S resin was added and mixed for 1 hour. After the resin had dissolved, 2.50 lb. (1.13 Kg) of a 15.0 wt-% solution of FT-A in 2-butanone was added and mixed for 10 minutes. Then a premix of 26.33 lb. (11.94 Kg) of 2-butanone and 630.72 g of Acryloid A-21 resin and a premix of 26.33 lb. (11.94 Kg) of 2-butanone, 796.60 g of CAB 171-15S resin, and 398.44 g of calcium carbonate were added and mixed for 10 minutes.

A drying apparatus 10A like that shown in FIG. 23 herein was used to prepare a photothermographic article. (The first zone 18A within the drying apparatus 10A shown in FIG. 23 does not have the ability to create subzones.) A polyester substrate having a thickness of 6.8 mil (173 μm) was simultaneously coated with the photothermographic emulsion and top-coat solutions at 75 ft/min (0.38 meters per second). The photothermographic emulsion layer was applied at a wet thickness of 3.2 mil (81.3 μm). The top-coat solution was applied at a wet thickness of 0.75 mil (19.1 μm). After passing the coating die, the coated substrate 16A traveled a distance of about 13 feet (4 meters) and passed through an entrance slot into a dryer composed of 3 zones. The first zone 18A was comprised of air foils 30A below the coated substrate 16A which provided drying gas and also provide flotation for the coated substrate 16A. There were also perforated plate-type air bars 34A positioned 20 centimeters above the coated substrate 16A which provided top-side gas to maintain safe operating conditions below the lower flammability limit of the solvent. The majority of the drying heat is provided by the backside airfoils 30A (i.e., heat provided from below the substrate 14A to the coating 12A). The air temperature was set to the same value in each zone, however, the air pressure, hence the air velocity, was independently controlled for the air foils 30A and air bars 34A. The coating 12A was dried to be mottle proof within the first oven zone. The second and third oven zones 20A, 21A used counter-current parallel air flow and served to remove the residual solvent. (In the figures, air flow direction is shown with the included arrows.)

The variables investigated were the temperature of the drying gas  $T_{gas}$  and heat transfer coefficient  $h$ . The heat transfer coefficient  $h$  was varied by adjusting the air foil pressure drop and was measured independently.

The presence and severity of mottle was determined by preparing "greyouts." Greyouts are samples that have been uniformly exposed to light and developed at 255° F. (124° C.) using a heated roll processor (not shown) so that they have a uniform Optical Density, for example between 1.0 and 2.0.

The amount of mottle was subjectively determined by comparing samples placed on a light box. The developed films were visually inspected for mottle and rated relative to one another. Mottle was rated as high, medium, or low.

20

The conditions used in the first zone 18A and results obtained are summarized below in Table 4. As  $\Delta P_{bot}$  or  $T_{gas}$  was increased, the level of mottle was increased.

TABLE 4

| Example | First Zone Conditions  |                        |                  |                          |               |
|---------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|---------------|
|         | $\Delta P_{bot}$ (kPa) | $\Delta P_{top}$ (kPa) | $T_{gas}$ (° C.) | $\Delta P_{static}$ (Pa) | Mottle Rating |
| 1-1     | 0.125                  | 0.025                  | 37.8             | -0.5                     | Low           |
| 1-2     | 0.500                  | 0.025                  | 37.8             | -0.5                     | Medium        |
| 1-3     | 0.125                  | 0.025                  | 60.0             | -0.5                     | High          |

$\Delta P_{bot}$  is the pressure drop across the airfoils 31A.

$\Delta P_{top}$  is the pressure drop across the air bars 34A.

$T_{gas}$  is the temperature of the heated drying gas.

$\Delta P_{static}$  is the pressure drop between the first zone 18A and the coater room (not shown).

The negative sign indicates that the drying apparatus 10A is at lower pressure than the coater room. This value was maintained by modulating the exhaust fan (not shown).

Drying more harshly increased the severity of the mottle. If one were to consider increasing the drying conditions only in terms of the available operating parameters, one would not make the appropriate conclusions concerning the effects on mottle. Changing the pressure drop from 0.125 to 0.5 kPa is a factor of 4 increase. An appropriate temperature measure is the difference between the drying gas and the substrate as it enters the zone. This temperature measure increases a factor of 2.3 as the gas temperature increased from 37.8 to 60° C. One would expect that changing the air foil pressure drop would have the larger effect on mottle, however, the opposite is true.

In order to determine the effect on mottle, one needs to consider a more appropriate measure such as the product of the heat transfer coefficient and the difference between the temperature of the drying gas  $T_{gas}$  and the temperature of the coated substrate  $T_{cs}$  as it enters the zone. This product is the rate of heat transferred to the film and is a direct measure of the rate of heating of the film. As shown below in Table 5, increasing the initial rate of heat transfer to the film, ( $h\Delta T_i$ ), increased the severity of mottle.

TABLE 5

| Example | $\Delta P_{bot}$ (kPa) | $T_{gas}$ (° C.) | $T_{cs(i)}$ (° C.) | $h$ (cal/m <sup>2</sup> s K) | $h\Delta T_i$ (cal/m <sup>2</sup> s) | Mottle Rating |
|---------|------------------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|
| 1-1     | 0.125                  | 37.8             | 21.1               | 13.7                         | 229                                  | Low           |
| 1-2     | 0.500                  | 37.8             | 21.1               | 19.4                         | 324                                  | Medium        |
| 1-3     | 0.125                  | 60.0             | 21.1               | 13.7                         | 532                                  | High          |

The term  $\Delta T_i$  indicates the difference between  $T_{gas}$  and  $T_{cs(i)}$ .

The term  $T_{cs(i)}$  is the initial temperature of the coated substrate just before it enters the drying apparatus 10A.

Example 2

Using the coating materials and oven described in Example 1, the photothermographic emulsion and top-coat solution were simultaneously coated at 3.6 mil (91.4 μm) and 0.67 mil (17.0 μm) respectively on 6.8 mil (173 μm) polyester substrate. Greyouts were prepared and rated as described in Example 1. The drying conditions used and results obtained, which are shown below in Table 6, demonstrate that as the initial heat transfer rate to the film ( $h\Delta T_i$ ) was increased, the severity of mottle increased. More specifically, at a constant heat transfer coefficient, as the initial temperature difference between the coating 12A and the drying gas was increased, the severity of mottle increased.

5,881,476

21

TABLE 6

| Example | T <sub>gas</sub><br>(° C.) | T <sub>cs(i)</sub><br>(° C.) | h<br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s K) | hΔT <sub>i</sub><br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s) | Mottle<br>Rating |
|---------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|------------------|
| 2-1     | 37.8                       | 21.1                         | 13.7                          | 229  | Low              |
| 2-2     | 51.7                       | 21.1                         | 13.7                          | 419  | Medium           |
| 2-3     | 82.2                       | 21.1                         | 13.7                          | 837  | High             |

Example 3

Solutions were prepared as described in Example 1 and were simultaneously coated on a polyester substrate at 100 ft/min (0.508 meters per second). After passing the coating die, the substrate traveled a distance of approximately 10 feet (3 meters) and then passed through a slot into a dryer with 3 zones similar to FIG. 3. The gas velocity of the counter-current parallel flow air was held constant and the temperature was varied as shown below in Table 7. As the initial rate of heat transfer (hΔT<sub>i</sub>) to the coated substrate 16 was increased, the severity of mottle increased. Without considering the value of the heat transfer coefficient h, no direct comparisons between the ovens in Examples 2 and 3 is possible.

TABLE 7

| Example | T <sub>gas</sub><br>(° C.) | T <sub>cs(i)</sub><br>(° C.) | h<br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s K) | hΔT <sub>i</sub><br>cal/m <sup>2</sup> s) | Mottle<br>Rating |
|---------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|------------------|
| 3-1     | 93.3                       | 21.1                         | 2.85                          | 206                                       | Low              |
| 3-2     | 71.1                       | 21.1                         | 2.58                          | 129                                       | Very Low         |

Example 4

Solutions were prepared as described in Example 1 and were simultaneously coated on a polyester substrate at 25 ft/min (0.127 meters per second). After passing the coating die, the substrate traveled a distance of 10 ft (3 meters) and then passed through a slot into a dryer with 3 zones similar the first zone 18A of FIG. 23. This is an oven with air foils on the bottom, air bars on the top, and an overall flow of air through the oven. The atmosphere is inert gas and the partial pressure of solvent could be controlled using a condenser loop. The experimental conditions are shown below in Tables 8 (Zone 1) and 9 (Zone 2). As the product (hΔT<sub>i</sub>) was increased in the Zone 1, the severity of mottle was increased. Also, for a given product (hΔT<sub>i</sub>) in Zone 1, the product (hΔT<sub>i</sub>) in Zone 2 affected mottle. When the coating was not yet mottle-proof and was entering Zone 2, decreasing the product (hΔT<sub>i</sub>) in Zone 2 caused a reduction in the severity of mottle.

TABLE 8

| Zone 1  |                            |                              |                               |  |  |
|---------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|--|
| Example | T <sub>gas</sub><br>(° C.) | T <sub>cs(i)</sub><br>(° C.) | h<br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s K) | hΔT <sub>i</sub><br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s) |  |
| 4-1     | 82.2                       | 21.1                         | 29.0                          | 1770                                       |  |
| 4-2     | 37.8                       | 21.1                         | 18.9                          | 316  |  |
| 4-3     | 37.8                       | 21.1                         | 18.9                          | 316  |  |

TABLE 9

| Zone 2  |                            |                              |                               |  |                  |
|---------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|------------------|
| Example | T <sub>gas</sub><br>(° C.) | T <sub>cs(i)</sub><br>(° C.) | h<br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s K) | hΔT <sub>i</sub><br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s) | Mottle<br>Rating |
| 4-1     | 82.2                       | 21.1                         | 29.7                          | 329  | High             |
| 4-2     | 60                         | 26.7                         | 24.0                          | 799  | Medium           |
| 4-3     | 60                         | 37.8                         | 24.2                          | 537  | Low              |

22

Zone 2

| Example | T <sub>gas</sub><br>(° C.) | T <sub>cs(i)</sub><br>(° C.) | h<br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s K) | hΔT <sub>i</sub><br>(cal/m <sup>2</sup> s) | Mottle<br>Rating |
|---------|----------------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|------------------|
| 4-1     | 82.2                       | 21.1                         | 29.7                          | 329  | High             |
| 4-2     | 60                         | 26.7                         | 24.0                          | 799  | Medium           |
| 4-3     | 60                         | 37.8                         | 24.2                          | 537  | Low              |

Reasonable modifications and variations are possible from the foregoing disclosure without departing from either the spirit or scope of the present invention as defined by the claims.

We claim:

1. A method for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a first substrate surface of a substrate and reducing the formation of mottle as the coating solvent is evaporating, the method comprising:

providing a drying oven, the drying oven comprising: an enclosure having an inlet and an outlet and defining at least a first drying zone;

a plurality of drying subzones within the at least first drying zone, at least two of the plurality of drying subzones employing different drying gas flow conditions without the influence of physical barriers; and

controlling the drying gas flow conditions within at least two of the plurality of drying subzones.

2. The method of claim 1, the substrate having a second substrate surface opposite to the first substrate surface, the method further comprising creating a first plurality of subzones adjacent to the second substrate surface, the first plurality of subzones predominantly causing the evaporating of the coating solvent.

3. The method of claim 2, further comprising creating a second plurality of subzones adjacent to the first substrate surface.

4. The method of claim 1, further comprising defining at least one opening between the plurality of subzones, the at least one opening being sufficiently large such that a pressure differential within the plurality of subzones created by the at least one opening is insufficiently large to reduce the formation of mottle.

5. The method of claim 1, further comprising providing at least a first drying gas supply port and a second drying gas supply port and at least a first drying gas removal port and a second drying gas removal port, the first drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the first drying gas supply port to create a first drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port, the second drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the second drying gas supply port to create a second drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port.

6. The method of claim 5, the first drying gas supply port comprising one of an air foil, air bar, air turn, and perforated plate.

7. The method of claim 5, the first drying subzone having a first static pressure and the second drying subzone having a second static pressure, the method further comprising:

adjusting the first static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port; and

adjusting the second static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

5,881,476

23

8. An apparatus for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a first substrate surface of a substrate and reducing the formation of mottle as the coating solvent is evaporating, the apparatus comprising:

- a drying oven, the drying oven comprising:
  - an enclosure having an inlet and an outlet and defining at least a first drying zone;
  - a plurality of drying subzones within the at least one first drying zone, at least two of the plurality of drying subzones employing different drying gas flow conditions without the influence of physical barriers; and
  - means for controlling the drying gas flow conditions within the at least two of the plurality of drying subzones.

9. The apparatus of claim 8, the substrate having a second substrate surface opposite to the first substrate surface, the apparatus further comprising a first plurality of subzones adjacent to the second substrate surface, the first plurality of subzones predominantly causing the evaporating of the coating solvent.

10. The apparatus of claim 9, further comprising a second plurality of subzones adjacent to the first substrate surface.

11. The apparatus of claim 8, the apparatus defining at least one opening between the plurality of subzones, the at least one opening being sufficiently large such that a pressure differential within the plurality of subzones created by the at least one opening is insufficiently large to reduce the formation of mottle.

12. The apparatus of claim 8, further comprising at least a first drying gas supply port and a second drying gas supply port and at least a first drying gas removal port and a second drying gas removal port, the first drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the first drying gas supply port to create a first drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port, the second drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the second drying gas supply port to create a second drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port.

13. The apparatus of claim 12, the first drying gas supply port comprising one of an air foil, air bar, air turn, and perforated plate.

14. The apparatus of claim 12, the first drying subzone having a first static pressure and the second drying subzone having a second static pressure, the apparatus further comprising:

- means for adjusting the first static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port; and
- means for adjusting the second static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

15. A method for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a first substrate surface of a substrate and reducing the formation of mottle as the coating solvent is evaporating, the method comprising:

- providing a drying oven having at least a first drying zone;
- creating a plurality of drying subzones within the at least one first drying zone without requiring physical barriers to create the plurality of drying subzones, the plurality of drying subzones being capable of employing different drying gas flow conditions for evaporating the coating solvent;

24

employing different drying gas flow conditions within at least two of the plurality of drying subzones; and transporting the substrate through the plurality of drying subzones to evaporate the coating solvent.

16. The method of claim 15, further comprising coordinating the act of creating the plurality of drying subzones and the act of employing different drying gas flow conditions within at least two of the plurality of drying subzones in order to reduce the creation of mottle while evaporating the coating solvent and maximize throughput of the substrate through the drying oven.

17. The method of claim 15, the substrate having a second substrate surface opposite the first substrate surface, the creating act including creating a first plurality of subzones adjacent the second substrate surface, the first plurality of subzones being the predominant cause of the evaporation of the coating solvent.

18. The method of claim 17, the creating act including creating a second plurality of subzones adjacent the first substrate surface.

19. The method of claim 15, the creating act including forming at least one opening between the plurality of subzones, the at least one opening being sufficiently large such that a pressure differential within the plurality of subzones created by the at least one opening is insufficiently large to reduce the formation of mottle.

20. The method of claim 15, the creating act including providing at least a first drying gas supply port, the first drying gas supply port comprising one of at least one air foil, at least one air bar, at least one air turn, and at least one perforated plate.

21. The method of claim 15, the plurality of drying subzones including a first drying subzone and a second drying subzone, the first drying subzone having a first static pressure and the second drying subzone having a second static pressure, the method further comprising:

- adjusting the first static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port; and
- adjusting the second static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

22. The method of claim 15, the creating act including providing at least first and second drying gas supply ports and at least first and second drying gas removal ports, the first drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the first drying gas supply port to create a first drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port, the second drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the second drying gas supply port to create a second drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port.

23. An apparatus for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a first substrate surface of a substrate and reducing the formation of mottle as the coating solvent is evaporating, the apparatus comprising:

- an enclosure having an inlet and an outlet and defining at least a first drying zone; and
- a plurality of drying subzones within the at least one first drying zone, at least two of the plurality of drying subzones employing different drying gas flow conditions; and
- at least first and second drying gas supply ports and at least first and second drying gas removal ports, the first

5,881,476

**25**

drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the first drying gas supply port to create a first drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port, and the second drying gas removal port being positioned relative to the second drying gas supply port to create a second drying subzone of the plurality of drying subzones by substantially removing drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port.

24. The apparatus of claim 23, wherein physical barriers are not required between the plurality of drying subzones to create the plurality of drying subzones.

25. The apparatus of claim 23, further comprising means for independently controlling the drying conditions within the at least two of the plurality of drying subzones.

26. The apparatus of claim 23, the substrate having a second substrate surface opposite the first substrate surface, the apparatus comprising a first plurality of subzones adjacent the second substrate surface, the first plurality of subzones being the predominant cause of the evaporation of the coating solvent.

27. The apparatus of claim 26, the apparatus further comprising a second plurality of subzones adjacent the first substrate surface.

28. The apparatus of claim 23, the apparatus defining at least one opening between the plurality of subzones, the at least one opening being sufficiently large such that a pressure differential within the plurality of subzones created by the at least one opening is insufficiently large to reduce the formation of mottle.

29. The apparatus of claim 23, the first drying gas supply port comprising one of at least one air foil, at least one air bar, at least one air turn, and at least one perforated plate.

30. The apparatus of claim 23, the first drying subzone having a first static pressure and the second drying subzone having a second static pressure, the apparatus further comprising:

means for adjusting the first static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port; and

means for adjusting the second static pressure such that the drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

31. The method of claim 1, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas flow velocity.

32. The method of claim 1, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas pressure.

33. The method of claim 1, further comprising providing different drying gas temperatures within at least two of the drying subzones.

34. The apparatus of claim 8, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas flow velocity.

35. The apparatus of claim 8, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas pressure.

36. The apparatus of claim 8, further comprising a temperature controller that provides different drying gas temperatures within at least two of the drying subzones.

37. The method of claim 15, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas flow velocity.

38. The method of claim 15, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas pressure.

39. The method of claim 15, further comprising providing different drying gas temperatures within at least two of the drying subzones.

**26**

40. The apparatus of claim 23, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas flow velocity.

41. The apparatus of claim 23, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas pressure.

42. The apparatus of claim 23, further comprising a temperature controller that provides different drying gas temperatures within at least two of the drying subzones.

43. An apparatus for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a substrate, the apparatus comprising:

an enclosure defining a drying zone;  
a first drying gas supply port disposed within the drying zone;

a first drying gas removal port disposed within the drying zone, the first drying gas supply port and the first drying gas removal port being arranged to define a first drying subzone;

a second drying gas supply port disposed within the drying zone;

a second drying gas removal port disposed within the drying zone, the second drying gas supply port and the second drying gas removal port being arranged to define a second drying subzone, wherein no substantial barrier exists between the first and second drying subzones; and

a flow controller that controls flow of the drying gas between the first drying gas supply port and the first drying gas removal port and between the second drying gas supply port and the second drying gas removal port to produce different drying gas flow conditions within the first and second drying subzones.

44. The apparatus of claim 43, wherein the controller controls drying gas removal pressure, the controller controlling drying gas removal pressure associated with the first drying gas removal port independently of drying gas removal pressure associated with the second drying gas removal port.

45. The apparatus of claim 43, wherein the controller controls drying gas supply pressure, the controller controlling drying gas supply pressure associated with the first drying gas supply port independently of drying gas supply pressure associated with the second drying gas supply port.

46. The apparatus of claim 43, wherein the controller controls drying gas flow conditions within the first and second drying subzones such that drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port, and drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

47. The apparatus of claim 43, wherein the first drying subzone has a first static pressure and the second drying subzone has a second static pressure, the first and second static pressures being selected such that the drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port, and the drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

48. The apparatus of claim 43, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas flow velocity.

49. The apparatus of claim 43, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas pressure.

50. The apparatus of claim 43, further comprising a temperature controller that provides different drying gas temperatures within the first and second drying subzones.

51. A method for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a substrate, the method comprising:

passing the substrate through an enclosure defining a drying zone;

5,881,476

**27**

arranging a first drying gas supply port and a first drying gas removal port within the drying zone to define a first drying subzone;

arranging a second drying gas supply port and a second drying gas removal port within the drying zone to define a second drying subzone, wherein no substantial barrier exists between the first and second drying subzones; and

controlling flow of the drying gas between the first drying gas supply port and the first drying gas removal port and between the second drying gas supply port and the second drying gas removal port to produce different drying gas flow conditions within the first and second drying subzones.

**52.** The method of claim **51**, further comprising controlling drying gas removal pressure associated with the first drying gas removal port independently of drying gas removal pressure associated with the second drying gas removal port.

**53.** The method of claim **51**, further comprising controlling drying gas supply pressure associated with the first drying gas supply port independently of drying gas supply pressure associated with the second drying gas supply port.

**54.** The method of claim **51**, further comprising controlling drying gas flow conditions within the first and second drying subzones such that drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port, and drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

**28**

**55.** The method of claim **51**, wherein the first drying subzone has a first static pressure and the second drying subzone has a second static pressure, the method further comprising adjusting the first and second static pressures such that the drying gas supplied by the first drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the first drying gas removal port, and the drying gas supplied by the second drying gas supply port is substantially removed by the second drying gas removal port.

**56.** The apparatus of claim **51**, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas flow velocity.

**57.** The apparatus of claim **51**, wherein the drying gas flow conditions include drying gas pressure.

**58.** The apparatus of claim **51**, further comprising a temperature controller that provides different drying gas temperatures within the first and second drying subzones.

**59.** A method for evaporating a coating solvent from a coating on a substrate with reduced formation of mottle, the method comprising:

providing an enclosure defining a drying zone with a plurality of drying subzones;

transporting the substrate through the enclosure; and

selectively controlling a static pressure difference between a lower interior portion of the enclosure within each of the subzones and a reference point to reduce the formation of mottle.

\* \* \* \* \*

# EXHIBIT N



**CERTIFICATE OF FIRST CLASS SERVICE**

It is certified that a copy of the Inter Partes Reexamination Comments Under 37 CFR § 1.947 by the Third Party Requester; the associated Exhibits A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, and M; and this certificate of first class service have been served, by first class mail, on April 12, 2013, in their entirety on the Patent Owner in accordance with 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.903 and 1.248. The name and address of the party served is:

**HOFFMANN & BARON LLP**  
**(Attn: Daniel A. Scola, Jr.)**  
**6900 JERICHO TURNPIKE**  
**SYOSSET, NY 11791**

By: \_\_\_\_\_/Danielle L. Herritt/\_\_\_\_\_

Danielle L. Herritt  
Reg. 43,670

Attorney for Requester,  
BioDelivery Sciences International, Inc.

**McCarter & English, LLP**  
**265 Franklin Street**  
**Boston, MA 02110**

Direct Dial: 617-449-6513  
Email: [dherritt@mccarter.com](mailto:dherritt@mccarter.com)

# EXHIBIT B

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

In re *Inter Partes* Reexamination of: )  
)  
US Patent No. 7,897,080 )  
)  
Issued: March 1, 2011 ) Confirmation No.: 6418  
)  
Named Inventor: Robert K. Yang *et al.* ) Group Art Unit: 3991  
)  
Control No.: 95/002,170 ) Examiner: Diamond, Alan D.  
)  
Filed: September 10, 2012 ) M&E Docket: 117744-00023  
)  
Title: POLYETHYLENE-OXIDE BASED ) H&B Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX  
FILMS AND DRUG DELIVERY )  
SYSTEMS MADE THEREFROM )

Mail Stop *Inter Partes* Reexam  
Attn: Central Reexamination Unit  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

DECLARATION BY MAUREEN REITMAN, SC.D.  
UNDER 37 CFR § 1.132

Sir/Madam:

I, Maureen Reitman, do hereby make the following declaration:

I. Technical Background

1. I am a Principal and the Director of the Polymer Science and Materials Chemistry Practice at Exponent. I hold two academic degrees: (1) a Bachelor of Science in Materials Science and Engineering from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), and (2) a Doctor of Science in Materials Science and Engineering, with a thesis in the field of polymers, from MIT. I have been practicing in the field of polymer science and engineering for more than 20 years as a researcher at MIT, in a variety of technical roles at the 3M Company, and as a consultant with Exponent. I provide consulting engineering services in all aspects of polymer science and engineering including, but not limited to material selection, product design and development, mechanical and chemical testing, failure analysis, polymer chemistry, polymer

physics, and polymer processing. My specialties include formulation, processing and performance evaluation of polymeric materials, including films, coatings, adhesives and transdermal drug delivery systems. I have been directly involved in product development, product line extensions, transfer of new products to manufacturing, qualification of alternative materials and manufacturing equipment, evaluating field performance, and assessing intellectual property. I am a past chairman and continue to serve as a member of the board of directors of the Medical Plastics Division of the Society of Plastics Engineers. My *curriculum vitae* is provided in Appendix A.

2. While Exponent is being paid for my time, I am not an employee of, nor do I have any financial interest in, BioDelivery Sciences International, Inc.
3. I have been asked to carefully review International Publication No. WO 00/42992 ("*Chen*"), and manufacture a film as described in *Chen*. I carefully reviewed *Chen*. Under my direction, my team manufactured a film in accordance with Example 7 of *Chen*. I have also been asked to take samples and perform various analytical tests to confirm the uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of the film, which we did.

4. Manufacturing Example 7 of *Chen*

*Chen* states: "According to Examples 1-8, the hydrocolloid [Methocel E5(HPMC)] was dissolved in water under agitated mixing to form a uniform and viscous solution." *Chen* 17:7-8.

- Methocel E5(HPMC) was dissolved in water under agitated mixing to form a uniform and viscous solution, by my team.

*Chen* states: "Additional ingredients were then added sequentially to the viscous solution such as peppermint, aspartame, propyl[ene] glycol, benzoic acid and citric acid under agitated mixing until they were uniformly dispersed or dissolved in the hydrocolloid." *Chen* 17:8-11.

- Additional ingredients were then added sequentially to the viscous solution including peppermint oil, aspartame, propylene glycol, benzoic acid and citric acid under agitated mixing until they were uniformly dispersed or dissolved in the hydrocolloid, by my team.
- Kolliphor EL was also added to the viscous solution.

*Chen* states: "Therapeutic agents were added to the homogeneous mixture (coating solution) prior to forming the film." *Chen* 20:19-20.

- Oxybutynin chloride (the therapeutic agent of Example 7) was added to the homogeneous mixture (coating solution) prior to forming the film, by my team.

*Chen*'s Table 5 specifies the composition for Example 7.

- We used the ingredients in the amounts identified in *Chen's* Table 5. See Table 1.

| Formulation, Ex. 7, Table 5, <i>Chen</i> | % Weight | Formulation, Prepared by Maureen Reitman Team | % Weight |
|--|----------|---|----------|
| Oxybutynin                               | 3.71     | Oxybutynin chloride                           | 3.71     |
| Methocel E5 (HPMC)                       | 21.06    | Methocel E5 Premium LV                        | 21.06    |
| Water                                    | 70.72    | Water, distilled                              | 70.72    |
| Cremophor EL40                           | 1        | Kolliphor EL <sup>1</sup>                     | 1        |
| Propylene glycol                         | 1        | Propylene glycol                              | 1        |
| Peppermint                               | 1        | Peppermint oil                                | 1        |
| Aspartame                                | 0.8      | Aspartame                                     | 0.8      |
| Benzoic acid                             | 0.013    | Benzoic acid                                  | 0.013    |
| Citric acid                              | 0.7      | Citric acid, monohydrate                      | 0.7      |

*Chen* states: "The resultant mixture was degassed in a vacuum chamber until trapped air bubbles were removed." *Chen* 17:11-12.

- The resultant mixture was degassed in a vacuum chamber until trapped air bubbles were removed, by my team.

*Chen* states: "The formulation was then coated on the non-siliconized side of a polyester film at a wet thickness of 10 mil and dried in a hot air circulating oven at 50°C for 9 minutes." *Chen* 17:13-15.

- The formulation was then coated on a non-siliconized side of a polyester film at a wet thickness of 10 mil and dried in a hot air circulating oven at 50°C for up to 9 minutes, on commercial manufacturing equipment by my team.

*Chen* states: "Methods for manufacturing the dosage unit include the solvent casting methods as shown in Figure 2." *Chen* 15:13-14. "The manufacturing process for forming the dosage unit is illustrated in Figure 2. The dry film formed by this process is a glossy, stand alone, self supporting, non-tacky and flexible film (12)." *Chen* 15:29-31.

- A solvent casting manufacturing process for forming the dosage unit as illustrated in Figure 2 was used<sup>2</sup>, by my team.

<sup>1</sup> The Cremophor line of products now owned by BASF and renamed Kolliphor. Based on the naming convention of the Cremophor/ Kolliphor products, EL40 is Polyoxyl 40 Castor Oil and EL is Polyoxyl 35 Castor Oil (i.e., they are based on a 1:40 and 1:35 ratio, respectively, of castor oil:ethylene oxide). They are different materials. However, one of skill in the art would recognize Kolliphor EL as an appropriate substitute, as Cremophor EL40 is no longer available.

- The film was manufactured using a controlled drying process.
- As illustrated in Figure 2, the drying oven featured aeration controller with 3 zones set such that in each successive zone air impingement on the surface of the film increased.
- The dry film formed by the process is a glossy, stand alone, self-supporting, non-tacky and flexible film.

*Chen* states: "A glossy, substantially transparent, stand alone, self-supporting, non-tacky and flexible film was obtained after drying." *Chen* 17:15-16.

- A glossy, substantially transparent, stand alone, self-supporting, non-tacky and flexible film was obtained after drying, by my team.

5. Verification of Content Uniformity -- Visual Inspection

- By examination with the naked eye, uniformity was verified by my team.

6. Verification of Content Uniformity – Unit Dose Weight

- By weighing individual dosage units of substantially identical size, uniformity was verified by my team. *See* Table 2.

| Sample | Weight of 5 cm <sup>2</sup> dosage unit (grams) |
|--------|---|
| 1      | 0.034   |
| 2      | 0.034   |
| 3      | 0.034   |
| 4      | 0.034   |
| 5      | 0.034   |
| 6      | 0.034   |
| 7      | 0.034   |

7. Verification of Content Uniformity -- Dissolution Test (HPLC)

- By dissolution of individual dosage units of substantially identical size and analysis by High Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) active content uniformity was verified by my team. *See* Table 3.

---

<sup>2</sup> Our backing was not looped and we did not die cut in line, but the solvent casting and drying under aeration is matched.

Declaration of Maureen Reitman, Sc.D.

| Sample | Oxybutynin weight (mg) |
|--------|------------------------|
| A      | 4.4                    |
| B      | 4.4                    |
| C      | 4.3                    |
| D      | 4.4                    |
| E      | 4.1                    |

- As can be seen in Table 3, the active varies by less than 10%.

#### 8. Additional Observations

- The components of the formulation, including the active component, were uniformly distributed in the viscous solution, which was used to cast the film, as was verified by my team.
- The viscous solution, which was used to cast the film, exhibited the flow properties of honey (around 10,000 cps), as observed by my team.
- Water content of the film was less than 10%, as verified by my team.
- Within about 4 minutes after initiation of drying, the film was self-supporting, non-tacky, flexible and viscoelastic, as verified by my team.

9. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine, or imprisonment, or both, under section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patents issued thereon.



Dated: February 28, 2013

.....  
Maureen Reitman, Sc.D.

# Appendix A

**Exponent**

*Failure Analysis Associates*

Exponent  
One Science Drive  
Boston, MA 02114  
Boston, Massachusetts

tel: 617.237.1000  
fax: 617.237.1000  
www.exponent.com

**Maureen T. F. Reitman, Sc.D.**

**Principal and Practice Director**

## **Professional Profile**

Dr. Maureen Reitman is a Principal and the Director of Exponent's Polymer Science and Material Chemistry practice. Her expertise includes polymer and composite technology, mechanics of materials, adhesion science, fiber mechanics, history and technology of plastics, and material failure analysis. She is skilled in the development and use of testing tools and methods and has applied them to plastic, rubber, textile, metal, glass, ceramic, and composite materials and systems. She is experienced in major aspects of product development, including materials selection, formulation, scale-up, end-use testing, failure analysis, certification procedures and issues related to intellectual property.

Dr. Reitman has conducted research in the areas of packaging and barrier materials; paints and coatings; plastic pipes; transdermal drug delivery; adhesives, sealants, and encapsulants; molding compounds; high temperature resins; nanoparticles; fibers and textiles; protective coatings and finishes; polymer chemical resistance; plastic insulation; connectors and splices; plastic packaging; medical devices; environmental effects on durability; and product aging. She has used her expertise to solve a broad range of problems related to coatings, fibers, films, and extruded and molded products, and their use in the telecom, electronics, electrical, transportation, construction, fire protection, medical, and consumer products markets.

Dr. Reitman is a member of the Board of Directors of the Medical Plastics Division of the Society of Plastics Engineers and an active member of two Underwriters Laboratories Standard Technical Panels, addressing Polymeric Materials (UL 94, UL 746, UL 1694) and Appliance Wiring (UL758).

Prior to joining Exponent, Dr. Reitman worked for the 3M Company in both research and management roles. Her activities included technology identification, materials selection and qualification, product development, customer support, program management, acquisition integration, intellectual property analysis, and patent litigation support.

## **Academic Credentials and Professional Honors**

Sc.D., Materials Science and Engineering/ Program in Polymer Science and Technology,  
Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1993

B.S., Materials Science and Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, 1990

National Academy of Engineering Frontiers of Engineering, 2009; Tau Beta Pi; Sigma Xi  
John Wulff Award; Carl Loeb Fellowship; NCAA Postgraduate Scholarship;  
Malcolm G. Kispert Award; GTE Academic All-American

02/13



## Patents

Patent 6,311,524: Accelerated Method for Increasing the Photosensitivity of a Glassy Material, issued November 6, 2001.

European Patent EP0830428: Tackified Polydiorganosiloxane Polyurea Segmented Copolymers and a Process for Making Same, published March 25, 1998.

Patent 5,371,051: Fiber Optic Fusion Splice Protector Sleeve, issued March 24, 1998.

## Publications

Kurtz S, Siskey R, Reitman M. Accelerated aging, natural aging, and small punch testing of gamma-air sterilized polycarbonate urethane acetabular components. *Journal of Biomedical Materials Research Part B: Applied Biomaterials* 2010 May; 93B(2):422–447.

Hoffman JM, Reitman M, Donthu S, Ledwith P. Complimentary failure analysis methods and their application to CPVC pipe. *Proceedings, ANTEC 2010, Society of Plastics Engineers, Orlando, FL, May 2010.*

Hoffman JM, Reitman M, Donthu S, Ledwith P, Wills D. Microscopic characterization of CPVC failure modes. *Proceedings, ANTEC 2009, Society of Plastics Engineers, Chicago, IL, June 2009. Best Paper Award in Failure Analysis & Prevention.*

Kurtz SM, Ebert M, Siskey R, Ciccarelli L, Reitman M, Harper ML, Chan FW. Natural and accelerated aging of polyurethanes in the Bryan cervical disc. *Poster No. P158. Transactions of Spineweek 2008, Geneva, Switzerland, May 26–31, 2008.*

Reitman M, Ledwith P, Hoffman M, Moalli J, Xu T. Environmentally driven changes in nylon. *Proceedings, ANTEC 2008, Milwaukee, WI, Society of Plastics Engineers, May 2008.*

Hoffman JM, Reitman M, Ledwith P. Characterization of manufacturing defects in medical balloons. *Proceedings, ANTEC 2008, Milwaukee, WI, Society of Plastics Engineers, May 2008.*

Reitman, MTF, Moalli JE. Polymeric coatings for medical device. *Medical Device and Manufacturing Technology, Touch Briefings, pp. 28–30, 2006.*

Moalli JE, Moore CD, Robertson C, Reitman MTF. Failure analysis of nitrile radiant heating tubing. *Proceedings, ANTEC 2006, Society of Plastic Engineers, Charlotte, NC, May 2006.*

Reitman M, McPeak J. Protective coatings for implantable medical devices. *Proceedings, ANTEC 2005, Society of Plastic Engineers, Boston MA, May 2005.*

McPeak J, Reitman M, Moalli J. Determination of in-service exposure temperature of thermoformed PVC via TMA. Proceedings, 31<sup>st</sup> Annual North American Thermal Analysis Society Conference, Williamsburg, VA, 2004.

Reitman MTF, Moalli JE. Product development and standards organizations: Listings and certifications for plastic products. 8<sup>th</sup> Annual International Conference on Industrial Engineering Theory, Applications and Practice, Las Vegas, NV, 2003.

Poddar YK, Reitman MTF. The role of engineering consultants in failure analysis and product development. 8<sup>th</sup> Annual International Conference on Industrial Engineering Theory, Applications and Practice, Las Vegas, NV, 2003.

Ezekoye OA, Lowman CD, Hulme-Lowe AG, Fahey MT. Polymer weld strength predictions using a thermal and polymer chain diffusion analysis. *Polymer Engineering and Science* 1998; 38(6):976-991, June.

Fahey MT. Nonlinear and anisotropic properties of high performance fibers. MIT Thesis, 1993.

Fahey MT. Mechanical property characterization and enhancement of rigid rod polymer fibers. MIT Thesis, 1990.

#### **Book Contributions**

Reitman M, Liu D, Rehkopf J. Chapter 38. Mechanical properties of polymers. In: *Handbook of Measurement in Science and Engineering*. Volume 2. Kutz, M (ed), John Wiley & Sons, Hoboken NJ, 2013. ISBN- 978-1-118-38464-0.

Reitman M, Jaekel D, Siskey R, Kurtz S. Morphology and crystalline architecture of polyaryketones, pp. 49-60. In: *PEEK Biomaterials Handbook*. Kurtz SM (ed), Elsevier William Andrews, Kidlington, Oxford, UK, 2012. ISBN 13:978-1-4377-4463-7

Tsuji JS, Mowat FS, Donthu S, Reitman M. Application of toxicology studies in assessing the health risks of nanomaterials in consumer products, pp. 543-580. In: *Nanotoxicity: From In Vivo and In Vitro Models to Health Risks*. Sahu S, and Casciano D. (eds), John Wiley & Sons, Chichester, West Sussex, UK, 2009. ISBN 978-0-470-74137-5.

Reitman MTF. The Plastics Revolution. In: *Research and Discovery: Landmarks and Pioneers in American Science*. Lawson RM (ed), Armonk NY: Sharpe Reference 2008. ISBN 978-0-7656-8073-0.

Klein SM. Mid-century plastic jewelry. Schiffer Publishing, Atglen, PA, 2005. (Technical advisor to author).

### Selected Invited Presentations

Reitman MTF. Failure analysis tools. Workshop on Future Needs for Service Life Prediction of Polymeric Materials. NIST and Underwriters Laboratories, Gaithersburg, MD, October 2012.

Hoffman J, MacLean S, Raiston B, Reitman M, Ledwith P. Fractography of unfilled thermoplastic materials experiencing common mechanical failure modes. Materials Science & Technology 2012 Conference, Pittsburgh PA, October 2012.

Hoffman J, Reitman M, Ledwith P. Microscopic characterization of CPVC failure. Materials Science & Technology 2012 Conference, Pittsburgh PA, October 2012.

Reitman MTF. Polymer material properties for next generation medical devices. Invited Speaker: MedTech Polymers, UBM Canon, Chicago, IL, September 2012.

Reitman MTF. Polymers for medical applications. Fundamentals and Fellows Forum, ANTEC 2012, Orlando FL, April 2012.

Reitman MTF. Plastic and composite product failures. Invited lecture in Failure Analysis of Emerging Technologies. Stanford University Department of Materials Science and Engineering, Menlo Park, CA October 2009.

Reitman MTF. Factors for success: Plastics in injection molded medical devices. Part of *Injection Molding Works for Medical Design*, Design News Webcast, October 2008.

Reitman MTF. Plastic and composite product failures. Keynote Speaker: Third International Conference on Engineering Failure Analysis (ICEFA III), Elsevier, Sitges Spain, July 2008.

Reitman MTF. Multiphase materials for medical device applications, an overview. Medical Device and Manufacturing (MDM), Canon Communications, various locations, January- June 2008.

Reitman MTF. Nanotechnology and plastics for medical devices. Capitalizing on Nanoplastics, Intertek PIRA San Antonio TX, February 2008.

Reitman MTF. Nano additives in composites and coatings for medical device applications. Medical Device and Manufacturing Minneapolis, Canon Communications, Minneapolis MN, October 2007.

Reitman MTF, Swanger LA. Practical tips on how to manage your technical expert in patent disputes. Ropes & Gray IP Master Class, Live Teleconference, June 2007.

Reitman MTF, Kennedy E. Root cause failure analysis and accident investigation. Lorman Educational Services, Live Teleconference, November 2007.

Reitman MTF. Plastics failure analysis: Case studies. Baltimore/ Washington Chapter of SAMPE, October 2006.

Reitman MTF. Plastics failure analysis. Baxter Global Plastics Processing Conference 2005, Schaumburg IL, 2005.

Fahey MT. Fiber mechanics, corrosion, sealants: Tales of a 3M materials scientist. Class of 1960's Scholars Program, Williams College, 1999.

Fahey MT. Adhesives and sealants for the telecommunications industry. Riverwood V Conference, St. Paul MN, 1998.

### **Current Professional Appointments**

- Underwriter's Laboratory Standards Technical Panel STP 746 (Polymeric Materials, includes UL94, UL 746 and UL1694)
- Underwriter's Laboratory Standards Technical Panel STP 758 (Appliance Wires/ UL758)
- Medical Plastics Division Board of Directors, Society of Plastics Engineers

### **Committee and Review Activities**

- UL Forum on Initiatives to Improve the Long Term Aging Program, LTTA Tools Working Groups, Underwriters Laboratories
- Research and Engineering Technology Award Committee, Society of Plastics Engineers
- Reviewer, Medical Plastics Technical Program Committee, Society of Plastics Engineers
- Reviewer, Failure Analysis and Prevention Technical Program Committee, Society of Plastics Engineers
- Reviewer, various book proposals and submissions related to polymer science, ASM International, Elsevier, John Wiley

### **Professional Affiliations**

- American Association for the Advancement of Science (member)
- American Association of Textile Chemists and Colorists—AATCC (senior member)
- American Chemical Society (member)
- ASTM International (member)
- Society for the Advancement of Material and Process Engineering (member)
- Society of Plastics Engineers (senior member)

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

|  |   |                                 |
|--|---|---------------------------------|
| In re <i>Inter Partes</i> Reexamination of:  | ) |                                 |
|  | ) |                                 |
| US Patent No. 7,897,080                      | ) |                                 |
| Issued: March 1, 2011                        | ) | Confirmation No.: 6418          |
|  | ) |                                 |
| Named Inventor: Robert K. Yang <i>et al.</i> | ) | Group Art Unit: 3991            |
|  | ) |                                 |
| Control No.: 95/002,170                      | ) | Examiner: Alan D. Diamond       |
|  | ) |                                 |
| Request Filed: September 10, 2012            | ) | M&E Docket: 117744-00023        |
|  | ) |                                 |
| Title: POLYETHYLENE OXIDE-BASED              | ) | H&B Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REX |
| FILMS AND DRUG DELIVERY                      | ) |                                 |
| SYSTEMS MADE THEREFROM                       | ) |                                 |
|  | ) |                                 |
| Date: April 12, 2013                         | ) |                                 |

**Mail Stop *Inter Partes* Reexam**  
Attn: Central Reexamination Unit  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**INTER PARTES REEXAMINATION COMMENTS UNDER 37 CFR § 1.947**

Pursuant to 37 CFR § 1.947, the Third Party Requester hereby submits the following comments to the Office Action re-mailed on November 29, 2012 (the “Office Action”) and the Applicant’s Amendment and Reply thereto dated March 13, 2013 (the “Reply”). These Comments are filed on April 12, 2013, which date is 30 days from the service of the Reply.

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

|      |  |    |
|------|--|----|
| I.   | INTRODUCTION .....   | 1  |
| A.   | Applicant has not added any new process limitations to patentably distinguish its Exhibitclaimed process from the prior art.....   | 1  |
| B.   | Applicant’s bread analogy falls flat.....  | 2  |
| C.   | The Reitman Declaration: Third Party Requestor has demonstrated that films made by the method of <i>Chen</i> are at least as uniform as the films made by the method of the ‘080 Patent..... | 5  |
| II.  | APPLICANT’S DECLARATIONS ARE INEFFECTIVE TO REBUT THE EXAMINER’S <i>PRIMA FACIE</i> CASE OF ANTICIPATION .....   | 5  |
| A.   | Lin Declaration: Applicant has not met its burden of proving that <i>Chen</i> does not inherently possess the desired property .....   | 5  |
| 1.   | Dr. Lin’s Declaration proves that the ‘080 Patent claims lack an enabling disclosure.....  | 6  |
| 2.   | Dr. Lin’s statements based on Chen’s release data must be dismissed as illogical, unsupported, and conclusory.....   | 7  |
| B.   | Bogue Declaration: Applicant Presents Irrelevant Information .....   | 7  |
| 1.   | The method recited in the Bogue Declaration is not the method of any of the amended or proposed claims.....  | 7  |
| 2.   | It is not clear what a “lot” may be and how it may relate to the claimed “resulting film” or “resulting films”.....  | 8  |
| 3.   | Applicant has failed to show that even the “lots” meets its own claimed criteria.....  | 8  |
| III. | PROPOSED REJECTIONS OF ALL PENDING CLAIMS UNDER 35 USC § 314.....  | 9  |
| A.   | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 314 as enlarging the scope of the patent claims – broadening “flowable” to include non-flowable viscosities.....                     | 9  |
| B.   | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 314 as enlarging the scope of the patent claims – broadening the drying step.....  | 10 |
| IV.  | PROPOSED REJECTIONS OF ALL CLAIMS UNDER 35 USC § 112.....  | 11 |

|    |  |    |
|----|--|----|
| A. | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraph – new recitation “suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units” | 11 |
| 1. | Lack of enablement   | 11 |
| 2. | Lack of clarity  | 13 |
| 3. | Lack of written description  | 14 |
| B. | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraph – new recitation “analytical chemical tests”   | 14 |
| 1. | Lack of clarity  | 14 |
| 2. | Lack of written description  | 15 |
| C. | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraphs - new recitation “varies by no more than 10%, 5%, 2%, 1%, 0.5%”   | 15 |
| 1. | Lack of clarity  | 16 |
| 2. | Lack of enablement   | 16 |
| D. | Proposed rejection of independent claims 82, 315, and dependent claims 83-90, 92-94, 96-160, 261-271, 274, 276-278, 298, 304-307, and 313, under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraphs - new recitation “varies by no more than 10% from desired amount of active”   | 17 |
| 1. | Lack of clarity  | 18 |
| 2. | Lack of written description  | 18 |
| 3. | Lack of enablement   | 18 |
| E. | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, second paragraph – new recitation “rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix”  | 19 |
| F. | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, second paragraph – new recitation “during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less”   | 19 |
| G. | Proposed rejection of claim 318 under 35 USC § 112, first paragraph – lack of written description for combination of disparate concepts  | 20 |

|    |   |    |
|----|---|----|
| H. | Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraph – the large variety of alternative expressions relating to the desired uniformity .....   | 21 |
| 1. | Lack of clarity .....   | 21 |
| 2. | Lack of written description.....  | 22 |
| 3. | Lack of enablement .....  | 23 |
| V. | MAINTAINED AND PROPOSED REJECTIONS OF ALL CLAIMS OVER CITED PRIOR ART .....   | 23 |
| A. | The Applicant has failed to establish that even one of the rejections of record is incorrect and should be withdrawn.....   | 23 |
| 1. | Applicant argues that the prior art does not use the “same materials and method” as Applicant, “particularly as amended.” .....   | 23 |
| 2. | Applicant relies on data that (i) does not correspond to any claimed method; and (ii) does not correspond to any claimed result. ....   | 24 |
| 3. | To the extent that the information in Chen is insufficient for FDA film product approval, the information in the ‘080 Patent is also insufficient.....  | 24 |
| 4. | Applicant relies on an inherency case that has facts that support the Examiner’s rejection.....   | 25 |
| 5. | Applicant relies on cases that create a narrow exception from the established case law of Markman and Minton; but its own case does not fall within that exception.....   | 27 |
| B. | Proper rejection of claims 1, 4, 5, 8-15, 17, 18, 20-32, 34, 36-40, 44-47, 51, 53, 54, 59, 62-71, 82-84, 87-90, 92-94, 96, 97, 99-111,113, 115-119, 123-126, 130, 132, 133, 138, 141-150, 161-166, 169-176, 178, 179, 181-193, 195, 197-201,205-208, 212, 214, 215, 220, 223-232, 243, 244, 246, 247, 249-254, 256-262, 264, 265, 267-272, 274-280, 282, 283, 285-290, and 292-299 and proposed new rejection of new independent claims 315-318 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over <i>Chen</i> ..... | 28 |
| 1. | New recitation: “said polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps” .....  | 29 |
| 2. | New recitation: “controlling drying.” .....   | 29 |
| 3. | New recitation: “conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus...” .....   | 31 |



|     |  |    |
|-----|--|----|
| 4.  | New recitation: “to form a visco-elastic film having said active uniformly distributed throughout within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying” .....   | 31 |
| 5.  | New recitation: “wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less.” .....   | 31 |
| 6.  | New recitations: “performing analytical chemical tests” .....  | 31 |
| 7.  | New recitation: “suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval.” .....  | 33 |
| 8.  | New recitation: “such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%.” .....  | 34 |
| 9.  | New recitation: forming “additional resulting films, such that the uniformity of content of active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from a desired amount.” .....  | 34 |
| 10. | New recitation: “at a temperature of about 60 °C.” .....   | 35 |
| 11. | New recitation: “using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix.” .....   | 35 |
| C.  | Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over <i>Chen</i> .....   | 36 |
| D.  | Proper rejection of claims 2, 3, 6, 7, 19, 33, 35, 41-43, 48-50, 52, 55-58, 60, 61, 85, 86, 98, 112, 114, 120-122, 127-129, 131,134-137, 139, 140, 167, 168, 180, 194, 196, 202-204, 209-211,213, 216-219, 221,222, 245, 248, 263, 266, 281, and 284 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over <i>Chen</i> ..... | 36 |
| E.  | Proper rejection of claims 2, 3, 32, 55, 72-81, 111,134, 151-160, 193, 216, and 233-242 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of <i>Chen</i> and <i>Staab</i> .....   | 37 |
| F.  | Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of <i>Chen</i> and <i>Arter</i> .....   | 37 |
| G.  | Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of <i>Chen</i> and <i>Strobush</i> .....  | 38 |
| H.  | Proper rejection of claims 1-5, 10, 12-15, 21, 24, 25, 32, 44-46, 54, 55, 59, 63-70, 72-75, 78-84, 89, 92-94, 100, 103, 104, 111,123-125, 133, 134, 138, 142-149, 151-154, 157-166, 171,173-176, 182, 185, 186, 193, 205-207,  |    |

215, 216, 220, 224-231, 233-236, 239-242, 249-252, 254, 257-260, 267-270, 272, 275-278, 285-288, 290, and 293-299 and proposed new rejection of new independent claims 315-318 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by, or in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Staab* .....39

I. Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Staab*.....41

J. Proper rejection of claims 8, 9, 76, 77, 87, 88, 155, 156, 169, 170, 237 and 238 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Staab* .....41

K. Proper rejection of claims 82, 89, 90,161,171-173, 272, 274, 290, and 292 and proposed new rejection of new independent claim 315-318 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Le Person*.....42

L. Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Le Person*.....44

M. Proper rejection of claims 92 and 174 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Le Person*.....44

N. Proper rejection of claims 1, 5, 7-10, 12-14, 23, 63, 64, 82, 84, 86-89, 92, 93, 102, 142, 143, 161,166,168-171,173-175, 184, 224, 225, 249, 254, 267, 272, 285 and 290 and proposed new rejection of new independent claims 315-317 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by, or in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Horstmann*.....45

O. Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as obvious over *Horstmann* .....45

P. Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of *Hortsmann* and *Arter*.....46

Q. Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of *Hortsmann* and *Strobush* .....46

VI. CONCLUSION.....47

## I. INTRODUCTION

Applicant has elected to add recitations of desired results to its method claims, not the steps required to achieve them. These new recitations are not entitled to patentable weight and do not overcome the rejections of record. Moreover, the desired results added to the claims are still anticipated and rendered obvious by *Chen*, *Staab*, *Le Person*, and *Horstmann*. In addition, the new recitations lack clarity, support, and enablement as explained in the new proposed rejections. Finally, Applicant has failed to establish that even one of the outstanding rejections of record was incorrect and should be withdrawn. Instead, Applicant either argues limitations that are not in the claims or relies solely on the newly added recitations.

Applicant also attempts to rely on two Declarations that purport to distinguish the “inventive method.” In the Bogue Declaration, Applicant presents data that does not correspond to any claimed method and does not correspond to any claimed result. In the Lin Declaration, Applicant criticizes *Chen* for not being an FDA new drug application and then concludes with a logical fallacy. It is unclear how the Declarations could be useful to address the existing rejections.

For the Examiner’s convenience, Requester attaches a chart comparing each independent claim, as amended, to claim 82 (Exhibit A).

A. Applicant has not added any new process limitations to patentably distinguish its Exhibitclaimed process from the prior art

In its own specification, Applicant has admitted that its only newly added method steps—directed to sampling and testing for uniformity—are conventional. Specifically, the new steps are:

- “performing analytical chemical tests for uniformity of content of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled ....” *See* step (f) in claim 1, and step (e) in claims 82, 161 and 315-318; and
- “repeating steps (a) through (e) to form additional resulting films, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than...” *See* step (f) in claim 82 and 315.

As support for these new steps, Applicant cites the passage spanning col. 28, line 66, through col. 29, line 6 and the passage at col. 29, lines 20-35 of the '080 Patent. *See* Reply p. 45. But in the very next sentence of the specification, Applicant admits that the newly recited steps were known and obvious to those of skill in the art:

Any conventional means for examining and testing the film pieces may be employed, such as, for example, visual inspection, use of analytical testing, and any other suitable means known to those skilled in the art.

'080 Patent 29:35-39.

Thus, by Applicant's own admission, the conventional sampling and testing steps recited, as the only new method limitations in the claims, are obvious and anticipated. In short, the only added process steps are admitted in the prior art.

Also, while the objective of each of the claimed methods is the manufacture of a film suitable for commercialization, the film must already be manufactured before it can be tested. And later testing cannot make an unsuitable film suitable for commercialization. For example, any variation in the distribution of active in manufactured film is not improved by testing. In short, the new testing steps are at best known, post-solution activity that cannot render the claimed methods for manufacturing film patentable.

B. Applicant's bread analogy falls flat.

Applicant misleadingly characterizes the '080 Patent claims as "requir[ing] a uniformity of content in amount of active (i) in individual dosage units sampled from a resulting film of 10% or less ( . . . ), and (ii) in individual dosage units sampled from two or more resulting films of 10% or less as a percentage difference from a desired amount ( . . . )." Reply pp. 48-49 (emphasis added) (erroneously suggesting that each claim includes two "uniformity" requirements when most of the claims do not). Applicant proposes to use a bread-making analogy to explain its alleged "uniformity" requirements. Requester agrees that the bread-making analogy may be useful so we elaborate on it as a means for conceptually explaining why the pending claims are not patentable.

The following bread-making claim very closely relates to claim 82, which is one of the two pending independent claims that actually recites two “uniformity” requirements:<sup>1</sup>

**82\_bread.** A process for manufacturing resulting loaves of bread suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including testing which meets the standards of the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) relating to variation of a flavoring in individual bites, said loaves of bread having a substantially uniform distribution of ingredients comprising a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of said flavoring in bites of said resulting loaves of bread, comprising the steps of:

- (a) forming a dough comprising a milled grain selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble grain, and water-swellable grain and combinations thereof, a liquid and the flavoring, the dough having a substantially uniform distribution of the flavoring;
- (b) casting the dough into a loaf pan, said dough having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;
- (c) controlling drying through a process comprising conveying the loaf pan through an oven and evaporating at least a portion of said water from said dough to form visco-elastic dough, having said flavoring substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said dough upon initiation of drying to maintain substantially uniform distribution of said flavoring by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said flavoring within the visco-elastic dough, wherein during said drying the dough temperature is 100 °C or less, and wherein the uniformity of content of flavoring in substantially equal sized bites of said visco-elastic dough is such that the amount of the flavoring varies by no more than 10%;
- (d) forming said resulting loaf of bread from said visco-elastic dough, wherein the resulting loaf of bread has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of flavoring by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said flavoring is maintained;
- (e) performing analytical taste tests for uniformity of said flavoring in substantially equal sized bites from different slices of the resulting loaf,

---

<sup>1</sup> Applicant begins the discussion of the ‘080 Patent by attempting to subvert the plain meaning of “uniform.” Applicant states that “‘uniform’ from a practical standpoint must of necessity allow for some variance.” See Reply p. 48. Merriam-Webster disagrees: its first definition of “uniform” is “not varying.” See <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/uniform> (attached as Exhibit D). In other words, Applicant starts by proposing to define “uniform” as “not uniform.” Applicant apparently uses “uniform” and variations of that term to mean “having an acceptable variance,” but the acceptable variance is not always identified.

the tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of said flavoring varies by no more than 10% and the resulting loaf is suitable for commercial sale and regulatory approval, wherein the approval is provided by the US FDA; and

(f) repeating steps (a) through (e) to form resulting additional loaves of bread, such that uniformity of content in the amount of said flavoring in said resulting loaf of bread and said additional resulting loaves of bread varies by no more than 10% from the desired amount of the flavoring as indicated by said analytical taste tests.

The foregoing claim, claim 82\_bread, includes analogous ingredients and the same or analogous process limitations as pending claim 82. But no one would consider claim 82\_bread a good recipe for making bread. Indeed, the process limitations of claim 82\_bread are so general and devoid of detail that it is not clear that they would necessarily produce bread. Because claim 82\_bread leaves the question of how to make the target product largely unanswered, substantial experimentation would be required before a baker would expect to be able to use the process limitations of claim 82\_bread to make bread. More experimentation would be required before a baker would expect to be able to use the process limitations of claim 82\_bread to make bread with the recited desired properties.

Surprisingly, although an improved understanding of the requirements of the pending claims was the apparent purpose of the analogy, Applicant fails to relate the proposed bread “uniformity” requirements to the actual limitations of any pending claim. Instead, Applicant relates the bread “uniformity” requirements to “lots.” But no pending claim recites one or more lots. And Applicant fails to equate one or more lots with any recited claim term. Applicant also fails to relate the lots back to its bread analogy. Applicant’s failure to make the proposed connection may be due to the limitations of its data, which relates to lots as opposed to recited claim terms.

Applicant’s failure to make the proposed connection may also be due to the limitations of the ‘080 Patent specification. As quoted in the Reply, the ‘080 Patent specification only includes *two* passages that potentially support numerical values for allowable active variation. Reply pp. 45, 46. First, the specification states that “as required by various world regulatory authorities, dosage forms may not vary more than 10% in the amount of active.” ‘080 Patent 2:27-46.

Second, the specification states that a pharmaceutical dosage form or film product having no more than 10% variance of pharmaceutical active by weight per unit area may be deemed substantially uniform. *See* '080 Patent 15:28-43. The plain language of these passages simply does not support the two distinct “uniformity” requirements that Applicant has added to its claims. In short, Applicant’s bread analogy falls flat.

C. The Reitman Declaration: Third Party Requestor has demonstrated that films made by the method of *Chen* are at least as uniform as the films made by the method of the '080 Patent.

Despite the fact that the burden has shifted to Applicant to show that *Chen* does not inherently produce the desired properties, Requester nonetheless reinforces the existing evidence and demonstrates that *Chen* does produce films having at least the same properties as films produced by the presently claimed methods. In order to expedite prosecution of this reexamination, the Declaration of Maureen Reitman is provided. *See* Reitman Decl. (Exhibit B). Her team manufactured a film in accordance with Example 7 of *Chen*. *See* Reitman Decl. ¶¶ 3-4. The sampling and “chemical testing” of dosage units sampled from films manufactured in accordance with *Chen* verified that the active varies by less than 10% (*i.e.*, as presently claimed by Applicant). *See* Reitman Decl. ¶ 7 and Table 3. Visual inspection and unit dose weight analysis also verified that the individual dosage units of *Chen* have uniform active content. *See* Reitman Decl. ¶ 5-6 and Table 2. Thus, even though the burden falls on Applicant to prove that the films of *Chen* do not inherently possess the claimed desired uniformity, Dr. Reitman has proved that the films of *Chen* do inherently possess the claimed desired uniformity.

II. APPLICANT’S DECLARATIONS ARE INEFFECTIVE TO REBUT THE EXAMINER’S *PRIMA FACIE* CASE OF ANTICIPATION

A. Lin Declaration: Applicant has not met its burden of proving that *Chen* does not inherently possess the desired property

With regard to the Lin Declaration, Applicant misses the point. To anticipate the instant claims, *Chen* need only teach everything claimed, expressly or inherently. The standard is not whether *Chen* provides the thousands of pages of documentation required for the FDA to approve a drug product for administration to humans. To the extent that Applicant insists that

Patent No.: 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
117744-00023

*Chen* does not possess an enabling disclosure because it does not provide the type and volume of information required by the FDA for approval, Applicant's own '080 Patent lacks such an enabling disclosure.

1. *Dr. Lin's Declaration proves that the '080 Patent claims lack an enabling disclosure.*

The Lin Declaration states:

After review of the patent in light of FDA practice and procedure, it is my opinion that there is insufficient disclosure to allow FDA to determine that a drug product as described can be manufactured for commercial distribution, manufactured in a consistent manner and meet specification that will ensure the identity, strength, quality, purity, and potency of the drug product. In particular, *Chen* lacks any disclosure which would necessarily lead to the manufacture of films with uniformity of content (strength) of drug active required for FDA approval.

Lin Decl. ¶ 17.

While it may be true that a submission of *Chen* to the US Food and Drug Administration as a New Drug Application would not result in FDA approval of a drug product, it is unclear how Dr. Lin's Declaration is relevant other than to prove that the '080 Patent claims lack enablement. As amended, every single claim of the '080 Patent recites a "process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to the variation of an active in individual dosage units." See Reply pp. 2, 11, 20, 36, 37, 39, 40 (the amended preambles of independent claims 1, 82, 161, and 315-318). If *Chen* lacks sufficient disclosure to meet this recitation, as Applicant argues, then its own patent is similarly deficient. See MPEP 716.07 citing *In re Epstein*, 32 F.3d 1559, 31 USPQ2d 1817 (Fed. Cir. 1994) (lack of diagrams, flow charts, and other details in the prior art references does not render them nonenabling in view of the fact that applicant's own specification failed to provide those details and that one skilled in the art would have known how to implement the features of the references). Indeed, *Chen* demonstrates uniformity to the same degree as the '080 Patent, and in fact, goes beyond the '080 Patent in providing the results of so-called "analytical chemical tests" that the '080 Patent lacks. In fact, the Lin Declaration goes on to provide a litany of disclosure requirements that the '080 Patent lacks (*see* Lin Decl. ¶¶ 18-20), as described in great detail



below with respect to the first proposed rejection of all claims under 35 USC § 112 for lack of enablement, written description, and clarity.

2. *Dr. Lin's statements related to Chen's release data must be dismissed as illogical, unsupported, and conclusory.*

Lin concludes his Declaration with a logical fallacy. Based on a possible relationship between data and a film problem, and despite evidence that indicates an alternative possibility is more likely, Lin illogically finds that the data necessarily shows a film problem. Lin states that *Chen's* interim release data indicates a problem with the test method “and/or” a variation in dosage unit active content. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 20 (emphasis added). Reduced to its logical components, Lin's premise is that X (*Chen's* interim release data) indicates A (test problem) and/or B (film problem). As an initial matter, the fact that *Chen's* maximum release error bars decrease over time indicates that the error noted by Lin is an artifact of the test method—not a characteristic of the film. Nonetheless, without further support or explanation, Lin concludes that *Chen's* data demonstrates unacceptable variation in dosage unit active content (film problem). Reduced to its logical components, Lin's conclusion (X demonstrates B) does not follow from Lin's own premise (X indicates A and/or B). In other words, Lin's conclusion is logically invalid based on Lin's own stated premise. Because it lacks viable support or explanation, Lin's conclusory allegation based on *Chen's* interim release data cannot overcome any rejections based on *Chen*. *See* MPEP 716.01(C).III (requiring consideration of the absence of factual support for an expert opinion in assessing its probative value).

B. Bogue Declaration: Applicant Presents Irrelevant Information

The purpose of the Bogue Declaration is unclear to Requester. Bogue's Declaration does not show any unexpected results and so cannot be used to overcome any obviousness rejection. Bogue does not even attempt to address anticipation. Accordingly, the Bogue Declaration is insufficient to overcome any prior art rejection.

1. *The method recited in the Bogue Declaration is not the method of any of the amended or proposed claims.*

Dr. Bogue's description of the method used to make "lots" of resulting films is so general and devoid of detail that it is impossible to know to which, if any, claim(s) the data is applicable. In other words, it is impossible to know whether Bogue's method met all of the limitations of any claimed method. Applicant itself suggests that any evidence that fails to demonstrate that the "process [was] followed exactly, with all of the components exactly as listed, and all other conditions . . . exactly met" must be discounted. Reply pp. 66. Furthermore, Bogue's evidence of non-uniformity in mystery lots prepared by a vague method provides no useful insight into the uniformity of the films of the prior art.

2. *It is not clear what a "lot" may be and how it may relate to the claimed "resulting film" or "resulting films".*

According to Bogue, "[t]he results shown in the appendices establish . . . the amount of active varies by no more than 10% between individual dosage units sampled from a particular lot of resulting film." Bogue Decl. at ¶ 11. Thus, it appears that a lot may be a subset of a "resulting film." But there is no certainty as to how a "resulting film" or "resulting films" may relate to one or more "lots." Neither Applicant nor Bogue equates a "lot" to any recited claim element. In short, there is no support for Dr. Bogue's conclusion that "[t]he results shown in the appendices establish that the resulting films produced by the inventive method of the '080 Patent as disclosed and claimed have the required uniformity based on analytical chemical testing." Bogue Decl. at ¶ 11.

3. *Applicant has failed to show that even the "lots" meets its own claimed criteria.*

Even if the Bogue process were commensurate with a single recited claim, which has not been demonstrated, the data presented in the Bogue Declaration does not fall within the recited desired maximum variance in active content. As can be clearly seen from the data presented in Appendix B, the amount of pharmaceutical active varies between individual dosage units from less than 94% on the far left of the figure, to nearly 106% on the upper right. That is, the amount of pharmaceutical active varies by more than 10%. The issued and amended claims recite that "the amount of the pharmaceutical active . . . varies by no more than 10%" between individual dosage unit samples. *See e.g.*, claim 1.

Applicant attempts to resuscitate its data by amending its independent claims to refer to a first “uniformity” within a “resulting film” and then a second, newly-defined “uniformity” between “resulting films.” First, there is absolutely no support for two “uniformity” standards in the ‘080 Patent. And certainly there is no support for a first standard of “uniformity” that only applies within a film and a second standard of “uniformity” that applies between “resulting films.” Second, Appendix A does not indicate whether the amount of active in each film varies by no more than 10% per unit area. Appendix A does not even mention film.

Moreover, Appendix A conveniently conceals variation—by dividing the difference between the maximum and the minimum active dosages by the average active dosage in the lot samples. Thus, Appendix A does not indicate the actual variation between the amount of active in individual dosage units. For example, consider a sample set including 10 dosage units with active in the following amounts: 6, 4, 4, 4, 2, 4, 4, 4, 4, and 4 mcg. The actual variation between the dosage unit having 6 mcg and the dosage unit having 2 mcg is well over 20%. But according to Bogue’s calculation, the variation would be 0%.

Finally, because Applicant chose only to provide the results of its calculations and not the underlying data, the Office has no way of determining if the data, analyzed in Appendix A, supports the claims. But the Office can readily see that the data in Appendix B does not support the claims.

### III. PROPOSED REJECTIONS OF ALL PENDING CLAIMS UNDER 35 USC § 314

Applicant’s amendments attempt to “redefine” issued claim limitations by adding an implicit definition that goes well beyond the scope of the issued claims.

- A. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 314 as enlarging the scope of the patent claims – broadening “flowable” to include non-flowable viscosities.

Applicant amends every independent claim to broaden the term “flowable” to encompass viscosities that are not flowable. Step (c) of issued claim 1 and step (b) of issued claims 82 and 161 have been amended as follows:

casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

Each and every new independent claim also includes this recitation. Exhibit E provides the viscosity of common materials. As Exhibit E indicates, a viscosity of 100,000 cps corresponds to mincemeat. Materials having the viscosity of mincemeat are not flowable. The new recitation expands the polymer matrix cast in this step beyond that claimed in issued claims 1, 82, and 161—*i.e.*, to include a polymer matrix that is not flowable—and thereby impermissibly broadens the scope of the claims beyond those issued in the '080 Patent.

B. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 314 as enlarging the scope of the patent claims – broadening the drying step.

The issued claims referred to forming a visco-elastic film in less than 10 minutes. The only discussion in the specification, including the examples, for drying for 10 minutes is referring to total drying time:

For instance, the films of the present invention desirably are dried for 10 minutes or less. Drying the films at 80 °C for 10 minutes produces a temperature differential of about 5 °C. This means that after 10 minutes of drying, the temperature of the inside of the film is 5 °C less than the outside exposure temperature.

'080 Patent 13:23-28.

The '080 Patent teaches in this passage that keeping the total drying time short, allows the films to be dried at higher temperatures without heat degradation.

Applicants amends every independent claim to broaden the drying step to require only that viscosity be increased in the first 4 minutes. Step (d) of issued claim 1 and step (c) of issued claims 82 and 161 have been amended as follows:

...evaporating at least a portion of said solvent... to form a visco-elastic film...within about the first [10] 4 minutes [or fewer] by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution...of said film....

Each and every new independent claim also includes this recitation.

This amendment attempts to “redefine” the evaporating step by shifting from what would be construed as a total drying requirement to what is now merely an initial drying requirement. This amendment thus broadens the step. As newly recited, this step now is accomplished “by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying.” This new claim does not require 10 minutes drying time, but only requires an increase in viscosity in the first 4 minutes.

#### IV. PROPOSED REJECTIONS OF ALL CLAIMS UNDER 35 USC § 112

- A. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraph – new recitation “suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units”

The preambles of claims 1, 82, and 161 have been amended to add the above recitation. Claims 315-318 also include the same recitation.

##### 1. *Lack of enablement*

The Applicant has taken the position that *Chen* lacks an enabling disclosure because it lacks “sufficient information contained within to allow regulatory FDA approval” of its films. Lin Decl. ¶ 17. If FDA-approvability is the standard for enablement, then Applicant’s own specification is similarly lacking. The ‘080 Specification discloses none of the following, which the Lin Declaration proclaims is required for an enabling disclosure:

disclosure to allow FDA to determine that a drug product as described can be manufactured for commercial distribution, manufactured in a consistent manner and meet specification that will ensure the identity, strength, quality, purity, and potency of the drug product. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 17.

- ✓ Without a doubt, the ‘080 Patent does not qualify as an FDA CMC submission, which is the bar set by Dr. Lin and Applicant.

disclosure which would necessarily lead to the manufacture of films with uniformity of content (strength) of drug active required for FDA approval. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 17.

- ✓ Although the '080 Patent does have some uniformity data from physical tests, *i.e.*, data from visual inspection tests ('080 Patent 31:38-45) and weight variation tests ('080 Patent 31:46-32:34), Applicant has taken the position that these test are not relevant (Reply at p. 58-59). Thus, according to Applicant, there is no uniformity data that can be relied upon in the '080 Patent.

sufficient information that the films containing drug can be produced consistently with respect to uniformity of content of the drug. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 18.

- ✓ The '080 Patent does not include any data or other information regarding the reproducibility of films made according to the methods described.

demonstrat[ing] uniformity of content in the amounts of drug in individual dosage units. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 18.

- ✓ Again, according to Applicant, there is no uniformity data that can be relied upon in the '080 Patent.

no specific test methods, and hence no test results, that could allow for the determination of the actual amount of drug (active) in individual dosage units. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 18.

- ✓ The '080 Patent specification fails to describe or exemplify any specific test methods, and hence no test results.

disclose sufficient information regarding the manufacturing process and process controls...[to] ensure that films containing drug could be manufactured to meet specifications that ensure consistent strength. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 19.

- ✓ The '080 Patent fails to disclose or claim any information about manufacturing processes or controls to ensure consistent strength that *Chen* also does not provide. So, to the extent that *Chen* is lacking, so is the '080 Patent.

...there is no information regarding the test methods that are necessary to determine the amount of drug in individual dosage units. *See* Lin Decl. ¶ 20.

- ✓ Beyond its so-called physical tests (which Applicant claims are irrelevant), the '080 Patent is devoid of any information regarding "test methods that are necessary to determine the amount of drug in individual dosage units." There is only a general reference to dissolution tests, but with no actual test methods are referred to or described.

In short, to the extent that *Chen* lacks an enabling disclosure with respect to this new recitation, the '080 Patent also lacks an enabling disclosure. In the words of Dr. Lin, the '080 Patent "is lacking, both explicitly and inherently, the disclosure necessary to provide for the manufacture of drug-containing films with the uniformity of content in amount of drug (active) in individual dosage units to make FDA approvable film products." Lin Decl. ¶ 21.

Even the Bogue Declaration fails to provide evidence that its "lots" meet the recited standards. As Dr. Clevenger explains:

The analysis in the Bogue Declaration is not consistent with the currently adopted definition of content uniformity as described in USP <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units. The calculation in paragraphs 9 and 10 of the Bogue Declaration are not included within the definition of content uniformity as described in USP <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units.

Clevenger Decl. ¶ 6.

## 2. *Lack of clarity*

The "suitable for . . . regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration . . ." recitation is ambiguous and unclear because there is no set chemical tests or standards required. As Dr. Clevenger explains:

In my experience, the route to regulatory approval is an ongoing negotiation with the FDA through the New Drug Application (NDA) process. In this negotiation process, analytical testing and standards are determined for each product depending on its particular properties and characteristics. Different active agents and dosage forms have different properties, and would thus generally have different standards and testing requirements. Also, standardized test methods can change over time (*e.g.*, USP <905> was revised in 2007 and 2011), so regulations from 2000 will not provide adequate information for present approval processes.

Clevenger Decl. ¶ 4.

Indeed, the FDA standard cited by Lin demonstrates that different active strengths alone, in products that are otherwise the same, can require different tests. *See* Exhibit J, USP Chapter <905> Uniformity of Dosage Forms (2011), cited in Lin Decl. at ¶ 16. To add to the

confusion, in some cases, a “chemical test” is not even required. If the amount of active is high enough, a Weight Variation Test is acceptable. *See* Exhibit K at pp. 6-7, Q&A5.

Applicant also implies that certain claim limitations are the FDA standard. *See* Claim 1 (varies by no more than 10%), claim 82 (varies by no more than 10% above the desired amount), and Lin Decl. ¶ 22 (no “greater than the 110% level (from and expected amount of 100%) that is considered acceptable to FDA for regulatory approval”). In fact, USP General Chapter <905>, which is cited by Applicant in the Lin Declaration, sets forth a number of standards, each of which is entirely different from anything claimed, argued or described in the ‘080 Patent. *See* Exhibit K at pp. 2-6.

Because a person of ordinary skill in the art would not be able to determine what is encompassed by a method for manufacturing a film “suitable for regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units,” the claims are lacking in clarity.

### 3. *Lack of written description*

Finally, because the new “suitable...” recitation in the pending claims extends beyond what was disclosed or referenced in the specification, the claims lack written description. That is, even if the FDA did have one standard that would apply to all of the films manufactured by the methods claimed in the ‘080 Patent—which it does not—the standards have changed over time. For example, in order to harmonize with international standards, the USP General Chapter <905> cited by Applicant in the Lin Declaration, was updated at least twice (*i.e.*, on April 20, 2007, and again on December 1, 2011). *See* Exhibit J and Exhibit K, and Clevenger Decl. ¶ 4. Accordingly, this new recitation appears to reference something that did not exist when the application was filed, and therefore the claims lack written description.

#### B. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraph – new recitation “analytical chemical tests”

##### 1. *Lack of clarity*

Independent claims 1, 82, 161 and 315-318 newly recite the term “analytical chemical tests.” The term “analytical chemical tests” is vague and unclear. What is an “analytical



chemical test” and how does it differ from a non-chemical test or a non-analytical test?

Applicant does not disclose any analytical chemical tests or testing of active in the specification, but rather the desirability of testing for chemical and physical uniformity. Testing for chemical uniformity would include weight variation testing according to the FDA, but Applicant insists this is not an analytical chemical test. Compare Exhibit J at p. 1 to Reply at p. 58-59.

Is a chemical transformation required? If so, HPLC testing would not be an analytical chemical test. And HPLC testing is commonly used to assess active content. The confusion is compounded by Applicant’s statements that weighing cannot be relied upon to assess uniformity of content data. However, the FDA clearly provides that weight variation testing is a content uniformity test. Exhibit J at p. 1. In short, based upon the plain language in the ‘080 Patent and compounded by Applicant’s arguments, it is not clear what is, and what is not, an analytical chemical test.

## 2. *Lack of written description*

Nowhere in the ‘080 Patent does the Applicant describe the type, much less the amount, of analytical chemical testing required for regulatory approval. And even if it did, as discussed above, requirements for regulatory approval vary greatly, and change over time. Nowhere in the specification is the term “analytical chemical tests” written or described.

### C. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraphs - new recitation “varies by no more than 10%, 5%, 2%, 1%, 0.5%”

Step (f) of claim 1 and step (e) of claims 82 and 161 have been amended to recite—in reference to the individual dosage units formed—that “for...substantially equal sized individual dosage units...the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%.” Claims 315-317 also recite the same language. Step (c) of newly proposed claim 318 recites that “for...substantially equal sized individual dosage units...the amount of said active varies by less than 5%.” Newly proposed dependent claims 300-311 include the same recitations or require even narrower degrees of variation, *i.e.*, 2%, 1%, and 0.5%.

1. *Lack of clarity*

The recitations above require that individual dosage units vary from each other in the amount of active by no more than 10%, 5%, 2%, 1% or 0.5%. The clarity issue arises when Applicant attempts to broaden the meaning of these recitations in its Reply:

...uniformity of content of the resulting film varies by no more than 10% in amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of a lot of the resulting film...

Reply at p. 75, lines 7-11 (emphasis added).

The data presented in the Bogue Declaration reflect “the uniformity of content of active of individual dosage units within particular lots and across different lots.” Bogue Decl. ¶ 8 (emphasis added) and Appendices A, B and C. But “lots” are not equated to “resulting films.” And there is also no reference to a “lot,” “lots,” or “lots of resulting films” in any of the claims. While Applicant may act as its own lexicographer in drafting the specification, it may not do so after the application has been filed. The fact is, Applicant’s “uniformity” data—presented in the Bogue Declaration—fails to demonstrate individual dosage units where the active varies by no more than 10%, 5%, 2%, 1% or 0.5% as claimed.

Moreover, Bogue’s Appendix A, which conceals lot variation by dividing it by the lot average, does not negate Bogue’s Appendix B, which clearly shows that even the lot data does not satisfy the 10% variance limitation. It only introduces confusion with respect to the meaning of the claims.

2. *Lack of enablement*

Applicant’s arguments also create an enablement problem as to the claimed uniformity. Applicant argues that the prior art does not demonstrate its claimed uniformity because “physically observable properties of the resulting film product, for example, its appearance and weight...do not indicate that the amount of active in individual dosage units varies by no more than 10%...” Reply pp. 54-55. “Even if the film appears uniform, analytical chemical tests must then be conducted to verify uniformity of content at the prescribed level.” Reply p. 59. In short, Applicant argues that uniformity may only be determined by analytical chemical testing of film,

not merely by physically observable properties of film. There is no indication or evidence in the '080 Patent that the disclosed methods result in a film with the claimed uniformity as determined by analytical chemical testing. In over 100 examples, the '080 Patent never demonstrates that any disclosed method results in a film that satisfies the recited active variation limitation as determined by analytical chemical testing. Applicant erroneously states that “analytical chemical testing is used in the '080 Patent to establish the actual amount of active in samples,” citing Example M. Reply p. 59, last full ¶. The '080 Patent discloses no analytical chemical test for active with respect to Example M. '080 Patent 33:10-34:34. In fact, Example M contains no active. A red dye does not fall into the broadest reasonable interpretation of a bioactive or a pharmaceutical active.

Applicant now improperly attempts to remediate its enablement problem by providing the data in the Bogue Declaration. First, a declaration cannot be used to provide enablement after the fact. This is particularly true when the declaration methods are not well-described, and what is described does not match even a single claim. Second, and most importantly, the data does not even meet its own recited requirement. Appendix B of the Bogue Declaration shows that the active in the individual dosage units does vary by more than 10%. Indeed, Applicant admits in the Bogue Declaration that only 46 of the 73 lots (*i.e.*, only 63% of the lots) have active varying less than 5%, and only 1 lot (*i.e.*, only 1% of the lots) has active varying less than 2%. Finally, absolutely no lots have active varying less than 1% or 0.5%.

In short, none of these variation requirements are enabled in the '080 Patent specification. And the Bogue Declaration only serves to prove that its own commercial method—even if it were to fall within the claims—fails to produce films that meet the claimed variation requirements. By Applicant's own admission, without a demonstration of chemical tests, there is no indication that the disclosed methods met these requirements. Reply p. 67, lines 10-15. And physical tests are not enough, according to Applicant. *Id.*

- D. Proposed rejection of independent claims 82, 315, and dependent claims 83-90, 92-94, 96-160, 261-271, 274, 276-278, 298, 304-307, and 313, under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraphs - new recitation “varies by no more than 10% from desired amount of active”.

In contrast to the maximum active variance limit recited in each of the independent claims and discussed directly above—step (f) of claims 82 and 315 includes the new recitation that “the amount of said active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active.”

1. *Lack of clarity*

Whereas the previously discussed new recitation allows a larger maximum variation of active content, this new recitation allows a maximum variation of 20% ( $\pm 10\%$  around a target) in active content. Again, Applicant introduces clarity issues by attempting to amend its claims to match its new data. This new recitation in step (f) of claims 82 and 315 is particularly confusing because it appears to be broader than the uniformity recitation already present in step (e) of claims 82 and 315. The new language only appears to indicate that repeating the claimed method need not produce consistent films.

2. *Lack of written description*

The new language introduced into claims 82 and 315 allows a maximum variation of 20% ( $\pm 10\%$  around a desired amount or target) in the active content. Nowhere in the '080 Patent is this language found. Nor is this new definition of uniformity described or exemplified. Also there is absolutely no support for the idea that some uniformity is required within a resulting film and another is required between films. This language has been entirely fabricated in an attempt to retroactively support their claims with new data, but data in the specification does not support newly recited maximum variation of 20% in active content. As set forth in the MPEP: “If a claim is amended to include subject matter, limitations, or terminology not present in the application as filed, involving a departure from...the disclosure of the application as filed, the examiner should conclude that the claimed subject matter is not described in that application.” MPEP 2163.02. The claims lack written description because nowhere in the specification are these new limitation described.

3. *Lack of enablement*

Applicant's arguments also create the same enablement problem as to the maximum variation of active as discussed above. That is, there is no evidence in the '080 Patent that the

disclosed methods result in a film with the claimed uniformity—as determined by analytical chemical testing. And a declaration cannot be used to provide enablement after the fact.

E. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, second paragraph – new recitation “rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix”

Step (d) of claim 1 and step (c) of claims 82 and 161 have been amended to include the vague and relative phrase “rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix.” Each and every new independent claim recites the same language. First, the term “rapidly” is a relative term with no benchmark for assessment provided in the ‘080 Patent. Additionally, the term “rapidly” only refers to the timing at which a desired result is obtained. It does not refer to a well-defined manipulative step. Finally, there is no indication of the degree to which the viscosity must be increased. By its very nature, any drying process increases viscosity to some extent and may be deemed to do so “rapidly” by some benchmark. A person of ordinary skill in the art would not reasonably be apprised of what specific step or steps are required to “rapidly increase the viscosity.” In short, introduction of this phrase into this claim creates ambiguity and indefiniteness.

F. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, second paragraph – new recitation “during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less”

Claims 1, 82, and 161 have been amended to recite the phrase “during said drying said flowable polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less.” New independent claims 315-318 recite the same language. This phrase introduces ambiguity into the claims. It is specifically noted that this temperature describes the flowable polymer matrix, not the visco-elastic film (*i.e.*, the matrix before it has been dried to a film). It appears that the limitation may be satisfied if the flowable polymer matrix began the drying at a temperature of 100 °C or less because this is “during said drying.” Alternatively, it may require the temperature to be less than 100 °C throughout the drying step. It is unclear.

Also, the matrix comprises a solvent which “...may be water, a polar organic solvent including, but not limited to, ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, methylene chloride, or any combination thereof.” ‘080 Patent 14:67 – 15:3. Since every single recited solvent has a boiling

Patent No.: 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
117744-00023

point of 100 °C or less, it is not clear how the matrix would reach a temperature above the boiling point of the solvent contained therein. If the Applicant intended to recite that the visco-elastic film temperature is 100 °C or less, this has not been properly claimed. And even if it were, this recitation means nothing unless the oven temperature is above 100 °C. Since the oven temperatures utilized in the Examples of the '080 Patent are less than 100 °C ('080 Patent, Tables 7, 17, and 18), it is not clear what, if anything, this recitation might exclude. This is particularly significant with respect to claim 318, where the drying apparatus is "at a temperature of 60 °C." How would the matrix ever reach a temperature that is 40° hotter than the oven?

G. Proposed rejection of claim 318 under 35 USC § 112, first paragraph – lack of written description for combination of disparate concepts

There is absolutely no evidence in the '080 Patent specification that the Applicant had possession of the method recited in claim 318 at the time of filing.

[T]o satisfy the written description requirement, an applicant must convey with reasonable clarity to those skilled in the art that, as of the filing date sought, he or she was in possession of the invention, and that the invention, in that context, is whatever is now claimed. The test for sufficiency of support in a parent application is whether the disclosure of the application relied upon 'reasonably conveys to the artisan that the inventor had possession at that time of the later claimed subject matter.'

MPEP 2163.02, *citing Ralston Purina Co. v. Far-Mar-Co., Inc.*, 772 F.2d 1570, 1575 (Fed. Cir. 1985) and *quoting In re Kaslow*, 707 F.2d 1366, 1375, (Fed. Cir. 1983).

Applicant has cobbled together unrelated elements in the '080 Patent specification. This lack of written description is evident, for example, in step (c):

controlling drying through a process comprising conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus at a temperature of about 60 °C and using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix during drying... to form a visco-elastic film... within about the first 4 minutes ...such that uniformity of content in the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said visco-elastic film, varies by less than 5%.

Claim 318, step (c).

There are only two instances in the '080 Patent where a temperature of “about 60 °C” appears. The first instance, Example CF, makes no reference whatsoever to: (i) the yield value of the film; (ii) control of air velocities; or (iii) visco-elasticity of film at 4 minutes. *See* '080 Patent 41:49-50. The second instance, Examples P1-P3 use a “second heater section” at 60 °C with no top air flow, but does not exemplify a method suitable for film formation. *See* '080 Patent 35:57-59 (“Composition P displayed a stringy elastic property. The wet film would not stay level, the coating was uneven, and the film did not dry.”).

Moreover, the desired property relating to variation in active content—“[d]esirably, the variance is less than 5% by weight, less than 2% by weight, less than 1% by weight, or less than 0.5% by weight” (*see* '080 Patent 15:40-43)—cannot be attributed to any one of the 60 °C temperature, the air currents, or the formation of a visco-elastic film within 4 minutes. Indeed, there are no examples showing a variation of less than 5% in active content.

In short, this new combination of elements found in unconnected passages of the specification lacks written description. Even if some of the elements were connected in some way, the requirement of 5% or less variation in active content is not enabled.

H. Proposed rejection of all pending claims under 35 USC § 112, first and second paragraph – the large variety of alternative expressions relating to the desired uniformity

Instead of amending the claims to recite manipulative steps that distinguish the cited art, Applicant relies on its own newly concocted and varied expressions of its desired property of “substantially uniform distribution of active” to allegedly distinguish its methods. Indeed, as discussed above, what Applicant deems uniformity is really acceptable non-uniformity. This approach serves only to demonstrate how the amended claims lack certainty, enablement, and written description.

1. *Lack of clarity*

Applicant adds so many new and different recitations regarding variation limitations to its independent claims, with multiple distinct variation levels, even within the same claim, that the claims are mired in ambiguity and uncertainty.

Taking independent claim 82 as a representative claim, the problem with Applicant's approach is readily apparent. The preamble recites that the film must be suitable for regulatory approval, said regulatory approval including analytical chemical testing which meets the standards of the FDA relating to variation of an active in individual dosage units. Later in step (e), claim 82 requires that the film is suitable for FDA approval without connecting the suitability to analytical chemical tests or the standards of the FDA relating to variation of active content recited in the preamble. Are analytical chemical tests required to show the FDA standards are met? Must the film meet the FDA standards relating to variation of an active? Those limitations are not recited in the body of the claim. Then, to add more confusion, analytical chemical tests are required in a different part of step (e) to "indicate" that the active varies by no more than 10% in individual dosage units. First, this is not the FDA standard for approval. As discussed above, the standard is defined in USP General Chapter <905>. See Exhibit J. Second, what does it mean to "indicate" that the active varies by no more than 10%? Yet, there is one more layer of confusion. New step (f) requires that the amount of active varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of active. What is the desired active content? New step (f) also recites "said resulting film and said additional resulting films." How does a "resulting film" differ from "additional resulting films"? Where is that described in the specification? Or demonstrated for that matter? There is simply no discussion of  $\pm 10\%$  from a target anywhere in the specification. And certainly not with respect to comparison of "resulting films." And why is the amount of variation so large? This new claim amendment, and the data presented in the Bogue Declaration, only serve to demonstrate that repeating the claimed method does not produce consistent films. The Applicant has neither described nor enabled the method it now seeks to claim.

Every single independent claim is similarly confusing, each with their own combination of the many shades of "uniformity" that individually and collectively create a hopeless morass of confusion.

## 2. *Lack of written description.*

As discussed above, there is absolutely no support for the recitation of "varying by no more an 10% from a desired target." And certainly none for this variation between "resulting



films” and “additional resulting films.” In addition, if *Chen*’s disclosure is not enabling with respect to the various regulatory authority recitations, neither is its own. *See* Section above regarding the Lin Declaration.

### 3. *Lack of enablement*

Nowhere in any of the over 100 examples in the ‘080 Patent is any film demonstrated to meet any of the newly recited “uniformity” limitations. No analytical chemical tests are performed with respect to an active. No results of analytical chemical tests of active are provided. No demonstration is made that the active varies by no more than 10% in individual dosage units. No demonstration is made that “resulting films” and “additional resulting films” vary by no more than 10% from a desired target. It almost seems like Applicant is not familiar with the ‘080 Patent because every recitation added to distinguish claims from the cited art lacks written description and/or enablement in the ‘080 Patent specification.

## V. MAINTAINED AND PROPOSED REJECTIONS OF ALL CLAIMS OVER CITED PRIOR ART

### A. The Applicant has failed to establish that even one of the rejections of record is incorrect and should be withdrawn

In reply to the rejections of record, Applicant declines to explain how their claimed process differs from the processes of the cited references. Instead, Applicant applies five strategies that fail to advance prosecution. For the sake of brevity these strategies are addressed up front and individual rejections are further addressed as necessary directly below.

#### 1. *Applicant argues that the prior art does not use the “same materials and method” as Applicant, “particularly as amended.”*

Applicant’s position that the cited art does not use the “same materials and method” and therefore cannot provide films with the same degree of uniformity appears to be based—in large part—on Applicant’s position that the cited art does not disclose the newly-claimed steps of performing analytical chemical tests<sup>2</sup>. *See, e.g.*, Reply pp. 66-67. The newly-claimed steps are

---

<sup>2</sup> Secondary arguments, which are particular to *Staab, Le Person, and Horstmann*, are discussed with respect to each rejection below.

insignificant for at least three reasons. First, any alleged failure to disclose post-manufacturing analytical chemical tests does not change the fact that films of the cited prior art meet the claimed maximum variation of active. And the Office has made a proper *prima facie* case because the cited art teaches all of the manufacturing steps recited in the claims. It is now Applicant's burden to prove that the methods of the cited art do not necessarily produce film with the recited characteristics. *See* MPEP § 2112 (V). Second, as discussed above, adding a recitation of post-solution activity to a claimed process for manufacturing film cannot render the claimed manufacturing process patentable. Finally, the new steps—by Applicant's admission—are “conventional means for examining and testing” uniformity. *See* '080 Patent 29:33-39. In short, the new steps fail to distinguish the claimed methods for making films over prior art methods.

2. *Applicant relies on data that (i) does not correspond to any claimed method; and (ii) does not correspond to any claimed result.*

As discussed in the section devoted to the Bogue Declaration, the method recited in the Bogue Declaration does not match a single pending claim of the '080 Patent. And even if the process used to make the film lots in the Bogue Declaration were to match all of the steps recited in any of the '080 Patent claims—which has not been demonstrated—the resulting variance in active content fails to satisfy limits recited in the claims. To the extent that Applicant argues that “lots” of films would satisfy the active variance limits recited in the claims, this is completely unsupported in the specification. And none of the claims refers to “lots” of films. Finally, any unexpected results are irrelevant to anticipation by inherency. Indeed such results are referred to as “inherent.”

3. *To the extent that the information in Chen is insufficient for FDA film product approval, the information in the '080 Patent is also insufficient.*

Applicant uses the Lin Declaration to support its argument that there is insufficient disclosure in *Chen* to allow the FDA to determine whether the drug product (*i.e.*, film) can be manufactured to the specification required for FDA approval. *See* Reply pp. 98-99 *citing* Lin Decl. ¶¶ 17-22. First and foremost, it is unreasonable to expect that a patent application would

Patent No.: 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
117744-00023

have the level of information required for an FDA New Drug Application. These are two very different documents having two very different requirements and purposes. Clevenger Decl. ¶ 5. And, to the extent that *Chen* does not provide sufficient information to comply with all the information required in an NDA, neither does the ‘080 Patent. Clevenger Decl. ¶ 5.

4. *Applicant relies on an inherency case that has facts that support the Examiner’s rejection.*

Applicant relies on the *Crown Operations International, Ltd. v. Solutia Inc.* decision in reply to every inherency rejection. But there was no genuine inherency issue in *Crown*. Indeed, the Federal Circuit merely affirmed the summary judgment Order of the court that there was no genuine issue of inherency. *See Crown*, 289 F.3d 1367, 1370 (Fed. Cir. 2002). And summary judgment is granted when, taking all facts in the light most favorable to the non-moving party, and with all doubts resolved in favor of the non-moving party, there is no genuine issue of material fact. *See Fed. Rules Civ. Proc. Rule 56(c)*. *See also Anderson v. Liberty Lobby, Inc.*, 477 US 242, 255, 106 S. Ct. 2505 (1986).

The issue before the court was whether the safety/solar film assembly of the prior art inherently contributed no more than about 2% visible reflectance, as was recited in the patent claims. *See Exhibit F, Crown Operations International, Ltd. v. Solutia Inc.*, 289 F.3d 1367, 1371 (Fed. Cir. 2002). In the *Crown* case, there was no genuine issue of inherency because the examples in the prior art patent taught a glass thickness that, alone, would produce about 14% visible reflectance. *See Exhibit G, Crown Operations International, Ltd. V. Solutia Inc.*, 2000 WL 33906466 (W.D.Wis.) at 10. Based on the glass thickness alone—no matter what the patent taught about the rest of the safety/solar film—the film could not achieve the less than 2% reflectance. Attached are both opinions so that the Examiner can readily see for himself that the presentation of the facts of case to the Office was incomplete.

In short, the *Crown* case is the opposite of this reexamination, where the cited prior art references demonstrate uniformity to the same degree as the ‘080 Patent. The visual inspection and weight comparison employed to demonstrate uniformity in *Chen* are the very same methods for determining uniformity disclosed in the ‘080 Patent. *Compare Chen* 17:15 (demonstrating apparent uniform distribution by naked eye), p. 22 (Table 6 demonstrating uniform weight) and

Patent No.: 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
117744-00023

Figure 5 (demonstrating dosages dissolved and “chemical” tested) to the ‘080 Patent 31:38-45 (demonstrating apparent uniform distribution by naked eye or slight magnification), 31:46-32:36 (demonstrating uniformity by uniform weight), 32:36-41 (proposing “an alternative method” by dissolution and “chemical” testing, but not actually testing its examples).

Unlike *Crown, Markman v. Westview Instruments, Inc.* is relevant to this reexamination. In *Markman*, the Supreme Court made clear that desired properties and scientific theories or explanations are not entitled to patentable weight. *See* 517 U.S. 370, 373 (1996) (“A claim covers and secures a process, a machine, a manufacture, a composition of matter, or a design, but never the function or result of either, nor the scientific explanation of their operation”) (emphasis added). And, with respect to process claims, the Federal Circuit consistently held that, in a validity analysis, a “whereby clause in a method claim is not given weight when it simply expresses the intended result of a process step....” *Minton v. Nat’l Ass’n of Securities Dealers, Inc.*, 336 F.3d 1373, 1381, 67 USPQ2d 1614, 1620 (Fed. Cir. 2003) citing *Texas Instruments v. USITC*, 988 F.3d 1165, 1172 (Fed. Cir. 1993); *see also, e.g.,* MPEP 2111.04. In the present claims, the process steps required to achieve the recited properties are not positively recited. The “elements” of a method claim are, and must be, acts or manipulative steps that are performed upon an article or chemical substance. Simply reciting desired features of a film, *e.g.*, substantial uniformity, and/or a scientific explanation of how uniformity is maintained, are of little patentable consequence in process claims. Rather, Applicant must properly recite the manipulative steps that necessarily produce the desired properties.

After *Markman*, the Federal Circuit decided a case with facts and issues strikingly similar to those presented here: *Bristol Myers Squibb Co. v. Ben Venue Labs, Inc.* In the *Bristol* case, the patentee failed to distinguish its process over the prior art by positively reciting method steps that were not in the prior art. Instead, the patent recited broad steps and relied on desired results rather than method steps to distinguish its methods over those of the prior art. The *Bristol* court found that the mere recitation of purpose and desired results does not patentably distinguish the claims over the same methods recited in the prior art. *See Bristol*, 246 F.3d 1368, 1376 (Fed. Cir. 2001) (Exhibit H) (desired results such as the anti-tumor effect “[do] not result in a manipulative difference in the steps of the claim.”). Indeed, like the patentee in the *Bristol* case,

Applicant would like to retain its overly broad method claims even though the very same steps are in the prior art. Rather than positively reciting method steps that distinguish its claims over the prior art methods, Applicant relies on recitations of scientific theories and desired results. Applicant wishes to not only cover its own commercial product, but also to cover all methods of making films regardless of whether the methods falls within the prior art. As the Federal Circuit concluded in the *Bristol* case, Applicant "cannot have it both ways." *Id.*

5. *Applicant relies on cases that create a narrow exception from the established case law of Markman; but its own case does not fall within that exception.*

Applicant cites *Hoffer v. Microsoft Corp.*, 405 F.3d 1326 (Fed. Cir. 2005), for the proposition that their wherein clause "cannot be ignored in order to change the substance of the invention." Reply p. 73. Applicant's reliance on *Hoffer* is misplaced for at least three reasons. First, *Hoffer's* ruling—that a clause cannot be disregarded in determining patent infringement—does not address the question of whether a wherein clause should be given patentable weight during reexamination. Second, the wherein clause at issue in *Hoffer* was more than just a desired result. *Hoffer*, 405 F.3d at 1330 ("The whereby clause describes a network of users at multiple remote user terminals who are 'collectively able to concurrently engage in interactive data messaging.' This capability is more than the intended result of a process step; it is part of the process itself."). The relevant clauses in the present reexamination—clauses referring to the desired uniformity, desired regulatory approval, and other desired results—are not manipulative steps of the process itself, and are therefore not entitled to patentable weight. Third and finally, Applicant's argument that disregarding the '080 Patent's wherein clause would "change the substance of the invention" appears to be an admission that there are no manipulative steps recited in the claims that would provide the desired results. In short, *Hoffer* is not relevant to the facts and issues in this reexamination.

Applicant also points to *Griffin v. Bertina*, 285 F.3d. 1029 (Fed. Cir. 2002), as showing that a wherein clause is a claim limitation "because they relate back to and clarify what is required by the count." Like *Hoffer*, *Griffin* did not address whether a wherein clause should be given patentable weight during reexamination. Instead, *Griffin* addressed whether a wherein

clause should be disregarded during an interference. Also like *Hoffer, Griffin* found that the wherein clauses at issue in that case were part of the process itself.

- B. Proper rejection of claims 1, 4, 5, 8-15, 17, 18, 20-32, 34, 36-40, 44-47, 51, 53, 54, 59, 62-71, 82-84, 87-90, 92-94, 96, 97, 99-111, 113, 115-119, 123-126, 130, 132, 133, 138, 141-150, 161-166, 169-176, 178, 179, 181-193, 195, 197-201, 205-208, 212, 214, 215, 220, 223-232, 243, 244, 246, 247, 249-254, 256-262, 264, 265, 267-272, 274-280, 282, 283, 285-290, and 292-299 and proposed new rejection of new independent claims 315-318 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Chen*

Applicant's Reply contends that the Examiner's rejection "is based on the belief that *Chen* uses the 'same materials and method as the Patentee,' but even if true, much more is required." Reply p. 67. This statement is incorrect on its face. If it is true that *Chen* uses the same materials and methods – which it does – then a *prima facie* case has been established and no more is required by the Office. Applicant criticizes *Chen* as being "so general and devoid of detail so as to provide no guidance other than that to dry, one places a film in a conventional hot air circulating oven at a temperature of from 40-100 °C and leaves it for a period of time." Reply p. 76. But Applicant fails to appreciate that, even if this statement were true, the method *Chen* describes would still anticipate the claims.

The suggestion—that Requester must show that "*Chen's* process examples when followed exactly, with all the components exactly as listed, and all other conditions of *Chen* exactly met, will provide a process suitable for commercial manufacture, a process which produces products which are regulatory approvable by the FDA, and which exhibit the levels of uniformity of content in actual amount of active claimed by Patentee's processes" (Reply p. 66)—is simply incorrect. The burden is not on the Requester or the Office to prove that *Chen* inherently produces the desired results recited in the claim. The burden has been shifted to Applicant to show that *Chen* does not inherently produce these results. Applicant has not done so.

Turning to Applicant's contention that the Examiner's inherency rejection is "particularly incorrect in light of the claims as amended," none of the added recitations further distinguish the claims from *Chen*. Applicant, specifically discussing claim 317, asserts that *Chen* does not

disclose certain claim recitations found in claim 317, including "...a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60 °C ... and further controlling drying through a process comprising drying at a temperature differential ranging from 5° C to 30 °C between polymer matrix inside temperature and outside exposure temperature." Reply p. 75. But claim 317 does not include any of these recitations.<sup>3</sup> And in fact, none of the claims include a recitation of the temperature differential.

To the extent that the newly added recitations in any of the proposed claims can be construed as limiting (*i.e.*, are neither admitted conventional prior art post-manufacturing steps nor intended results not entitled to patentable weight), *Chen* teaches them, as clearly evidenced by the Reitman Declaration and discussed below. Accordingly, there remains no distinction between the process of *Chen* and the presently claimed processes.

1. *New recitation: "said polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps"*

Each and every independent claim recites that the polymer matrix has a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps. This range encompasses viscosities ranging from very thin castor oil to mincemeat. *See* Exhibit E. Thus, it is not clear how this would even limit the claim. In any event, *Chen* specifically teaches, at page 15, lines 24-26, that their coating solution has a viscosity of 500-15,000 cps. Additionally, Examples 4-8 in *Chen* all include 21% Methocel E5 HPMC in water. Attached as Exhibit I is an informational sheet showing the viscosity of various concentrations of Methocel E5 HPMC in water. Exhibit I, Figure 2, at p. 10. As demonstrated in this Exhibit, the coating solutions utilized in *Chen's* Examples 4-8 fall within the limitation of "about 400 to about 100,000 cps." Dr. Reitman confirms that the polymer mixture prepared in accordance with *Chen's* Example 7 "exhibited the flow properties of honey (around 10,000 cps), as observed by my team." Reitman Decl. ¶8. In short, the addition of this viscosity range does not further distinguish from the teachings of *Chen* in any way.

2. *New recitation: "controlling drying."*

---

<sup>3</sup> To the extent that claim 318 includes some of these recitations, they are addressed below.

Each and every independent claim recites “controlling drying.” Applicant alleges that *Chen* does not disclose “any controlled drying process whatsoever.” Reply p. 76. But it has already been established that *Chen* teaches controlled drying. See Office Action p. 12, 2<sup>nd</sup> ¶¶. In particular, *Chen* discloses a drying apparatus in Fig. 2 that includes an “aeration controller” (11). It also discloses controlling the drying temperature. See *Chen*, p. 15, lines 28-29.

Also, it is not apparent whether “controlled” refers to time, temperature, airflow, atmosphere, etc. and there is nothing in the claims that provides any indication of how drying may be “controlled.” Applicant argues that:

[c]ontrolled drying includes methods that avoid, for example, the formation of bubbles, or uncontrolled air currents that may cause movement of particles within the visco-elastic film forming matrix. Controlled drying, as required by the invention as claimed, may be effectuated through evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less.

Reply pp. 54-55.

To the extent that Applicant attempts to tie “controlled” to the idea of “evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to form a visco-elastic film, having said active substantially uniformly distributed throughout, within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying,” this recitation is (1) already recited in the claim (so it is not clear what “controlled” would add to the claim) and (2) also inherent in *Chen*, as described immediately hereafter. And the argument is so circular that “controlled” adds no additional meaning to the claim. Arguing that the active is locked in by evaporating solvent to lock in the active amounts to nothing more than a desired result of the manipulative evaporating step. Once again, Applicant relies on what they want to obtain, rather than a manipulative step to get there – this is not proper in a method claim. And even if it were, it does not further distinguish *Chen*.



3. *New recitation: “conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus...”*

Each and every independent claim in the proposed claims recites “conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus.” The claims do not recite the conditions imposed by the drying apparatus. To the extent that the word “conveying” represents any meaningful limitation whatsoever, *Chen* discloses, in Figure 2, a manufacturing process that would convey the matrix through the drying oven. Thus, addition of “conveying said polymer matrix” does not further distinguish from the teachings of *Chen* in any way.

4. *New recitation: “to form a visco-elastic film having said active uniformly distributed throughout within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying”*

Each and every proposed independent claim recites “to form a visco-elastic film having said active uniformly distributed throughout within about the first 4 minutes by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying.” To the extent that this is deemed a process limitation at all, *Chen* also increases the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying to form a viscoelastic film within about the first 4 minutes. In the words of Dr. Reitman: “Within about 4 minutes after initiation of drying, the film was self-supporting, non-tacky, flexible and viscoelastic, as verified by my team.” Reitman Decl. ¶ 8.

5. *New recitation: “wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100°C or less.”*

Each and every proposed independent claim recites that the polymer matrix temperature is 100° C or less. It is not clear how this recitation would even meaningfully limit the claims. In any event, *Chen* specifically teaches, at page 15, line 28, that the film is “dried under aeration at a temperature between 40 and 100° C.” The polymer matrix temperature of *Chen* would meet the limitation of “100° C or less” because the oven temperature is less than 100° C. Additionally, Examples 4-8 in *Chen* all utilize an oven at 50° C, so the polymer matrix would never reach 100° C. Thus, this temperature range does not distinguish any claim from the teachings of *Chen*.

6. *New recitations: “performing analytical chemical tests”*

Each and every proposed independent claim recites the step of performing analytical chemical tests. To the extent that this post-solution step would be deemed worthy of consideration, it is taught by *Chen*. Applicant argues that *Chen* is deficient because it lacks the newly claimed “analytical chemical tests” for content uniformity, but actually it is the ‘080 Patent that lacks such analytical chemical tests. Not a single analytical chemical test was performed in over 100 examples of the ‘080 Patent to assess uniformity of active. Example M provides a fluorescence test for the amount of a red dye in the film. Red dye is not an active within the scope of the claims. Indeed, the only tests performed to assess uniformity of active in the ‘080 Patent are the physical tests that Applicant now argues (without support in the specification) are inferior to the “analytical chemical tests” of its new claims.

The new argument that the only effective way to determine uniformity of active is by analytical chemical testing is untenable. First, there is no requirement that the prior art even recognize an inherent property, much less test for it. Second, the ‘080 Patent specifically provides that films:

...may be tested for uniformity in the content of components between samples. Any conventional means for examining and testing the film pieces may be employed, such as, for example, visual inspection, use of analytical equipment, and any other suitable means known to those skilled in the art.

‘080 Patent 29:34-39.

Applicant admits that *any conventional means* may be employed for testing uniformity of content. Applicant’s new position that “[v]isual observation and physical measurements such as weight is insufficient to determine the active amount in equally sized dosage units” directly contradicts its own disclosure where these tests are described as alternatives to so-called “chemical tests.” Compare *id.* to Reply p. 67. Similarly, Applicant’s allegation—that “compositional uniformity or uniformity of content is not the same as having a surface that appears free of defects. Importantly, having a glossy surface does not equate to a uniform film...” (see Reply p. 55)—contradicts the specification at col. 31, lines 38-45. The specification states that “[t]he uniform distribution of the components within the film was apparent by examination

by either the naked eye or under slight magnification. By viewing the films it was apparent that they were substantially free of aggregation....”

While Applicant may now dispute the uniformity criteria set forth in the ‘080 Patent, *Chen* not only teaches the same visual inspection method demonstrated in the ‘080 Patent, but also subjects samples of Examples 4-8 to “analytical chemical testing”. See *Chen* Figure 5.

Applicant entirely misses the point when it states: “*Chen’s* Figure 5 (Examples 5-8) clearly shows a lack of compositional uniformity of active”. Reply at p. 77. Applicant’s suggestion that the release profile over time indicates non-uniformity is ridiculous on its face. First, Applicant does not claim a uniform release profile—only a uniform amount of active per unit dosage. Second, there are many reasons by the different drugs may have different release profiles, the most important being different properties of the drugs. Finally, the error bars in Figure 5 cannot be interpreted to show a lack of active uniformity. As explained above in the discussion of the *Lin* Declaration, the fact that *Chen’s* maximum release error bars decrease over time, indicates that the error noted in *Lin* is an artifact of the test method—not a characteristic of the film. In fact, even Dr. *Lin* concedes that the Figure 5 “data indicate that the test method used in the analysis is not reproducible.” See *Lin* Decl. ¶ 22.

In short, adding the post-solution step of performing analytical chemical tests does not further distinguish the claims from *Chen*.

7. *New recitation: “suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval.”*

The preamble of each independent claim recites that the films are suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval. To the extent that this recitation has any meaning, it is—at best—a desired result that is not entitled to patentable weight in a process claim. Moreover, as discussed in great detail in Section II.A regarding the *Lin* Declaration and the first § 112 rejection, to the extent that *Chen* lack sufficient data to allow for FDA approval, the ‘080 Patent is similarly lacking. In addition, Applicant clearly ties the recitation of “suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval” with the idea of obtaining a specific content uniformity and testing for that uniformity. As discussed in detail herein, *Chen* teaches the same

steps as presently claimed, would inherently produce the same desired uniformity, and further provides tests that show content uniformity. That is, in films produced by using the methods of *Chen* “...the active varies by less than 10%.” Reitman Decl. ¶ 7.

8. New recitation: “such that uniformity of content in the amount of *said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by no more than 10%.*”

Each independent claim except claim 318 recites that the amount of active in individual dosage units varies by no more than 10%. Claim 318 includes a similar recitation but specifies 5%. These recitations are desired results that are not entitled to patentable weight. In any event, *Chen* teaches the same manipulative steps for forming a film as presently claimed, and the resulting films would inherently have this desired property.

Furthermore, as confirmed by the Reitman Declaration, the sampling and “analytical chemical testing” of dosage units manufactured in accordance with *Chen* verified that “the amount of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting film, varies by less than 10%.” See Reitman Decl. ¶ 7 and Table 3. With respect to the recitation of active “vary[ing] no more than 5%” in claim 318, the data in the Bogue Declaration fails to support this desired result. That is, even if the Bogue method were commensurate in scope with any of the pending claims—which has not been demonstrated—only 46 of the 73 lots in the Bogue Declaration report active varying by 5% or less. Thus, the Bogue Declaration demonstrates that this desired result is not provided by Applicant’s methods, and therefore this recitation cannot be properly added to the claims or relied upon to support patentability.

9. New recitation: forming “*additional resulting films, such that the uniformity of content of active in said resulting film and said additional resulting films varies no more than 10% from a desired amount.*”

Amended claim 82 and proposed new claim 315 recite that additional films are formed having active that does not vary by more than 10% from a desired amount. Not only is this *another* desired result not entitled to patentable weight, the recitation of variation from a desired

amount is completely unsupported by the '080 Patent. In any event, to the extent that this recitation adds anything to the claims, *Chen* teaches the same manipulative steps for forming a film as presently claimed, and the resulting films would thus inherently have this desired property.

10. *New recitation: "at a temperature of about 60 °C."*

New claim 318 recites that the drying apparatus is at a temperature of about 60 °C. *Chen* teaches drying "under aeration at a temperature between 40-100 °C, which is inclusive of 60 °C. To the extent that *Chen* does not specifically call out 60 °C, a person of ordinary skill in the art could immediately envision this temperature based upon the teaching of *Chen*. In addition, *Chen's* Examples were performed at 50 °C and, as shown in the Reitman Declaration, were uniform. There is no reason to believe that the same process at about 60 °C would not also be uniform. Thus, this recitation does not further distinguish from the teachings of *Chen*.

11. *New recitation: "using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix."*

Proposed new claim 318 recites that the drying uses "air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix." The '080 Patent states that "air velocities are desirably below the yield values of the film, *i.e.*, below any force level that can move the liquids in the film-forming compositions." See '080 Patent, 11:21-23. Moving liquids in the matrix during drying would produce defects in the film. *Chen*, however, produces a film that is glossy and substantially transparent. Contrary to Applicant's argument that "having a glossy surface does not equate to a uniform film, because the bottom side of a film product formed on a substrate will take the surface features of the substrate" (*see* Reply p. 55), *Chen* does not indicate that the film is glossy only on the bottom side, but a film that is glossy. Furthermore, *Chen's* aeration controller (depicted in Figure 2) shows that little, if any, air is impinging on the surface of the film at the beginning of drying (*e.g.*, when it is still a flowable polymer matrix). Thus, air currents that do not exceed the yield value of the matrix do not further distinguish the claimed methods from the methods of *Chen*.

For at least the foregoing reasons, the rejection of claims listed in the section heading as anticipated by, or in the alternative, obvious over *Chen* should be maintained. And the rejection

should be extended to new independent claims 315-318 because—like amended claims 1, 82, and 161—they also fail to present any method recitations that patentably distinguish the claims over the methods of *Chen*.

C. Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Chen*

Applicant has failed to separately argue any of the new dependent claims. Claims 300-311 recite “wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units varies by less than 5%, 2%, 1% or 0.5%.” First, these recitations are desired results and therefore not entitled to patentable weight. *See* Sections V(A) and V(A)5. In any event, *Chen*’s processes include the same manipulative steps as Applicant’s claims, and employ the same materials, and therefore this result is inherent. Claims 312-314 recite “wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.” These claims are anticipated because *Chen* teaches that its wet films are dried in a hot air (*i.e.*, air currents) circulating oven. *See* page 17, line 14. Because *Chen* anticipates, or discloses an obvious variation of, the claimed subject matter as set forth in detail in Table 1, Applicant requests the adoption of this proposed rejection.

D. Proper rejection of claims 2, 3, 6, 7, 19, 33, 35, 41-43, 48-50, 52, 55-58, 60, 61, 85, 86, 98, 112, 114, 120-122, 127-129, 131,134-137, 139, 140, 167, 168, 180, 194, 196, 202-204, 209-211,213, 216-219, 221,222, 245, 248, 263, 266, 281, and 284 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Chen*

The claims listed in the section heading depend from claims 1, 82, and 161. As discussed above, amended claims 1, 82, and 161 are anticipated by, or in the alternative, obvious over *Chen*. Moreover, the limitations recited in these dependent claims are commonly known features and have already been deemed obvious to the Office Action. In any event, it would have been obvious to one of the ordinary skill in the art at the time of filing to incorporate these features into *Chen*’s methods. Therefore, the rejection of these claims as obvious over *Chen* should be maintained.

E. Proper rejection of claims 2, 3, 32, 55, 72-81, 111,134, 151-160, 193, 216, and 233-242 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of *Chen* and *Staab*

The claims listed in the section heading depend from claims 1, 82, and 161. As discussed above, amended claims 1, 82, and 161 are obvious over *Chen* in view of *Staab*. Moreover, the limitations recited in these dependent claims are commonly known features and have already been deemed obvious in the Office Action. In any event, it would have been obvious to one of the ordinary skill in the art at the time of filing to incorporate these features into *Chen's* methods. Therefore, the rejection of these claims as obvious over *Chen* in view of *Staab* should be maintained.

F. Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of *Chen* and *Arter*

As discussed in Section V(B), independent claim 318 should be rejected under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC § 103(a) as obvious over *Chen*. *Arter* (U.S. Patent No. 4,365,423, Exhibit L) also fully describes drying step (c) of claim 318, and does so in detail. *Arter* describes and exemplifies drying wet films in a two zone dryer, as shown in Figures 1-3. In the first zone, the film is rapidly dried while being protected by a shield that creates a quiescent zone above the top surface of the film in which there are no turbulent flow conditions and uniform drying is promoted. *See Arter* 12:10-20. Accordingly, *Arter* teaches “using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix during drying, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent,” as required by step (c) of claim 318.

The first drying zone achieves the major portion of the drying. Thus, a visco-elastic film is formed by applying hot air currents to the bottom side and yet applying substantially no top air flow to maintain uniformity (*see Arter* 13:24-26). As can be seen, *e.g.*, in Figures 2 and 3, hot air flows, or is “applied”, around the bottom side of the conveyor surface. Since the major portion of drying is accomplished in the first zone, the film would be visco-elastic at this point, and the active components locked in place as described in step (c).

Following the first zone, the film is further dried in a second zone to remove residual liquid medium from the film. *See Arter* 13:24-29 and Figures 1-3.

With respect to specific parameters recited in step (c), *Arter* exemplifies films that are dried in less than 3 seconds at 60 °C (Example 1, 15:45-55) and less than 6 seconds at 93°C (Example 2, 17:4-6) in the first drying zone. Thus, *Arter* discloses rapidly forming a visco-elastic film in less than 4.0 minutes “at a temperature of about 60 °C” in Examples 1-2. The films are further dried “to remove residual solvent” in a second step. See *Arter* Examples and Figures 1 and 4. See also, *Arter* 13:24-29, for a further description of (1) a first drying zone to remove a “major portion” of the solvent and (2) a second drying zone to remove “residual liquid medium.”

The result of the drying process of *Arter* is that the films are dried with (a) substantially no top air flow, thus preventing flow migration (*Arter* 13:15-16), and (b) uniform heat transfer conditions to promote uniform drying (*Arter* 13:65-68). In other words, *Arter*'s method prevents intermolecular forces from creating aggregates or conglomerates of components and maintains the compositional uniform distribution of components. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to apply the commercial manufacturing methods of *Arter* to *Chen* in order to further increase the speed and efficiency of manufacture, and to further promote uniform drying.

G. Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of *Chen* and *Strobush*

*Strobush* (US Patent No. 5,881,476, Exhibit M) teaches a method for drying a coating on a substrate. *Strobush* discloses a drying apparatus depicted in Figure 23, wherein the first zone provides hot air currents to the underside of the conveyor and maintains airflow above the film only to the extent required for safe operation. The majority of the drying heat is provided by the backside airfoils in a first zone. *Strobush* 19:36-46.

In particular, *Strobush* teaches that “if desired, topside air bars (34) can be used such that no gas is supplied by the air bars when topside gas is not needed or desired.” (emphasis added). See *Strobush* 11:15-17 and 11:24-27. In other words, it teaches “using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix during drying, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent,” as required by claim 318.



To the extent that the drying “at a temperature of about 60 °C” recited in step (c) of claim 318 is not obvious in view of *Chen*, *Strobush* describes drying temperatures in the range of 60-93.3 °C in the Examples. *See* *Strobush* 21:Tables 7 and Table 9. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine *Chen* with *Strobush* to improve and scale-up efficient commercial manufacturing.

- H. Proper rejection of claims 1-5, 10, 12-15, 21, 24, 25, 32, 44-46, 54, 55, 59, 63-70, 72-75, 78-84, 89, 92-94, 100, 103, 104, 111,123-125, 133, 134, 138, 142-149, 151-154, 157-166, 171,173-176, 182, 185, 186, 193, 205-207, 215, 216, 220, 224-231, 233-236, 239-242, 249-252, 254, 257-260, 267-270, 272, 275-278, 285-288, 290, and 293-299 and proposed new rejection of new independent claims 315-318 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by, or in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Staab*

Applicant neither rebuts the *prima facie* case of inherent anticipation by *Staab* nor clarifies its position. Again, rather than adding manipulative steps to overcome the rejection over *Staab* or presenting evidence that *Staab* does not inherently anticipate the claimed process, Applicant adds a large variety of desired results.

First, Applicant argues—with no evidence—that “absent statements based on testing to determine the actual uniformity of content in the amount of active present in the film, so as to meet FDA approval, *Staab* does not and cannot inherently disclose Patentee's resulting film having the claimed levels of uniformity of content...” Reply, p. 69. Not only is it unreasonable to say that a film must meet FDA approval to show a certain level of uniformity, but also it is well established that a reference need not recognize inherent properties of its films to anticipate the present claims. *See* MPEP §2112(II). Second, Applicant argues that “... *Staab* just states that there is 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride present in each sample weighing 190 mg, however *Staab* does not disclose testing to determine the amount of benzalkonium chloride present in the final film product.” *Id.* Applicant classifies the 19 grams as a “perfect yield” and thus the data as “suspect.” If Applicant is suggesting that *Staab* is not an enabling reference, under MPEP 2121, they have not met their burden of providing facts rebutting the presumption that *Staab* is operable – which has been established by *Staab*'s express statement that their dosage forms are uniform. The fact that *Staab* exhibits a uniformity that is better than Applicant's is not reason enough to doubt that *Staab*'s dosage forms each have 19 grams of active. And, to the extent that

*Staab* lacks information regarding analytical chemical tests, so also does the '080 Patent, since nowhere (including the Examples) in the '080 Patent does Applicant state how much active is in their dosage forms as determined by analytical chemical tests.

Applicant also discusses how *Staab* teaches the benefits of a gas-foamed film, which is “contraindicated in Patentee’s invention.” Reply pp. 80-81. In fact, Applicant specifically states that “the '080 Patent teaches the use of anti-foaming agents to prevent gas bubble formation.” Reply p. 80 (emphasis in original). Yet not one of the pending claims recites the presence of an anti-foaming agent, or the formation of a film with no bubbles.

Applicant argues that *Staab* does not teach “controlled drying.” Reply p. 79. But the Office Action already confirmed that *Staab* teaches the claimed drying methods. Office Action pp. 27-30. The addition of the word “controlled” does not distinguish the claims from *Staab*, at least because *Staab* also teaches controlled drying. For example, *Staab* states that the “drying/cooling tunnel of 126 ft. length is located immediately after the casting area. Heat is applied by underbelt current and overbelt hot air – both are adjustable.” See *Staab* 10:31-34. *Staab* also specifies that the polymer mixture is “passed through a drying oven at a controlled temperature, typically 130°-140°F.” See *Staab* 11:4-6. With respect to forming a visco-elastic film within about 4 minutes, *Staab* teaches forming a viscoelastic film within about 4 minutes by increasing the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying because any drying process would increase viscosity upon initiation of drying. Even though *Staab* discloses drying its films in approximately 20 minutes (See col. 11, line 45), its films would be as viscoelastic as the films of the '080 Patent at 4 minutes, since they are produced by identical or substantially identical processes as claimed in the '080 Patent. With respect to the viscosity range, *Staab* teaches a pourable polymer matrix, which would necessarily have a viscosity of within about 400 to about 100,000 cps (which is a viscosity ranging from thin castor oil to mincemeat). The remainder of the recitations, e.g., regarding active content variation and FDA compliance, are desired results not entitled to patentable weight.

Claim 318 recites “a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60° C and using air currents, which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix,” but this recitation does not distinguish the claims from *Staab*. As noted above, *Staab* teaches that the drying oven is

typically at a temperature of 130°-140°F (which is 54.4°-60.0° C) and that overbelt hot air is adjustable.

For at least the foregoing reasons, the rejection of these claims as anticipated by, or in the alternative, obvious over *Staab* should be maintained. And the rejection should be extended to the new independent claims because—like amended claims 1, 82 and 161—they also fail to present any method recitations that patentably distinguish over the methods of *Staab*.

I. Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Staab*

Applicant has failed to separately argue any of the above new dependent claims. Because *Staab* anticipates each of these claims, or discloses an obvious variation, as set forth in detail below, Applicant requests the adoption of this proposed rejection.

New claims 300-311 recite “wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 5%, 2%, 1%, or 0.5%”. These recitations are desired results, not entitled to patentable weight. *See* Sections V(A)4 and V(A)5. In any event, *Staab*’s processes include the same manipulative steps as Applicant’s process, and would thus inherently produce the same resulting film. *Staab* discloses a film with active material “evenly distributed throughout.” *Staab*, 5:68 – 6:3. Claims 312-314 recite “wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.” These claims are anticipated because *Staab* teaches drying its films in an oven. *Staab* 11:45-46. In other words, *Staab* teaches using air currents/heat as the radiant energy.

J. Proper rejection of claims 8, 9, 76, 77, 87, 88, 155, 156, 169, 170, 237 and 238 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Staab*

The claims listed in the section heading depend from claims 1, 82, and 161. As discussed above, amended claims 1, 82, and 161 are anticipated by, or in the alternative, obvious over *Staab*. Moreover, the limitations recited in these dependent claims are commonly known features and have already been deemed obvious to the Office Action. In any event, it would

have been obvious to one of the ordinary skill in the art at the time of filing to incorporate these features into *Staab's* methods. Therefore, the rejection of these claims as obvious over *Staab* should be maintained.

- K. Proper rejection of claims 82, 89, 90, 161, 171-173, 272, 274, 290, and 292 and proposed new rejection of new independent claim 315-318 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Le Person*

As with *Chen* and *Staab*, Applicant fails to rebut *prima facie* case of inherent anticipation by *Le Person*. Applicant neither adds manipulative steps to their claims to overcome the rejection nor provides evidence that the process of *Le Person* would not inherently produce the same desired results. Instead, Applicant argues that “*Le Person* allows for materials which may have such a low molecular weight that forming a visco-elastic film may not be possible” and “lacks sufficient enabling disclosure to be an effective reference.” Reply p. 70. But the claims do not require a high molecular weight. And again, Applicant has not met its burden of providing facts rebutting the presumption that *Le Person* is operable. See MPEP 2121. Indeed, for all *Le Person* allegedly “lacks,” it still includes a teaching of each and every manipulative drying step recited in the pending claims.

Applicant also argues that *Le Person* “discloses methods that result in a non-uniform product prior to and at 10 minutes.” Reply p. 82. Applicant argues:

*Le Person* even states that “intense moisture removal through the exposed surface of the layer to the radiation, during the first 3 min of drying (*Le Person*, Fig. 7) produces a stress on the polymer skeleton ... and as a result the acrylic polymer becomes more and more dense in the upper part of the layer (exposed surface).” (*Le Person*, p. 261). As a result, this “intense” shrinkage results in displacement of the active phase.

Reply page 83.

But what *Le Person* actually says is that “[t]his intense shrinkage coupled with the polymer compaction causes a displacement of the active phase towards the bottom of the layer.” *Le Person* p. 26, col. 2, last ¶ (emphasis added). Changes in density in the upper and lower part of

the layer and displacement of the active to the bottom of the film would have no effect on dose-to-dose variability.

Again, as with *Staab*, Applicant presents the basically identical conclusory argument that *Le Person* does not teach the claimed drying methods. Reply pp. 81-82. But the Office Action already confirmed that *Le Person* teaches the claimed drying methods. Office Action, pp. 36-39. The addition of the word “controlled” does not distinguish the claims from *Le Person*, at least because *Le Person* teaches “a conventional drying rig where temperature ( $T_{\infty db}$ ), velocity ( $U_{\infty}$ ), and humidity ( $Y_{\infty}$ ), of air are controlled.” See *Le Person*, p. 258, col. 2 and Fig. 1. Additionally, *Le Person* teaches a polymer matrix having a viscosity of from about 400 to about 100,000 cps, at least because this viscosity range encompasses any conceivable polymer solution that is capable of being cast. And *Le Person* teaches forming a viscoelastic film within about 4 minutes by increasing the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying. See *Le Person*, Figure 2, illustrating that, at 4 minutes (or 240 s – approximately  $15\text{ s}^{0.5}$ ), water content is less than 20% by weight in films dried by MIR and SIR and less than about 35% by weight in all dried films<sup>4</sup>. The remainder of the recitations are desired results not entitled to patentable weight as discussed several times above.

Applicant argues a number of limitations for claim 317 that do not appear in the claims, *i.e.*, temperature differential. See Reply p. 82. To the extent that claim 318 recites “a drying apparatus at a temperature of at least 60° C and using air currents, which have forces below the yield value of the polymer matrix,” this recitation does not distinguish the claims from *Le Person*, which teaches drying with an air velocity of 4 m/s and a heated slab at a temperature of 60° C ( $T_c$ ). See *Le Person*, p. 259, Table 2.

For at least the foregoing reasons, the rejection of claims 82, 89-91, 161, 171-173, 272-274 and 290-292 and proposed new rejection of new independent claim 55-61, 89 and 226 as anticipated by, or in the alternative, obvious over *Le Person* should be maintained and/or adopted. And the rejection should be extended to new independent claims 315-318 because—

---

<sup>4</sup> “[E]ach point of a curve corresponds to a separate drying experiment carried out at least twice.” *Le Person* p. 250, col. 2.

like amended claim 82—they also fail to present any method recitations that patentably distinguish the claims over the methods of *Le Person*.

L. Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Le Person*

Applicant has failed separately argue that any of the above new dependent claims would distinguish the claims from *Le Person*. Because *Le Person* anticipates each of these claims, or in alternative, renders these claims obvious as set forth below, Applicant requests the adoption of this proposed rejection.

Claims 300-311 recite “wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 5%, 2%, 1%, or 0.5%.” These recitations are desired results, not entitled to patentable weight. In any event, *Le Person*’s processes include the same manipulative steps as Applicant’s process, and would thus inherently produce the same resulting film. Claims 312-314 recite “wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.” These claims are obvious at least because *Le Person* teaches using different drying modes including convection (*i.e.*, heat), medium and short infra-red. *See* p.258, col. 1, last four lines.

M. Proper rejection of claims 92 and 174 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Le Person*

The claims listed in the section heading depend from claims 1, 82, and 161. As discussed above, amended claims 1, 82, and 161 are anticipated by, or in the alternative, obvious over *Le Person*. Moreover, the limitations recited in these dependent claims are commonly known features and have already been deemed obvious to the Office Action. In any event, it would have been obvious to one of the ordinary skill in the art at the time of filing to incorporate these features into *Le Person*’s methods. Therefore, the rejection of these claims as obvious over *Le Person* should be maintained.

- N. Proper rejection of claims 1, 5, 7-10, 12-14, 23, 63, 64, 82, 84, 86-89, 92, 93, 102, 142, 143, 161, 166, 168-171, 173-175, 184, 224, 225, 249, 254, 267, 272, 285 and 290 and proposed new rejection of new independent claims 315-317 under 35 USC 102(b) as anticipated by, or in the alternative, under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over *Horstmann*

Applicant fails to rebut the *prima facie* case of inherent anticipation by *Horstmann*, or to clarify its position. Again, rather than adding manipulative steps to overcome the rejection over *Horstmann* or presenting evidence that *Horstmann* does not inherently anticipate the claimed process, Applicant instead contends that “*Horstmann* forms a gel, rather than a solid film as in the present invention. Thus the gel rheological properties of *Horstmann* are very different than a solid visco-elastic film having a water content of 10% or less.” Reply p. 71 and 72, the bridging paragraph. But gels are not excluded by the claims.

Applicant then concludes – with no evidence – that “absent statements based on testing for the amount of active present in the film. . . *Horstmann* does not and cannot inherently disclose Patentee's resulting film claiming the specified levels of uniformity in the amount of active.” Reply, p. 72. But this is irrelevant because it is well established that prior art need not recognize its inherent property to render a claim unpatentable. *See* MPEP §2112(II).

Moreover, the Office has already determined that *Horstmann* teaches the claimed method steps. In reply, Applicant bears the burden of identifying which, if any, method step is not in the prior art. Yet Applicant fails to do so by vaguely asserting that it “has added several additional process steps not in the prior art”. Reply p. 72.

For at least the foregoing reasons, this rejection should be maintained. And the rejection should be extended to new independent claims 315-317, because—like amended claims 1, 82, and 161—they also fail to present any method recitations that patentably distinguish the claims over the methods of *Horstmann*.

- O. Proposed rejection of new dependent claims 300-314 under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as obvious over *Horstmann*

Applicant has failed to separately argue how any of the new dependent claims would further distinguish their claims from *Horstmann*. Because *Horstmann* anticipates each of these claims, or in alternative, renders these claims obvious as set forth in detail below, Applicant requests the adoption of this proposed rejection. Claims 300-311 recite “wherein said tests further indicate that the amount of active in said individual dosage units sampled from said resulting film varies by less than 5%, 2%, 1% or 0.5%.” These recitations are desired results, not entitled to patentable weight. However, to the extent that this represents any limitation whatsoever, *Horstmann*’s processes include the same manipulative steps as Applicant’s process, and would thus inherently produce the same resulting film. Claims 312-314 recite “wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.” *Hortsmann* teaches the use of “heat” by drying at 80 °C. *Hortsmann* 5:52-53.

P. Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of *Hortsmann* and *Arter*

To the extent that *Horstmann* does not specifically recite drying the flowable polymer matrix in “a drying apparatus at a temperature of about 60 °C” and “using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix during drying, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent,” *Arter* teaches these recitations as discussed above in Section V.F. A person of ordinary skill in the art would have been motivated to combine the teachings of these two references, to improve and scale-up efficient commercial manufacturing. All of the recited features were known in the prior art and one skilled in the art could have combined them by known methods with no change in their respective functions, and the combination would yield predictable results. MPEP § 2143(A).

Q. Proposed rejection of new independent claim 318 under 35 USC 103(a) as obvious over the combined teachings of *Hortsmann* and *Strobush*

To the extent that *Horstmann* does not specifically recite drying the flowable polymer matrix in “a drying apparatus at a temperature of about 60 °C” and “using air currents, which have forces below a yield value of the polymer matrix during drying, to evaporate at least a portion of said solvent...”, *Strobush* teaches these recitations as discussed above in Section V.G.





LIST OF EXHIBITS

Comparison of Independent Claims..... Exhibit A

Declaration of Maureen Reitman, Sc.D., dated February 28, 2013  
("Reitman Decl.") ..... Exhibit B

Declaration of Jason O. Clevenger, Ph.D. dated April 12, 2013  
("Clevenger Decl.") ..... Exhibit C

<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/uniform>..... Exhibit D

Viscosities of Common Liquids ..... Exhibit E

*Crown Operations International, Ltd. v. Solutia Inc.*, 289 F.3d 1367 (Fed.  
Cir. 2002) ..... Exhibit F

*Crown Operations International, Ltd. v. Solutia Inc.*, 2000 WL 33906466  
(W.D.Wis.)..... Exhibit G

*Bristol Myers Squibb Co. v. Ben Venue Labs, Inc.*, 246 F.3d 1368 (Fed.  
Cir. 2001) ..... Exhibit H

Dow Exhibit showing the viscosity of Methocel E5 at different  
concentrations ..... Exhibit I

Chapter <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units (2011)..... Exhibit J

Chapter <905> Uniformity of Dosage Units (2007)..... Exhibit K

*Arter*, US Patent No. 4,365,423 ..... Exhibit L

*Strobush*, US Patent No. 5,881,476 ..... Exhibit M

Certificate of Service ..... Exhibit N

## Electronic Acknowledgement Receipt

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <b>EFS ID:</b>                              | 15510157  |
| <b>Application Number:</b>                  | 95002170  |
| <b>International Application Number:</b>    |   |
| <b>Confirmation Number:</b>                 | 6418  |
| <b>Title of Invention:</b>                  | POLYETHYLENE-OXIDE BASED FILMS AND DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEMS MADE THEREFROM |
| <b>First Named Inventor/Applicant Name:</b> | 7897080   |
| <b>Customer Number:</b>                     | 23869   |
| <b>Filer:</b>                               | Danielle L. Herritt   |
| <b>Filer Authorized By:</b>                 |   |
| <b>Attorney Docket Number:</b>              | 117744-00023  |
| <b>Receipt Date:</b>                        | 12-APR-2013   |
| <b>Filing Date:</b>                         | 10-SEP-2012   |
| <b>Time Stamp:</b>                          | 21:57:47  |
| <b>Application Type:</b>                    | inter partes reexam   |

### Payment information:

|                        |    |
|------------------------|----|
| Submitted with Payment | no |
|------------------------|----|

### File Listing:

| Document Number | Document Description                               | File Name                        | File Size(Bytes)/<br>Message Digest                               | Multi Part /.zip | Pages (if appl.) |
|-----------------|--|----------------------------------|---|------------------|------------------|
| 1               | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_A_Claim_Comparison_v2.<br>PDF | 101415<br><small>6a3cf31bc7b0706f045026d662fbbf0f67823b88</small> | no               | 9                |

### Warnings:

The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing

**Information:**

|   |  |                                |  |    |   |
|---|--|--------------------------------|--|----|---|
| 2 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_C_Clevenger_Declaration.PDF | 497093                                   | no | 7 |
|   |  |                                | 3befc6ad8991d5e3beadb7f3e4d688832dd2e291 |    |   |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

|   |  |                                  |  |    |   |
|---|--|----------------------------------|--|----|---|
| 3 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_D_Merriam_Webster_uniform.PDF | 259585                                   | no | 5 |
|   |  |                                  | 7df93e3407de0a1b172c7ee906e2a8f6f2d31642 |    |   |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

|   |  |                             |  |    |   |
|---|--|-----------------------------|--|----|---|
| 4 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_E_Common_Viscosities.PDF | 131816                                   | no | 5 |
|   |  |                             | 586a668592041872a069a39cfe9c88d9d4f3f317 |    |   |

**Warnings:**

The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing

**Information:**

|   |  |   |  |    |    |
|---|--|---|--|----|----|
| 5 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_F_Crown_v_Solutia_FedCirc_2002_080.PDF | 65623                                    | no | 11 |
|   |  |   | ac09778279577e40a1862aad4a27233824b4dc32 |    |    |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

|   |  |  |  |    |    |
|---|--|--|--|----|----|
| 6 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_G_Crown_v_Solutia_2000_WL33906466_080.PDF | 169600                                   | no | 16 |
|   |  |  | a2b230ce4080841d0966c410bef1d5194f9a8c2c |    |    |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

|   |  |   |  |    |    |
|---|--|---|--|----|----|
| 7 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_H_BMS_v_BenVenue_FedCir_2001_080.PDF | 61078                                    | no | 10 |
|   |  |   | 8c003e1ab7547b8b2be23dd61aac7cc9807541e6 |    |    |

**Warnings:**

**Information:**

|   |  |  |  |    |    |
|---|--|--|--|----|----|
| 8 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_I_Viscosity_of_Methocel_E5_at_varied_concentrations_080.PDF | 1762536                                  | no | 33 |
|   |  |  | de3109237253997f6b0b8929ab13e00f5e5f85a3 |    |    |

**Warnings:**

The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing

**Information:**

|   |  |                                  |  |    |   |
|---|--|----------------------------------|--|----|---|
| 9 | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party | Ex_J_USP_905_Uniformity_2011.PDF | 144379                                   | no | 4 |
|   |  |                                  | 3111ff63374ffc1ea4176f63b3bd58fb11fa1c57 |    |   |

|  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
|--|---|----------------------------------|---|----|----|
| <b>Warnings:</b>   |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Information:</b>  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| 10   | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party    | Ex_K_USP_905_Uniformity_2007.PDF | 496996<br>fb3e115d20c218bca83b67fdbff984ab4490d27d  | no | 8  |
| <b>Warnings:</b>   |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Information:</b>  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| 11   | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party    | Ex_L_Arter_US_4365423.PDF        | 1402781<br>e7524f416141cd77432881ab2ae65b8b6e473ca7 | no | 15 |
| <b>Warnings:</b>   |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Information:</b>  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| 12   | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party    | Ex_M_Strobush_US_5881476.PDF     | 1841302<br>c2f8d3187243c2b704f4bd3f94d94eb152833d28 | no | 30 |
| <b>Warnings:</b>   |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Information:</b>  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| 13   | Reexam Certificate of Service                         | Ex_N_Certificate_of_Service.PDF  | 6196<br>9f6b20247e031483980e0d221bb747d7fbc d7dfa   | no | 2  |
| <b>Warnings:</b>   |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Information:</b>  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| 14   | Reexam - Affidavit/Decl/Exhibit Filed by 3rd Party    | Ex_B_Reitman_Decl--.PDF          | 593570<br>4988f54efb0c09a7575be0c11eefc3a8d72de4a   | no | 11 |
| <b>Warnings:</b>   |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| The page size in the PDF is too large. The pages should be 8.5 x 11 or A4. If this PDF is submitted, the pages will be resized upon entry into the Image File Wrapper and may affect subsequent processing |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Information:</b>  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| 15   | Third Party Requester Comments after Non-final Action | 117744_00023_Comments-.PDF       | 280572<br>1ea4336aaa187ffcf6210216756cd03896f4ee1b  | no | 54 |
| <b>Warnings:</b>   |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Information:</b>  |   |                                  |   |    |    |
| <b>Total Files Size (in bytes):</b>  |   |                                  | 7814542   |    |    |

**This Acknowledgement Receipt evidences receipt on the noted date by the USPTO of the indicated documents, characterized by the applicant, and including page counts, where applicable. It serves as evidence of receipt similar to a Post Card, as described in MPEP 503.**

**New Applications Under 35 U.S.C. 111**

**If a new application is being filed and the application includes the necessary components for a filing date (see 37 CFR 1.53(b)-(d) and MPEP 506), a Filing Receipt (37 CFR 1.54) will be issued in due course and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the filing date of the application.**

**National Stage of an International Application under 35 U.S.C. 371**

**If a timely submission to enter the national stage of an international application is compliant with the conditions of 35 U.S.C. 371 and other applicable requirements a Form PCT/DO/EO/903 indicating acceptance of the application as a national stage submission under 35 U.S.C. 371 will be issued in addition to the Filing Receipt, in due course.**

**New International Application Filed with the USPTO as a Receiving Office**

**If a new international application is being filed and the international application includes the necessary components for an international filing date (see PCT Article 11 and MPEP 1810), a Notification of the International Application Number and of the International Filing Date (Form PCT/RO/105) will be issued in due course, subject to prescriptions concerning national security, and the date shown on this Acknowledgement Receipt will establish the international filing date of the application.**



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE  
United States Patent and Trademark Office  
Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450  
www.uspto.gov

| APPLICATION NO. | FILING DATE | FIRST NAMED INVENTOR | ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. | CONFIRMATION NO. |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 95/002,170      | 09/10/2012  | 7897080              | 117744-00023        | 6418             |

23869                      7590                      04/11/2013  
Hoffmann & Baron LLP  
6900 Jericho Turnpike  
Syosset, NY 11791

EXAMINER

DIAMOND, ALAN D

| ART UNIT | PAPER NUMBER |
|----------|--------------|
| 3991     |              |

| MAIL DATE  | DELIVERY MODE |
|------------|---------------|
| 04/11/2013 | PAPER         |

**Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.**

The time period for reply, if any, is set in the attached communication.



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Commissioner for Patents  
United States Patent and Trademark Office  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450  
www.uspto.gov

HOFFMAN & BARON, LLP : (For Patent Owner)  
6900 Jericho Turnpike :  
Syosset, New York 11791 :

Danielle L. Herritt :  
McCARTER AND ENGLISH LLP : (For Third Party  
265 Franklin Street : Requester)  
Boston, Massachusetts 022110 :

*In re:* Yang et al. :  
*Inter Partes:* Reexamination Proceeding : **DECISION ON PETITION**  
Control No.: 95/002,170 :  
For: U.S. Patent No.: 7,897,080 :

This is a decision on the petition filed by the Third Party Requester: a petition filed March 22, 2013 entitled "PETITION TO DENY ENTRY OF PATENT OWNER'S SUPPLEMENTAL RESPONSE UNDER 37 CFR §1.182". The decision also addresses Patent Owner's petition filed March 22, 2013 entitled "PETITION TO EXPEDITE UNDER 37 CFR §1.182"

In the petition, Third Party Requester requests that Patentee's March 13, 2013 response to the February 26, 2013 Notice re Defective Paper in Inter Partes Reexamination be denied entry under 37 CFR 1.945 and 1.939(a).

As a procedural matter, the petition is treated as a petition under 37 CFR § 1.181. It is noted that the petition under 37 CFR 1.182 is not proper because the petition address issues that are properly raised under 37 CFR 1.181.

The petition is before the Director of the Central Reexamination Unit.

The petition is **DISMISSED**.



### REVIEW OF RELEVANT FACTS

- U.S. Patent No. 7,897,080 issued on March 1, 2011.
- A Request for *inter partes* reexamination was filed by third party requester on September 10, 2012 and assigned control no. 95/002,170.
- *Inter-Partes* reexamination was ordered on October 22, 2012.
- A Non-Final Office Action was mailed on October 22, 2012.
- David J. Kappos, Director of the United States Patent & Trademark Office issued a memorandum entitled *Emergency Notice of Relief Available to Patent and Trademark Applicant's, Patentees and Trademark Owners Affected by Hurricane Sandy* on November 21, 2012.
- Patent Owner filed the above identified petition on November 26, 2012 requesting that the October 22, 2012 Office Action be reissued.
- A decision granting the October 22, 2013 petition was mailed on November 28, 2012.
- The Non-Final Office Action was re-mailed on November 29, 2012.
- Patent Owner filed a response to the Non-Final Office Action on January 29, 2013.
- A Notice Re Defective Paper in Inter Partes Reexamination was mailed on February 26, 2013.
- Third Party Requester filed Comments to the Office Action and Patent Owner's amendment on February 28, 2013.
- Patent Owner filed a response to the Notice of Defective Paper on March 13, 2013.
- Third Party Requester filed the instant petitions to (1) have Patent Owner's response to the Notice of Defective paper denied entry and to (2) have expedited the answering of the petition on March 22, 2013.

**STATUTES, REGULATIONS, AND PATENT EXAMINING PROCEDURES****M.P.E.P 2666.60 Response by Patent Owner/Third Party to Notice of Defective Paper**

Any submission correcting the defect which provides a discussion of the merits should (A) set forth that discussion separately from the portion of the response that corrects the defect, and (B) clearly identify the additional discussion as going to the merits. The additional discussion going to the merits must, in and of itself, have an entry right, or the entire submission will be returned to the party that submitted it, and one additional opportunity (30-days or one month, whichever is longer) will be provided, to correct the defect without a discussion of the merits. If the portion directed to the merits is not clearly delineated and identified, the entire submission may be returned to the party that submitted it, and one additional opportunity (30-days or one month, whichever is longer) is then given for that party to correct the defect without intermixed discussion of the merits. The examiner may, however, choose to permit entry of such a paper.

**37 CFR 1.945 Response to Office action by patent owner in inter partes reexamination.**

(b) Any supplemental response to the Office action will be entered only where the supplemental response is accompanied by a showing of sufficient cause why the supplemental response should be entered. The showing of sufficient cause must include:

- (1) An explanation of how the requirements of § 1.111(a)(2)(i) are satisfied;
- (2) An explanation of why the supplemental response was not presented together with the original response to the Office action; and
- (3) A compelling reason to enter the supplemental response.

**DECISION**

In the above identified petition, Third Party Requester (Petitioner) asserts that the Patent Owner's corrected response to the Notice of Defective Paper is improper and should be denied entry as required by 37 CFR 1.945(b). In particular, Third Party Requester asserts that in response to the February 26, 2013 Notice Re Defective Paper in in *Inter Partes* Reexamination, Patent Owner's submission was not limited to solely correcting the defect, but rather incorporated new arguments, new data and a new declaration. Third Party Requester points to

MPEP 2666.60 which states that that “any additional discussion on the merits must, in and of itself have an entry right”. Thus, Third Party Requester argues that because the response contains additional arguments and evidence, it should be deemed a supplemental response, and that the supplemental response does not comply with 37 CFR 1.945(b), which requires a showing of sufficient cause as to why the supplemental response should be entered.

A review the record indicates that Office has not issued any communication in response to Patent Owner’s March 13, 2013 response to the Notice Re Defective Paper. Thus, the Office has made no determination as of yet as to whether Patent Owner’s response contains any additional information that need have a separate entry right. Absent any determination or communication by the Office that Patent Owner’s March 13, 2013 response is compliant with Office rules and procedures, the proceeding is not ripe for such a petition.

Accordingly, Third Party Requester’s petition is premature since there is no been decision by the Office as to whether the submission by Patent Owner is in compliance with Office rules and procedures.

In conclusion, the petition by Third Party Requester is **dismissed** as being premature.

### CONCLUSION

1. The petition filed by Patent Owner on March 22, 2012, is **dismissed**.
2. Telephone inquiries related to this decision should be directed to Stephen Stein, Supervisory Patent Reexamination Specialist, at (571) 272-1544 or in his absence to the undersigned at (571) 272-0700.



---

Irem Yucel  
Director, Central Reexamination Unit

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

|  |   |                           |
|--|---|---------------------------|
| In re <i>Inter Partes</i> Reexamination of:  | ) |                           |
|  | ) |                           |
| US Patent No. 7,897,080                      | ) |                           |
|  | ) |                           |
| Issued: March 1, 2011                        | ) | Confirmation No.: 6418    |
|  | ) |                           |
| Named Inventor: Robert K. Yang <i>et al.</i> | ) | Group Art Unit: 3991      |
|  | ) |                           |
| Control No.: 95/002,170                      | ) | Examiner: Alan D. Diamond |
|  | ) |                           |
| Request Filed: September 10, 2012            | ) | M&E Docket: 117744-00023  |
|  | ) |                           |
| Title: POLYETHYLENE OXIDE-BASED              | ) | H&B Docket: 1199-26 RCE/  |
| FILMS AND DRUG DELIVERY                      | ) | CON/ REX                  |
| SYSTEMS MADE THEREFROM                       | ) |                           |
|  | ) |                           |
| Date: March 22, 2013                         | ) |                           |

**Mail Stop Petition**  
 Commissioner for Patents  
 P.O. Box 1450  
 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**PETITION TO EXPEDITE UNDER 37 CFR § 1.182**

Dear Sir or Madam:

Pursuant to 37 CFR 1.182, Petitioner hereby requests that the Office *expedite* the handling of the “PETITION TO DENY ENTRY OF PATENT OWNER’S SUPPLEMENTAL RESPONSE UNDER 37 CFR § 1.182” filed concurrently herewith.

Due to the shortened response periods in *inter partes* reexamination, it is respectfully submitted that expedited handling of the attached Petition is appropriate in order to ensure that all involved parties are apprised of the status of the Supplemental Response in a timely manner. Additionally, a prompt decision would avoid placing unnecessary burden on the Examiner, and thus be beneficial to the Office in the present situation.

Patent No.: 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
117744-00023

In accordance with 37 CFR 1.182, Petitioner submits herewith the surcharge set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(f).

If any additional charges are required with this Petition, Petitioner authorizes the Commissioner to charge any fee deficiency to Deposit Account No. 50-4876, under Reference Number 117744-00023.

Respectfully submitted,  
McCarter & English LLP

Dated: March 22, 2013

By: \_\_\_\_\_/Danielle L. Herritt/

Danielle L. Herritt                      Reg. 43,670  
Direct Dial: 617-449-6513  
e-mail: [dherritt@mccarter.com](mailto:dherritt@mccarter.com)

Jacqueline Wizeman, Ph.D              Reg. 62,307  
Direct Dial: 978-639-2084  
e-mail: [awizeman@mccarter.com](mailto:awizeman@mccarter.com)

Attorneys for Petitioner, BioDelivery Sciences  
International, Inc.

Patent No.: 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
117744-00023

**CERTIFICATE OF FIRST CLASS SERVICE**

It is certified that a copy of this Petition to Expedite, the Petition to Deny Entry of Patent Owner's Supplemental Response (together with the associated Exhibits A-C), and this certificate of first class service have been served, by first class mail, on March 22, 2013, in their entirety on the Patent Owner in accordance with 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.903 and 1.248. The name and address of the party served is:

**HOFFMANN & BARON LLP**  
**(Attn: Daniel A. Scola, Jr.)**  
**6900 JERICHO TURNPIKE**  
**SYOSSET, NY 11791**

By: \_\_\_\_\_/Danielle L. Herritt/

Danielle L. Herritt  
Reg. 43,670

Attorney for Requester,  
BioDelivery Sciences International, Inc.

**McCarter & English, LLP**  
**265 Franklin Street**  
**Boston, MA 02110**

Direct Dial: 617-449-6513  
Email: [dherritt@mccarter.com](mailto:dherritt@mccarter.com)

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

|  |   |                           |
|--|---|---------------------------|
| In re <i>Inter Partes</i> Reexamination of:  | ) |                           |
|  | ) |                           |
| US Patent No. 7,897,080                      | ) |                           |
|  | ) |                           |
| Issued: March 1, 2011                        | ) | Confirmation No.: 6418    |
|  | ) |                           |
| Named Inventor: Robert K. Yang <i>et al.</i> | ) | Group Art Unit: 3991      |
|  | ) |                           |
| Control No.: 95/002,170                      | ) | Examiner: Alan D. Diamond |
|  | ) |                           |
| Request Filed: September 10, 2012            | ) | M&E Docket: 117744-00023  |
|  | ) |                           |
| Title: POLYETHYLENE OXIDE-BASED              | ) | H&B Docket: 1199-26 RCE/  |
| FILMS AND DRUG DELIVERY                      | ) | CON/ REX                  |
| SYSTEMS MADE THEREFROM                       | ) |                           |
|  | ) |                           |
| Date: March 22, 2013                         | ) |                           |

**Mail Stop Petition**  
Commissioner for Patents  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**PETITION TO DENY ENTRY OF PATENT OWNER’S SUPPLEMENTAL  
RESPONSE UNDER 37 CFR § 1.182**

On February 26, 2013, in the *inter partes* reexamination of US Patent No. 7,897,080, the Office issued a Notice re Defective Paper, PTOL-2069. The only defect discussed in the Notice is that Patentee’s January 29, 2013 reply exceeds the maximum page limit under 37 CFR 1.943(b) by 6 pages. In reply, Patentee did not file a “submission directed to solely correcting the defect” as directed by MPEP 2666.60, *i.e.*, reducing the page length of the original reply by either re-drafting to remove passages or by redaction as directed by the Office. On the contrary, Patentee filed a response improperly incorporating new claim amendments, new claims, new arguments, new data, and a new declaration by a new declarant. Third Party Requestor requests that this unauthorized and supplemental response be denied entry as required by 37 CFR 1.945(b) and 37 CFR 1.939(a).

**Statement of Facts:**

1. On January 29, 2013, Patentee filed an amendment and response (the “Reply”) to a first Office action dated November 29, 2012. The Reply included claim amendments, attorney arguments and two supporting declarations: the declaration of Dr. Fuller (“Fuller Declaration”) and the declaration by Dr. Bogue (“Bogue Declaration”). The January 29, 2013 Reply is attached as Exhibit A.
2. On February 26, 2013, the Office mailed a Notice re Defective Paper in *Inter Partes* Reexamination (the “Notice”) because the Reply exceeded the 50-page limit under 37 CFR 1.943 by 6 pages. It was specifically noted that the claims and the Bogue Declaration did not count toward the page limit. The Notice directed Patentee to correct the defect by either re-drafting or redacting the original Reply to meet 37 CFR 1.943.
3. On February 28, 2013, Third Party Requestor (“TPR”) filed its Comments, unaware of the Notice that crossed in the mail.
4. On March 13, 2013, instead of properly replying to the Notice by simply reducing the page length of the original Reply as directed by the Office, Patentee filed a supplemental response (“Supplemental Response”). The Supplemental Response was not accompanied by a showing under 37 CFR 1.945 as to why the Supplemental Response should be entered. The March 13, 2013 Supplemental Response is attached as Exhibit B.



**Issue to be considered:**

*Whether Patentee should benefit from its failure to comply with the page limits imposed by 37 CFR 1.943 by gaining an extension of time to consider the Office Action and an opportunity to file a second, new response thereto—without being required to comply with 37 CFR 1.945(b) (prohibiting a supplemental response without a showing of sufficient cause) and 37 CFR 1.939(a) (prohibiting consideration of an unauthorized paper during an inter partes reexamination proceeding).*

On February 26, 2013, the Office issued a Notice re Defective Paper in *Inter Partes* Reexamination. The only defect discussed in the Notice is that Patentee's original Reply exceeded the maximum page limit under 37 CFR 1.943(b) by 6 pages. The Office also directed the Patentee to correct the defect by redrafting or by redacting to reduce the original Reply to the required 50-page limit. *See* Notice at p. 3. Patentee, however, did not file a "submission directed to solely correcting the defect" as directed by MPEP 2666.60. On the contrary, in comparison to the original defective Reply, Patentee improperly added new amendments, new claims, new attorney argument, new data, and a new declaration. Further, the remainder of the Supplemental Response is substantially revised and altered as compared to the attorney argument submitted with the original Reply. By way of example, the Supplemental Response is substantively different from the original defective Reply in at least the following ways:

1. New Claim Amendments. The Supplemental Response amends, for example, original independent claims 1, 82 and 161 in a way entirely different from that presented in the original Reply. *See* Comparison of Supplemental Response filed March 13, 2013, Exhibit C at pp. 2-3, 12-14, and 22-24.
2. New Independent Claims. The Supplemental Response presents 4 new independent claims not in the original Reply. *See* Exhibit C at pp. 41-48. These claims recite new limitations found neither in any original claim nor

in any amended claim in the original Reply, for example, reciting an oven temperature of 60° C in new claim 318. The Patentee also removes over 300 claims presented in the original Reply. This is not an amendment directly solely to correcting the defect because (i) deleting claims does not to reduce page count, and (ii) the Patentee never argued a single dependent claim in its original Reply.

3. New Description of “The Patented Invention.” The Supplemental Response presents an entirely new description of “The Patented Invention.” *See* Exhibit C at pp. 90-93.
4. New Discussion of “Patentee’s Claims.” The Supplemental Response presents an entirely new a discussion of the claimed subject matter. *See* Exhibit C at pp. 93-103.
5. New Attorney Arguments. The Supplemental Response presents entirely new arguments, for example, regarding TPR’s alleged burden (which is actually Patentee’s burden) to reproduce the method of the *Chen* reference to rebut the Office’s *prima facie* case of inherency and Patentee’s new theory about Figure 5 of *Chen* with extensive “support” from the new Lin Declaration. *See* Exhibit C at pp. 113-114 and 129.
6. New Declarant and Declaration. The Supplemental Response presents an entirely NEW declaration by a different declarant (the “Lin Declaration”). *See* Exhibit B, Lin Declaration. The Lin Declaration is directed to a new line of attorney argument. The Patentee has removed its original Fuller Declaration (*See* Exhibit A, Fuller Declaration). This removal is not directed to reducing page count because the Fuller Declaration (4 pages) is replaced by the much **longer** Lin Declaration (6 pages).
7. New Data and New Arguments in an Expanded Bogue Declaration. The Supplemental Response includes several pages of new data, as well as new calculations and discussions of claims limitations that were not in the

original Bogue Declaration. Indeed, except for the introductory paragraphs and the original Exhibit, the entire Bogue Declaration is either new or substantially revised to include new arguments and new data. See Bogue Declaration in Exhibit B at ¶¶ 4-11 and its new Exhibits A and C.

None of the new claim amendments, new claims, new arguments, new data, and new declaration was present in the original Reply. Further, it appears that the Patentee improperly and substantially revised their arguments in order to address substantive responses made in TPR's Comments filed after the original Reply, but before TPR was aware of the Notice. This creates a further burden on the Office as it would have to study the original Reply and TPR's Comments to the original Reply in order to understand the Supplemental Response.

None of the new claims, new arguments, and new theories found in the Supplemental Response properly falls within the scope of the changes authorized by the Notice. Yet, the Patentee made no effort to indicate that its new Reply is a *bona fide* effort to comply with the Notice. In addition, none of these additions is authorized under 37 CFR 1.945(b) or 37 CFR 1.939(a). Rule 1.945(b) requires that a showing be made to justify an entry right:

§ 1.945 Response to Office Action by Patent Owner in *Inter Partes* Reexamination

...

(b) Any supplemental response to the Office action will be entered only where the supplemental response is accompanied by a showing of sufficient cause why the supplemental response should be entered. The showing of sufficient cause must include:

- (1) An explanation of how the requirements of § 1.111(a)(2)(i) are satisfied;
- (2) An explanation of why the supplemental response was not presented together with the original response to the Office action; and
- (3) A compelling reason to enter the supplemental response.

37 CFR § 1.945(b).

Patentee did not even attempt to make such a showing.

Rule 1.939(a) states that such unauthorized papers will not be considered by the Office.

§ 1.939 Unauthorized Papers in *Inter Partes* Reexamination.

(a) If an unauthorized paper is filed by any party at any time during the *inter partes* reexamination proceeding it will not be considered and may be returned.

...  
37 CFR § 1.939(a)

As the MPEP provides in its section regarding response to Notice of Defective Paper: “[Any] additional discussion of the merits must, in and of itself, have an entry right, or the entire submission will be returned to the party that submitted it...” MPEP 2666.60. In short, the Supplemental Response is an unauthorized paper and the Rules and the direction of the Office require that the paper be denied entry.

The Office may, of course, provide the Patentee one more opportunity to appropriately respond to the Notice, as discussed in MPEP 2666.60. Alternatively, the Office may regard the Supplemental Response as a failure to file a timely and appropriate response and terminate prosecution under 37 CFR 1.957(b). This is also discussed in the first paragraph of MPEP 2666.60. But to take no action and permit entry in this particular case is not only counter to the clear direction of 37 CFR 1.945 and 37 CFR 1.939, but also counter to the requirement of 35 USC 314(c) for special dispatch. Allowing Patentee to effectively take an extension and file a completely new response, without even offering any justification for doing so, is counter to the statute and merely prolongs prosecution. In other words, if Patentee’s action were permitted, every defective response would essentially be a request for extension of time with the unlimited right to enter any new amendments, data, evidence or attorney argument. The statutory requirement for special dispatch and the Patent Rules setting deadlines and limiting supplemental responses would thereby be rendered meaningless.

**Action Requested:**

There is no doubt that Patentee's most recent filing is an unauthorized supplemental submission rather than a proper response to the Notice of Defective Paper, which simply requires Patentee to reduce the length of its original Reply to meet the 50 page limit. The Supplemental Submission is replete with new amendments, new claims, new arguments, new data and a new declarant, but lacks any showing under 37 CFR 1.945(b) why the submission may be entitled to entry. Accordingly, TPR requests that the Supplemental Submission be denied entry as required by 37 CFR 1.945(b) and 37 CFR 1.939(a). Additionally, since the new matter is inextricably intermixed with original matter in the Supplemental Response, and to avoid any further delay and burden on the Office, TPR requests that the Office direct Patentee to file a copy of the original January 29, 2013 Reply with pages redacted to satisfy the 37 CFR 1.943 page limit requirement.

*The petition fee set forth in 37 CFR 1.17(f) is included with this petition. If any additional charges are required with this Petition, Petitioner authorizes the Commissioner to charge any fee deficiency to Deposit Account No. 50-4876, under Reference Number 117744-00023.*

Respectfully submitted,

Dated: March 22, 2013

By:           /Danielle L. Herritt/          

Danielle L. Herritt                      Reg. 43,670

Attorney for Requester,  
BioDelivery Sciences International, Inc.

**McCarter & English, LLP**  
**265 Franklin Street**  
**Boston, MA 02110**

Exhibits A-C

**CERTIFICATE OF FIRST CLASS SERVICE**

It is certified that a copy of this Petition by the Third Party Requester, the associated Exhibits A-C, and this certificate of first class service have been served, by first class mail, on March 22, 2013, in their entirety on the Patent Owner in accordance with 37 C.F.R. §§ 1.903 and 1.248. The name and address of the party served is:

**HOFFMANN & BARON LLP**  
**(Attn: Daniel A. Scola, Jr.)**  
**6900 JERICHO TURNPIKE**  
**SYOSSET, NY 11791**

By: \_\_\_\_\_/Danielle L. Herritt/

Danielle L. Herritt  
Reg. 43,670

Attorney for Requester,  
BioDelivery Sciences International, Inc.

**McCarter & English, LLP**  
**265 Franklin Street**  
**Boston, MA 02110**

Direct Dial: 617-449-6513  
Email: [dherritt@mccarter.com](mailto:dherritt@mccarter.com)

# EXHIBIT A

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

|                               |                    |                     |                        |
|-------------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| Patentee:                     | Yang et al.        | Examiner:           | Diamond, Alan D.       |
| Patent No.:                   | U.S. 7,897,080     | Group Art Unit:     | 3991                   |
| Reexamination<br>Control No.: | 95/002,170         | Confirmation<br>No. | 6418                   |
| Filed:                        | September 10, 2012 | H&B Docket:         | 1199-26<br>RCE/CON/REX |
| Dated:                        | January 29, 2013   | M&E Docket:         | 117744-00023           |

Mail Stop Inter Partes Reexam  
Central Reexamination Unit  
Commissioner for Patents  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

*Certificate of EFS-Web Transmission*  
*I hereby certify that this correspondence is being*  
*transmitted via the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office*  
*electronic filing system (EFS-Web) to the USPTO on*  
*January 29, 2013.*  
*Signed: Michael I. Chakansky /Michael I Chakansky/*

**REPLY BY PATENTEE TO A NON-FINAL  
OFFICE ACTION PURSUANT TO 37 C.F.R. §1.111**

Madame:

In response to an Office Action in the above-identified *Inter Partes* Reexamination, dated November 29, 2012 ("Office Action"), a reply to which is due January 29, 2013, please amend U.S. Patent No. 7,897,080 ("the '080 Patent") in reexamination as set forth hereinbelow. The present amendments are being made in accordance with 37 C.F.R. §1.530(d)-(j). If there are any fees due in connection with this submission, authorization to charge such fees to Deposit Account No. 08-2461 is hereby provided.

Amendment to the Claims begins on page 2 of this paper.

Remarks begin on page 79 of this paper.



Amendment to the Claims

1. (Amended) A process for manufacturing a resulting pharmaceutical film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said [making a ]film having a substantially uniform distribution of a pharmaceutical active[of components], comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a masterbatch pre-mix comprising a solvent and a polymer selected from the group consisting of water-soluble polymers, water-swellaable polymers and combinations thereof;

(b) adding [an]a pharmaceutical active to a pre-determined amount of said masterbatch pre-mix to form a flowable polymer matrix, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(c) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(d) conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent [from said flowable polymer matrix ]to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said pharmaceutical active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first [10 ]4 minutes [or fewer]to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less; [and]

(e) forming [a]the resulting pharmaceutical film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform

distribution of pharmaceutical active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active is maintained;

(f) forming a plurality of individual dosage unit samples of substantially the same size from said resulting pharmaceutical film; and

(g) performing analytical chemical tests for content uniformity on said plurality of individual dosage unit samples from said resulting pharmaceutical film, said tests indicating said substantially uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical active, in that the amount of the pharmaceutical active in the individual dosage unit samples varies by no more than 10%.

2. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said pre-determined amount of master batch pre-mix is controllably fed via a first metering pump and a control valve to a first mixer and a second mixer.

3. (Original) The process of claim 2, wherein said first mixer and said second mixer are arranged in parallel, series or a combination thereof.

4. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

5. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

6. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

7. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

8. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

9. (Original) The process of claim 5, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly(d-esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids,

polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

10. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

11. (Original) The process of claim 10, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

12. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of bioactive active, pharmaceutical actives, drugs, medicaments and combinations thereof.

13. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 6

agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, [anti-tumor drugs, ]anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, [anti-convulsants, ]neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, [anti-asthmatics,] cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

14. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of [cosmetic actives, ]antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, [mouthwash components, flavors, fragrances, ]enzymes, [preservatives, sweetening agents, colorants, spices, ]vitamins and combinations thereof.

15. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a bioactive active.

16. (Cancelled)

17. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.

18. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.

19. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.

20. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 7

consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphine, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.

21. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a protein.
22. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is insulin.
23. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
24. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
25. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
26. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
27. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatic.
28. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea.
29. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
30. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
31. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
32. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.

33. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
34. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
35. (Original) The process of claim 34, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
36. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
37. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
38. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
39. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
40. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
41. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
42. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
43. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
44. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
45. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anesthetic.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 9

46. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
47. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
48. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
49. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is nabilone.
50. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
51. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
52. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
53. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an analgesic.
54. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a hormone.
55. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a decongestant.
56. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a loratadine.
57. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
58. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
59. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough



suppressant and combinations thereof.

60. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
61. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
62. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a hypnotic.
63. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is taste-masked.
64. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
65. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
66. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
67. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
68. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.
69. (Original) The process of claim 65, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.
70. (Original) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a particulate.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 11

71. (Original) The process of claim 1, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said masterbatch premix.

72. (Original) The process of claim 1, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.

73. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

74. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

75. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

76. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

77. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

78. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

79. (Amended) The process of claim 72, further comprising laminating said resulting pharmaceutical film to another film.

80. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said second film layer comprises an active.

81. (Amended) The process of claim 72, wherein said active in said second film layer is different than said active in said resulting pharmaceutical film.

82. (Amended) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said [making a ]film having a substantially uniform distribution of an active[of components], comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and an active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives, drugs, medicaments and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent [from said flowable polymer matrix ]to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first [10 ]4 minutes [or fewer]to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less, wherein content uniformity of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%; [and]

(d) forming [a]the resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;

(e) forming a plurality of individual dosage unit samples of substantially the same size from said resulting film; and

(f) performing analytical chemical tests for content uniformity on said plurality of individual dosage unit samples from said resulting film, said tests indicating said substantially uniform distribution of the active, in that the amount of the active in the individual dosage unit samples varies by no more than 10%.

83. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

84. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

85. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

86. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

87. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

88. (Original) The process of claim 84, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

89. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 15

90. (Original) The process of claim 89, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

91. (Cancelled)

92. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein the active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, [anti-tumor drugs, ]anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, [anti-convulsants, ]neuromuscular

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 16

drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, [anti-asthmatics, ]cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

93. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of [cosmetic actives, ]antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, [mouthwash components, flavors, fragrances, ]enzymes, [preservatives, sweetening agents, colorants, spices, ]vitamins and combinations thereof.

94. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a bioactive active.

95. (Cancelled)

96. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.

97. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.

98. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.

99. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphines, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.

100. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a protein.

101. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is insulin.

102. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.

103. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
104. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
105. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
106. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatics.
107. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea.
108. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
109. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
110. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
111. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
112. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
113. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
114. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.



Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 18

115. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
116. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
117. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
118. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
119. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
120. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
121. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
122. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
123. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
124. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
125. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
126. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
127. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
128. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is nabilone.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 19

129. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
130. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
131. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
132. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an analgesic.
133. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a hormone.
134. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a decongestant.
135. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a loratadine.
136. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
137. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
138. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.
139. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
140. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
141. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a hypnotic.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 20

142. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is taste-masked.
143. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
144. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
145. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
146. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
147. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.
148. (Original) The process of claim 144, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.
149. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a particulate.
150. (Original) The process of claim 82, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.
151. (Original) The process of claim 82, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.
152. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said

resulting film.

153. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting film.

154. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting film.

155. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting film.

156. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting film.

157. (Original) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting film.

158. (Original) The process of claim 151, further comprising laminating said resulting film to another film.

159. (Amended) The process of claim 151, wherein said second film layer comprises an active.

160. (Amended) The process of claim 151, wherein said active in said second film layer is different than said active in said resulting film.

161. (Amended) A process for manufacturing a resulting pharmaceutical film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said [making a ]film capable of being administered to

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 22

a body surface having a substantially uniform distribution of a pharmaceutical active components], comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and a[n] pharmaceutical active, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent [from said flowable polymer matrix ]to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said pharmaceutical active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first [10 ]4 minutes [or fewer]to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming [a]the resulting pharmaceutical film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active is maintained; [and]

(e) [administering said resulting pharmaceutical film to a body surface.]forming a plurality of individual dosage unit samples of substantially the same size from said resulting pharmaceutical film;

(f) performing analytical chemical tests for content uniformity on said plurality of individual dosage unit samples from said resulting pharmaceutical film, said tests indicating said substantially uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical active, in that the amount of the pharmaceutical active in the individual dosage unit samples varies by no more than 10%; and

(g) administering said resulting pharmaceutical film to a body surface.

162. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said body surface is a mucous membrane.

163. (Original) The process of claim 162, wherein said mucous membrane is oral, anal, vaginal or ophthalmological.

164. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said body surface is the surface of a wound.

165. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

166. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

167. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl

cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

168. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

169. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

170. (Original) The process of claim 166, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

171. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

172. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

173. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of bioactive active, pharmaceutical actives, drugs, medicaments and combinations thereof.

174. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion



Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 26

exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, [anti-tumor drugs, ]anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, [anti-convulsants, ]neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, [anti-asthmatics, ]cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

175. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of [cosmetic actives, ]antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, [mouthwash components, flavors, fragrances, ]enzymes, [preservatives, sweetening agents, colorants, spices, ]vitamins and combinations thereof.

176. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a bioactive active.

177. (Cancelled)

178. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.

179. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.

180. (Original) The process of claim 161 wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.

181. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphines, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 27

182. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a protein.
183. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is insulin.
184. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
185. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
186. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
187. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
188. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatics.
189. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea.
190. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
191. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
192. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
193. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
194. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 28

195. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
196. (Original) The process of claim 195, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
197. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
198. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
199. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
200. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
201. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
202. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
203. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
204. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
205. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
206. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
207. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a contraceptive.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 29

208. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
209. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
210. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is nabilone.
211. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
212. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
213. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
214. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an analgesic.
215. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a hormone.
216. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a decongestant.
217. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a loratadine.
218. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
219. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
220. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.

221. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
222. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
223. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a hypnotic.
224. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is taste-masked.
225. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
226. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
227. (Original) The process of claim 226, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
228. (Original) The process of 226, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
229. (Original) The process of claim 226, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.
230. (Original) The process of claim 226, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.
231. (Original) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a particulate.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 31

232. (Original) The process of claim 161, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.

233. (Original) The process of claim 161, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.

234. (Amended) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

235. (Amended) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

236. (Amended) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

237. (Amended) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

238. (Amended) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

239. (Amended) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

240. (Amended) The process of claim 233, further comprising laminating said resulting pharmaceutical film to another film.

241. (Original) The process of claim 233, wherein said second film comprises an active.

242. (Amended) The process of claim 233, wherein said active in said second film is different than said active in said resulting pharmaceutical film.

243. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an anti-nauseant.

244. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is an erectile dysfunction therapy.

245. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a vasoconstrictor.

246. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a stimulant.

247. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is a migraine treatment.

248. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said active is granisetron hydrochloride.

249. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active to an individual through the buccal cavity of said individual.

250. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active through gingival application to an[of said] individual.

251. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active through sublingual application to an[of said] individual.

252. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active to an individual through a mucosal membrane of said individual.

253. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active to an individual by administration within the body of the individual during surgery.

254. (Amended) The process of claim 1, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film has a variation of the amount of the pharmaceutical active [content ]of less than [10%]5% per [film unit] individual dosage unit.

255. (Cancelled)

256. (Amended) The method of claim 1, wherein said pharmaceutical resulting film contains less than about 6% by weight solvent.

257. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said at least one edible polymer, said active, and said at least one polar solvent are each ingestible materials.

258. (Amended) The method of claim 1, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film is orally administrable.

259. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said active is in the form of a particle.

260. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said matrix comprises a dispersion.

261. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an anti-nauseant.

262. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is an erectile dysfunction therapy.



263. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a vasoconstrictor.
264. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a stimulant.
265. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is a migraine treatment.
266. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said active is granisetron hydrochloride.
267. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through the buccal cavity of said individual.
268. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through gingival application to an[of said] individual.
269. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active through sublingual application to an[of said] individual.
270. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual through a mucosal membrane of said individual.
271. (Original) The process of claim 82, wherein said resulting film provides administration of said active to an individual by administration within the body of the individual during surgery.
272. (Amended) The process of claim 82, wherein in step (c) the active varies less than 5% and in step (f) said resulting film has a variation of the amount of active [content ]of less than 5%[10%] per [film unit] individual dosage unit.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 35

273. (Cancelled)

274. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said resulting film contains less than about 6% by weight solvent.

275. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said at least one edible polymer, said active, and said at least one polar solvent are each ingestible materials.

276. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said resulting film is orally administrable.

277. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said active is in the form of a particle.

278. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said matrix comprises a dispersion.

279. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an anti-nauseant.

280. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is an erectile dysfunction therapy.

281. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a vasoconstrictor.

282. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a stimulant.

283. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is a migraine treatment.

284. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said active is granisetron hydrochloride.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 36

285. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active to an individual through the buccal cavity of said individual.
286. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active through gingival application to an[of said] individual.
287. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active through sublingual application to an[of said] individual.
288. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active to an individual through a mucosal membrane of said individual.
289. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film provides administration of said active to an individual by administration within the body of the individual during surgery.
290. (Amended) The process of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film has a variation of in the amount of pharmaceutical active [content] of less than [10%]5% per [film unit] individual dosage unit.
291. (Cancelled)
292. (Amended) The method of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film contains less than about 6% by weight solvent.
293. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said at least one edible polymer, said active,

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 37

and said at least one polar solvent are each ingestible materials.

294. (Amended) The method of claim 161, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film is orally administrable.

295. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said active is in the form of a particle.

296. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said matrix comprises a dispersion.

297. (Original) The method of claim 1, wherein said matrix comprises an emulsion, a colloid or a suspension.

298. (Original) The method of claim 82, wherein said matrix comprises an emulsion, a colloid or a suspension.

299. (Original) The method of claim 161, wherein said matrix comprises an emulsion, a colloid or a suspension.

300. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein the forming of a plurality of individual dosage unit samples and performing analytical chemical tests comprises:

..... (a) cutting the substantially equally sized individual dosage unit samples from the different locations of the resulting film;

..... (b) dissolving at least a portion of said dosage unit samples; and

..... (c) testing for the amount of the pharmaceutical active present in each dosage unit sample.

301. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

302. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 5%.

303. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 2%.

304. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 1%.

305. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 0.5%.

306. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein the forming of a plurality of individual dosage unit samples and performing analytical chemical tests comprises:

..... (a) cutting the substantially equally sized individual dosage unit samples from the different locations of the resulting film;

..... (b) dissolving at least a portion of said dosage unit samples; and

..... (c) testing for the amount of the active present in each dosage unit sample.

307. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

308. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein the amount of the active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 5%.

309. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein the amount of the active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 2%.

310. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein the amount of the active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 1%.

311. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein the amount of the active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 0.5%.

312. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein the forming of a plurality of individual dosage unit samples and performing analytical chemical tests comprises:

\_\_\_\_\_ (a) \_\_\_\_\_ cutting the substantially equally sized individual dosage unit samples from the different locations of the resulting film;

\_\_\_\_\_ (b) \_\_\_\_\_ dissolving at least a portion of said dosage unit samples; and

\_\_\_\_\_ (c) \_\_\_\_\_ testing for the amount of the pharmaceutical active present in each dosage unit sample.

313. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein regulatory approval is provided by the U.S. Food and Drug Administration.

314. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 5%.

315. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 2%.

316. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 1%.

317. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein the amount of the pharmaceutical active in of individual dosage units has a variance of less than 0.5%.

318. (New) The process of claim 1, wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.

319. (New) The process of claim 82, wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.

320. (New) The process of claim 161, wherein said evaporating is conducted by applying radiant energy selected from the group consisting of hot air currents, heat, infrared radiation, radio frequency radiation and combinations thereof.

321. (New) A process for manufacturing a resulting pharmaceutical film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said film having a substantially uniform distribution of an active, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a masterbatch pre-mix comprising a solvent and a polymer selected from the group consisting of water-soluble polymers, water-swellaable polymers and combinations thereof;

(b) adding an active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives, drugs, medicaments and combinations thereof, to a pre-determined amount of said masterbatch pre-mix to form a flowable polymer matrix, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 41

(c) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(d) conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 minutes to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(e) forming the resulting pharmaceutical film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;

(f) forming a plurality of individual dosage units of substantially the same size from said resulting pharmaceutical film; and

(g) performing analytical chemical tests for content uniformity on said plurality of individual dosage units from said resulting pharmaceutical film, said tests indicating said substantially uniform distribution of the active, in that the amount of the active in individual dosage units varies by no more than 10%.

322. (New) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said film capable of being administered to a body surface having a substantially uniform distribution of an active, comprising the steps of:



(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and an active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives, drugs, medicaments and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 minutes to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming the resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained;

(e) forming a plurality of individual dosage units of substantially the same size from said resulting film;

(f) performing analytical chemical tests for content uniformity on said plurality of individual dosage units from said resulting film, said tests indicating said substantially uniform distribution of the active, in that the amount of the active in individual dosage units varies by no more than 10%; and

(g) administering said resulting film to a body surface.

323. (New) A process for manufacturing a resulting pharmaceutical film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said film having a substantially uniform distribution of a desired amount of an active in individual doses of the resulting pharmaceutical film, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and a pharmaceutical active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives, drugs, medicaments and combinations thereof;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said pharmaceutical active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming the resulting pharmaceutical film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting pharmaceutical film has a water content of 10% or less and said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active is maintained, such that uniformity of content in the amount of the active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units, sampled from different locations of said resulting pharmaceutical film, varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active;  
and

(e) performing analytical chemical tests for content uniformity of said pharmaceutical active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said sampled resulting pharmaceutical film, said tests indicating that uniformity of content in the amount of the active varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active.

324. (New) A process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said film having a substantially uniform distribution of an active, comprising the steps of:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a polymer selected from the group consisting of a water-soluble polymer, a water swellable polymer and combinations thereof, a solvent and an active selected from the group consisting of bioactive actives, pharmaceutical actives, drugs, medicaments and combinations thereof, said matrix having a substantially uniform distribution of said active;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix, said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps;

(c) conveying said flowable polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said flowable polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 minutes to maintain said substantially uniform distribution of said active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less, wherein content uniformity of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said visco-elastic film is such that the amount of the active varies by no more than 10%;

(d) forming the resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said substantially uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained; and

(e) forming a plurality of individual dosage unit samples of substantially the same size from said resulting film, wherein the amount of the active in the individual dosage unit samples varies by no more than 10%.

325. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

326. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

327. (New) The process of claim 326, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

328. (New) The process of claim 326, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 46

acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters),  
polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids,  
polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates),  
and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

329. (New) The process of claim 326, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer  
selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum,  
acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and  
combinations thereof.

330. (New) The process of claim 326, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer  
selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose  
acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates,  
phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol  
copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer,  
poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic  
acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters),  
polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids,  
polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates),  
sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch,  
gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

331. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said solvent is selected from the group  
consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

332. (New) The process of claim 331, wherein said solvent is selected from the group  
consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

333. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein the active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesihetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

334. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, enzymes, vitamins and

combinations thereof.

335. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a bioactive active.
336. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.
337. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.
338. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.
339. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphine, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.
340. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a protein.
341. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is insulin.
342. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
343. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
344. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
345. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
346. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatic.

347. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea.
348. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
349. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
350. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
351. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
352. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
353. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
354. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
355. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
356. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
357. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
358. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
359. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.



360. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
361. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
362. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
363. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
364. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
365. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
366. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
367. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an analgesic.
368. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a hormone.
369. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a decongestant.
370. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a loratadine.
371. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
372. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
373. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is selected from the group

consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.

374. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.

375. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.

376. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a hypnotic.

377. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.

378. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is nabilone.

379. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.

380. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.

381. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.

382. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an analgesic.

383. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a hormone.

384. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a decongestant.

385. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is loratadine.

386. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 52

387. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
388. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.
389. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
390. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
391. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a hypnotic.
392. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is taste-masked.
393. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
394. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
395. (New) The process of claim 394, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
396. (New) The process of claim 394, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
397. (New) The process of claim 394, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.

398. (New) The process of claim 394, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.

399. (New) The process of claim 321, wherein said active is a particulate.

400. (New) The process of claim 321, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.

401. (New) The process of claim 321, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.

402. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

403. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

404. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

405. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

406. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

407. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 54

resulting pharmaceutical film.

408. (New) The process of claim 401, further comprising laminating said resulting pharmaceutical film to another film.

409. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said second film layer comprises an active,

410. (New) The process of claim 401, wherein said active in said second film layer is different than said active in said resulting pharmaceutical film.

411. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

412. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

413. (New) The process of claim 412, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

414. (New) The process of claim 412, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer

selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\delta$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

415. (New) The process of claim 412, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

416. (New) The process of claim 412, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\delta$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

417. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

418. (New) The process of claim 417, wherein said solvent is selected from the group

consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

419. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein the active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 57

420. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, enzymes, vitamins and combinations thereof.
421. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a bioactive active.
422. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.
423. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.
424. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.
425. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphine, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.
426. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a protein.
427. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is insulin.
428. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
429. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
430. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
431. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.



432. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatics.
433. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea.
434. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
435. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
436. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
437. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
438. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
439. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
440. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
441. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
442. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
443. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
444. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 59

- 445. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
- 446. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
- 447. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
- 448. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
- 449. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
- 450. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
- 451. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
- 452. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
- 453. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
- 454. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is nabilone.
- 455. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
- 456. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
- 457. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
- 458. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an analgesic.

459. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a hormone.
460. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a decongestant.
461. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a loratadine.
462. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
463. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
464. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.
465. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
466. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
467. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a hypnotic.
468. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is taste-masked.
469. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
470. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 61

471. (New) The process of claim 470, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.

472. (New) The process of claim 470, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.

473. (New) The process of claim 470, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.

474. (New) The process of claim 470, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.

475. (New) The process of claim 322, wherein said active is a particulate.

476. (New) The process of claim 322, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.

477. (New) The process of claim 322, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.

478. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting film.

479. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting film.

480. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting film.

481. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting film.

482. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting film.

483. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting film.

484. (New) The process of claim 477, further comprising laminating said resulting film to another film.

485. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said second film layer comprises an active.

486. (New) The process of claim 477, wherein said active in said second film layer is different than said active in said resulting film.

487. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

488. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

489. (New) The process of claim 488, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

490. (New) The process of claim 488, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

491. (New) The process of claim 488, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

492. (New) The process of claim 488, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids,

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 64

polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

493. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

494. (New) The process of claim 493, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

495. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein the active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements, dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 65

agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

496. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, enzymes, vitamins and combinations thereof.

497. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a bioactive active.

498. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.

499. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.

500. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.

501. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphines, yohimbine hydrochlorides, alprostadil and combinations thereof.

502. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a protein.

503. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is insulin.



Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 66

504. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
505. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
506. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
507. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
508. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatics.
509. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea.
510. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
511. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
512. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
513. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.
514. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
515. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
516. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.

- 517. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
- 518. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
- 519. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
- 520. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
- 521. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
- 522. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
- 523. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
- 524. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
- 525. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
- 526. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anesthetic.
- 527. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
- 528. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
- 529. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
- 530. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is nabilone.

531. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
532. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
533. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
534. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an analgesic.
535. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a hormone.
536. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a decongestant.
537. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a loratadine.
538. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is dextromethorphan.
539. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is chlorpheniramine maleate.
540. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of an analgesic, an anti-inflammatory, an antihistamine, a decongestant, a cough suppressant and combinations thereof.
541. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is an appetite stimulant.
542. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a gastrointestinal agent.
543. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a hypnotic.

544. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is taste-masked.
545. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
546. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
547. (New) The process of claim 546, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
548. (New) The process of claim 546, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.
549. (New) The process of claim 546, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.
550. (New) The process of claim 546, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.
551. (New) The process of claim 323, wherein said active is a particulate.
552. (New) The process of claim 323, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.
553. (New) The process of claim 323, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 70

554. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

555. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

556. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

557. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

558. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

559. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting pharmaceutical film.

560. (New) The process of claim 553, further comprising laminating said resulting pharmaceutical film to another film.

561. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said second film layer comprises an active.

562. (New) The process of claim 553, wherein said active in said second film layer is different than said active in said resulting pharmaceutical film.

563. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said water-soluble polymer comprises polyethylene oxide.

564. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said polymer comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of cellulose, a cellulose derivative, pullulan, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, polyethylene glycol, carboxyvinyl copolymers, hydroxypropylmethyl cellulose, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, carboxymethyl cellulose, sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, polyacrylic acid, methylmethacrylate copolymer, carboxyvinyl copolymers, starch, gelatin, and combinations thereof, alone or in combination with polyethylene oxide.

565. (New) The process of claim 564, wherein said polymer further comprises a water insoluble polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone and combinations thereof.

566. (New) The process of claim 564, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), and mixtures and copolymers thereof.

567. (New) The process of claim 564, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

568. (New) The process of claim 564, wherein said polymer further comprises a polymer selected from the group consisting of ethylcellulose, hydroxypropyl ethyl cellulose, cellulose acetate phthalate, hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose phthalate, polyvinylacetatephthalates, phthalated gelatin, crosslinked gelatin, poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polycaprolactone, methylmethacrylate copolymer, polyacrylic acid polymer, poly(glycolic acid) (PGA), poly(lactic acid) (PLA), poly(lactic acid)/poly(glycolic acid)/polyethyleneglycol copolymers, polydioxanones, polyoxalates, poly( $\alpha$ -esters), polyanhydrides, polyacetates, polycaprolactones, poly(orthoesters), polyamino acids, polyaminocarbonates, polyurethanes, polycarbonates, polyamides, poly(alkyl cyanoacrylates), sodium alginate, xanthan gum, tragacanth gum, guar gum, acacia gum, arabic gum, starch, gelatin, carageenan, locust bean gum, dextran, gellan gum and combinations thereof.

569. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of water, polar organic solvent, and combinations thereof.

570. (New) The process of claim 569, wherein said solvent is selected from the group consisting of ethanol, isopropanol, acetone, and combinations thereof.

571. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein the active is selected from the group consisting of ace-inhibitors, anti-anginal drugs, anti-arrhythmias, anti-asthmatics, anti-cholesterolemics, analgesics, anesthetics, anti-convulsants, anti-depressants, anti-diabetic agents, anti-diarrhea preparations, antidotes, anti-histamines, anti-hypertensive drugs, anti-inflammatory agents, anti-lipid agents, anti-manics, anti-nauseants, anti-stroke agents, anti-thyroid preparations, anti-tumor drugs, anti-viral agents, acne drugs, alkaloids, amino acid preparations, anti-tussives, anti-uricemic drugs, anti-viral drugs, anabolic preparations, systemic and non-systemic anti-infective agents, anti-neoplastics, anti-parkinsonian agents, anti-rheumatic agents, appetite stimulants, blood modifiers, bone metabolism regulators, cardiovascular agents, central nervous system stimulates, cholinesterase inhibitors, contraceptives, decongestants, dietary supplements,

dopamine receptor agonists, endometriosis management agents, enzymes, erectile dysfunction therapies, fertility agents, gastrointestinal agents, homeopathic remedies, hormones, hypercalcemia and hypocalcemia management agents, immunomodulators, immunosuppressives, migraine preparations, motion sickness treatments, muscle relaxants, obesity management agents, osteoporosis preparations, oxytocics, parasympatholytics, parasympathomimetics, prostaglandins, psychotherapeutic agents, respiratory agents, sedatives, smoking cessation aids, sympatholytics, tremor preparations, urinary tract agents, vasodilators, laxatives, antacids, ion exchange resins, anti-pyretics, appetite suppressants, expectorants, anti-anxiety agents, anti-ulcer agents, anti-inflammatory substances, coronary dilators, cerebral dilators, peripheral vasodilators, psycho-tropics, stimulants, anti-hypertensive drugs, vasoconstrictors, migraine treatments, antibiotics, tranquilizers, anti-psychotics, anti-coagulants, anti-thrombotic drugs, hypnotics, anti-emetics, anti-nauseants, neuromuscular drugs, hyper- and hypo-glycemic agents, thyroid and anti-thyroid preparations, diuretics, anti-spasmodics, uterine relaxants, anti-obesity drugs, erythropoietic drugs, cough suppressants, mucolytics, DNA and genetic modifying drugs, and combinations thereof.

572. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of antigens, allergens, spores, microorganisms, seeds, enzymes, vitamins and combinations thereof.

573. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a bioactive active.

574. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an opiate or opiate-derivative.

575. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-emetic.

576. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an amino acid preparation.



577. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is selected from the group consisting of sildenafil, tadalafil, vardenafil, apomorphine, yohimbine hydrochloride, alprostadil and combinations thereof.
578. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a protein.
579. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is insulin.
580. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-diabetic.
581. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an antihistamine.
582. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-tussive.
583. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a non-steroidal anti-inflammatory.
584. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-asthmatic.
585. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-diarrhea.
586. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an alkaloid.
587. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-psychotic.
588. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-spasmodic.
589. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a biological response modifier.

590. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-obesity drug.
591. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist.
592. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said H<sub>2</sub>-antagonist is selected from the group consisting of cimetidine, ranitidine hydrochloride, famotidine, nizatidine, ebrotidine, mifentidine, roxatidine, pisatidine, aceroxatidine and combinations thereof.
593. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a smoking cessation aid.
594. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-parkinsonian agent.
595. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-depressant.
596. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-migraine.
597. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-Alzheimer's agents.
598. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a dopamine receptor agonist.
599. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a cerebral dilator.
600. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a psychotherapeutic agent.
601. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an antibiotic.
602. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anesthetic.

603. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a contraceptive.
604. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-thrombotic drug.
605. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is diphenhydramine.
606. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is nabilone.
607. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is albuterol sulfate.
608. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is an anti-tumor drug.
609. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a glycoprotein.
610. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is taste-masked.
611. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is taste-masked using a flavor.
612. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is coated with a controlled release composition.
613. (New) The process of claim 612, wherein said controlled release composition provides an immediate release.
614. (New) The process of claim 612, wherein said controlled release composition provides a delayed release.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 77

615. (New) The process of claim 612, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sustained release.

616. (New) The process of claim 612, wherein said controlled release composition provides a sequential release.

617. (New) The process of claim 324, wherein said active is a particulate.

618. (New) The process of claim 324, further comprising adding a degassing agent to said flowable polymer matrix.

619. (New) The process of claim 324, further comprising a step of providing a second film layer.

620. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said second film layer is coated onto said resulting film.

621. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said second film layer is spread onto said resulting film.

622. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said second film layer is cast onto said resulting film.

623. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said second film layer is extruded onto said resulting film.

624. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said second film layer is sprayed onto said resulting film.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 78

625. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said second film layer is laminated onto said resulting film.

626. (New) The process of claim 619, further comprising laminating said resulting film to another film.

627. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said second film layer comprises an active.

628. (New) The process of claim 619, wherein said active in said second film layer is different than said active in said resulting film.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 79

## REMARKS

### I. Description of the Patent and the Applicant's Reply

The above-identified U.S. Patent No. 7,897,080 (" '080 Patent") is presently under reexamination. Claims 1-299 were issued in the '080 Patent. Claims 1-299, subject to reexamination, were rejected in the Office Action. Claims 16, 95 and 177, have been canceled herein as they are identical to claims 32, 111 and 193, respectively. See Office Action, p. 7. Claims 91, 255, 273 and 291 have also been canceled. Claims 300 through 628 are new.

While the Examiner's rejection of the claims is respectfully traversed, claims 1, 82 and 161 of the '080 Patent have been amended in an effort to expedite prosecution of the present reexamination. Claims 1, 82 and 161 are hereby amended in accordance with 37 C.F.R. §1.530(d) (2) and (f). In accordance with 35 U.S.C. § 314(a), the amendments to claims 1, 82 and 161, new independent claims 321-324, and new dependent claims 300-320 and claims 325-628, do not enlarge the scope of the claims of the '080 Patent. Explanation of the support for these claims appears below. Entry of this amendment and reconsideration is respectfully requested.

### II. Status of Claims and Support for Claim Changes Pursuant to 37 C.F.R. §1.530(e)

The status of the claims as of the date of this amendment is as follows: Claims 1-299 were issued in the '080 Patent and are subject to reexamination. Claims 1-299, subject to reexamination, were rejected in the Office Action. Claims 300 through 628 are new and are subject to examination. Please cancel claims 16, 95 and 177, as they are identical to claims 32, 111 and 193, respectively. See Office Action, p. 7. Please cancel claims 91, 255, 273 and 291.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 80

In compliance with 37 C.F.R. § 1.530(j), the amendments to claims 1, 82 and 161 do not enlarge their scope or the scope of the original claims or introduce new matter, nor do the amendments adding new claims 300 through 628 enlarge the scope of the original claims or introduce new matter.

Support for the amendments to claims 1, 82 and 161 and new claims 300 through 628 may be found throughout the '080 Patent, including, the Abstract, Specification, Figures and Claims, for example, at col. 28, l. 66 through col. 29, l. 6; col. 29, ll. 20-35; col. 32, ll. 34-39; col. 2, ll. 27-46; col. 15, ll. 28-40 and the Abstract; quoted in detail below; and col. 2, l. 57, col. 3, ll. 5-60 ("the manufacture of a pharmaceutical film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval"); col. 19, l. 30 through col. 21, l. 30 (actives including pharmaceutical actives); col. 6, ll. 49-52 ("These films provide a non-self-aggregating uniform heterogeneity of the components within them by utilizing a selected casting or deposition method and a controlled drying process."); Figures 6, 7, 8, 35 and 36 and col. 14, ll. 20-25 ("drying" and "drying apparatus"); col. 13, ll. 36-37 ("After mechanical mixing, the film may be placed on a conveyor"); col. 29, ll. 11-13 ("As the film is conveyed through the manufacturing process, for example on a conveyor belt apparatus"); col. 10, ll. 47-48 ("The film . . . is finally formed on the substrate"); col. 26, l. 33 through col. 27, l. 10 ("the coating is then deposited onto the substrate"); col. 44, ll. 9-13 ("the controlled drying process of the present invention allows for uniform drying to occur, whereby evaporative cooling and thermal mixing contribute to the rapid formation of viscoelastic film and the 'locking-in' of uniformity of content throughout the film"); col. 58, claim 28 ("wherein the visco-elastic film is formed within about 4 minutes"); col. 4, l. 8; col. 6, ll. 46-52; col. 13, ll. 36-43; col. 26, ll. 9-27; col. 28, ll. 24-58; col. 29, ll. 8-10; col. 18, ll. 53-58; col. 29, l. 63 through col. 30, l. 2; support for new claims may also be found throughout the '337 Patent, including, the Figures and Claims, for example at col. 19, ll. 10-25, col. 19, l. 30 through col. 22, l. 28, col. 25, ll. 53-65, col. 28, ll. 53-58, col. 18, ll. 54-59, col. 22, ll. 24-28; Figures 6-8 and 35.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 81

"Temperatures that approach 100° C. will generally cause degradation of proteins as well as nucleic acids. For example some glycoproteins will degrade if exposed to a temperature of 70° C. for thirty minutes. Proteins from bovine extract are also known to degrade at such low temperatures. DNA also begins to denature at this temperature.

"Applicants have discovered, however, that the films of the present invention may be exposed to high temperatures during the drying process without concern for degradation, loss of activity or excessive evaporation due to the inventive process for film preparation and forming. In particular, the films may be exposed to temperatures that would typically lead to degradation, denaturization, or inactivity of the active component, without causing such problems. According to the present invention, the manner of drying may be controlled to prevent deleterious levels of heat from reaching the active component."

'080 Patent, col. 12, ll. 20-36.

"The polymer plays an important role in affecting the viscosity of the film. Viscosity is one property of a liquid that controls the stability of the active in an emulsion, a colloid or a suspension. Generally the viscosity of the matrix will vary from about 400 cps to about 100,000 cps, preferably from about 800 cps to about 60,000 cps, and most preferably from about 1,000 cps to about 40,000 cps. Desirably, the viscosity of the film-forming matrix will rapidly increase upon initiation of the drying process."

'080 Patent, col. 16, l. 62 through col. 17, l. 3 (emphasis supplied).

"It may be desirable to test the films of the present invention for chemical and physical uniformity during the film manufacturing process. In particular, samples of the film may be removed and tested for uniformity in film components between various samples. Film thickness and overall appearance may also be checked for uniformity. Uniform films are desired, particularly for films containing pharmaceutical active components for safety and efficacy reasons."

'080 Patent, col. 28, l. 66 through col. 29, l. 6 (emphasis supplied).

"The cut film then may be sampled by removing small pieces from each of the opposed ends of the portion(s), without disrupting the middle of the portion(s). . . . After the end pieces, or sampling sections, are removed from the film portion(s), they may be tested for uniformity in the content of components between samples."



'080 Patent, col. 29, ll. 20 through 35 (emphasis supplied).

"An alternative method of determining the uniformity of the active is to cut the film into individual doses. The individual doses may then be dissolved and tested for the amount of active in films of particular size. This demonstrates that films of substantially similar size cut from different locations on the same film contain substantially the same amount of active."

'080 Patent, col. 32, ll. 36-41 (emphasis supplied).

"The formation of agglomerates randomly distributes the film components and any active present as well. When large dosages are involved, a small change in the dimensions of the film would lead to a large difference in the amount of active per film. If such films were to include low dosages of active, it is possible that portions of the film may be substantially devoid of any active. Since sheets of film are usually cut into unit doses, certain doses may therefore be devoid of or contain an insufficient amount of active for the recommended treatment. Failure to achieve a high degree of accuracy with respect to the amount of active ingredient in the cut film can be harmful to the patient. For this reason, dosage forms formed by processes such as Fuchs, would not likely meet the stringent standards of governmental or regulatory agencies, such as the U.S. Federal Drug Administration ("FDA"), relating to the variation of active in dosage forms. Currently, as required by various world regulatory authorities, dosage forms may not vary more than 10% in the amount of active present. When applied to dosage units based on films, this virtually mandates that uniformity in the film be present."

'080 Patent, col. 2, ll. 27-46 (emphasis supplied).

"Consideration of the above discussed parameters, such as but not limited to rheology properties, viscosity, mixing method, casting method and drying method, also impact material selection for the different components of the present invention. Furthermore, such consideration with proper material selection provides the compositions of the present invention, including a pharmaceutical and/or cosmetic dosage form or film product having no more than a 10% variance of a pharmaceutical and/or cosmetic active per unit area. In other words, the uniformity of the present invention is determined by the presence of no more than a 10% by weight of pharmaceutical and/or cosmetic variance throughout the

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 83

matrix. Desirably, the variance is less than 5% by weight, less than 2% by weight, less than 1% by weight, or less than 0.5% by weight. "

'080 Patent, col. 15, ll. 28-43 (emphasis supplied).

### III. Declarations Submitted With This Reply

Along with this Reply, the Patentee is submitting the Declarations of Dr. B. Arlie Bogue (Exhibit A) and Dr. Gerald Fuller (Exhibit B) both under 37 C.F.R. §1.132. The Declarations provide no legal arguments, but rather provides technical opinions and factual statements, and thus should not count toward the page limit of 37 C.F.R. §1.943.

### IV. Background of the '080 Patent

The '080 Patent is a continuation of U.S. application Ser. No. 10/856,176, filed May 28, 2004 now U.S. Pat. No. 7,666,337 (" '337 Patent"), which claims the benefit of U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/473,902, filed May 28, 2003 and is a continuation-in-part of U.S. application Ser. No. 10/768,809, filed Jan. 30, 2004 now U.S. Pat. No. 7,357,891 (" '891 Patent"), which claims benefit to U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/443,741 filed Jan. 30, 2003 and is a continuation-in-part of:

(a) PCT/US02/32575 filed Oct. 11, 2002, which claims priority to: (1) U.S. application Ser. No. 10/074,272, filed Feb. 14, 2002 which claims benefit to U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/328,868, filed Oct. 12, 2001 and (2) U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/386,937, filed Jun. 7, 2002;

(b) PCT/US02/32594, filed Oct. 11, 2002, which claims priority to: (1) U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/414,276, filed Sep. 27, 2002, (2) U.S. application Ser. No. 10/074,272, filed Feb. 14, 2002, which claims benefit to U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/328,868, filed Oct. 12, 2001 and (3) U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/386,937, filed Jun. 7, 2002; and

(c) PCT/US02/32542, filed Oct. 11, 2002, which claims priority to: (1) U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/371,940, filed Apr. 11, 2002, (2) U.S. application Ser. No. 10/074,272, filed Feb. 14, 2002, which claims benefit to U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/328,868, filed Oct. 12, 2001 and (3) U.S. Provisional Application No. 60/386,937, filed Jun. 7, 2002.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 84

The '080 Patent has not been and is not currently involved in litigation.

The '891 Patent is involved in a U.S. litigation wherein Patentee has alleged that the Third Party Requester, BioDelivery Sciences International, Inc. ("BDSI") has infringed its '891 Patent. The litigation is Civil Action No. 10-cv-5695 in the U.S. District Court in the District of New Jersey. In the litigation, Patentee also alleged that the Third Party Requester infringed two other of Patentee's patents, U.S. 7,425,292 (" '292 Patent") and U.S. 7,824,588 (" '588 Patent").

Third Party Requester requested reexamination of the '891 Patent (90/012,098), the '292 Patent (90/012,097) and the '588 Patent (95/001,753) as well. Both the '292 and the '891 Patent successfully exited reexamination. The Examiner on January 23, 2013 issued a Right of Appeal Notice ("RAN") for the '588 Patent reexamination. Finally, Third Party Requester requested reexamination of the '080 Patent and another of Patentee's related patents U.S. Pat. No. 7,666,337 (Control No. 95/002,171), reexamination was ordered, an Office Action issued and Patentee is preparing a response thereto.

'080 Patent Office Action Statements

In connection with the Order Granting Request for Inter Partes Reexamination of the '080 Patent, Control No. 95/002,170 ("Order Granting IPR Request '080 Patent"), noted above, certain comments were made by the Examiner with respect to Claim 25 of the '337 Patent. The statements were made when the Examiner addressed Third Party Requester's request to find that claim 82 of the '080 Patent should be rejected under 35 U.S.C. § 101 double patenting over claim 25 of the '337 Patent. Patentee supports the Examiner's finding that the Third Party Requester had failed to demonstrate a reasonable likelihood of success, in that respect, with at least one claim of the '080 Patent. However, Patentee respectfully disagrees with the Examiner's statements interpreting "uniform" and "substantially uniform" therein. In particular, Patentee disagrees that "the active is uniformly distributed (i.e. no variance of active)" in the matrix. Certainly a uniform distribution does not require a state of "no variance". See pages 21 and 22 of the Order Granting IPR Request '080 Patent:

The concept of "no variance" of anything has little practical value in the real physical world and in the '337 Patent, where the phrase does not appear. The '337 Patent makes no claim to some form of absolute 100% uniformity, it discloses, *inter alia*, uniformity of active and substantial uniformity of active both with no more than 10% variance. As used in the '337 Patent, while a "uniform distribution of active" has little variance in active, and in particular, less variance in active than a "substantially uniform distribution of active", Patentee does not claim its processes involve obtaining absolute uniformity of composition or content uniformity of no variance. The variance in uniformity may be very small but that is not the same as saying that a uniform distribution has no variance in the distribution. As the Examiner can appreciate, manufacturing processes never result in "no variance" in the quantitative compositional makeup of products made therefrom. In short, "uniform" and "substantially uniform" are indeed different, but "uniform" from a practical standpoint, must of necessity allow for some variance, albeit less than "substantially uniform".

#### V. The Patented Invention

The present invention is directed to a novel and non-obvious method of manufacturing an ingestible therapeutic active delivery system and uses thereof. The patented invention, as explicitly claimed, covers a process for manufacturing a resulting film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval said film having a substantially uniform distribution of a pharmaceutical active components, wherein substantially uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical active is indicated through analytical chemical tests for active content of substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from the resulting film varies by no more than 10%. Hence the commercially manufactured '337 Patent film is both a commercially viable product as well as a product which can and does meet, for example, FDA regulations, including assaying requirements.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 86

This should be compared to the laboratory produced films described in the prior art relied on by the Examiner. In the cited prior art, terms such as uniformity, substantial uniformity, homogeneity, are all accepted without real support. They cannot be relied upon. What is missing is the support for the statements, that is, having had the amount of active tested by analytical chemical testing, including assaying. Patentee uses the '337 Patent invention to manufacture commercially acceptable pharmaceutical products for which Patentee must establish the content uniformity of active in its products by such analytical chemical testing as required by regulatory agencies, such as the FDA. Dr. Bogue's Declaration describes such testing on Patentee's products produced in accordance with the invention and the results which are consistent with the '337 Patent's claims for active content of substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from the resulting film varies by no more than 10%. Bogue Declaration, ¶¶ 5-13.

Patentee's instant claims recited additional detail about its processes for manufacturing a resulting pharmaceutical film suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval. Some of the details include: forming a flowable polymer matrix; said matrix having a uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active; casting said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps and conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said pharmaceutical active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active within said visco-elastic film, wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less; forming the resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active is maintained, wherein said resulting film is suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval; sampling the resulting film at different locations of the resulting film in

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 87

order to perform the analytical chemical tests for content uniformity of said pharmaceutical active and thus establish for commercialization and regulatory purposes the substantially uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical active throughout the film product at a desired/required degree of uniformity, i.e., vary by more than 10%.

Of particular relevance to the Office Action, the patented invention relates to film products and film-containing products, wherein controlling the viscosity of the polymer matrix and controlling the drying process, among other things, ensures that the active components maintain their uniform distribution throughout the film product so that the desired uniformity is found in the resulting product as indicated and/or verified by testing, such as the steps of cutting samples from the resulting film product, dissolving at least portions of the samples and then testing each sample for the actual amount of actives present using analytical equipment.

As used throughout the '080 Patent, the resulting visco-elastic product is defined as a product that has maintained the desired uniformity of content of the active after being subjected to a coating/deposition step (i.e., casting) and drying. For example, the '080 Patent, at col. 8, lines 64-66, discloses that the stability is important "in the wet film stage until sufficient drying has occurred to lock-in the particles and matrix into a sufficiently solid form such that uniformity is maintained." The '080 Patent, at col. 13, lines 53-54 clearly discloses that: "The resulting dried film 1 is a visco-elastic solid, as depicted in Section C. The components desirably are locked into a uniform distribution throughout the film."

Thus, as defined in the application as filed and present in the issued claims, a visco-elastic solid is one that has been controllably dried to lock its components into a substantially uniform distribution throughout the film while avoiding problems associated with conventional drying methods. By providing a visco-elastic film product having this compositional uniformity, the user can be assured that the product includes the proper amount of components, such as an active contained therein. Thus, a visco-elastic product is one in which the active contained

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 88

therein is present in an amount that is substantially uniform in the visco-elastic product. Further, when the process is used to make large-scale film products, such as large rolls of film from which smaller films are cut, the user can feel confident that no matter where the large roll of film is cut, the resulting pieces (e.g., unit dosages) will have a substantially uniform composition. The need for providing a process for obtaining the desired uniformity of content of the desired amount of active in the resulting product is critically important, particularly for regulated products, such as pharmaceuticals.

Prior to the present invention, it was known to prepare film products. However, in many cases the end product was assumed to be homogeneous, either because the initial components were blended together or because after the blending step the physically observable properties of the resulting film product, for example, its appearance or weight, were satisfactory. However, these physical properties do not indicate that the amount of the active in individual dosage units varies by no more than 10%. The only way to actually test for the amount of the active present in individual dosage unit samples, is to use analytical chemical testing and actually test for the presence of the desired amount of active.

Importantly, the process of forming a proper film product does not end at the mixing stage. Patentee has discovered that the various steps post-mixing also play an important role in the resulting product composition. For example, one key step in the formation of a film product is the drying step, particularly when heat and/or radiation is used to dry the film. Patentee has discovered that controlled drying methods may be used to prepare a compositionally uniform film product. Controlled drying includes methods that do not include, for example, the formation of bubbles, or uncontrolled air currents that may cause movement of particles within the visco-elastic film forming matrix.

It is important to understand that compositional uniformity or uniformity of content is not the same as uniform thickness, nor is it the same as having a surface that appears free of defects.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 89

Importantly, having a glossy surface does not equate to a uniform film, since the bottom side of a film product formed on a substrate will take the surface features of the substrate. If the substrate is smooth, the resulting bottom surface will also be smooth and possibly glossy. A product that has a surface that appears free of defects may have experienced significant non-uniformity below the surface, for example due to agglomeration of components, movement due to the Soret effect, etc. It is important to note that just because the surface of a resulting product looks glossy or free of defects does not inherently mean that the actives within the film product are uniform so as to satisfy regulatory requirements and/or deliver the desired amount to the patient. See Fuller Declaration, ¶ 11-13.

The '080 Patent discloses in a section entitled "Testing Films for Uniformity" (col. 28, l. 65 through col. 29, l. 53) that "[i]t may be desirable to test the films of the present invention for chemical and physical uniformity during the film manufacturing process". '080 Patent, col. 28, l. 66 through col. 29, l. 1. In particular:

"It may be desirable to test the films of the present invention for chemical and physical uniformity during the film manufacturing process. In particular, samples of the film may be removed and tested for uniformity in film components between various samples. Film thickness and over all appearance may also be checked for uniformity. Uniform films are desired, particularly for films containing pharmaceutical active components for safety and efficacy reasons."

'080 Patent, col. 28, l. 66 through col. 29, l. 6 (emphasis supplied). Thus disclosed are two general types of testing, one for physical uniformity, and one for chemical uniformity. The disclosure goes on to provide different ways to test for each.

"After the end pieces, or sampling sections, are removed from the film portion(s), they may be tested for uniformity in the content of components between samples. Any conventional means for examining and testing the film pieces may be employed, such as, for example, visual inspection, use of analytical equipment, and any other suitable means known to those skilled in the art. If the testing results show non-uniformity between film samples, the manufacturing process



Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 90

may be altered. This can save time and expense because the process may be altered prior to completing an entire manufacturing run. For example, the drying conditions, mixing conditions, compositional components and/or film viscosity may be changed. Altering the drying conditions may involve changing the temperature, drying time, moisture level, and dryer positioning, among others."

'080 Patent, col. 29, ll. 33-38 (emphasis supplied).

In this way the '080 Patent provides multiple tests for non-uniformity, which are extremely useful in the commercial manufacture of films. For example, manufacturing runs of films which appear to exhibit "non-uniformity" may be adjusted early in the run with less waste of materials, thus saving time and expense associated with the possibility of a non-uniform film. Physical tests, such as observational tests, are insufficient to determine the degree of uniformity. However, especially in the case of individual doses of actives, for example, pharmaceutical actives, the actual uniformity of content in the amount of active is essential and must be quantified through analytical chemical testing. For example, testing to determine the appropriate degree of content uniformity of the resulting film for commercial scale and regulatory compliance may involve sampling substantially equal sized individual dosage units of the resulting film, dissolving at least a portion of the sampled resulting film, and testing for the amount of active present in the sampled resulting film. Thus, the '080 Patent discloses that uniformity of the active is demonstrated through testing.

"An alternative method of determining the uniformity of the active is to cut the film into individual doses. The individual doses may then be dissolved and tested for the amount of active in films of particular size. This demonstrates that films of substantially similar size cut from different locations on the same film contain substantially the same amount of active."

'080 Patent, col. 32, ll. 36-41 (emphasis supplied).

In this respect the Examiner, in his Scope of Claims section has mistakenly included physical uniformity type tests, used to quickly suggest non-uniformity, with chemical uniformity

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 91

type tests involving analytic equipment, that is, the actual testing of the uniformity of content for the amount of active. In the Scope of Claims section of the Office Action (pp. 3-7), the Examiner refers to two different portions of the '080 Patent's "EXAMPLES" section as follows:

"An alternative means for evaluating uniformity is to cut the films into individual doses and measure the weight of the doses (col. 31, line 46 through col. 32, line 45). The '080 patent notes that "films of substantially similar size cut from different locations of the same film contain substantially the same amount of active." (col. 32, lines 37-39)."

Office Action, p. 7.

Unfortunately the two sentences are not related to each other, other than that both deal with examples and with cutting the film into dosage forms. The first is from a physical test, the second, relating to actives, is from an analytical chemical test for uniformity of content of active.

First is the physical test which refers to uniformity in mass.

"Uniformity was also measured by first cutting the film into individual dosage forms. Twenty-five dosage forms of substantially identical size were cut from the film of inventive composition (E) above from random locations throughout the film. Then eight of these dosage forms were randomly selected and additively weighed. The additive weights of eight randomly selected dosage forms, are as shown in Table 2 below:

[Table omitted.]

"The individual dosages were consistently 0.04 gm, which shows that the distribution of the components within the film was consistent and uniform. This is based on the simple principal that each component has a unique density. Therefore, when the components of different densities are combined in a uniform manner in a film, as in the present invention, individual dosages forms from the same film of substantially equal dimensions, will contain the same mass."

'080 Patent, col. 31, l. 46 through col. 32, l. 34 (emphasis supplied).

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 92

In accordance with this test, if the masses are unequal that would be an indication of mass non-uniformity.

Immediately after the above quoted disclosure, the '080 Patent discloses essentially that to demonstrate uniformity of content for active, the amount of active in each substantially similarly sized sample must be determined.

"An alternative method of determining the uniformity of the active is to cut the film into individual doses. The individual doses may then be dissolved and tested for the amount of active in films of particular size. This demonstrates that films of substantially similar size cut from different locations on the same film contain substantially the same amount of active."

'080 Patent, col. 32, ll. 35-40 (emphasis supplied).

The Examiner also relies on the paragraph at '080 Patent, col. 31, ll. 38-45 for support that physical type tests, in this case observational tests, are sufficient to establish uniformity of content of active.

"The uniform distribution of the components within the film was apparent by examination by either the naked eye or under slight magnification. By viewing the films it was apparent that they were substantially free of aggregation, i.e. the carrier and the actives remained substantially in place and did not move substantially from one portion of the film to another. Therefore, there was substantially no disparity among the amount of active found in any portion of the film."

'080 Patent, col. 31, ll. 38-45

However, it is one thing to have films which appear to be substantially free of aggregation and rely on that to say there is substantially no disparity among the amount of active in any portion of the film, and it is a totally different thing to demonstrate by testing for the active that its

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 93

distribution among film samples of the same size establishes a uniformity of content within a desired range.

This paragraph, again, from the '080 Patent's section on "EXAMPLES", sets the stage for disclosing both the physical and chemical type tests referred to above at '080 Patent, col. 31, l. 46 through col. 32, l. 40, which follows this paragraph (see citation). Moreover, this paragraph itself follows the manufacture of the film of Examples A-I and starts with what would be a expected quick and inexpensive procedure of right after making the film taking a look at it, to see if it appears non-uniform. That is, look at the film and see if it looks like everything is uniform and, if it does, then test the film to make sure it is. Such an observational test is at a macro level and does not indicate the degree of uniformity. What followed next were the two other tests discussed above.

Importantly, the first test obviously a physical type test needed to rely on assumptions to reach its conclusion of substantially no disparity among the amount of active found in any portion of the film. Namely, by "viewing the films it was apparent that they were substantially free of aggregation . . . . Therefore, there was substantially no disparity among the amount of active found in any portion of the film." Based on physical observations a conclusion was drawn. The second, another physical test, concluded "individual dosages forms from the same film of substantially equal dimensions will contain the same mass;" again, referring to mass not uniformity of content of active. Again, no simple declarative statement, that the amount of active in each sample was substantially the same. [If we modify the independent claim to include test for the active, we should refer to that here.]

It was only the third test, the chemical type test that could directly establish that "films of substantially similar size cut from different locations on the same film contain substantially the same amount of active". This is to be expected as only the chemical based tests could provide the necessary assurance for the statement that substantially the same amount of active was

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 94

present in each dose. Thus, it is wrong to rely on physical tests in prior art disclosures to "establish" that the prior art films actually possessed the uniformity of active required by the '080 Patent as determined by actual analytical chemical testing for the active. In fact, such physical tests would not result in the type of quantitative assay which would yield the percent (%) variance as recited in the claims.

The resulting product of the present invention is a useful, active-containing, visco-elastic film product that has a substantially uniform distribution of active components after formation, such that uniformity of content of the resulting film varies no more than 10% with respect to the desired amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film. Importantly, in accordance with the invention the patented processes can be used in the manufacture of commercial products.

#### VI. Arriving at the Invention

The inventors of the '337 Patent are the first to not only identify the problems associated with manufacturing commercially and pharmaceutically viable active containing film dosage forms, but also to solve those problems. Although many prior publications discussed the use of film as a dosage form for drugs, none of the publications identified nor solved the problems and complications associated with their manufacture. These early publications focused on the compositional and qualitative aspects of the films only and merely treated the manufacturing, if mentioned at all, as being simple, such as exposing the cast wet film to a conventional hot air circulating oven. However, especially in a commercial manufacturing setting, drying an active-containing cast wet film (even if the wet film is homogenous), in a conventional hot air circulating oven does not necessarily produce a film that is commercially viable, or deliver a film with the prescribed degree of uniformity of content in said setting. The '337 Patent does. See Bogue Declaration, ¶¶ 5-13.

A. Recognition of the Problem

The inventors have discovered that it is not commercially viable to manufacture therapeutic-active-containing films using conventional drying methods. Even when a wet film matrix is properly formed so as to have a uniform distribution of active within it, there are numerous factors which can destroy that uniformity of content during later processing such as casting and drying. The present specification describes many of these problems, which include (i) self-aggregation and agglomeration of active; (ii) skinning of the surface (a barrier through which remaining solvent must penetrate) before the thickness of the film is sufficiently dried, resulting in ripping and re-forming of the surface; (iii) forming of ripples on the surface; (iv) formation of air bubbles, which result in voids or air spaces within the film product; (v) maintaining the active in a substantially stable and uniformly dispersed state; or (vi) movement of active particles due to uncontrolled air currents during drying. See, for example, col. 3, l. 33 through col. 4, l. 6, the '080 Patent.

B. Solving the Problem

The inventors not only were the first to identify all the problems described above, but the first to solve them. Failure to solve one or more of these problems results in a film product that lacks the desired degree of uniformity of content of active per unit dose of film and therefore when equal dosage sizes are cut from the bulk film product, the desired amount of active per dosage lacks the desired and/or required degree of uniformity of content of active. The inventive methods and processes of the '080 Patent maintain the desired uniformity of content of active by, *inter alia*, controlling polymer matrix viscosity and controlling the drying processes so as to avoid the aforementioned problems. Thereby forming a visco-elastic film that locks-in the substantially uniform distribution of active(s) during the drying steps. As described in the specification and claims, the present invention substantially maintains the uniformity of active

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 96

from the formation of the initial matrix through the final drying process, such that the pharmaceutical active varies by no more than 10%.

The Examiner has cited several references, which will be discussed in further detail below. For ease of understanding, the Patentee will briefly discuss the primary cited references herein. During the discussion, it is important to keep in mind that statements from these sources regarding uniformity of content of components, especially actives, are not based on analytical chemical testing for the amount of active present in equally sized samples, but are assumptions.

The below discussion is supported by the Bogue Declaration and the Fuller Declaration.

#### VIII. The Claim Rejections.

The Examiner's rejection of the claims begins on page 7 of the Office Action.

##### A. Claims 1-299 were improperly rejected.

Claims 1-299 were rejected as allegedly anticipated under 35 U.S.C. §102(b), or, in the alternative under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a), as obvious over, each of the following references: Chen (WO 00/42992) ("Chen"), Staab (U.S. 5,393,528) ("Staab"), Le Person (*Chemical Engineering and Processing*, Vol. 37, pp. 257-263 (1998)) ("Le Person") and Horstmann (U.S. 5,629,003) ("Horstmann") or some combination thereof as set forth in the Office Action. These rejections relied on the Examiner's findings that material claim elements of the '080 Patent's only independent claims in reexamination, Claims 1, 82 and 161, were inherent in the cited references. Two limitations were of paramount importance, namely the limitations of "uniform distribution of components" and of "locking-in or substantially preventing migration of" active component.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 97

Patentee maintains that the foregoing claim limitations are sufficient in themselves to establish patentability. Nevertheless, independent claims 1, 82 and 161, as amended, and all the new independent claims, claims 321-324, are not explicitly, implicitly or inherently disclosed or suggested in the cited prior art. In particular, the prior art of record does not disclose, forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and a pharmaceutical active, said matrix having a uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active, casting said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps and conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said pharmaceutical active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less, forming the resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active is maintained, wherein said resulting film is suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval, sampling the resulting film at different locations of the resulting film, in order to perform the analytical chemical tests for content uniformity of said pharmaceutical active, and thus establish for commercialization and regulatory purposes the substantially uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical active throughout the film product, and/or where the required degree of uniformity is such that the amount of active does not vary by more than 10%.

The Examiner basically relies on the Declaration of Edward D. Cohen, Ph.D. under 37 C.F.R. § 1.132, dated September 6, 2012 ("Cohen Declaration") for his assumption that it would be difficult for a person of ordinary skill in the thin film art not to obtain a film that has uniform content of active. Office Action, pp. 14 and 43. However, Dr. Cohen's assumption is dead wrong on its face or does not apply to the '080 Patent. Importantly, Dr. Cohen does not discuss



the degree of uniformity of content. He refers generally to "substantial uniformity of content of active" and "uniform content of active" per unit dosage. Cohen Declaration, ¶¶ 8-10. Dr. Cohen's statement about uniform content of active, without providing the degree of uniformity of content cannot be applied to the '080 Patent's invention. Especially now that the '080 Patent expressly claims a degree of uniformity of content, namely, that uniformity of content of the resulting film varies no more than 10% with respect to the desired amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film.

Moreover, the Declaration of Dr. Fuller on the other hand provides, at paragraphs 6-10, a basis and opinion for a conclusion much different from that provided by Dr. Cohen.

"6. It is my opinion that the film process as described by Chen at commercial scale would not inherently result in a film having a uniform distribution of active in the film. In particular, it is also my opinion that the film process of Chen would not inherently result in a film having a uniformity of content of active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from Chen's resultant film, where the active in the dosage units varies no more than 10%.

"7. The process described by Chen does not describe how to dry in a manner that would avoid redistribution and inhomogeneity of a dissolved solute or suspended actives due to well-known thermodiffusive effects. The effects, also referred to as the Soret effect, can drive inhomogeneities during the drying of a previously homogeneous mixture. In other words, even if a solution containing a solute or suspended actives is spatially homogeneous in that constituent, the act of drying the solution to create a solid film can cause redistribution of the solute or suspended actives through the creation of temperature variations. This is the result of temperature gradients within the polymer film matrix causing the solute or suspended actives in the film to migrate and accumulate in different locations even if the solute or suspended actives were initially uniformly distributed. The Soret effect, which was described in 1800's, is a classical phenomenon, and is well-known to the chemical process industry. (see Appendix II)

"8. Dr. Cohen's assumption that Chen's process will lead to films that are spatially homogeneous in composition is flawed because it does not recognize

that thermodiffusive effects can result in spatial redistribution of constituents even if they were initially homogeneous prior to the application of heating during the process of film formation. Because Chen does not describe the film drying process, it cannot be assumed that any resulting temperature gradients within the polymer film matrix during the drying process will not lead to thermodiffusion and spatial inhomogeneity.

"9. Chen does not discuss the development of viscoelasticity in the film during the drying process. Chen discloses the use of hydrocolloids and it is well-established that these materials can increase viscosity but will not necessarily enhance viscoelasticity. It is well known that viscosity is only one property within the general description of viscoelasticity. Even though these materials, such as Carbopol®, can lead to shear thinning materials, they are often inelastic and purely viscous. Chen does not recognize the mechanism of viscoelasticity of a film undergoing drying needs to be effectuated to retain the spatial uniformity of the constituents of that film. The development of viscoelasticity has the ability of arresting processes such as the Soret effect that can induce inhomogeneities. The Monosol process that creates a viscoelastic film within the first four (4) minutes of drying has the important benefit of locking in a spatially homogeneous distribution of components by inhibiting the effects of thermodiffusion to obtain active uniformity that does not vary more than 10% in the amount of active present in substantially equal sized individual dosage units.

"10. Dr. Cohen is incorrect in his assumption that simply increasing the viscosity of a hydrocolloid material through film drying will retain spatial uniformity of the constituents of a film. In the absence of conditions which rapidly build viscoelasticity, components can diffuse spatially in a viscous media in response to thermodiffusive effects. The development of a rapid viscoelastic network formation is able to spatially constrain the diffusion of components and inhibit thermodiffusivity and retain spatial uniformity to the desired degree."

Moreover, as set forth in the Bogue Declaration, ¶¶ 10-14, 730 samples of individual dosage units, ten each from 73 separate manufacturing lots of resulting films produced in accordance with Patentee's invention, were tested for active content. The results were that the active content of each individual dosage unit remained well within the control limits of 90% to 110%.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 100

"It can be seen from Appendix A that the active content of each individual dosage unit remains well within the control limits of 90% to 110%. The target or desired amount is 8.00 mg of active per individual dosage unit. The range of analytical chemical testing results among those 730 individual dosage units was 93.50% (7.48 mg) to 105.80% (8.47 mg) of the target or desired amount of active. This uniformity of content level is consistent with that described in the '337 Patent."

Bogue Declaration, ¶ 12.

As noted, the FDA requires that the amount of active vary from dose to dose by no more than a prescribed percentage from the desired amount of active, essentially prescribing a degree of content uniformity of active which must be met. Dr. Cohen provides no support for any prescribed degree of uniformity, and certainly not for the prescribed degree of uniformity of content explicitly recited by Patentee's claims under examination to meet commercial and/or regulatory requirements, or the degree of uniformity present in resulting films manufactured in accordance with Patentee's invention, as clearly demonstrated by the Bogue Declaration.

As held by the Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit ("Federal Circuit") inherency requires much more than probabilities, possibilities, or for that matter assumptions, such as, that by starting with so-called "uniform" mix of materials, stirring them, then casting and drying inherently results in the processes claimed in the '080 Patent. In *Crown Operations Intern., Ltd. V. Solutia Inc.*, 289 F.3d 1367 (Fed.Cir. 2002) ("*Crown*"), the patents at issue related to layered films used to create safety and solar control glass. The multi-layer film added properties to the glass assembly, such as impact resistance. An inner layer had solar control properties to reflect, absorb (and thus convert to heat), or transmit defined percentages of certain wavelengths of light. *Crown*, at 1370. The district court had held the only relevant independent claim of one of the patents, the '511 patent, not invalid on the grounds of anticipation and obviousness. It claimed a composite solar/safety film, comprised of a solar control film "wherein said solar control film contributes no more than about 2% visible reflectance". *Crown*, at 1372.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 101

"Crown [the declaratory judgment plaintiff] argued that U.S. Patent No. 4,017,661 to Gillery (the "Gillery patent") anticipates the '511 patent. The district court held otherwise, because, while the Gillery patent discloses the first three limitations of claim 1 of the '511 patent, it does not disclose the two percent visible reflectance limitation. The court found that neither the Gillery patent claims nor its description expressly disclose a two percent limit on reflectance contribution from the solar control film layer. Crown argued that the two percent limitation was inherently present in the Gillery patent's teachings because the Gillery patent disclosed an assembly with PVB layers, substrate layer, and substrate metal-coating — arguably of the same composition and thickness of the films disclosed by the '511 patent. Thus, Crown argued, because the structure, thickness and materials of the assembly were the same or within the same range(s), the Gillery patent must inherently disclose a two percent limitation. The district court rejected this argument because it found that none of the embodiments disclosed by the Gillery patent meet the two percent visible light reflectance limit."

*Crown*, at 1372.

The Federal Circuit, in upholding the decision of the District Court as well as the validity of the '511 patent, discussed the application of inherency to validity that is most relevant here.

"Regarding alleged anticipation by the Gillery patent, on its face the Gillery patent does not disclose or discuss a two percent limitation for the reflectance contribution of the solar control film. Crown maintains that the '511 patent merely claims a preexisting property inherent in the structure disclosed in the prior art. Crown urges us to accept the proposition that if a prior art reference discloses the same structure as claimed by a patent, the resulting property, in this case, two percent solar control film reflectance, should be assumed. We decline to adopt this approach because this proposition is not in accordance with our cases on inherency. If the two percent reflectance limitation is inherently disclosed by the Gillery patent, it must be necessarily present and a person of ordinary skill in the art would recognize its presence. *In re Robertson*, 169 F.3d 743, 745, 49 USPQ2d 1949, 1950-51 (Fed.Cir.1999); *Continental Can*, 948 F.2d at 1268, 20 USPQ2d at 1749. Inherency "may not be established by probabilities or possibilities. The mere fact that a certain thing may result from a given set of circumstances is not sufficient." *Id.* at 1269, 20 USPQ2d at 1749 (quoting *In re Oelrich*, 666 F.2d 578, 581, 212 USPQ 323, 326 (CCPA 1981)) (emphasis supplied)."

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 102

The alleged inherency of the art cited by the Examiner and discussed below has not been established other than by statements of probabilities and/or possibilities and/or just statements that things are uniform without providing any degree of uniformity that must be present. Again, inherency requires that the missing descriptive material is "necessarily present," not merely probably or possibly present, in the prior art. Importantly, the mere possibility that some of the films produced as disclosed by the art cited might result in some type of "uniform" film is not sufficient.

1. Chen's alleged inherency.

"The claimed "substantially uniform distribution of components" and "locking-in or substantially preventing migration" of the active in independent claims 1, 82 and 161, and the variation of active content of 10% or less in dependent claims 254-255, 272-273 and 290-291, are inherent in Chen's exemplified films and process. Inherency is based on the following: As discussed above, Chen uses the same materials and method as here claimed. Chen's ingredients are mixed until they are uniformly dispersed or dissolved in the hydrocolloid (p. 17, lines 8-11). Chen uses the same criteria discussed above with respect to the '080 patent in the Scope of Claims section for evaluation of substantial uniform distribution, i.e., weight of dosages and visual inspection."

Office Action, p. 13.

The criteria used by Chen as cited by the Examiner for evaluation of "substantial uniform distribution" are physical observations. Such "observations" cannot be used, either inherently or otherwise, to establish the uniformity of content in the actual amount of active in equally sized samples in Chen's examples. Absent, statements or data based on analytical chemical testing, not weighing or visual inspection, for the amount of active present in the film, Chen does not and cannot inherently disclose Patentee's resulting film having uniformity of content, with respect to the amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film, which varies by no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active. Moreover, even if Chen disclosed, which it does not, the use of the same

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 103

materials and methods as the '080 Patent, the mere fact that a certain thing may result from a given set of circumstances is not sufficient to support inherency. *Crown, supra*, at 1378.

The Examiner states that the films made in accordance with the claims as issued are inherent in Chen. This conclusion is based on the belief that Chen uses the "same materials and method" as the Patentee. Patentee respectfully submits that this conclusion is incorrect, and particularly incorrect with the amended claims. The examiner erroneously states that Chen "uses the same criteria" as the '080 Patent that issued in evaluating substantial uniform distribution, i.e. weights of dosages and visual inspection." Although, a number of ways to test films in the patent are disclosed, in order to test content uniformity of an FDA regulated film product, it is necessary to assay using analytical chemical tests for drug or therapeutic active content of unit film doses. This is necessary to ensure the amount of active is within acceptable guidelines. Visual observation and physical measurements such as weight is insufficient to determine the active amount in equally sized dosage units. Almost all of Patentees' amended claims require analytical chemical testing and/or that the films have uniformity in the amount of active which varies by no more than 10% variance. The Examiner's assumption that visual inspection and weight measurements provide this information is therefore incorrect.

Fuller Declaration, especially at ¶¶ 6-14, provides further reasoning regarding this incorrect assumption and lack of inherency. According to Dr. Fuller, "the film process as described by Chen would not inherently result in a film having a uniform distribution of active in the film. . . [or] a uniformity of content of active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from Chen's resultant film, where the active in the dosage units varies no more than 10%." Fuller Declaration, ¶ 6. Moreover, Chen disclosure exhibits a lack of understanding and more importantly any teaching "to describe the drying operation that would cause it to avoid redistribution and inhomogeneity of a dissolved solute or suspended actives due to well-known thermodiffusive effects. The effects, also referred to as the Soret effect can drive inhomogeneities during the drying of a previously homogeneous mixture. In other words, even if

a solution containing an active ingredient is spatially homogeneous in that constituent, the act of drying the solution to create a solid film can cause redistribution of the solute through the creation of temperature variations." Fuller Declaration, ¶ 7.

"Chen does not recognize that the mechanism of viscoelasticity of a film undergoing drying to retain the spatial uniformity of the constituents of that film. The development of viscoelasticity has the ability of arresting processes such as the Soret effect that can induce inhomogeneities. The Monosol process that creates a viscoelastic film within the first four minutes of drying has the important benefit of locking in a spatially homogeneous distribution of components by inhibiting the effects of thermodiffusion." Fuller Declaration, ¶ 9.

Finally, Dr. Fuller's Declaration addresses the misplaced reliance on the physical terms "glossy" and "transparent" in the Office Action, which the Examiner use to establish the presence of "uniformity" in Chen's films. However, as Dr. Fuller declares, the "term 'glossy' is not interchangeable with nor equivalent to the uniformity of content of components of a film, nor the content uniformity of an active in the film. It is also not interchangeable with a specific variation of active content in unit dosage samples taken from a film. . . . The term 'transparent' . . . is also a visual appearance characteristic that is neither indicative nor suggestive of the uniformity of content of the film. In particular, this term does not necessarily provide any indication or suggestion of a specific variance of active per unit dose of film sampled therefrom." Fuller Declaration, ¶¶ 12-13. As such the Chen's films can neither inherently anticipate nor make obvious the '337 Patent claims.

2. Staab's alleged inherency.

"Staab also discloses that "[t]he device of the invention thus is composed of a biologically-compatible material that has been blended homogeneously" with the drug (see col. 6, lines 5-10). In the Example at cols. 11-12, Staab prepares a four-foot wide film which is then cut into two inch by two inch films each weighing 190 mg and containing 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride as the active agent (see col. 11, line 52 through col. 12, line 3). Accordingly, Staab's films inherently have the instantly claimed substantially uniform distribution of components and active.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 105

Also, in view of the fact that each film contains 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride and in view of said homogeneous blending, the variation of active in the dosage units is 0% (*sic* 10%), as per claims 254, 255, 272, 273, 290 and 291."

Office Action, p. 29.

"In particular, as noted above, the '080 patent teaches that "[t]he addition of hydrocolloids to the aqueous phase of the suspension increases viscosity, may produce viscoelasticity, and can impart stability depending on the type of hydrocolloid, its concentration and the particle composition, geometry, size and volume fraction (see col. 8, lines 42-46). Staab uses the same hydrocolloid as in the '080 patent, i.e. said HPMC. Accordingly, Staab's film in the Example at cols. 11-12 is inherently viscoelastic before drying. Accordingly, after drying for about 10 minutes, a viscoelastic film having less water than before drying is formed."

Office Action, p. 30.

"While Staab does not discuss viscoelasticity or that the films resulting from its process have a "substantially uniform distribution of components" or disclose "locking-in or substantially preventing migration" of the active, Staab, as cited above, discloses a process which reasonably appears to be either the same as or an obvious variation of the instantly claimed process."

Office Action, p. 31.

Again, as with Chen, absent statements based on testing and/or a determination of the actual amount of active present in the film, Staab does not and cannot inherently disclose Patentee's resulting film having uniformity of content, with respect to the amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film, which varies no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active. Staab does not and cannot inherently form a viscoelastic film within about the first 4 minutes, which locks-in the uniformity of content within this recited 10% variance.

Moreover, even if Staab disclosed, which it does not, the use of the same materials and methods as the '337 Patent, the mere fact that a certain thing may result from a given set of



circumstances is not sufficient to support inherency. *Crown, supra*, at 1378. Moreover, Staab just states that there is 19 mg of benzalkonium chloride present in each sample weighing 190 mg, however Staab does not disclose testing to determine the amount of benzalkonium chloride present in the final film product. Staab, col. 11, l. 35 through col. 12, l. 3. Staab's resulting structure is a foam rather than a substantially solid visco-elastic structure formed within 4 minutes and Staab also would not inherently have the recited degree of uniformity of amount of active in substantially equal sized dosage units. Moreover, Staab starts with a composition having 10% by weight of benzalkonium chloride (50% aqueous). Yet allegedly obtains a resulting film with 19 mg benzalkonium chloride in a 190 mg film, to once again obtain a 10% benzalkonium chloride resulting composition.

3. Le Person's alleged inherency.

"Le Person discloses that after 5 min of the drying, 'the polymeric network is not turgescient and the meshes are densely packed. The polymer skeleton acts as a filter for the active substance [i.e., pharmaceutical or drug] when the system reequilibrates.' (See p. 262, col. 2, third full paragraph.) Le Person also teaches that '[b]etween the 5th and 10th min of drying the heavy solvent migrates... active substance, slowed down in its migration, stays in the bottom of the layer.' (See the last four lines at page 262, col. 2). It is noted that the heavy solvent only accounts for 2% of the wet composition of the coating (see page 258, Table 1). As such, within 5-10 minutes, the solvent has been sufficiently evaporated such that, inherently, a substantial uniform distribution of the active is locked-in and migration is substantially prevented within the film, as here claimed. The active material homogenizes and a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the Page 38 active phase, taking into account evaporation of the heavy solvent (p. 263, col. 1, lines 8-13), and thus, there is a variation of active content of less than 10%, as per claims 272, 273, 290 and 291.

Office Action, pp. 37-38.

"While Le Person does not discuss viscoelasticity or that the films in its process have a 'substantially uniform distribution of components' or disclose 'locking-in or substantially preventing migration' of the active, Le Person, as cited above, discloses a process which reasonably appears to be either the same as or an obvious variation of the instantly claimed process. Accordingly, claims 82, 89-91, 161, 171-173, 272-274 and 290-292, if not anticipated under 35 USC

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 107

102(b), would be obvious under 35 USC 103(a)."

Office Action, p. 38.

Le Person is entirely devoid of any details with respect to its process and materials. For example, nowhere does Le Person discuss what type of acrylic polymer he uses, nor the molecular weight of the polymer. Thus, Le Person allows for materials which may have such a low molecular weight that forming a visco-elastic film may not be possible. Moreover, Le Person lacks sufficient enabling disclosure to be an effective reference as applied in view of the amended claims. Such deficiencies cannot be used in support of an inherency argument.

Again, absent statements and data based on testing for the amount of active present in the film with results establishing a substantial uniformity of content, which active varies by no more than 10%, Le Person does not and cannot inherently disclose Patentee's resulting film, having uniformity of content, with respect to the amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film, varying by no more than 10% from the desired amount of the active. Le Person does not and cannot inherently form a viscoelastic film in about 4 minutes which locks-in the uniformity of content within this recited 10% variance.

Moreover, Le Person discloses very little about the acrylic polymer, such as the molecular weight. If the molecular weight was low enough it may not become a viscoelastic material. Patentee asks, how could Le Person anticipate and/or make obvious the '080 Patent which is directed to the commercial manufacture of a resulting film with a specified content uniformity of active, where Le Person's goal, as noted in its abstract was devoted determining "cases of maldistribution of the active substance," in connection with different drying methods, and not to providing a process for manufacturing films with active uniformity of the desired amount. Importantly, Patentee has added several additional process steps not in the prior art. These new process steps present in the amended independent claim, as well as the new

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 108

independent claims, further distance Patentee's patent from the prior art, by negating any anticipation and obviousness assertions.

4. Horstmann's alleged inherency.

"The claimed substantially uniform distribution of components and active, and locking-in or substantially preventing migration of active, and the variance of active content of 10% or less in dependent claims 254, 272 and 290 are also inherent in Horstmann's Examples 1, 3 and 4. In particular, Horstmann's films before drying are described as being uniform and homogeneous (see col. 3, line 11-19, 29-34 and 37-41; col. 5, lines 1 and 50), and as noted above, Horstmann uses the same components and process steps as here claimed. The '080 patent notes that Horstmann addressed the problem of self-aggregation and nonuniformity by increasing the viscosity of the film prior to drying in an effort to reduce aggregation of the components in the film (see col. 2, line 60 through col. 3, line 1).

Office Acton, p. 43.

"While Horstmann does not discuss viscoelasticity, water content of its dried films or that the films resulting from its process have a "substantially uniform distribution of components" or disclose "locking-in or substantially preventing migration" of the active, Horstmann, as cited above, discloses a process which reasonably appears to be either the same as or an obvious variation of the instantly claimed process. Accordingly, claims 1, 5, 7-10, 12-14, 23, 63, 64, 82, 84, 86-89, 91-93, 102, 142, 143, 161, 166, 168-171, 173-175, 184, 224, 225, 249, 254, 267, 272, 285 and 290, if not anticipated under 35 USC 102(b), would be obvious under 35 USC 103(a)."

Office Action, pp. 43-44.

Horstmann forms a gel, rather than a solid film as in the present invention. Thus the rheological properties of Horstmann are very different than a solid visco-elastic film having a water content of 10% or less. Moreover, Horstmann specifically teaches protecting the gels from drying up by placing the cut out gel shapes in a water vapor impermeable sealing material. See Horstmann, col. 5, ll. 11-13. This is a direct teaching away from drying to a water content of 10% or less. Moreover, Horstmann at col. 2, ll. 25-29, suggests drying may not be necessary.

Again, absent statements based on testing for the amount of active present in the film with results establishing a substantial uniformity of content, with no more than 10% variation from a desired amount of the active, Horstmann does not and cannot inherently disclose Patentee's resulting film having said uniformity of content which varies no more than 10% with respect to the desired amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film.

Additionally, as the Examiner admits, Horstmann discloses only that its film is alleged to be uniform at a point prior to drying. Horstmann, col. 3, ll. 37-41. Horstmann says nothing about the uniformity of the product during or after drying. Again, *Crown* holds that inherency "may not be established by probabilities or possibilities. The mere fact that a certain thing may result from a given set of circumstances is not sufficient." *Id.* A disclosure of some unspecified degree of uniformity of a film prior to drying in Horstmann does not establish that the product after drying is uniform, let alone the degree of uniformity as claimed by the '080 Patent. As noted throughout the '080 Patent, controlled drying is required for ensuring, among other things, [that uniformity of content of the resulting film varies no more than 10% with respect to the desired amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film].

Importantly, Patentee has added several addition process steps not in the prior art. These new process steps present in the amended independent claims, as well as the new independent claims, further distance Patentee's patent from the prior art, by negating any anticipation and obviousness assertions. Even without the process steps, even if it were possible that a resulting film with the proper uniformity of content might possibly result from some manipulations of the disclosures given in any of Chen, Staab, Le Person and/or Horstmann, it is incorrect to rely on these references in an attempt to show they inherently disclosed Patentee's resulting film. See *Crown*, at 1377-1378, *supra*.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 110

As the absence of inherency in and of itself removes Chen, Staab, Le Person and Horstmann as viable prior art for rejecting Patentee's claims under either 35 U.S.C. § 102, the Examiner should withdraw his rejections of Patentee's claims claims 1, 82 and 161 based on same. For the same reasons new independent claims 321-324 are allowable. Moreover, these references for the same reasons discussed above, as well as the reason discussed below, do not support any finding of obviousness, and thus the claims 1, 82 and 161 rejections based on 35 U.S.C. § 103 should be withdrawn as well. For the same reasons new independent claims 321-324 are not obvious in light of the prior art. Finally, Patentee's claims 2 through 81, 83 through 160, 163 through 299 and 300 through 320 and 325 through 628 as they depend from independent claims 1, 82, 161, and 321-324 should all be allowed as well, with any rejections withdrawn.

B. Third Party Requester's Wherein Argument is Wrong

Patentee finds it necessary to address Third Party Requester's attempt to vitiate the '080 Patent's claim language beginning with "wherein". Third Party Requester cites to the Federal Circuit for the premise that "a whereby clause in a method claim is not given weight when it simply expresses the intended result of a process step positively recited." *Minton v. Nat'l Ass'n of Securities Dealers, Inc.*, 336 F.3d 1373, 1381 (Fed.Cir.2003). Third Party Requester's Request for Inter Partes Reexamination ("The Request"), p. 16.

However, the Federal Circuit has also strongly held that "when the 'whereby' clause states a condition that is material to patentability, it cannot be ignored in order to change the substance of the invention." *Hoffer v. Microsoft Corp.*, 405 F. 3d 1326, 1329 (Fed. Cir. 2005). Essentially, Requester proposes that with elimination of the "whereby" clauses, the claims 1, 82 and 161 (before the amendments herein) would not require "wherein said resulting film has a water

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 111

content of 10% or less and said uniform distribution of active by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active is maintained." The Request, p. 20.

Patentee's fundamental invention concerns among other things making a film having a substantially uniform distribution of components or, as now claimed a uniform distribution of said active maintained by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film is such that uniformity of content of the resulting film varies no more than 10% with respect to the amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film.

As noted above, "when the whereby clause states a condition that is material to patentability, it cannot be ignored to change the substance of the invention." *Hoffer v. Microsoft Corp.*, 405 F.3d 1326 (Fed. Cir. 2005); *see also Fantasy Sports Properties, Inc. v. Sportsline.com, Inc.*, 287 F.3d 1108, 1111-16 (Fed. Cir. 2002); *Griffin v. Bertina*, 285 F.3d 1029, 1034 (Fed. Cir. 2002). In *Griffin*, for example, the court found that "wherein" clauses were claim limitations "because they relate back to and clarify what is required by the count. Each 'wherein' clause ... expresses the inventive discovery [and] ... elaborates the meaning of the preamble." *Griffin*, 285 F. 3d at 1033-34. Further, "the allegedly inherent properties of the 'wherein clauses' provide the necessary purpose to the steps." *Id.* See also, MPEP, § 2111.04.

The original '080 Patent independent claims' wherein clause limitations cannot be disregarded. The '080 Patent claims processes for manufacturing pharmaceutical films with a substantial uniform distribution of components suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval. The ability to make such films with the required amount of uniformity in distribution of active is the essence of Patentee's invention. Thus any wherein clause which expresses the inventive discovery and elaborates the meaning of the preamble, for example, that the uniformity of content of the resulting film varies by no more than 10% with respect to the amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 112

locations of the resulting film, or that such uniformity must be determined by analytical chemical testing in compliance with regulations, cannot be ignored for purposes of patentability.

Finally, Third Party Requester has made many allegations about the '080 Patent and its specifications and claims, and the prior art in The Request. Patent owner believes the amendment to claim 25 herein clarifying the scope of same, obviates the need to address Third Party Requester's allegations or the Examiner's statements made without the benefit of the amendments, nevertheless, to the extent that any are not explicitly addressed herein, Patentee hereby asserts they are wrong and unsupported in either fact or law.

- C. Claims 1, 4, 5, 8-18, 20-32, 34, 36-40, 44-47, 51, 53, 54, 59, 62-71, 82-84, 87-97, 99-111, 113, 115-119, 123-126, 130, 132, 133, 138, 141-150, 161-166, 169-179, 181-193, 195, 197-201, 205-208, 212, 214, 215, 220, 223-232, 243, 244, 246, 247, 249-262, 264, 265, 267-280, 282, 283 and 285-299 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as obvious over Chen.  
Claims 2, 3, 6, 7, 19, 33, 35, 41-43, 48-50, 52, 55-58, 60, 61, 85, 86, 98, 112, 114, 120-122, 127-129, 131, 134-137, 139, 140, 167, 168, 180, 194, 196, 202-204, 209-211, 213, 216-219, 221, 222, 245, 248, 263, 266, 281 and 284 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Chen.

The Office Action rejected the above claims as allegedly anticipated under 35 U.S.C. §102(b) by Chen, WO 00/42992 ("Chen") or, under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a), as obvious or unpatentable over Chen. Patentee incorporates its previous discussions in sections A. and B. above. Chen is a primary reference relied upon by the Examiner in the Office Action.

Patentee respectfully traverses the rejection on the basis, among others, that Chen does not disclose the claimed: particular drying methods; resulting visco-elastic product; substantially uniform distribution of components; or locking-in or substantially preventing migration of the active; or said uniform distribution of said active maintained by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, rapidly increasing

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 113

the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active, such that uniformity of content of the resulting film varies by no more than 10% in amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film and is in compliance with regulations governing same.

Chen discloses two methods of forming a film product, a solvent casting method and an extrusion method. The extrusion method does not rely upon putting a hydrocolloid in a solvent, nor does the extrusion method use a drying oven and is apparently preferred by Chen over the solvent method. Chen, page 15, lines 9-21. In the solvent casting method, Chen states that a hydrocolloid is dissolved or dispersed in water, and mixed to form a homogeneous solution. The active agent and other ingredients may be added and dispersed or dissolved uniformly in the hydrocolloid solution. The coating solution with a solid content of 5-50% and a viscosity of 500-15000cps is degassed and coated onto a polyester film and "dried under aeration" at a temperature between 40-100°C to avoid destabilizing the agents. Chen, p. 15, ll. 19- 29. The dry film formed by this process is described to be a "glossy, stand alone, self supporting, non-tacky and flexible film". Chen, p. 15, ll. 30-31. These very general statements are all that are given by Chen as to the formation and drying of Chen's film product. These statements cannot support either anticipation nor obviousness rejections. See, e.g., Fuller Declaration, ¶¶ 6-13.

Chen's drying process is so general and devoid of detail so as to provide no guidance other than that to dry, one places a film in a conventional hot air circulating oven at temperatures of from 40-100°C and leaves it for a period of time. As shown in Patentee's photographs (Figures 9-16), drying in a hot air oven does not produce uniform films through the locking in of the active in a substantially uniform distribution throughout the visco-elastic film.

Again, it is important to note that while physical testing and observations such as Patentee's photographs (Figures 9-16) may be generally relied on to show non-uniformity, direct



Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 114

establishment of the uniformity of content for the amount of active is by testing for the active needed to demonstrate that the amount of active is substantially uniform throughout the film. Importantly, Chen's "tests" for uniformity, except perhaps for water content, are for physical uniformity, that is, appearance (glossy, transparent), weight, density, thickness and not the relevant testing of the active itself to demonstrate the desired uniformity of content of the desired amount of active per unit dosage as required by the claims in reexamination. Fuller Declaration, ¶ 11-13.

Chen does not disclose any other drying methods beyond drying "under aeration", nor does Chen disclose any controlled drying processes whatsoever. Chen showed no recognition of the complexities involved in the commercial manufacturing of films, as Chen's focus relates solely to the ingredients, not the process. Without any recognition of the problems, and without any appreciation of the difficulties in preventing the settling, migration and/or aggregation or agglomeration of active(s) in the cast flowable mass, Chen neither sought nor found the solution to creating commercial scale films having substantial uniformity of active(s) per unit dose or per unit of film. Chen lacks substantial disclosure in view of the '337 Patent. Among its deficiencies, Chen lacks any disclosure as to specific processing means (beyond generally drying in a generic oven) or the formation of a visco-elastic film state. Chen only discloses the apparent homogeneity of a blended matrix, and this is prior to the addition of actives. There is no disclosure or suggestion as to how to create a uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical or biological active active in the blended matrix and then cast that matrix to maintain uniformity, and then convey said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent to rapidly form a visco-elastic film having said pharmaceutical active uniformly distributed throughout by rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 to maintain said uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical or biological active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active within said visco-elastic film and then test it to establish the substantially uniform distribution of pharmaceutical or biological active content.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 115

Thus, among other things, the '337 Patent claims are directed to locking-in the pharmaceutical or biological active within the first 4 minutes. The Examiner has stated in the Reexamination, Reasons for Patentability/ Confirmation ("RFP/C"), in connection with both the '292 Patent and the '891 Patent reexaminations that "Chen does not discuss what happens within the first 4 minutes of drying." Moreover, in the '891 Patent RFP/C the Examiner goes on to state that: "Chen does not discuss uniformity of pharmaceutical or biological active components in its doses. Table 4 of Chen gives the grams per unit dosage film and density for Example 1 with standard deviation based on three or four measurements, but does not give compositional uniformity." Additionally, Chen's Example 1 contains only food flavorings and a sweetener.

Chen does not disclose that the resulting products are compositionally uniform, but only that they are "glossy". Glossy does not imply or establish compositionally uniform. Fuller Declaration, ¶¶ 11-13. In fact, Chen's Figure 5 (Examples 5-8) clearly shows a lack of compositional uniformity of active. While statistics are not defined in the text, the error bars represent either high or low values, standard deviation or some measure of variation. Given that the compositions of Examples 5-8 are the same, except for the amount of active, it is reasonable to assume that the active is not uniformly present in the individual films due to the wide variation of release of active from the same film compositions. For example, with regard to the release of nicotine in the same film compositions, release reaches in excess of 100%. It is reasonable to conclude that a major reason for these release differences is that the amount of active in each film tested varies by more than the claimed 10%, despite the identical film-forming compositions.

Patentee's claims are directed to the formation of a suitable visco-elastic product, prepared through the methods of the invention. As used throughout the application, the formation of a suitable commercial and regulatory compliant product is the desired goal, and a suitable product is one that is substantially uniform in active content to the extent required by

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 116

said commercial and regulatory concerns. For example, those regulations and directions provided by the FDA for pharmaceuticals and biologic actives.

As used throughout the application, the resulting visco-elastic product is defined as a product that has maintained the desired compositional uniformity after being subjected to a coating/deposition step and drying. For example, the '080 Patent at col. 8, ll. 64-66 states that the stability is important "in the wet film stage until sufficient drying has occurred to lock-in the particles and matrix into a sufficiently solid form such that uniformity is maintained." The '080 Patent at col. 13, ll. 53-59 even more clearly states that: "The resulting dried film 1 is a visco-elastic solid, as depicted in Section C. The components desirably are locked into a uniform distribution throughout the film."

Thus, as defined in the specification for the '337 Patent as filed, a visco-elastic solid is one that has been sufficiently dried to lock its active components into a substantially uniform distribution throughout the film. The '337 Patent claims require that this be done within the first 4 minutes or less. The Examiner has previously stated that Chen does not disclose that the resulting film product has any compositional uniformity of pharmaceutical or biological active at that point in time. See '891 Patent RFP/C. The Examiner cannot point to any portion of Chen, or the other references, that teaches this step.

As explained throughout the '080 Patent and as summarized above, the present invention is based upon the discovery that certain process parameters, such as, viscosity and controlled drying methods must be employed to provide a commercially viable film product. Chen does not disclose such a resulting product. Chen discloses that various components (absent the active) are combined and that the mixture is blended to form a "uniform" solution. (Chen, p. 20, ll. 19-20). While even the formation of a uniform solution in a blender is beneficial, it is not the end of the process by any means. Chen's initial blend (without the active) may be mixed to be homogeneous, but there is absolutely no disclosure whatsoever of forming a homogeneous

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 117

mixture containing an active and casting and drying to maintain such uniformity in the resulting film. Further, as explained above, conventional drying methods do not inherently provide uniform films and, in fact, would not be expected to provide resultant films having compositional uniformity or uniformity of content of active. See Fuller Declaration, ¶¶ 6-10.

In addition, use of non-controlled drying methods such as described in the '080 Patent specification can lead to compositional non-uniformity, as explained above, due to the number of problems associated with conventional drying, see col. 3, ll. 13-57 of the '080 Patent. In fact, as explained in the '080 Patent, depending upon the drying methods used, various "hot spots" can form due to uneven air flow and temperatures, which destroy the compositional uniformity of the resulting product. See the '080 Patent, col. 13, ll. 6-16, as well as, Figs. 9-16. Chen's drying methods, such as the use of uncontrolled hot air circulating ovens, do not inherently provide compositionally uniform films. In fact, the Patentee has demonstrated quite the contrary occurs. See also, Fuller Declaration, ¶¶ 6-10.

Patentee's claimed process is not present in Chen, either literally or inherently, and it cannot anticipate the claims as pending. Moreover, one of ordinary skill in the art, considering the teachings of the cited reference as a whole, would not predictably or rationally arrive at the limitations of the present claims. For these reasons, Chen does not render obvious the pending claims of this rejection.

- D. Claims 2, 3, 16, 32, 55, 72-81, 95, 111, 134, 151-160, 177, 193, 216 and 233-242 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over the combined teaching of Chen and Staab.**

The Office Action rejected the above claims under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a), as being unpatentable over the combined teaching of Chen and Staab, U.S. 5,393,528 ("Staab").

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 118

Patentee incorporates its previous discussions in sections A., B. and C., above, and D., below. As all the above claims depend from one of the independent claims, claims 1, 82 and 161, they are allowable for all the reasons provided in the sections dealing with Chen, above, and Staab, below.

- E. Claims 1-5, 10, 12-16, 21, 24, 25, 32, 44-46, 54, 55, 59, 63-70, 72-75, 78- 84, 89, 91-95, 100, 103, 104,111, 123-125, 133, 134, 138, 142-149, 151-154, 157-166, 171,173-177,182,185,186,193,205-207,215, 216, 220, 224-231, 233-236, 239-242, 249-252, 254, 255, 257-260, 267-270, 272, 273, 275-278, 285-288, 290, 291 and 293-299 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as obvious over Staab. Claims 8, 9, 76, 77, 87, 88, 155, 156, 169, 170, 237 and 238 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Staab.

The Office Action rejected the above claims as allegedly anticipated under 35 U.S.C. §102(b) by Staab, or, under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a), as obvious or unpatentable over Staab. Patentee incorporates its previous discussions in sections A., B., C. and D., above,

Patentee respectfully traverses the rejection on the basis, among others, that Staab does not disclose the claimed: particular drying methods; resulting visco-elastic product; substantially uniform distribution of components; casting a flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps; or locking-in or substantially preventing migration of the active; or said uniform distribution of said active maintained by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, rapidly increasing the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active, such that uniformity of content of the resulting film vary by no more than 10% in amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film is in compliance with regulations governing same.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 119

Staab teaches the benefits of using a "gas foamed film" or films. Staab, col. 5, ll.33-35; col. 8, ll. 33. Staab also teaches away from the '337 Patent by teaching that air bubbles are necessary, which are contraindicated in Patentee's invention requiring the uniform distribution of active. Staab instead teaches that gas bubbles must be added to the polymer/drug mixture prior to casting. .

"It should be noted that heretofore, the significance of the addition of gases in the formation of the film to alter the texture and solubility of the film has not been recognized."

Staab, col. 3, ll. 15-20.

"The fine tuning of dissolution rates and delivery of agent material, by the addition of gases and by altering the grades or mixtures of polymer materials or layers, is an important aspect of the present invention.

"On addition of the gas, preferably nitrogen, a web is formed of the final formulation and the gas. The resultant structure can be described as a foam with various sized air bubbles trapped in the matrix. There is a dual benefit that has been surprisingly observed in this connection, namely that not only can the size of the bubbles in the foam alter the dissolution rates and correct what is a serious flaw in standard polymer films, it also offers to the user a perceptible softness to the film which enables the delivery of many types of drugs to tender mucosal tissues. It has been observed that the formation of this web of the polymer/drug formulation and the gas must be made just prior to casting on the glass or steel plates. This offers precise control over the microbubbles and resultant control over the dissolution,

"Without this web formation, the quick release of drug was heretofore not possible. This frothy foam mixture or web can also be added to a mold to provide a formed device such as a barrier delivery system which completely dissolves upon use in a body cavity, e.g. the vagina.

"The gases, for example, air or nitrogen are introduced near the point of application of the liquid polymer material to the stainless steel casting sheet. The gases are added in a closed system by mixing with whipping blades or a motor driven homogenizer to homogenize the mixture of polymer, active material and gas to form a frothy foam. The final mixture then sets up or gels

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 120

as a foam. It is also possible to pour the frothy foam mixture into a mold. The mold is then deformed and the formed device such as a diaphragm, is removed."

Staab, col. 8, ll. 29-64 (emphasis supplied).

In direct conflict with Staab's teaching, the '080 Patent teaches the use of anti-foaming agents to prevent gas bubble formation.

"Therefore, there is a need for methods and compositions for film products, which use a minimal number of materials or components, and which provide a substantially non-self-aggregating uniform heterogeneity throughout the area of the films. . . . Desirably, the films will also incorporate compositions and methods of manufacture that substantially reduce or eliminate air in the film, thereby promoting uniformity in the final film product."

'080 Patent, col. 4, ll. 5-21 (emphasis supplied).

"A number of techniques may be employed in the mixing stage to prevent bubble inclusions in the final film. To provide a composition mixture with substantially no air bubble formation in the final product, anti-foaming or surface-tension reducing agents are employed. Additionally, the speed of the mixture is desirably controlled to prevent cavitation of the mixture in a manner which pulls air into the mix. Finally, air bubble reduction can further be achieved by allowing the mix to stand for a sufficient time for bubbles to escape prior to drying the film."

'080 Patent, col. 9, ll. 56-65 (emphasis supplied).

See also section of '080 Patent entitled "Anti-foaming and De-foaming Compositions" ('080 Patent, col. 22, l. 47 through col. 23, l. 53).

Staab addresses the fine tuning of dissolution rates and delivery of active agent, by teaching the addition of gases as an important aspect of his invention (Staab, col. 8, ll. 30-34). Staab is silent with respect to the claimed uniformity of content, the essence of the '080 Patent.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 121

The '080 Patent in connection with achieving said uniformity of content teaches the removal of such gases and bubbles ('080 Patent, col. 9, ll. 56-65). Moreover, Staab uses conventional drying (Staab, col. 11, ll. 64-65) rather than the particular drying methods used to ensure the uniformity of content claimed by the '080 Patent.

Staab provides absolutely no teaching or suggestion as to how to arrive at a final product that contains the recited level of active uniformity. Similar to the discussion of Chen above, Staab teaches general drying methods that would be expected to subject the material to similar air forces as in Chen's air drying oven, but does not teach the formation of and maintenance of a film having a substantially uniform active content. Again, as explained above, Staab provides absolutely no teaching or suggestion as to how to arrive at a final product that includes the claimed content uniformity. Similar to the discussion of Chen above, Staab teaches general drying methods that are likely to subject the material to similar air forces as in a conventional air drying oven, but does not teach the formation of and maintenance of a film having a substantially uniform active content.

The presently claimed process is not present in Staab, either literally or inherently, and it cannot anticipate the claims as pending. Moreover, one of ordinary skill in the art, considering the teachings of the cited reference as a whole, would not predictably or rationally arrive at the limitations of the present claims. For these reasons, Staab does not render obvious the pending claims of this rejection. Patentee respectfully traverses the rejection on the basis, among others, that Staab does not disclose the claimed: particular drying methods; resulting visco-elastic product; substantially uniform distribution of components; casting a flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps; or locking-in or substantially preventing migration of the active; or said uniform distribution of said active maintained by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, rapidly increasing the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active, such that uniformity of



Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 122

content of the resulting film's variation in amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film is in compliance with regulations governing same.

Staab teaches the benefits of using a "gas foamed film" or films. Staab, col. 5, ll.33-35; col. 8, ll. 33. Staab also teaches away from the '337 Patent teaching that air bubbles are contraindicated for the patented uniform compositional distribution. Staab instead teaches that gas bubbles must be added to the polymer/drug mixture prior to casting.

"It should be noted that heretofore, the significance of the addition of gases in the formation of the mm to alter the texture and solubility of the film has not been recognized."

Staab, col. 3, ll. 15-20.

"The fine tuning of dissolution rates and delivery of agent material, by the addition of gases and by altering the grades or mixtures of polymer materials or layers, is an important aspect of the present invention.

"On addition of the gas, preferably nitrogen, a web is formed of the final formulation and the gas. The resultant structure can be described as a foam with various sized air bubbles trapped in the matrix. There is a dual benefit that has been surprisingly observed in this connection, namely that not only can the size of the bubbles in the foam alter the dissolution rates and correct what is a serious flaw in standard polymer films, it also offers to the user a perceptible softness to the film which enables the delivery of many types of drugs to tender mucosal tissues. It has been observed that the formation of this web of the polymer/drug formulation and the gas must be made just prior to casting on the glass or steel plates. This offers precise control over the microbubbles and resultant control over the dissolution,

"Without this web formation, the quick release of drug was heretofore not possible. This frothy foam mixture or web can also be added to a mold to provide a formed device such as a barrier delivery system which completely dissolves upon use in a body cavity, e.g. the vagina.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 123

"The gases, for example, air or nitrogen are introduced near the point of application of the liquid polymer material to the stainless steel casting sheet. The gases are added in a closed system by mixing with whipping blades or a motor driven homogenizer to homogenize the mixture of polymer, active material and gas to form a frothy foam. The final mixture then sets up or gels as a foam. It is also possible to pour the frothy foam mixture into a mold. The mold is then deformed and the formed device such as a diaphragm, is removed."

Staab, col. 8, ll. 29-64 (emphasis supplied).

In direct conflict with Staab's teaching, the '337 Patent teaches the use of anti-foaming agents to prevent gas bubble formation.

"Therefore, there is a need for methods and compositions for film products, which use a minimal number of materials or components, and which provide a substantially non-self-aggregating uniform heterogeneity throughout the area of the films. . . . Desirably, the films will also incorporate compositions and methods of manufacture that substantially reduce or eliminate air in the film, thereby promoting uniformity in the final film product."

'337 Patent, col. 4, ll. 5-21 (emphasis supplied).

"A number of techniques may be employed in the mixing stage to prevent bubble inclusions in the final film. To provide a composition mixture with substantially no air bubble formation in the final product, anti-foaming or surface-tension reducing agents are employed. Additionally, the speed of the mixture is desirably controlled to prevent cavitation of the mixture in a manner which pulls air into the mix. Finally, air bubble reduction can further be achieved by allowing the mix to stand for a sufficient time for bubbles to escape prior to drying the film."

'337 Patent, col. 9, ll. 56-65 (emphasis supplied).

See also section of '337 Patent entitled "Anti-foaming and De-foaming Compositions" ('337 Patent, col. 22, l. 47 through col. 23, l. 53).

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 124

Staab addresses the fine tuning of dissolution rates and delivery of agent material, by teaching the addition of gases as an important aspect of his invention (Staab, col. 8, ll. 30-34). Staab is silent with respect to the claimed uniformity of content, the essence of the '337 Patent. The '337 Patent in connection with achieving said uniformity of content teaches the removal of such gases and bubbles ('337 Patent, col. 9, ll. 56-65). Moreover, Staab uses conventional drying (Staab, col. 11, ll. 64-65) rather than the particular drying methods used to ensure the uniformity of content claimed by the '337 Patent.

Staab provides absolutely no teaching or suggestion as to how to arrive at a final product that contains the recited level of active uniformity. Similar to the discussion of Chen above, Staab teaches general drying methods that would be expected to subject the material to similar air forces as in Chen's air drying oven, but does not teach the formation of and maintenance of a film having a substantially uniform active content. Again, as explained above, Staab provides absolutely no teaching or suggestion as to how to arrive at a final product that includes the claimed content uniformity. Similar to the discussion of Chen above, Staab teaches general drying methods that are likely to subject the material to similar air forces as in a conventional air drying oven, but does not teach the formation of and maintenance of a film having a substantially uniform active content.

The presently claimed process is not present in Staab, either literally or inherently, and it cannot anticipate the claims as pending. Moreover, one of ordinary skill in the art, considering the teachings of the cited reference as a whole, would not predictably or rationally arrive at the limitations of the present claims. For these reasons, Staab does not render obvious the pending claims of this rejection.

**F. Claims 82, 89-91, 161, 171-173, 272-274 and 290-292 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as obvious over Le Person.**

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 125

**Claims 92 and 174 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Le Person.**

The Office Action rejected the above claims as allegedly anticipated under 35 U.S.C. §102(b) by Le Person, Chemical Engineering and Processing, Vol. 37, pp. 257-263 (1998) ("Le Person") or, under 35 U.S.C. § 103(a), as obvious or unpatentable over Le Person. Patentee incorporates its previous discussions in sections A., B., C., D. and E., above,

Patentee respectfully traverses the rejection on the basis, among others, that Le Person does not disclose the claimed: particular drying methods to provide a substantially uniform distribution of components; resulting visco-elastic product; substantially uniform distribution of components; casting a flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps; or locking-in or substantially preventing migration of the active; or said uniform distribution of said active maintained by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, rapidly increasing the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active, such that uniformity of content of the resulting films vary by no more than 10% in the amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film is in compliance with regulations governing same. Le Person discloses that the drying step used plays a role in the final product, but fails to disclose or suggest how to achieve a uniform final product. In fact, Le Person discloses methods that result in a non-uniform product prior to and at 10 minutes. According to Le Person, the resulting product dried in 9 minutes would not have claimed uniformity of content of active.

Le Person's goal was to determine "cases of maldistribution of the active substance," in connection with different drying methods, said maldistribution having consequences on storage and delivery of a drug and proposes the use of Laser Scanning Confocal Microscopy on the

active substance and the heavy solvent to determine same. (Le Person, Abstract). Le Person acknowledges that in the formation of a film product, "drying is the essential unit operation necessary to form the final product." (Le Person, p. 257). In Le Person's experiment, a coating mixture includes a polymer, three light solvents, a heavy solvent, and a pharmaceutical active substance. Le Person stated that the drying process used must evacuate the light solvent and preserve the heavy solvent. Le Person's experimental set-up was composed of two parts, "the drying cell and the wind tunnel. . . . [wherein] the wind tunnel is a conventional drying rig. . . ." Le Person, p. 258, col. 2 & Fig. 1. Le Person's disclosure of the use of a wind tunnel further negates any argument that Le Place inherently anticipates or makes obvious Patentee's invention.

Le Person conducted experiments on drying conditions. At the 5 minute mark, Le Person noted that intense moisture removal through the exposed surface of the layer to radiation during the first three minutes of drying produced a stress on the polymer and caused "displacement of the active phase towards the bottom of the layer." (Le Person, p. 261). Le Person noted that, initially, the constituents of the active phase are apparently homogeneously distributed, but during a drying process, the active substance separated and sunk to the bottom. (Le Person, p. 262). Le Person noted that, between 5 and 10 minutes of drying, the heavy solvent migrates towards the top surface and the active substance stays in the bottom layer. (Le Person, p. 262). After 15 minutes, Le Person notes that the active substance crystallizes, due to the lack of solvent contained therein. (Le Person, p. 263). Eventually, the active substance homogenizes, and only after 15 minutes a quasi equilibrium is obtained for the active phase, taking into account the evaporation of heavy solvent. (Le Person, p. 263). Thus, Le Person acknowledged that the drying step of a film formation is critical, and noted the non-homogeneity of the film product it produced during drying.

It is important to note that Le Person simply recognized the overall, general difficulty in obtaining films with a substantially uniform distribution of active. However, Le Person did not recognize the specific reasons therefor, nor did Le Person recognize the solutions needed to

overcome this difficulty. Le Person's goal was to find ways to best determine whether or not there was homogeneity of film product. Le Person uses water with a heavy solvent (see abstract and Table 1), and does not complete its drying, and in particular removal of the heavy solvent, until after 15 minutes (see Le Person, pp. 261-263). After 10 minutes, Le Person's heavy solvent has migrated to the exposed surface; and after 15 minutes, a quasi-equilibrium is obtained for the components of the active phase, taking into account the evaporation of the heavy solvent (see Le Person, p. 263).

However, the point of Le Person is that, in the time period (i.e., less than 10 minutes), there is non-uniformity of the product. Le Person even states that "intense moisture removal through the exposed surface of the layer to the radiation, during the first 3 min of drying (Le Person, Fig. 7) produces a stress on the polymer skeleton ... and as a result the acrylic polymer becomes more and more dense in the upper part of the layer (exposed surface)." (Le Person, p. 261). As a result, this "intense" shrinkage results in displacement of the active phase. As such, Le Person's disclosure is not directed towards achievement of a substantially uniform film through drying, and in fact, if anything, teaches away from achieving such content uniformity. The presently claimed process is not present in Le Person, either literally or inherently, and it cannot anticipate the claims as pending. Moreover, one of ordinary skill in the art, considering the teachings of the cited reference as a whole, would not predictably or rationally arrive at the limitations of the present claims. For these reasons, Le Person does not render obvious the pending claims of this rejection.

- G. Claims 1, 5, 7-10, 12-14, 23, 63, 64, 82, 84, 86-89, 91-93, 102, 142, 143, 161, 166, 168-171, 173-175, 184, 224, 225, 249, 254, 267, 272, 285 and 290 were rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(b) as anticipated by or, in the alternative, under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as obvious over Hortsman.

The Office Action rejected the above claims as allegedly anticipated under 35 U.S.C. §102(b) by Horstman, et al. U.S. 5,629,003 ("Horstmann") or, in the alternative under 35 U.S.C.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 128

§ 103(a), as obvious over Horstmann. Patentee incorporates its previous discussions in sections A., B., C., D., E. and F., above,

Patentee respectfully traverses the rejection on the basis, among others, that Horstmann does not disclose the claimed: particular drying methods to provide a substantially uniform distribution of components; resulting visco-elastic product; substantially uniform distribution of components; casting a flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity from about 400 to about 100,000 cps; or locking-in or substantially preventing migration of the active; or said uniform distribution of said active maintained by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said active within said visco-elastic film, rapidly increasing the viscosity of the polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of pharmaceutical active, such that uniformity of content of the resulting films vary by no more than 10% in the amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different locations of the resulting film is in compliance with regulations governing same.

Moreover, the '080 Patent's description of the differences between Horstmann and Patentee's invention claimed in the '080 Patent is relevant to the Examiner's current rejections as well. For example:

"In one attempt to overcome non-uniformity, U.S. Pat. No. 5,629,003 to Horstmann . . . incorporated additional ingredients, i.e. gel formers and polyhydric alcohols respectively, to increase the viscosity of the film prior to drying in an effort to reduce aggregation of the components in the film. These methods have the disadvantage of requiring additional components, which translates to additional cost and manufacturing steps. Furthermore, both methods employ the use the conventional time-consuming drying methods such as a high-temperature air-bath using a drying oven, drying tunnel, vacuum drier, or other such drying equipment. The long length of drying time aids in promoting the aggregation of the active and other adjuvant, notwithstanding the use of viscosity modifiers. "

'080 Patent, col. 2, l. 63 to col. 3, l. 9.

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 129

Horstmann's use of conventional drying methods and need for gel formers teaches away from obtaining a resulting film with the desired uniformity of content of active of no more than 10% variation. Horstmann does not disclose the degree of uniformity of content, merely, for example, in Example 2, referring to film sections containing "approximately" 3 mg of active and a weight of "approximately" 80 mg. Horstmann, col. 5, ll. 15-36. Horstmann does not disclose that these amounts are based on any testing, or for that matter what they are based upon. The presently claimed process is not present in Horstmann, either literally or inherently, and it cannot anticipate the claims as pending. Moreover, one of ordinary skill in the art, considering the teachings of the cited reference as a whole, would not predictably or rationally arrive at the limitations of the present claims. For these reasons, Horstmann does not render obvious the pending claims of this rejection.

#### **IX. Conclusion**

No reference, either alone or in combination with other references, teaches the processes claimed by the '080 Patent. Entry of the amendments herein is respectfully requested. For at least the reasons set forth above, independent claims 1, 82, 161, and 321-324 are allowable. Claims 2 - 81, 83 - 160, 162 - 320, and 325-628 are allowable at least based on their dependencies, whether direct or indirect, from independent Claims 1, 82, 161, 321 and 322. Accordingly, Applicant respectfully requests that the Examiner reconsider and withdraw the rejections to same. Fees for addition of 4 new independent claims and 324 new dependent claims are due with this submission, and the Commissioner is authorized to charge this fee to Deposit Account No. 08-2461. Should any additional fees be due, the Commissioner is authorized to charge any additional fees, such as fees for extensions of time or additional claims, to Deposit Account No. 08-2461. Should the Examiner have any questions regarding this response, the undersigned would be pleased to address them.



Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 130

Respectfully submitted,

/Daniel A. Scola, Jr./  
Daniel A. Scola, Jr.  
Registration No.: 29,855  
Attorney for the Patentee

HOFFMANN & BARON, LLP  
6900 Jericho Turnpike  
Syosset, New York 11791  
(973) 331-1700

Patent No.: US 7,897,080  
Reexamination No.: 95/002,170  
Our Docket: 1199-26 RCE/CON/REXII  
Page 131

CERTIFICATE OF FIRST CLASS SERVICE

It is certified that a copy of this **REPLY BY PATENTEE TO A NON-FINAL OFFICE ACTION PURSUANT TO 37 C.F.R. §1.111** has been served, by first class mail, on January 29, 2013, in its entirety on the third party requester as provided in 37 CFR § 1.903 and 37 CFR § 1.248 at the address below.

DANIELLE L. HERRITT  
McCARTER & ENGLISH LLP  
265 FRANKLIN STREET  
BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS 02110

/Daniel A. Scola, Jr./  
Daniel A. Scola, Jr.  
Registration No.: 29,855  
Attorney for the Patentee

# EXHIBIT A

**IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

|                            |                    |                  |                        |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| Patentee:                  | Yang et al.        | Examiner:        | Diamond, Alan D.       |
| Patent No.:                | U.S. 7,897,080     | Group Art Unit:  | 3991                   |
| Reexamination Control No.: | 95/002,170         | Confirmation No. | 6418                   |
| Filed:                     | September 10, 2012 | H&B Docket:      | 1199-26<br>RCE/CON/REX |
| Dated:                     | January 29, 2013   | M&E Docket:      | 117744-00023           |

Mail Stop Inter Partes Reexam  
Central Reexamination Unit  
Commissioner for Patents  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

*Certificate of EFS-Web Transmission*  
*I hereby certify that this correspondence is being transmitted via the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office electronic filing system (EFS-Web) to the USPTO on January 29, 2013.*  
*Signed: Michael I. Chakansky / Michael I Chakansky/*

**DECLARATION OF B. ARLIE BOGUE, PH.D.  
UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132**

Madame:

I, B. Arlie Bogue, Ph.D., do hereby make the following declaration:

I. Technical Background

1. I have worked in the field of pharmaceutical development, and particularly oral dosage form development, for 22 years. I am employed by MonoSol Rx, LLC. ("Patentee"), the assignee of issued patent U.S. 7,897,080 ("the '080 Patent"), as Senior Director for Manufacturing Strategy and Innovation.
2. I have a BS in Physical Chemistry from Colorado State University. A Ph.D. in Chemical and Bio Engineering from Arizona State University. I have participated in postdoctoral studies in Biochemical Engineering at the University of Virginia.

3. During my career, I have been named as an inventor on over 23 U.S. patents and numerous foreign patents directed to the formulation, processing and/or packaging of pharmaceutical oral disintegrating unit doses (tablets and film strips). I have direct experience with the commercial scale processing of pharmaceutical film systems as well as an understanding of the content uniformity of active and methods for testing same.
4. I have read the '080 Patent and the Office Action issued on November 29, 2012 in the reexamination of the '080 Patent ("Office Action") and the references cited therein.

II. Producing resulting films in accordance with the '080 Patent

5. The resulting films discussed herein were manufactured for commercial use and regulatory approval in accordance with the invention disclosed in the '080 Patent by:

(a) forming a flowable polymer matrix comprising a water-soluble polymer, a solvent and an active, said matrix having a uniform distribution of said active by mixing the components in a high shear mixer;

(b) casting said flowable polymer matrix having a viscosity within the range from about 400 to about 100,000 cps onto a substrate on a commercial coating line;

(c) conveying said polymer matrix through a drying apparatus and evaporating at least a portion of said solvent from said flowable polymer matrix in a custom drying oven for a commercial coating line, thereby rapidly increasing the viscosity of said polymer matrix upon initiation of drying within about the first 4 minutes to maintain said uniform distribution of said pharmaceutical active by locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active within said visco-elastic film wherein the polymer matrix temperature is 100 °C or less;

(d) forming a resulting film from said visco-elastic film, wherein said resulting film has a water content of 10% or less and the resulting film as tested by analytical chemical means, see below, varies by no more than 10% with respect to the desired amount of the active present in substantially equally sized individual dosage units sampled from different location of the resulting film, by said locking-in or substantially preventing migration of said pharmaceutical active is maintained, wherein said resulting film is suitable for commercialization and regulatory approval.

### III. Analytical Chemical Testing for Content Uniformity of Patentee's Resulting Films

6. Individual dosage unit film samples all having the same dimensions were cut out from the resulting films using a commercial packaging machine. The samples were analyzed by a validated method, in compliance with Food and Drug Administration ("FDA") standards and regulations regarding same, in which the individual dosage units were at least partially dissolved, the active was entirely extracted from the film, and the extract was analyzed by High Performance Liquid Chromatography (HPLC) against an external standard to quantify the amount of active present in each individual dosage unit.
7. According to the inventive process set forth and claimed in the '080 Patent, each individual dosage unit film has a "target" or "desired" amount of active contained therein. The target amount of active, when it is a pharmaceutical, is referred to as the "Label Claim", thus identifying the amount of pharmaceutical active in the film to a user. Each unit dose film cut from the same batch of bulk film must have the desired content of pharmaceutical active, varying no more that 10% from the target or desired amount. That is, for each unit dose, the amount of active should be between 90% and 110% of the target or desired amount.
8. Patentee manufactures batches of film containing actives. Each batch is a separate manufacturing lot, ranging from 500,000 to 2,000,000 films per lot.

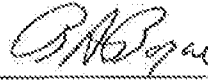
9. To demonstrate the uniformity of individual dosage unit films, I compiled Individual Film Dosage Unit Assay Data from seventy-three (73) different commercial lots of Patentee's resulting film products manufactured in accordance with the '080 Patent invention.
10. Ten (10) individual dosage units were removed from different locations of each lot, at least partially dissolved, and tested for the amount of active present in each sampled individual dosage unit.
11. Individual Film Dosage Unit Assay Data shows the content uniformity test results for the 730 sampled individual dosage units, ten each from the seventy-three (73) separate lots.
12. It can be seen from Appendix A that the active content of each individual dosage unit remains well within the control limits of 90% to 110%. The target or desired amount is 8.00 mg of active per individual dosage unit. The range of analytical chemical testing results among those 730 individual dosage units was 93.50% (7.48 mg) to 105.80% (8.47 mg) of the target or desired amount of active. This uniformity of content level is consistent with that described in the '080 Patent.

IV. '080 Patent Process Produces Films With Required Content Uniformity of Active

13. The results, shown in Appendix A, establish that the resulting films produced by the inventive method of the '080 Patent have a distribution of active within the limits required by the '080 Patent, in this case, performing analytical chemical tests for content uniformity of said active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units of said sampled resulting film, said tests indicating said substantially uniform distribution of the pharmaceutical active, in that the pharmaceutical active varies by no more than 10%.

I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like so made are punishable by fine or imprisonment, or both, under Section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and, that such statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patents issued thereon.

Dated this 29th, day of January, 2013



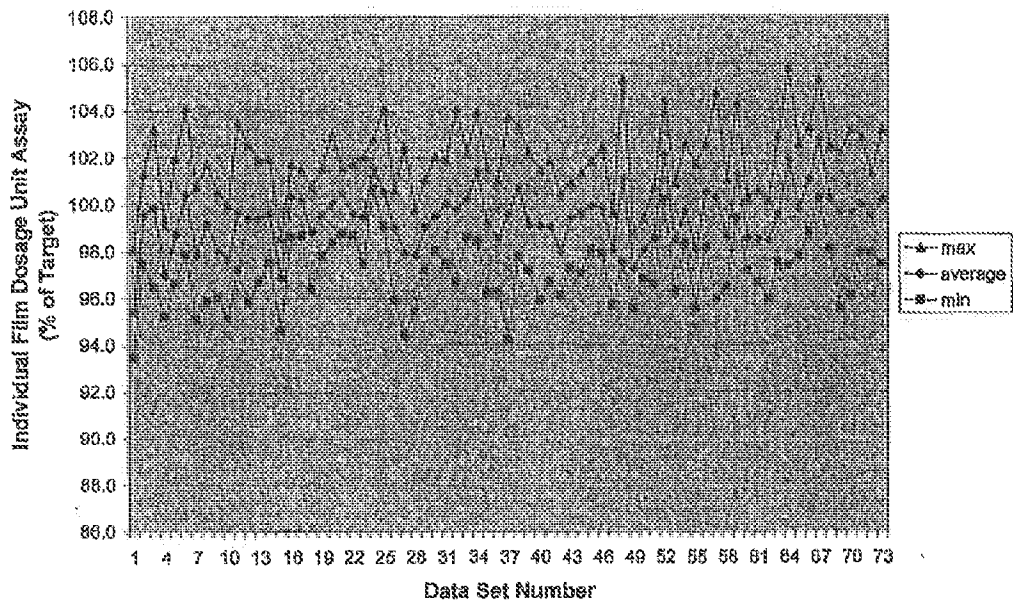
B. Arlie Bogue



# APPENDIX A

# APPENDIX A

### Individual Film Dosage Unit Assay Data



CERTIFICATE OF FIRST CLASS SERVICE

It is certified that a copy of this **DECLARATION OF B. ARLIE BOGUE, PH.D. UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132** has been served, by first class mail, on January 29, 2013, in its entirety on the third party requester as provided in 37 CFR § 1.903 and 37 CFR § 1.248 at the address below.

DANIELLE L. HERRITT  
McCARTER & ENGLISH LLP  
265 FRANKLIN STREET  
BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS 02110

/Daniel A. Scola, Jr./  
Daniel A. Scola, Jr.  
Registration No.: 29,855  
Attorney for the Patentee

# EXHIBIT B

**PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE**

|                            |                    |                  |                        |
|----------------------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------------|
| Patentee:                  | Yang et al.        | Examiner:        | Diamond, Alan D.       |
| Patent No.:                | U.S. 7,897,080 B2  | Group Art Unit:  | 3991                   |
| Reexamination Control No.: | 95/002,170         | Confirmation No. | 6418                   |
| Filed:                     | September 10, 2012 | H&B Docket:      | 1199-26<br>RCE/CON/REX |
| Dated:                     | January 29, 2013   | M&E Docket:      | 117744-00023           |

Mail Stop Inter Partes Reexam  
Central Reexamination Unit  
Commissioner for Patents  
U.S. Patent and Trademark Office  
P.O. Box 1450  
Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

**DECLARATION BY GERALD FULLER, PH.D. UNDER 37 C.F.R. §1.132**

Sir/Madam:

I, Gerald Fuller, Ph.D., do hereby make the following declaration:

**I. Technical Background**

1. I have worked in the field of fluid dynamics and rheology for 38 years, including research in the processing of complex polymeric liquids. I have extensive knowledge of the use of flowable polymer compositions in various coating and film-making. I have a B.Sc. in Chemical Engineering from the University of Calgary (1975), a M.S. in Chemical Engineering from Caltech (1977) and a Ph.D. in Chemical Engineering from Caltech (1980).

2. My work experience includes measurement of the viscoelasticity of various polymeric materials, including hydrocolloids. I have technical experience in industry working as a consultant for film-making companies, such as 3M and DuPont.

3. I am currently a professor at Stanford University where I hold the title: Professor Fletcher Jones Chair in the School of Engineering. I have taught fluid mechanics and rheology. Appendix I is a copy of my Curriculum Vitae.

4. I have published extensively on the subject of rheology and complex fluids and Appendix I provides a list of my publications and journal articles.

5. I have read the Office Action, U.S. Patent 7,897,080 B2, the references cited in the Office Action and Dr. Cohen's Declaration submitted by the Requestor.

## II. The Declaration of Dr. Cohen

6. It is my opinion that the film process as described by Chen at commercial scale would not inherently result in a film having a uniform distribution of active in the film. In particular, it is also my opinion that the film process of Chen would not inherently result in a film having a uniformity of content of active in substantially equal sized individual dosage units sampled from Chen's resultant film, where the active in the dosage units varies no more than 10%.

7. The process described by Chen does not describe how to dry in a manner that would avoid redistribution and inhomogeneity of a dissolved solute or suspended actives due to well-known thermodiffusive effects. The effects, also referred to as the Soret effect, can drive inhomogeneities during the drying of a previously homogeneous mixture. In other words, even if a solution containing a solute or suspended actives is spatially homogeneous in that constituent, the act of drying the solution to create a solid film can cause redistribution of the solute or suspended actives through the creation of temperature variations. This is the result of temperature gradients within the polymer film matrix causing the solute or suspended actives in the film to migrate and accumulate in different locations even if the solute or suspended actives were initially uniformly distributed. The Soret effect, which was described in 1800's, is a classical phenomenon, and is well-known to the chemical process industry. (see Appendix II)

8. Dr. Cohen's assumption that Chen's process will lead to films that are spatially homogeneous in composition is flawed because it does not recognize that thermodiffusive effects can result in spatial redistribution of constituents even if they were initially homogeneous prior to the application of heating during the process of film formation. Because Chen does not describe the film drying process, it cannot be assumed that any resulting temperature gradients within the polymer film matrix during the drying process will not lead to thermodiffusion and spatial inhomogeneity.

9. Chen does not discuss the development of viscoelasticity in the film during the drying process. Chen discloses the use of hydrocolloids and it is well-established that these materials can increase viscosity but will not necessarily enhance viscoelasticity. It is well known that viscosity is only one property within the general description of viscoelasticity. Even though these materials, such as Carbopol®, can lead to shear thinning materials, they are often inelastic and purely viscous. Chen does not recognize the mechanism of viscoelasticity of a film undergoing drying needs to be effectuated to retain the spatial uniformity of the constituents of that film. The development of viscoelasticity has the ability of arresting processes such as the Soret effect that can induce inhomogeneities. The Monosol process that creates a viscoelastic film within the first four (4) minutes of drying has the important benefit of locking in a spatially homogeneous distribution of components by inhibiting the effects of thermodiffusion to obtain active uniformity that does not vary more than 10% in the amount of active present in substantially equal sized individual dosage units.

10. Dr. Cohen is incorrect in his assumption that simply increasing the viscosity of a hydrocolloid material through film drying will retain spatial uniformity of the constituents of a film. In the absence of conditions which rapidly build viscoelasticity, components can diffuse spatially in a viscous media in response to thermodiffusive effects. The development of a rapid viscoelastic network formation is able to spatially constrain the diffusion of components and inhibit thermodiffusivity and retain spatial uniformity to the desired degree.

### III. Glossy and Transparent Do Not Indicate or Suggest Uniformity of Content

11. The Examiner has stated:

"Chen uses the same criteria discussed above with respect to the '080 patent in the Scope of Claims section for evaluation of substantial uniform distribution, i.e., weight of dosages and visual inspection. In particular, Chen's dried film product of Example 1 is cut into dosage units ready for packing (p. 17, lines 31-32) and has a weight of  $0.028 \pm 0.001$  g/dosage film, a density of  $1.0485 \pm 0.009$  g/cm<sup>2</sup>, a water content of  $1.7 \pm 0.24\%$ , and as noted above, a thickness of  $2.1 \pm 0.12$  mil (see Table 4); and the dried films are glossy and substantially transparent (p. 17, line 15), i.e., they are visually free of aggregation.... (Action at p.13)

In particular, in order to arrive at a dried film product as in Chen, which is made using the same materials as disclosed in the '080 patent and the same basic process steps here claimed, wherein the dried film is glossy and substantially transparent and has the gram per dosage, thickness, density and water content noted above for Example 1, then a viscoelastic film is inherently formed during Chen's 9-minute drying." (Action at p.15)

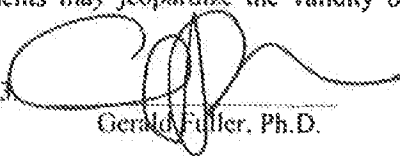
12. The term "glossy" is not interchangeable with, nor equivalent to the uniformity of content of components of a film, nor the content uniformity of an active in the film. It is also not interchangeable with a specific variation of active content in unit dosage samples taken from a film. "Glossy" is a general term for a uniform reflectiveness of light off of a surface. It is a type of visual surface uniformity, but it is not indicative, nor suggestive of the content uniformity of a film, nor the uniformity of distribution of active, e.g. solute, particles or particulates of pharmaceutical active, which are present in the film.

13. The term "transparent" is defined by the Examiner as "visually free of aggregation." The term "transparent" is conventionally defined as "having the property of transmitting light without appreciable scattering so that bodies lying beyond are seen clearly." (See <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/transparent>) This term, however, regardless of which definition is applied, is also a visual appearance characteristic that is neither indicative of nor suggestive of the uniformity of content of the film. In particular, this term does not necessarily provide any indication or suggestion of a specific variance of active per unit dose of film sampled therefrom.

14. I hereby declare that all statements made herein of my own knowledge are true and that all statements made on information and belief are believed to be true; and further that

these statements were made with the knowledge that willful false statements and the like are punishable by fine, or imprisonment, or both, under section 1001 of Title 18 of the United States Code, and that such willful statements may jeopardize the validity of the application or any patents issued thereon.

Dated this 29 day of January, 2013.



Gerald Fuller, Ph.D.



**CERTIFICATE OF FIRST CLASS SERVICE**

It is certified that a copy of this **DECLARATION BY GERALD FULLER, P.H.D. UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.132** has been served, by first class mail, on January 29, 2013, in its entirety on the third party requester as provided in 37 CFR § 1.903 and 37 CFR § 1.248 at the address below.

DANIELLE L. HERRITT  
McCARTER & ENGLISH LLP  
265 FRANKLIN STREET  
BOSTON, MASSACHUSETTS 02110

/Daniel A. Scola, Jr./  
Daniel A. Scola, Jr.  
Registration No.: 29,855  
Attorney for the Patentee

# APPENDIX I

**GERALD G. FULLER**  
**PERSONAL AND PROFESSIONAL VITAE**

**BIOGRAPHICAL INFORMATION**

Date of Birth: April 7, 1953.

Place of Birth: Washington, D.C.

**EDUCATION**

Ph.D., Chemical Engineering, California Institute of Technology, February 1980.

M.S., Chemical Engineering, California Institute of Technology, June 1977.

B.Sc., Chemical Engineering, University of Calgary, June 1975.

**SCHOLARSHIPS AND HONORS**

2011 Corresponding Member of the Russian and International Engineering Academy

2009 Distinguished Service Award, Society of Rheology.

2009 Associate Member, University of Wales Institute of Non-Newtonian Fluid Mechanics.

2009 Honorary Degree of Doctor of Philosophy of the University of Crete

2009 Journal of Rheology Publication Award for "Analysis of the magnetic rod interfacial stress rheometer" by Sven Reynaert, Carlton F. Brooks, Paula Moldenaers, Jan Vermant, and Gerald G. Fuller, Volume 52(1) pp. 261-285 (2008).

2008 Named one of the "One Hundred Engineers of the Modern Era" by the American Institute of Chemical Engineers (AIChE) marking the 100th Anniversary of the AIChE 2008-12, President of the International Committee on Rheology.

2008 to present, Advisory Committee for *Physics Today*, 2008.

2006, Cox Medal for Excellence in Fostering Undergraduate Research.

2006, Named the Fletcher Jones II Professor of Engineering at Stanford University.

2006, Foreign Associate of the Moroccan Academy of Science and Technology.

2005, National Academy of Engineering.

2004, Julian C. Smith Lectureship in Chemical and Biomolecular Engineering, Cornell University.

2004, Pearson Lecturer in Chemical Engineering, UCSB.

2004-08, Chairman of the XVth International Congress on Rheology.

2003, Holtz Lecturer, Dept of Chemical Engineering, Johns Hopkins University.

1999-04, Visiting Professor, Dept. Mechanical Engineering, Kings College, London.

1999-01 President of the Society of Rheology.

1997, Bingham Medal Award, The Society of Rheology.

1993, Fellow of the American Physical Society.

1990, Theile Lecturer, Department of Chemical Engineering, Notre Dame University, October.

NSF Presidential Young Investigator Award 1985.

1975-79, National Research Council of Canada Postgraduate Scholarship.

Society of Chemical Industry Gold Key Award 1975.

1975, Association of Professional Engineers, Geologists and Geophysicists, Gold Medal in Chemical Engineering.

1974, Hudson's Bay Oil and Gas Gold Medal in Chemical Engineering.  
1972, Dome Petroleum Scholarship in Chemical Engineering.  
1971, Queen Elizabeth Scholarship.

#### **WORK EXPERIENCE**

August 1, 2008 to July 31, 2009 and September 1, 1996 - February 1, 2001  
Chairman, Department of Chemical Engineering, Stanford University  
October 1990 - present  
Professor, Department of Chemical Engineering, Stanford University  
June 1996 - August 1996  
Visiting Professor, University of Strasbourg, France  
January 1994 - July 1994  
Visiting Associate Professor, Ecole des Mines de Paris, Nice, France  
July 1992 - August 1992  
Visiting Scientist, Materials Science, E.P.F.L., Lausanne, Switzerland  
June 1989 - September 1989  
Visiting Scientist, Chemical Engineering, Katholieke Universiteit, Leuven,  
Belgium  
October 1985 - September 1990  
Associate Professor, Chemical Engineering, Stanford University  
January 1987 - August 1987  
Visiting Scientist, AT&T Bell Laboratories Murray Hill, New Jersey  
October 1980 - September 1985  
Assistant Professor, Chemical Engineering, Stanford University  
February 1980 - September 1980  
Visiting Scientist, Centre de Recherches sur les Macromolecules Strasbourg,  
France  
October 1975 - February 1980  
Teaching and Research Assistant, California Institute of Technology, Pasadena,  
California  
May 1975 - September 1975  
Research Assistant in Theoretical Chemistry, University of Calgary, Calgary,  
Alberta  
May 1974 - September 1974  
Assistant Engineer, Shell Canada Ltd., Calgary, Alberta  
May 1973 - September 1973  
Gas Plant Operator, Imperial Oil Ltd., Edmonton, Alberta  
May 1972 - September 1972  
Laboratory Assistant, ATCO Research and Development Calgary, Alberta

#### **PROFESSIONAL ACTIVITIES**

Editorial Board Member for the J. Polymer Science: Polymer Physics, 2003 –  
present.  
Past President, Society of Rheology, 2001-2003.  
President, Society of Rheology, 1999-2001.  
Vice President, Society of Rheology, 1997-1999.

Chair, Local Arrangements Committee, Society of Rheology, 1998.  
Panelist, NSF Career Grant Committee, 1997.  
Member at Large, Executive Committee of the Society of Rheology, 1995 - 1997.  
Member Twenty-eighth Senate of the Academic Council, Stanford University,  
1995-1996.  
Chair of the Technical Committee, Society of Rheology, 1995.  
Panelist, NSF Workshop on Particle Science and Technology, 1993.  
Member, Nominating Committee, Society of Rheology, 1989.  
Member, Bingham Medal Award Committee, Society of Rheology, 1987 - 1989.  
Editorial Board Member for the Journal Rheologica Acta.  
Member of the A.I.Ch.E., Society of Rheology, APS, ACS.

## PUBLICATIONS

### Books

1. G.G. Fuller, "Optical Rheometry of Complex Fluids", Oxford University Press, New York, 1995.
2. Lydie Navard, Patrick Navard and Gerald Fuller, "Scientifically Yours", Corlet Imprimeur, S.A., France, 1995.

### Contributions to Books

1. G. G. Fuller and C. M. Ylitalo, "Optical Rheometry of Polymeric Liquids", chapter 6 in Polymer Rheology and Processing, A. Collyer and L. Utracki, Editors, Elsevier Applied Science, London, 1990.
  2. G.G. Fuller, J.A. Zawada and R.H. Colby, "Investigating Miscible Polymer Blend Dynamics with Optical and Mechanical Rheometry", Keynote Lectures in Selected Topics of Polymer Science, proceedings of Alicante Seminars. (1994).
  3. G.G. Fuller, J. van Egmond D. Wirtz, E. Peuvrel-Disdier, E. Wheeler and H. Takahashi, "Enhancement of Concentration Fluctuations in Solutions Subject to External Fields", ACS Symposium Series in "Flow Induced Structure in Polymers", A.I. Nakatani and M.D. Dadmun, editors, 597 (1995) 22-34.
  4. Gerald G. Fuller, "Fundamentals of Optical Rheometry", contribution to "Rheo-Physics of Multiphase Polymeric Systems, Application of Rheo-Optical Techniques in Characterization", (1995), pg. 15, Sondergaard, editor, Technomic Publishing Co., Inc., Lancaster, PA.
- Particle-laden interfaces: rheology, coalescence, adhesion and buckling G. G. Fuller, E. J. Stancik and S. Melle. in *Colloidal Particles at Liquid Interfaces*, edited by B. Binks and T. Horozov, Cambridge University Press, 2006.

### Refereed Publications

1. R. Paul and G.G. Fuller, "Applications of Field Theoretical Methods to the Calculation of Infrared Band Shapes of Molecules in Strongly Interacting Solvents", J. Chem. Phys. 64 (1976) 3809-3825.
2. G.G. Fuller, "A Modified Redlich-Kwong-Soave Equation of State Capable of Representing the Liquid State", I&EC Fundamentals 15 (1976) 254-257.
3. G.G. Fuller, J.M. Rallison, R. Schmidt, and L.G. Leal, "Measurements of Velocity Gradients in Laminar Flow by Homodyne Light Scattering Spectroscopy", J. Fluid Mech. 100 (1980) 555-575.
4. L.G. Leal, G.G. Fuller, and W.L. Olbricht, "Studies of the Flow-Induced Stretching of a Macromolecule in a Dilute-Solution", Prog. Astro. and Aero. 72 (1980) 351-372.
5. G.G. Fuller and L.G. Leal, "Flow Birefringence of Dilute Polymer Solutions in Two-Dimensional Flows", Rheol. Acta 19 (1980) 580-600.
6. G.G. Fuller and L.G. Leal, "Effect of Molecular Weight and Flow Type on Flow Birefringence of Dilute Polymer Solutions", Rheology, (G. Astarita, G. Marrucci, L. Nicolais, Eds.) vol. 2, pp. 393-398, Plenum Press, New York, 1980.
7. G.G. Fuller and L.G. Leal, "The Effects of Conformation-Dependent Friction and Internal Viscosity on the Dynamics of the Nonlinear Dumbbell Model for a Dilute Polymer Solution", J. Non-Newt. Fluid Mech. 8 (1981) 271- 310.

8. G.G. Fuller and L.G. Leal, "Network Models of Concentrated Polymer Solutions Derived from the Yamamoto Network Theory", *J. Polym. Sci.: Phys. Ed.* 19 (1981) 531-555.
9. G.G. Fuller and L.G. Leal, "Flow Birefringence of Concentrated Polymer Solutions in Two-Dimensional Flows", *J. Polym. Sci.: Phys.: Ed.* 19 (1981) 557-587.
10. G.G. Fuller, "Conformation and Dynamics of Adsorbed Polymer Molecules Subjected to Flow", *Adhesion Aspects of Polymer Coatings*, (K.L. Mittal, Ed.) pp. 243-251, Plenum Press, New York, 1983.
11. G.G. Fuller, "Dynamics of Adsorbed Polymer Chains Subjected to Flow: The Dumbbell Model", *J. Polym. Sci.: Polym. Phys. Ed.* 21 (1983) 151-157.
12. A.W. Chow and G.G. Fuller, "Response of Moderately Concentrated Xanthan Gum Solutions to Time-Dependent Flows Using Two-Color Flow Birefringence", *J. Rheol.* 28 (1984) 23-25.
13. P.L. Frattini and G.G. Fuller, "A Note on Phase Modulated Flow Birefringence: A Promising Rheo-Optical Method", *J. Rheol.* 28 (1984) 61-70.
14. J.-J. Lee and G.G. Fuller, "Ellipsometry Studies of Adsorbed Polymer Chains Subjected to Flow", *Macromol.* 17 (1984) 375-380.
15. J.-J. Lee and G.G. Fuller, "Flow Enhanced Desorption of Adsorbed Polymer Chains", *Polymer Adsorption and Dispersion Stability*, (E.D. Goddard and B. Vincent, Eds.) pp. 67-76, ACS Symposium Series No. 240 (1984).
16. P.L. Frattini and G.G. Fuller, "The Dynamics of Dilute Colloidal Suspensions Subject to Time Dependent Flow Fields by Conservative Dichroism", *J. Colloid Interfac. Sci.* 100 (1984) 506-518.
17. Ok Park and G.G. Fuller, "Dynamics of Rigid and Flexible Polymer Chains in Confined Geometries: Part I: Steady Simple Shear Flow", *J. Non-Newt. Fluid Mech.* 15 (1984) 309-329.
18. J.-J. Lee and G.G. Fuller, "Adsorption and Desorption of Flexible Polymer Chains in Flowing Systems", *J. Coll. Interfac. Sci.* 103 (1984) 569-577.
19. B.E. Zebrowski and G.G. Fuller, "Rheo-Optical Studies of Concentrated Polystyrene Solutions Subjected to Transient Simple Shear Flow", *J. Polym. Sci.: Polym. Phys. Ed.* 23 (1985) 575-590.
20. A.W. Chow, and G.G. Fuller, "The Rheo-Optical Response of Rod-Like Chains Subject to Transient Shear Flow, Part I: Model Calculations on the Effects of Polydispersity", *Macromolecules* 18 (1985) 786-793.
21. A.W. Chow, G.G. Fuller, D.G. Wallace and J.A. Madri, "The Rheo-Optical Response of Rod-Like Chains Subject to Transient Shear Flow, Part II. Two-Color Flow Birefringence Measurements", *Macromolecules* 18 (1985) 793-804.
22. S.J. Johnson, P.L. Frattini, and G.G. Fuller, "Simultaneous Dichroism and Birefringence Measurements of Dilute Colloidal Suspensions in Transient Shear Flow", *J. Coll. Interfac. Sci.* 104 (2) (1985) 440-455.
23. A.W. Chow, G.G. Fuller, D.G. Wallace and J.A. Madri, "The Rheo-Optical Response of Rod-Like Shortened Collagen Protein to Transient Shear Flow", *Macromolecules* 18 (1985) 805-810.
24. A.W. Chow and G.G. Fuller, "Some Experimental Results on the Development of Couette Flow for Non-Newtonian Fluids", *J. Non-Newt. Fluid Mech.* 17 (1985) 233-243.
25. Ok Park and G.G. Fuller, "Dynamics of Rigid Polymer Chains in Confined

- Geometries: II. Time Dependent Shear Flow", *J. Non-Newt. Fluid Mech.* 18 (1985) 111-122.
26. J.-J. Lee and G. Fuller, "The Effect of Segment/Boundary Hydrodynamic Interactions on the Dynamics of Adsorbed Polymer Chains Subjected to Flow", *J. Coll. Interfac. Sci.* 107 (1985) 308-313.
27. B.E. Zebrowski and G.G. Fuller, "Rheo-Optical Studies of Poly-Electrolyte Solutions in Simple Shear Flow", *J. of Rheology* 29 (1985) 943-954.
28. A.J. Salem and G.G. Fuller, "Small Angle Light Scattering as a Probe of Flow-Induced Particle Orientation", *J. Coll. Interfac. Sci.* 108 (1985) 149-157.
29. P.L. Frattini and G.G. Fuller, "Rheo-Optical Studies of the Effect of Weak Brownian Rotations in Sheared Suspensions", *J. of Fluid Mech.* 168 (1986) 119- 150.
30. S.J. Johnson and G.G. Fuller, "Flowing Colloidal Suspensions in Non-Newtonian Suspending Fluids: Decoupling the Composite Birefringence", *Rheological Acta*, (1986) 25 :405-417.
31. P.L. Frattini and G.G. Fuller, "Conservative Dichroism of a Sheared Suspension in the Rayleigh-Gans Light Scattering Approximation", *J. of Coll. and Interfac. Sci.* 119 (1987) 335-351.
32. G.G. Fuller, C. Cathey, B. Hubbard, and B.E. Zebrowski, "Extensional Viscosity Measurements for Low Viscosity Fluids", *J. Rheology* 31 (1987) 235-249.
33. S.J. Johnson and G.G. Fuller, "The Dynamics of Colloidal Particles Suspended in a Second Order Fluid", *Faraday Discussion*, 83, paper 18, 1987.
34. G.G. Fuller, S.J. Johnson and A.J. Salem, "Optical Rheometry of Dispersions", *Proceedings of the Tenth U.S. National Congress of Applied Mechanics*, 1987.
35. J.S. Lee and G.G. Fuller, "The Spatial Development of Transient Couette Flow and Shear Wave Propagation in Polymeric Liquids by Flow Birefringence", *J. of Non Newt. Fluid Mech.*, 26 (1987) 57-76.
36. S.J. Johnson and G.G. Fuller, "The Optical Anisotropy of Sheared Hematite Suspensions", *J. of Coll. and Interfac. Sci.*, 124 (1988) 441-451.
37. N.J. Wagner, G.G. Fuller and W.B. Russel, "The Dichroism and Birefringence of a Hard-Sphere Suspension under Shear", *J. of Chemical Physics*, 89 (1988) 1580-1587.
38. C. Cathey and G.G. Fuller, "Uniaxial and Biaxial Extensional Viscosity Measurements of Dilute and Semi-Dilute Solutions of Rigid Rod Polymers", *J. of Non-Newt. Fluid Mech.*, 30 (1988) 303-316.
39. L. Nunnelley and G.G. Fuller, "Optical Measurements of Particle Orientation in Magnetic Media", *J. Appl. Phys.*, 63 (1988) 1687-1690.
40. P. Moldenaers, G.G. Fuller, and J. Mewis, "Mechanical and Optical Rheometry of Polymer Liquid Crystal Domain Structure", *Macromolecules*, 22 (1989) 960- 965.
41. Gene R. Petersen, Gregory A. Nelson, Cheryl A. Cathey and Gerald G. Fuller, "Rheologically Interesting Polysaccharides from Yeasts", *Applied Biochemistry and Biotechnology*, 20/21 (1989) 845-867.
42. J.A. Kornfield, G.G. Fuller, and D.S. Pearson, "Infrared Dichroism Measurements of Molecular Relaxation in Binary Blend Melt Rheology", *Macromolecules*, 22 (1989) 1334-1345.
43. G. G. Fuller and K. J. Mikkelsen, "Optical Rheometry using a Rotary Modulator", *J. Rheol.*, 33 (1989) 761-769.
44. W. R. Burghardt and G. G. Fuller, "A Note on End Effects in Flow Birefringence



- Measurements", *J. Rheology*, 33 (1989) 771-779.
45. M. Doi, D. Pearson, J. Kornfield, and G. Fuller, "Effect of Nematic Interactions in the Orientational Relaxation of Polymer Melts", *Macromolecules*, 22, (1989) 1488-1490.
  46. C. A. Cathey and G. G. Fuller, "The Optical and Mechanical Response of Flexible Polymer Solutions to Extensional Flow", *J. NonNewtonian Fluid Mechanics*, 34 (1990) 63-88.
  47. S. J. Johnson, A. J. Salem, and G. G. Fuller, "Dynamics of Colloidal Particles in Sheared, NonNewtonian Fluids", *J. NonNewtonian Fluid Mechanics*, 34 (1990) 89-121.
  48. G. G. Fuller, "Optical Rheometry", *Ann. Rev. Fluid Mech.*, 22 (1990) 387-417.
  49. J. A. Kornfield, G. G. Fuller, and D. S. Pearson, "Stress Optical Measurement of the Third Normal Stress Difference in Polymer Melts under Oscillatory Shear", *Rheologica Acta*, 29 (1990) 105-116.
  50. V. Abetz and G. G. Fuller, "Two-color Rotary Modulated Flow Birefringence", *Rheol. Acta*, 29 (1990) 11-15.
  51. W. R. Burghardt and G. G. Fuller, "Transient Shear Flow of Nematic Liquid Crystals: Manifestations of Director Tumbling", *J. Rheol.*, 34 (1990) 959-992.
  52. V. Abetz, G. G. Fuller, and R. Stadler, "Infrared Linear Dichroism Spectroscopy by a Double Modulation Technique", *Polymer Bulletin*, 23 (1990) 447-454.
  53. Y. Monovoukas, G. G. Fuller, and A. P. Gast, "Optical Anisotropy in Colloidal Crystals", *J. Chem. Phys.*, 93 (1990) 8294-8299.
  54. C. M. Ylitalo, G. G. Fuller, V. Abetz, and R. Stadler, and D.S. Pearson, "Relaxation Dynamics of Selected Polymer Chain Segments and Comparison with Theoretical Models", *Rheol. Acta*, 29 (1990) 543-555.
  55. T. Schweizer, K. Mikkelsen, C. Cathey, and G. G. Fuller, "Mechanical and Optical Responses of the M1 Fluid Subject to Stagnation Point Flow", *J. NonNewt. Fluid Mech.*, 35 (1990) 277-286.
  56. L. L. Nunnolley, M. A. Burlison, and G. G. Fuller, "On-Line Tribology Measurements on Lubricated Rigid Disks", *IEEE Trans. Magnetics*, 26 (1990) 2679-2681.
  57. H. Yanase, P. Moldenaers, V. Abetz, J. van Egmond, G. G. Fuller, and J. Mewis, "Structure and Dynamics of a Polymer Solution Subject to Flow-induced Phase Separation", *Rheol. Acta*, 30, (1991) 89-97.
  58. C. M. Ylitalo, J. A. Kornfield, G. G. Fuller, and D. S. Pearson, "Molecular Weight Dependence of Component Dynamics in Bidisperse Melt Rheology", *Macromolecules*, 24 (1991) 749-758.
  59. J. S. Lee and G. G. Fuller, "Shear Wave Propagation in Polymer Solutions Following a Step Increase of Shear Rate", *J. NonNewt. Fluid Mech.*, 39, (1991) 1-15 .
  60. W. R. Burghardt, K. Smith, and G. G. Fuller, "Field Induced Anisotropy in Concentrated Systems of Rigid Particles and Macromolecules", *J. of Statistical Physics*, 62 Nos. 5/6, (1991) 1025-1039.
  61. G. G. Fuller and C. A. Cathey, "Extensional Viscometry of Polymer Solutions", presented at the 198th National Meeting of the ACS, Miami Beach, FL, Sept. 10-15, 1989, ACS Symposium Series 462, *Polymers as Rheology Modifiers*, D. N. Schulz and J. E. Glass, Editors, 48-60 (1991).
  62. W. R. Burghardt and G. G. Fuller, "Role of Director Tumbling in the Rheology of Polymer Liquid Crystal Solutions", *Macromolecules*, 24, (1991) 2546-2555.

63. Gerald G. Fuller and Caroline Ylitalo, "Infrared Polarimetry Studies for Multi Component Polymer Melts", *J. of Non Crystalline Solids* 131-133 (1991) 676-684.
64. J. A. Kornfield, G. G. Fuller, and D. S. Pearson, "Third Normal Stress Difference and Component Relaxation Spectra for Bidisperse Melts under Oscillatory Shear", *Macromolecules*, 24, (1991) 5429-5441.
65. C. Ylitalo and G.G. Fuller, "Temperature Effects on the Magnitude of Orientational Coupling Interactions in Polymer Melts", *Macromolecules*, 24, (1991) 5736-5737.
66. V. Abetz, G.G. Fuller and R. Stadler, "Infrared Dichroism by a Double Modulation Technique", *Makromol. Chem., Macromol. Symp.*, Vol. 52 (1991) 23-40.
67. J. Zawada, C. Ylitalo, G. Fuller, R. Colby and T. Long, "Component Relaxation Dynamics in a Miscible Polymer Blend: Poly(Ethylene Oxide)/Poly(Methyl Methacrylate)", *Macromolecules*, 25, (1992) 2896-2902.
68. Jan van Egmond and G.G. Fuller, "Time Dependent Small Angle Light Scattering of Shear-Induced Concentration Fluctuations in Polymer Solutions", *J. of Chem. Physics*, 96, (1992) 7742-7757.
69. C. Ylitalo, J.A. Zawada, G.G. Fuller and V. Abetz, "Oligomers as Molecular Probes of Orientational Coupling Interactions in Polymer Melts and Networks", *Polymer*, 33(14), (1992) 2949-2960
70. L. A. Archer, G. G. Fuller, and L. Nunnelley, "Dynamics of Polymer Liquids using Polarization Modulated Laser Raman Scattering", *Polymer*, 33(17), (1992) 3574-3581.
71. D. Rajagopalan, J.A. Byars, R.C. Armstrong, R.A. Brown, J.S. Lee and G.G. Fuller, "Comparison of Numerical Simulations and Birefringence Measurements in Viscoelastic Flow Between Eccentric Rotating Cylinders", *J. Rheology*, 36(7) (1992) 1349-1375.
72. D. Wirtz, K. Berend and G.G. Fuller, "Electric Field Induced Structure in Polymer Solutions near the Critical Point", *Macromolecules*, 25 (1992) 7234- 7246.
73. G. Fuller, J. van Egmond, J. Zawada and L. Archer, "Rheo-Optics for Multicomponent Liquids", *Proceedings of the Complex Fluids Symposium of the Materials Research Society Fall Mat. Res. Soc. Symp.*, 248 (1992) 139.
74. C.L. Hoffman, H.-T. Man and G.G. Fuller, "Orientation Dynamics of Side Chain Polymers subject to Electric Fields. Part I. Steady State", *Acta Polymer*, 44 (1993) 39-49.
75. K. Smith and G. G. Fuller, "Electric Field Induced Structure in Dense Dispersions of Colloidal Spheres", *J. of Coll. and Interface Sci.*, 155 (1993) 183-190.
76. E.L. Meyer, G.G. Fuller, R.C. Clark and W.-M. Kulicke, "Investigation of Xanthan Gum Solution Behavior under Shear Flow using Rheo-Optical Techniques", *Macromolecules*, 26 (1993) 504-511.
77. P. D'Haene, J. Mewis and G.G. Fuller, "Scattering Dichroism Measurements of Flow-Induced Structure of a Shear Thickening Suspension", *J. of Col. And Interf. Sci.*, 156 (1993) 350-358.
78. Denis Wirtz and Gerald G. Fuller, "Phase Transitions Induced by Electric Fields in Near-Critical Polymer Solutions", *Physical Review Letters*, 71 No.14 (1993) 2236-2239.
79. Jan van Egmond and Gerald G. Fuller, "Concentration Fluctuation Enhancement in Polymer Solutions by Extensional Flow", *Macromolecules*, 26 (1993) 7182- 7188 .
80. Eleanor L. Meyer, Gerald G. Fuller and Robert H. Reamey, "Structure and Dynamics of Liquid Crystalline Droplets Suspended in Polymer Liquids", *The International Society of Optical Engineering, Proceedings Series*, Vol. 2175 (1994) 71-78, reprinted from *Liquid Crystal Materials, Devices and Applications III*.

81. Ulf Seidel, Reimund Stadler and Gerald G. Fuller, "Relaxation Dynamics of Bidisperse Temporary Networks", *Macromolecules*, 27 (1994) 2066-2072.
82. Matthew C. Friedenberg, Gerald G. Fuller, Curtis W. Frank and Channing R. Robertson, "Formation of Bilayer Disks and Two-Dimensional Foams on a Collapsing/Expanding Liquid-Crystal Monolayer", *Langmuir*, 10 (1994) 1251-1256.
83. Lynden A. Archer and Gerald G. Fuller, "Segment Orientation in a Quiescent Block Copolymer Melt studied by Raman Scattering", *Macromolecules*, 27 (1994) 4359-4363.
84. Denis Wirtz, Douglas Werner and Gerald G. Fuller, "Structure and Optical Anisotropies of Critical Polymer Solutions in Electric Fields", *J. Chem. Phys.*, 101(2) (1994) 1679-1686.
85. Lynden A. Archer and Gerald G. Fuller, "Optical and Mechanical Properties of a Star Diblock Copolymer Melt in Oscillatory Shear Flow", *Macromolecules*, 27 (1994) 4804-4809.
86. Janet Lai and Gerald G. Fuller, "Structure and Dynamics of Concentration Fluctuations in a Polymer Blend Solution under Shear Flow", *J. of Polymer Sci.: Part B: Polymer Phys.*, 32 (1994) 2461-2474.
87. Gerald G. Fuller, Jeffrey A. Zawada and Ralph H. Colby, "Investigating Miscible Polymer Blend Dynamics with Optical and Mechanical Rheometry", *J. of Non-Crystalline Solids*, 172-174 (1994) 668-673.
88. Jeffrey A. Zawada, Gerald G. Fuller, Ralph H. Colby, Lewis J. Fetters and Jacques Roovers, "Measuring Component Contributions to the Dynamic Modulus in Miscible Polymer Blends", *Macromolecules*, 27 (1994) 6851-6860.
89. Jeffrey A. Zawada, Gerald G. Fuller, Ralph H. Colby, Lewis J. Fetters and Jacques Roovers, "Component Dynamics in Miscible Blends of 1,4-Polyisoprene and 1,2-Polybutadiene", *Macromolecules*, 27 (1994) 6861-6870.
90. Werner A. Goedel, Hong Wu, Matthew C. Friedenberg, Gerald G. Fuller, Mark Foster and Curtis W. Frank, "Monolayers of Perfluoropolyethers with a Hydrophilic Head Group", *Langmuir*, 10 (1994) 4209-4218.
91. Lynden Archer, Kelly Huang and Gerald G. Fuller, "Orientation Dynamics of a Polymer Melt Studied by Polarization Modulated Laser Raman Scattering", *J. of Rheology*, 38 (4) (1994) 1101-1125.
92. Ulf T. Reinhardt, Eleanor Meyer de Groot, Gerald G. Fuller and Werner-Michael Kulicke, "Rheo-optical characterization (flow-birefringence and flow-dichroism) of the tobacco mosaic virus", *Macromol. Chem. Phys.*, 196 (1995) 63-74.
93. Ulf Seidel, Reimund Stadler and Gerald G. Fuller, "Enhancement of Orientational Coupling in Bidisperse Polybutadiene Melts through the Implementation of Directed Interactions", *Macromolecules*, 28 (1995) 3739-3740.
94. Stuart F. Smith, Chen-Hua Liang, Michael E. Mackay and Gerald G. Fuller, "The Stress Jump of a Semirigid Macromolecule after Shear: Comparison of the Elastic Stress to the Birefringence," *J. of Rheology*, 39(4) (1995) 659-672.
95. Janet Lai and Gerald G. Fuller, "A Rheo-Optical Study of Near-Critical Polymer Solutions under Oscillatory Shear Flow," *J. of Rheology*, 39(5) (1995) 893-906.
96. Gerald G. Fuller, "Optical Rheometry of Multicomponent Polymer Liquids," *Macromol. Symp.*, 98, (1995) 997-1003.
97. Matthew C. Friedenberg, Gerald G. Fuller, Curtis W. Frank and Channing R. Robertson, "In Situ Optical Studies of Flow-Induced Orientation in a Polymer

- Monolayer," *Macromolecules*, 29 (1996) 705-712.
98. Kelly Huang, Lynden A. Archer and Gerald G. Fuller, "Microstructural Dynamics of a Homopolymer Melt Investigated using Two-Dimensional Raman Scattering," *Macromolecules*, 29 (1996) 966-972.
99. Janet Lai and Gerald G. Fuller, "Dynamic Response of a Near-Critical Polymer Blend Solution under Oscillatory Shear Flow," *J. of Rheology*, 40 (1996) 153-166.
100. M.C. Friedenber, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Direct Visualization of Flow-Induced Anisotropy in a Fatty Acid Monolayer," *Langmuir*, 12(6) (1996) 1594-1599.
101. Takayuki Maruyama, Matthew Friedenber, Gerald G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and Channing R. Robertson, "In Situ Studies of Flow-Induced Phenomena in Langmuir Monolayers," *Thin Solid Films*, 273 (1996) 76-83.
102. Elizabeth K. Wheeler, Pilar Izu and Gerald G. Fuller, "Structure and Rheology of Wormlike Micelles," *Rheologica Acta*, 35 (1996) 139-149.
103. Tsutomu Takahashi and Gerald G. Fuller, "Stress Tensor Measurement using Birefringence in Oblique Transmission," *Rheologica Acta*, 35 (1996) 297-302.
104. Takayuki Maruyama, Gerald G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and Channing R. Robertson, "Flow-Induced Molecular Orientation of a Langmuir Film," *Science*, 274 (1996) 233-235.
105. Gerald G. Fuller, "The Dynamic Birefringence of High Polymers : Comments", *J. Poly. Sci. Part B-Polym. Phys.* 34 (1996) 1505-1506.
106. Kelly Huang, Lynden A. Archer and Gerald G. Fuller, "Polarization Modulated Raman Scattering Measurements of Nematic Liquid Crystal Orientation," *Review of Scientific Instruments*, 67 (1996) 3924-3930.
107. Joerg Lauger, Channing R. Robertson, Curt W. Frank, and Gerald G. Fuller, "Deformation and Relaxation Processes of Mono and Bilayer Domains of Liquid Crystalline Langmuir Films on Water," *Langmuir*, 12 (1996) 5630-5635.
108. Pier Luca Maffettone, Massimiliano Grosso, Matthew Friedenber and Gerald G. Fuller, "Extensional Flow of a Two Dimensional Polymer Liquid Crystal," *Macromolecules*, 29 (1996) 8473-8478.
109. Eleanor M. de Groot and Gerald G. Fuller, "Electric Field Studies of Liquid Crystal Droplet Suspensions," *Liquid Crystals*, 23 (1997) 113-126.
110. Gerald G. Fuller, "Optical Rheometry of Complex Fluid Interfaces," *Current Opinion in Colloid and Interface Science* 2(#2) (1997) 153-157.
111. Takuji Kume, Takeji Hashimoto, Tsutomu Takahashi and Gerald G. Fuller, "Rheology, Dichroism, Birefringence, Small-Angle, Light Scattering and Shear-Microscopy Studies of Flow-Induced Structures in Semidilute Polystyrene Solutions," *Macromolecules* 30 (1997) 7232.
112. Elizabeth K. Wheeler, Pieter Fischer and Gerald G. Fuller, "Time-Periodic Flow Induced Structures and Instabilities in a Viscoelastic Surfactant Solution," *Journal of nonNewtonian Fluid Mechanics* 75 (1998) 193.
113. Kang Sub Yim, Carlton F. Brooks, Gerald G. Fuller, Curtis W. Frank, and Channing R. Robertson, "Flow-induced deformation and relaxation processes of polydomain structures in Langmuir monolayers", *ACS Symposium Series*, C. W. Frank, ed., Series 695 (1998) 43.
114. Eric D. Carlson, Toshitsugu Terakawa, Gerald G. Fuller, Mark T. Krejchi, Chirag

- Shah, Robert M. Waymouth, "Microscopic Investigation of the Macroscopic Physical Behavior of Elastomeric Polypropylene", *Macromolecules*, 31 (1998) 5343.
115. Takayuki Maruyama, Gerald G. Fuller, Pier Luca Maffettone, Massimiliano Grosso, "The Dynamics of Two Dimensional Polymer Nematics, *J. NonNewt. Fluid Mech.*, 76 (1998) 233.
116. Jan Vermant, Peter van Puyvelde, Paula Moldenaers, Jan Mewis, and Gerald G. Fuller, "Anisotropy and Orientation of the Microstructure in Viscous Emulsions during Shear Flow", *Langmuir*, 14 (1998) 1612.
117. Takayuki Maruyama, Joerg Lauger, Gerald G. Fuller, Curtis W. Frank, and Channing R. Robertson, "Orientation in a Fatty Acid Monolayer: Effect of Flow Type", *Langmuir*, 14 (1998) 1836.
118. Peter Fischer, Gerald G. Fuller, and Zuchen Lin, "Branched Viscoelastic Surfactant Solutions and their Response to Elongational Flow", *Rheol. Acta*, 36 (1997) 632.
119. Kelly Huang and Gerald G. Fuller, "Two Dimensional Raman Scattering Study of the Submolecular, Electric-Field-Induced Reorientation of a Nematic Liquid Crystal, *Liquid Crystals*", 25 (1998) in press.
120. Kelly Huang and Gerald G. Fuller, "Electric Field-induced Component Dynamics in a Binary Liquid Crystal Mixture Studied Using Two-Dimensional Raman Scattering", 25 (1998) in press.
121. D. Rusu, D. Genoe, P. van Puyveld, E. Peuvrel-Disdier, P. Navard, and G. G. Fuller, "Dynamic Light Scattering During Shear: Measurements of Diffusion Coefficients", *Polymer*, 40 (1998) 1353.
122. S. Melle, M. A. Rubio, and G. G. Fuller, "Orientation Dynamics of Magnetorheological Fluids Subject to Rotating External Fields", in R. Tao (ed.), *Electrorheological Fluids and Magnetorheological Suspensions*, (Proceedings of the Seventh International Conference on ER and MR Fluids, July 19-23, 1999, Honolulu), World Scientific Publishing, Singapore (1999)
123. Yirong Hu, Eric D. Carlson, Gerald G. Fuller, R. M. Waymouth, "Elastomeric Polypropylenes from Unbridged 2-Phenylindene Zirconocene Catalysts: Temperature Dependence of Crystallinity and Relaxation Properties", *Macromolecules*, in press, 1999.
124. Carlton F. Brooks, Gerald G. Fuller, Curtis W. Frank, and Channing R. Robertson, "An Interfacial Stress Rheometer To Study Rheological Transitions in Monolayers at the Air-Water Interface *Langmuir*", 15(#7) (1999) 2450-2459.
125. J. Vermant, L. Raynaud, J. Mewis, B. Ernst, G. G. Fuller, "Large-scale bundle ordering in sterically stabilized latices", *J. Coll. Int. Sci.*, 211(1999)221-229.
126. Rusu D, Genoe D, Vanpuyvelde P, Peuvreldisdier E, Navard P, Fuller G, "Dynamic Light-scattering During Shear : Measurements Of Diffusioncoefficients", *POLYMER*, 40 (1999) 1353-1357.
127. C. F. Brooks, J. Thiele, C. W. Frank, D. F. O'Brien, W. Knoll, G. G. Fuller, "Surface Shear Rheology of a Polymerizable Lipopolymer Monolayer", *LANGMUIR*, v. 18, 2166-2173 MAR 19, 2002).
128. S. Melle, G. G. Fuller, M. A. Rubio, "Structure and Dynamics of Magnetorheological Fluids in Rotating Magnetic Fields", *Phys. Rev. E*, 61 (1999) 4111.
129. E. D. Carlson, G. G. Fuller, R. M. Waymouth, "Component Relaxation Processes within Elastomeric Polypropylene", *Macromolecules*, 32, 8100-8106, 1999.

130. E. D. Carlson, G. G. Fuller, R. M. Waymouth, "The Transient Birefringence within Elastomeric Polypropylene Subjected to Step Shear Strain", *Macromolecules*, 32, 8094-8099, 1999.
131. D. J. Olson, G. G. Fuller, "Contraction and Expansion Flows of Langmuir Monolayers", *J. NonNewtonian Fluid Mech.*, 89 (2000) 187-207.
132. K. S. Yim, C. F. Brooks, G. G. Fuller, A. Datko, C. Eisenbach, "Surface Pressure-Induced Isotropic-Nematic Transitions in Polymer Monolayers: Effect of Solvent Molecules", *Langmuir*, 16 (2000) 4319.
133. K. S. Yim, C. F. Brooks, G. G. Fuller, A. Datko, C. Eisenbach, "NonNewtonian Rheology of Liquid Crystalline Polymer Monolayers", *Langmuir* 16 (2000) 4325-4332.
134. W.-M. Kulicke, U. Reinhardt, G. Fuller, O. Arendt, "Characterization of the flow properties of sodium carboxymethylcellulose via mechanical and optical techniques", *Rheol. Acta*, 38 (1999) 26.
135. P. Fischer, C. F. Brooks, G. G. Fuller, A. Ritcey, Y. Xiao, T. Rahem, Phase behaviour and flow properties of "Hairy-rod" monolayers, *Langmuir*, 16, 726- 734 (2000)
136. C. A. Naumann, C. F. Brooks, G. G. Fuller, W. Knoll, C. W. Frank, "Viscoelastic Properties of Lipopolymers at the Air-Water Interface: Combined Interfacial Stress Rheometer and Film Balance Study", *Langmuir*, 15 (1999) 7752-7761.
137. J. Vermant, L. Raynaud, J. Mewis, B. Ernst, G. G. Fuller, "Large-Scale Bundle Ordering in Sterically Stabilized Latices", *J. Coll. Inter. Sci.*, 211 (1999) 221- 229.
138. J. P. Kampf, C. F. Brooks, G. G. Fuller, C. W. Frank, "Evidence of a Glass Transition in a Langmuir Film of Monodendrons", in preparation, 2000.
139. P. Van Puyvelde, P. Moldenaers, J. Mewis and G.G. Fuller, "On the existence of a stress-optical relation in immiscible polymer blends", *Langmuir*, 16, 3740- 3747, 2000.
140. J. Vermant, H. Yang, G. G. Fuller, "Rheo-optical Determination of Aspect Ratio and Polydispersity, of Anisomeric Particles", *AIChE J.* 47 (2001) 791-798.
141. C. A. Naumann, C. F. Brooks, G. G. Fuller, T. Lehmann, J. Ruhe, W. Knoll, P. Kuhn, O. Nuyken, C. W. Frank, "Two-dimensional Physical Networks of Lipopolymers at the Air/Water Interface: Correlation of Molecular Structure and Surface Rheological Behavior", *Langmuir*, 17 (2001) 2801-2806.
142. C. A. Naumann, C. F. Brooks, W. Wyatno, W. Knoll, G. G. Fuller, C. W. Frank, "Rheological properties of lipopolymer-phospholipid mixtures at the air-water interface: A novel form of two-dimensional physical gelation", *Macromolecules*, 34 (2001) 3024-3032.
143. G. Fuller, K.-S. Yim, C. Brooks, D. Olson, and C. Frank, "The Rheology of Two-Dimensional Systems", *Korea-Australia Rheology Journal*, 11 (1999) 321- 328.
144. T. Sridhar, D. A. Nguyen, G.G. Fuller, "Birefringence and stress growth in uniaxial extension of polymer solutions, *J. Non-Newt. Fluid Mech.*, 90 (2000) 299.
145. Melle S, Rubio MA, Fuller GG, "Orientation dynamics of magnetorheological fluids subject to rotating external fields", *Int. J. Mod. Phys. B* , 15 (2001) 758- 766.
146. Sonia Melle, Miguel A. Rubio, and Gerald G. Fuller, "Time scaling regimes in aggregation of magnetic dipolar particles: Scattering dichroism results", *Physical Review Letters*, 8711 (2001) 5501.
147. D. Olson, J. Johnson, P. Patel, E. Shaqfeh, S. Boxer, G. Fuller, "Electrophoresis of DNA Adsorbed to a Cationic Supported Bilayer", *Langmuir*, 17, 7396-7401 NOV 13, 2001.

148. C. F. Brooks, J. Thiele, C. W. Frank, D. F. O'Brien, W. Knoll, G. G. Fuller, C. R. Robertson, "Surface Rheology of a Polymerizable Lipopolymer Monolayer", *Langmuir*, 18, 2166-2173 MAR 19, 2002.
149. Two-dimensional physical networks of lipopolymers at the air/water interface, Frank C.W., Naumann C.A., Knoll W., Brooks C.F., Fuller G.G., *Macromolecular Symposia*, 166 (2001) 1-12.
150. Yim K.S., Fuller G.G., Datko A., Eisenbach C.D., "Isotropic-nematic phase transitions of lyotropic, two-dimensional liquid crystalline polymer solutions", *Macromolecules*, 34 SEP 25 (2001) 6972-6977.
151. S. Melle, O. Calderón, M. Rubio, G. Fuller, Rotational dynamics in dipolar colloidal suspensions: video microscopy experiments and simulations results *J. Non-Newtonian Fluid Mech.* 102 (2002) 135-148.
152. S. Melle, O. Calderón, M. Rubio, G. Fuller, Polarizable Particle Aggregation Under Rotating Magnetic Fields Using Scattering Dichroism, *Journal of Colloid and Interface Science*, 247, pp. 200-209, MAR 1, 2002 .
153. E. Stancik, Widenbrant, M.J.O., Laschitsch A.T., Vermant J., G. Fuller, Structure and dynamics of particle monolayers at a liquid-liquid interface subjected to extensional flow, *Langmuir*, 18, 4372-4375 MAY 28, 2002.
154. K.-S. Yim, G. Fuller, Influence of Phase Transition and Photoisomerization on Interfacial Rheology, *Phys. Rev. E*, 67 (2003) 041601.
155. K.-S. Yim, B. Rahaii, G. Fuller, Surface Rheological Transitions in Langmuir Monolayers of Bi-competitive Fatty Acids, *Langmuir*, 18, 6597-6601 AUG 20, 2002 .
156. M. F. Schneider, K. Lim, G. G. Fuller, and M. Tanaka, Rheology of Glycocalix Model at Air/Water Interface, *Physical Chemistry Chemical Physics*, 4, 1949- 1952 2002
157. W. Wiyatno, J. Pople, A. P. Gast, R. M. Waymouth, G. G. Fuller, "Dynamic Response of Stereoblock Elastomeric Polypropylene Studied by Rheo-optics and X-ray Scattering: 1. Influence of Isotacticity", *Macromolecules*, 35, 8488-8497 (2002).
158. W. Wiyatno, J. Pople, A. P. Gast, R. M. Waymouth, G. G. Fuller, "Dynamic Response of Stereoblock Elastomeric Polypropylene Studied by Rheo-optics and X-ray Scattering: 1. Orthogonally-oriented Crystalline Chains", *Macromolecules*, 35, 8498-8508 (2002).
159. S. Melle, M. Rubio, G. Fuller, "Chain Rotational Dynamics in MR Suspensions", *International Journal of Modern Physics B*, 16, pp. 2293-2299 JUL 20, 2002.
160. Development of a double-beam rheo-optical analyzer for full tensor measurement of optical anisotropy in complex fluid flow, Takahashi T, Shirakashi M, Miyamoto K, Fuller GG, *Rheologica Acta*, 41, 448-455 AUG 2002
161. Morphology of thermoplastic elastomers: Elastomeric polypropylene, Schonherr H, Wiyatno W, Pople J, Frank CW, Fuller GG, Gast AP, Waymouth RM, *Macromolecules*, v. 35, 2654-2666 MAR 26, 2002
162. Fischer P, Wheeler EK, Fuller GG, "Shear-banding structure orientated in the vorticity direction observed for equimolar micellar solution", *Rheol. Acta*, 41, 35-44 JAN 2002
163. E. J. Stancik, G. T. Gavranovic, M. J. O. Widenbrant, A. T. Laschitsch, J. Vermant and G. G. Fuller, "Structure and dynamics of particle monolayers at a liquid/liquid interface subjected to shear flow", *Faraday Discuss.*, 123 (2003) 145-156.

164. J. Anseth, R. Hill, G. G. Fuller, "Interfacial Rheology of Graft-Type Polymeric Siloxane Surfactants", *Langmuir*, 19 (2003) 6349 - 6356.
165. Cicuta, P., Stancik, E. J., and Fuller, G. G., "Shearing or compressing a soft glass in 2D: Time-concentration superposition", *Phys. Rev. Lett.*, 90 (2003) 236101.
166. F. Pignon, A. Magnin, J.-M. Piau, G. G. Fuller, "The Orientation Dynamics of Fibrous Clay Suspensions Under Extensional Flow", *J. Rheology*, 47, 371-388 (2003).
167. Wiyatno, W; Fuller, GG; Pople, JA; Gast, AP; Chen, ZR; Waymouth, RM; Myers, CL, Component stress-strain behavior and small-angle neutron scattering investigation of stereoblock elastomeric polypropylene, *Macromolecules*, 36 (2003) 1178-1187.
168. Vlassopoulos, D; Terakawa, T; Fuller, GG, "Microstructural changes of a binary polymer blend in simple shear flow across the phase boundary", *J. Rheol.*, 47 (2003) 143-161.
169. E. J. Stancik and A. L. Hawkinson, J. Vermant, and G. G. Fuller, "Dynamic transitions and oscillatory melting of a two-dimensional crystal subjected to shear flow", *J. Rheol.*, 48 (2004) 159.
170. G. G. Fuller, Rheology of Mobile Interfaces, in *Rheology Reviews 2003*, K. Walters and D. Binding, editors, British Society of Rheology, 2003.
171. Sonia Melle, Oscar G. Calderon, Miguel A. Rubio, Gerald G. Fuller, "Microstructure evolution in magnetorheological suspensions governed by Mason number", *Phys. Rev. E.*, 68 (2003) 041503.
172. Motomu Tanaka, Stefan Schiefer, Christian Gege, Richard R. Schmid, and Gerald G. Fuller, Influence of subphase conditions on interfacial viscoelastic properties of synthetic lipids with gentiobiose head groups, *J. Phys. Chem. B* 108 (2004) 3211 - 3214.
173. H. Hoekstra, J. Vermant, J. Mewis, G. G. Fuller, "Flow-Induced Anisotropy and Reversible Aggregation in Two-Dimensional Suspensions", *Langmuir*, 19 (2003) 9134-9141.
174. E. Freer, K.S. Yim, G.G. Fuller, C. Radke, "Interfacial Rheology of Globular and Flexible Proteins at the Hexadecane/Water Interface: Comparison of Shear and Dilatation Deformation", *J. Chem. Phys.*, 108 (2004) 3835-3844.
175. E. J. Stancik, M. Kouhkan, G. G. Fuller, "Coalescence of Particle-Laden Fluid Interfaces", *Langmuir*, 20 (2004) 90-94.
176. Suzuki, H; Fuller, GG; Nakayama, T; Usui, H, "Development characteristics of drag-reducing surfactant solution flow in a duct", *Rheologica Acta*; 2004, 43, 232-239.
177. Stancik, EJ; Fuller, GG, "Connect the drops: Using solids as adhesives for liquids", *Langmuir*, 20 (2004) 4805-4808.
178. C. Monteux, G. G. Fuller, and V. Bergeron, "Shear and Dilational Surface Rheology of Oppositely Charged Polyelectrolyte/Surfactant Microgels Adsorbed at the Air/Water Interface. Influence on Foam Stability", *J. Phys. Chem. B.*, 108 (2004) 16473 - 16482.
179. E.M. Freer, K.S. Yim, G.G. Fuller, C.J. Radke, "Shear and Dilatational Relaxation Mechanisms of Globular and Flexible Proteins at the Hexadecane/Water Interface", *Langmuir*, 20 (2004) 10159 - 10167.
180. J.W. Luinge, G.W. Nijboer, J.G. Hagting, E.J. Vorenkamp, G.G. Fuller, A.J. Schouten, "Rheological behavior of precursor PPV monolayers", *Langmuir*, 20 (2004) 11517 - 11522.



181. J.Y. Lee, G.G. Fuller, N. Hudson, X-F. Yuan, "Investigation of shear-banding structure in wormlike micellar solution by pointwise flow-induced birefringence measurement", *J. Rheology*, 49 (2005) 537.
182. J. Deng, B. D. Viers, A. R. Esker, J. W. Anseth, G. G. Fuller, "Phase behavior and viscoelastic properties of trisilanocyclohexyl-POSS at the air/water interface". *Langmuir*, 21 (2005) 2375.
183. Sonia Melle, Mauricio Lask, and Gerald G. Fuller, "Pickering Emulsions with Controllable Stability", *Langmuir*, 21 (2005) 2158 – 2162
184. Jay W. Anseth, An J. Goffin, Gerald G. Fuller, Andrew J. Ghio, Peter N. Kao, and Daya Upadhyay, "Lung Surfactant Gelation Induced by Epithelial Cells Exposed to Air Pollution or Oxidative Stress", *American J. Respiratory Cell and Molec. Bio.*, 33 (2005).
185. G. Gavranovic, J. Deutsch, G. Fuller, "Two-dimensional Melts: Polymer Chains at the Air-Water Interface", *Macromolecules*, 38 (2005) 6672-6679.
186. H. Xu, S. Melle, K. Golemanov, G. Fuller, "Shape and Buckling Transitions in Solid-Stabilized Drops", *Langmuir*, 2005, 21, 10016-10020.
187. Wiwik Watanabe, Matthew Thomas, Robert Clarke, Alex Klibanov, Robert Langer, Gerald G. Fuller, Jennifer Fiegel and David Edwards "On the inhalation of salt water", *J. Coll. Interface Chem.*, 2007, 307, 71-78.
188. Grant T. Gavranovic, Rachel E. Kurtz, Konstantin Golemanov, Arno Lange, and Gerald G. Fuller, "Interfacial Rheology and Structure of Straight-Chain and Branched Hexadecanol Mixtures", *Ind. Eng. Chem.*, 45 (2006) 6880 - 6884.
189. C. Monteux, G. Laibe, R. Mangeret, E. Freyssingeas, V. Bergeron, G. Fuller, "Shear surface rheology of Poly-N(isopropylacrylamide), adsorbed layers at the air-water interface", *Macromolecules*; 2006; 39, 3408-3414.
190. M. G. Basavaraj, G. G. Fuller, J. Vermant, "Packing, flipping, and buckling transitions in compressed monolayers of ellipsoidal latex particles", *Langmuir*, 2006, 22, 6605-6612.
191. G. T. Gavranovic, M. M. Smith, W. Jeong, A. Y. Wong, R. M. Waymouth, G. G. Fuller, "Effects of Temperature and Chemical Modification on Polymer Langmuir Films", *J. Physical Chem.*, 110 (2006) 22285.
192. Gavranovic, G., Csihony, S., Bowden, N., Hawker, C., Waymouth, R., Moerner, W.E., Fuller, G., " Well-controlled living polymerization of perylene-labeled polyisoprenes and their use in single-molecule imaging", *Macromolecules*, 2006, 39, 8121-8127.
193. Kurtz, R. E., Lange, A., Fuller, G. G., "Interfacial rheology and structure of straight-chain and branched fatty alcohol mixtures", *Langmuir*, 22 (2006) 5321 – 5327.
194. Widenbrant, M. J. O., Rajadas, J., Sutardja, C., Fuller, G. G., "Lipid-Induced  $\beta$ -Amyloid Peptide Assemblage Fragmentation", *Biophysical J.*, 91 (2006) 4071.
195. C. Monteux, E. Jung, G. G. Fuller, "Mechanical properties and structure of particle coated interfaces : influence of the particle size and case of bidisperse 2D suspensions", *Langmuir*, 23 (2007) 3975.
196. Xu, Hui; Lask, Mauricio; Kirkwood, John; Fuller, Gerald, "Particle bridging between oil-water interfaces", *Langmuir*, 23 (2007) 4837-4841.
197. Rossetti, D., Yakubov, G. Stokes, J., Williamson, A.-M., Fuller, G., "The interaction of human whole saliva (HWS) and astringent dietary compounds investigated by interfacial shear rheology", *Food Hydrocolloids*, 22(2008)1068.

198. Sven Reynaert, Carlton F. Brooks, Paula Moldenaers, Jan Vermant, Gerald G. Fuller, "Analysis of the magnetic rod interfacial stress rheometer, *Journal of Rheology*, 52(2008)261.
199. Cécile Monteux, John Kirkwood, Hui Xu, Eric Jung, Gerald Fuller, "Determining the Mechanical Response of Particle-Laden Fluid Interfaces using surface pressure isotherms and bulk pressure measurements of droplets", *Phys. Chem. Chem. Phys.*, 9 (2007) 6344–6350.
200. Auguste, D.; Kirkwood, J.; Kohn, J.; Fuller, G.; Prud'Homme, R., "Surface rheology of hydrophobically-modified PEG polymers associating with a phospholipid monolayer at the air-water interface", *Langmuir*, 24(2008)4056.
201. Rachel E. Kurtz, Michael F. Toney, John A. Pople, Binhua Lin, Mati Meron, Jaroslaw Majewski, Arno Lange, and Gerald G. Fuller, *Langmuir Monolayers of Straight-Chain and Branched Hexadecanol and Eicosanol Mixtures*, *Langmuir*, 24 (2008) 14005.
202. Yang T., Knowles J, Lu Q, Rajadas J, Fuller G., Wang Q, Andreasson K, Moore L, Chang T, Massa SM, and Longo FM, Small molecule, non-peptide p75NTR ligands inhibit A $\beta$ -induced neurodegeneration, *PLoS ONE*, 3 (2008) e3604.
203. Nishimura, S., Magana, G., Ketelson, H., Fuller, G., The Effect of Lysozyme Adsorption on the Interfacial Rheology of DPPC and Cholesteryl Myristate Films, *Langmuir*, 24(2008)11728.
204. Yun Weng; Tienyi T Hsu; Jing Zhao; Stefanie Nishimura, Gerald G Fuller; James Sonner, Isovaleric, methylmalonic, and propionic acid decrease anesthetic EC50 in tadpoles, modulate glycine receptor function and interact with the lipid 1,2-dipalmitoyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphocholine, *Anesthesia & Analgesia*, 108 (2008) 1538.
205. Kirkwood, J., Fuller, G., "Liquid Crystalline Collagen: A Self-Assembled Morphology for the Orientation of Mammalian Cells", *Langmuir* 25 (2009) 3200.
206. Spigone, E.; Cho, G.; Fuller, G.; Cicuta, P., "Surface rheology of a polymer monolayer: effects of polymer chain length and compression rate", *Langmuir*, 25 (2009) 7457.
207. Vandebriel, S., Franck, A., Fuller, G. Moldenaers, P., Vermant, J., A Double Wall-Ring Geometry for Interfacial Shear Rheometry, *Rheologica Acta*, 49 (2009) 131.
208. Xu, H., Kirkwood, J., Lask, M., Fuller, G.G., Charge interaction between particle-laden fluid interfaces, *Langmuir*, 26 (2010) 3160.
209. Goffin, A., Rajadas, J., Fuller, G.G., Interfacial flow processing of collagen, *Langmuir*, 26 (2010) 3514.
210. D. Leiske, S. Raju, H. Ketelson, T. Millar and G. Fuller, The interfacial viscoelastic properties and structures of human and animal Meibomian lipids, *Experimental Eye Research*, 90 (2010) 598.
211. E. Spigone, G-Y. Cho, G. Fuller and P. Cicuta, Surface Rheology of a Polymer Monolayer: Effects of Polymer Chain Length and Compression Rate, *Langmuir*, 25 (2009) 7457.
212. S. Srivastava, D. Leiske, J. K. Basu, and G. Fuller, Interfacial shear rheology of highly confined glassy polymers, *Soft Matter*, 7 (2011) 1994.
213. M. Maas and G. Fuller, Thin Film Formation of Silica Nanoparticle/Lipid Composite Films at the Fluid–Fluid Interface *Langmuir*, 26(2010)17867–17873.
214. M. Maas, P. Guo, M. Keeney, F. Yang, T. Hsu, G. Fuller, C. Martin, R. Zare,

- Preparation of mineralized nanofibers: Collagen fibrils containing calcium phosphate, *Nano Lett.*, 11(2011)1383-1388.
215. E. Lai, Cl. Anderson, G. Fuller, Designing a tubular matrix of oriented collagen fibrils, *Acta Biomaterialia*, 7(2011)2448-2456.
216. T. Hsu, T. Walker, C. Frank, G. Fuller, Role of fluid elasticity on the dynamics of rinsing flow by an impinging jet, *Physics of Fluids*, 23(2011)033101.
217. D. Leiske, C. Monteux, M. Senchyna, H. Ketelson, G. Fuller, Influence of surface rheology on dynamic wetting of droplets with insoluble surfactants, *Soft Matter*, 7 (2011) 7747.
218. E. Chang, M. Galvez, J. Glotzbach, M. Longaker, J. Rajadas, G. Fuller, G. Gurtner, Vascular Anastomosis Using Controlled Phase Transitions In Poloxamer Gels, *Nature Medicine*, 17 (2011) 1147.
219. Michael Maas, Knut Müller, Gerald Fuller and Kurosch Rezwan, Assembly of Submicron Colloidosomes with Silica Nanoparticles Featuring a Selective Permeability for Controlled Biomolecule Release, *Advanced Materials*, submitted (2011).
220. Volkenstein S, Kirkwood JE, Lai E, Dazert S, Fuller GG, Heller S, Oriented collagen as a potential cochlear implant electrode surface coating to achieve directed neurite outgrowth, *Eur Arch Otorhinolaryngol.* 2011.
221. Leiske DL, Leiske CI, Leiske DR, Toney MF, Senchyna M, Ketelson HA, Meadows DL, Fuller GG, Temperature-Induced Transitions in the Structure and Interfacial Rheology of Human Meibum, *Biophys. J.*, 102 (2012) 369.
222. Leiske DL, Meckes B, Miller CE, Wu C, Walker TW, Lin B, Meron M, Ketelson HA, Toney MF, Fuller GG, Insertion Mechanism of a poly(ethylene oxide)-poly(butylene oxide) block copolymer into a DPPC monolayer, *Langmuir* 27 (2011) 11444.
223. Editorial: Dynamics and rheology of complex fluid-fluid interfaces, Fuller GG, Vermant J, *Soft Matter*, 7 (2011) 7583.
224. Wang L, Xie H, Qiao X, Goffin A, Hodgkinson T, Yuan X, Sun K, Fuller GG, Interfacial rheology of natural silk fibroin at air/water and oil/water interfaces, *Langmuir*, 28 (2012) 459.
225. Leiske DL, Miller CE, Rosenfeld L, Cerretani C, Ayzner A, Lin B, Meron M, Senchyna M, Ketelson HA, Meadows D, Srinivasan S, Jones L, Radke CJ, Toney MF, Fuller GG, Molecular structure of interfacial human meibum films, Langmuir, 2012 Aug 14;28(32):11858-65.
226. Wu C, Lim JY, Fuller GG, Cegelski L, Disruption of *Escherichia coli* Amyloid-Integrated Biofilm Formation at the Air-Liquid Interface by a Polysorbate Surfactant, *Langmuir* (2013) in press.
227. Huang NF, Lai ES, Ribeiro AJS, Pan S, Pruitt BL, Fuller GG, Cooke JP, Spatial patterning of endothelium modulates cell morphology, adhesiveness and transcriptional signature, *Biomaterials* (2013) in press.
228. Hsu, Tienyi; Leiske, Danielle; Rosenfeld, Liat; Sonner, James; Fuller, Gerald , 3-Hydroxybutyric Acid Interacts with Lipid Monolayers at Concentrations That Impair Consciousness, *Langmuir* (2013) in press.
229. Huang NF, Okogbaa J, Lee JC, Zaitseva TS, Paukshto MV, Sun J, Punjya N, Fuller GG, Cooke JP, Anisotropic nanofibrillar collagen scaffolds modulate endothelial cell morphology, function and survival, *Biomaterials* (2013) accepted.
230. Tenhu, Heikki; Niskanen, Jukka; Wu, Cynthia; Ostrowski, Maggie; Fuller,

- Gerald; Hietala, Sami, Tacticity affects thermal response of aqueous poly(dimethylaminoethyl methacrylate), *Macromolecules* (2013) submitted.
231. Liat Rosenfeld, Colin Cerretani, Danielle L. Leiske, Michael F. Toney, Clayton J. Radke, Gerald G. Fuller, Structural and Rheological Properties of Meibomian lipids, *IVOS* (2013) accepted.
232. Ranulfo Allen, Zhenan Bao and Gerald G Fuller, Oriented, polymer-stabilized carbon nanotube films: influence of dispersion rheology, *Nanotechnology* 23 (2012).

#### Patents

- Gerald G. Fuller, Ronald Garritano, Paul Mode, Measuring shear viscosity of fluids, US5115669, May. 26, 1992.
- A. Freeman, G. Fuller, D. Sierra, S. Conston, A. Michaels, Cell separation device and in-line orifice mixer system, US5,968,018, Oct. 19, 1999.
- A. Franck, J. Vermant, G. Fuller, System and Method for Interfacial Rheometry, US 7,926,326, 2011.
- G. Gurtner, G. Fuller, M. Lonagker, J. Rajadas, Compositions and methods for joining non-conjoined lumens, EP20070798901, 2009.
- G. Fuller, J. Kirkwood, Oriented Collagen Gel, US 2010/0227043, 2010.
- M. Pauksho, d. Mcmurtry, G. Fuller, Y. Bobrov, J. Kirkwood, Collagen Materials, films and methods of making same, US Pat. Appl. 20110151563, 2011.
- G. Fuller, J. Kirkwood, Oriented Collagen Gel, Application 12/660, 702; US 2010/0227043 A1, Sept. 2010.

#### Keynote and Plenary Lectures

1. G.G. Fuller and J.-J. Lee, The Dynamics of Adsorbed Macromolecules Subjected to Flow (invited lecture), presented at the I.U.P.A.C. 28th Macromolecular Symposium, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Massachusetts, July 1982.
2. G.G. Fuller, Adsorbed Polymer Layers Subjected to Flow (invited lecture). Workshop on Polymer-Flow Interaction. The La Jolla Institute, La Jolla, California, July 1985
3. G.G. Fuller, Invited Panelist on Coating Fundamentals, TAPPI Coating Conference, Washington, D.C., May 1986.
4. G.G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymeric Liquids (invited participant), U.S.-West Germany Polymer Science Symposium, Napa, California, September, 1987.
5. G.G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry (Keynote Lecture), Xth International Congress on Rheology, Sydney, Australia, August, 1988.
6. G. G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymeric Liquids (Keynote Lecture), National ACS Meeting, Los Angeles, CA, September 25-30, 1987.
7. G. G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymeric and Colloidal Liquids (invited lecture), Japan Society of Rheology, Nagaoka, Japan, October 2-7, 1988.
8. G. G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymeric Liquids (invited lecture). International Symposium on Polymer Analysis and Characterization, ACS Meeting, Dallas, TX, April 9-14, 1989.

9. G. G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymeric and Colloidal Liquids (invited participant), Workshop on the Dynamics of Concentrated Systems, Los Alamos Laboratory, New Mexico, June 13-15, 1989.
10. G. G. Fuller, Extensional Viscometry of Polymer Solutions (plenary lecture). Symposium on Rheology Modifiers, National ACS Meeting, Miami Beach, Florida, September 10-14, 1989.
11. G. G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry (invited lecture). Symposium on Polymer Rheology and Processing, Pacifichem 89, Honolulu, Hawaii, Dec. 17-22, 1989.
12. G. G. Fuller, Infrared Polarimetry Studies for Multi-Component Polymer Melts (invited lecture), International Discussion Meeting on Relaxation in Complex Systems, Heraklion, Crete, June 18-19, 1990.
13. G. G. Fuller, Infrared Optical Rheometry of Multicomponent Polymer Melts (keynote lecture), British Society of Rheology, Golden Jubilee Meeting, Edinburgh, Scotland, September 3-9, 1990.
14. G. G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry, Thiele Lectureship Award, Notre Dame University, Notre Dame, IN, October 10, 1990.
15. G. G. Fuller, Dynamics of Polymer Liquids using Optical Rheometry (keynote lecture), 23rd Annual Mardi Gras Symposium in Theoretical Chemistry, New Orleans, LA, February 5, 1991.
16. G. G. Fuller, Dynamics of Multicomponent and Heterogeneous Polymer Liquids (keynote lecture), APS 1991 March Meeting, Cincinnati, OH.
17. G.G. Fuller, Rheo-Optics of Multicomponent Polymeric Liquids (invited lecture), Materials Research Society Fall Meeting, Boston, MA, December 2-6, 1991.
18. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymer Liquids (keynote lecture), XIth International Congress on Rheology, Brussels, August, 1992.
19. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Multicomponent Complex Liquids (keynote lecture), 16th All Union Symposium on Rheology, Dnepropetrovsk, Ukraine, September 1992.
20. Gerald G. Fuller, Dynamics of Compatible Blends (invited lecture), Spanish National Council of Scientific Research, Alicante, Spain, July 1993.
21. J.A. Zawada, G.G. Fuller and R.H. Colby, Isolating Component Contributions to the Overall Rheology in 1,4-Polyisoprene/1,2-Polybutadiene Miscible Blends (invited lecture), presented at the International Conference on Rheometry of Polymers from the "Solution to the Melt", Abbaye Royale de Fontevraud, France, May 1993.
22. Gerald G. Fuller, Isolating Component Contributions to the Overall Rheology in 1,4-Polyisoprene/1,2-Polybutadiene Miscible Blends (invited lecture), presented at the Theoretical and General Rheology, British Society of Rheology Meeting, Cambridge, England, September 22-24, 1993.
23. Gerald G. Fuller, Orientational Coupling in Bidisperse Polymer Blends (invited lecture), presented at the 2nd International Meeting on Extensional and Shear Flow from the Solution to the Melt, St. Andrews, Scotland, June 19-22, 1994.
24. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Multicomponent Polymer Liquids (invited lecture), presented at the IUPAC International Symposium on Macromolecules, Akron, OH, July 11-15, 1994.
25. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow-Induced Structure in Multi-Component Polymers (invited

- lecture), presented at the ACS National Meeting, Washington, DC, August 21-26, 1994.
26. Gerald G. Fuller, Structure and Dynamics of Multi-Component Polymer Liquids (keynote lecture), presented at the 4th European Rheology Conference, Seville, Spain, September 4-9, 1994.
  27. Gerald G. Fuller, Recent Advances in Optical Rheometry (keynote lecture), presented at the Pacific Conference on Rheology and Polymer Processing, Kyoto, Japan, September 26-30, 1994.
  28. Gerald G. Fuller, Structure and Dynamics of Complex Liquids by Optical Rheometry (keynote lecture), Conference on Complex Fluids, International Centre of Condensed Matter Physics, University of Brasilia, Brazil, December 13-16, 1994.
  29. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow-Induced Concentration Fluctuations in Complex Liquids (keynote lecture), Polymer Processing Society-11, Seoul, Korea, March 27-30, 1995.
  30. Gerald G. Fuller, optical Studies of Flow-Orientation and Relaxation in Monolayer Films (invited lecture), Symposium on Interfaces and Surfaces in the Rheology of Polymers, ACS National Meeting, Anaheim, April 2-6, 1995.
  31. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow-Induced Orientation in Langmuir Monolayers (invited lecture), London Mathematical Society Symposium on Mathematical Models of Liquid Crystals and Related Polymeric Systems, University of Durham, England, July 10-20, 1995.
  32. Interfacial Dynamics of Polymer Monolayers (keynote lecture), 36th IUPAC International Symposium on Macromolecules, Seoul, Korea, August 4-9, 1996.
  33. Flow-Induced Orientation of Monolayers (invited lecture), Gordon Research Conference on Organic Thin Films, Ventura, CA, January 28 - February 2, 1996.
  34. Dynamics of Polymeric Fluids: Influence of Flow on Microstructure (invited lecture), Nineteenth Asilomar Conference on Polymeric Materials, Pacific Grove, CA, February 11-14, 1996.
  35. Concentration Fluctuations of Sheared Polymer-Polymer Solutions (invited lecture), The American Physical Society, Division of High Polymer Physics Meeting, St. Louis, MO, March 18-21, 1996.
  36. Orientational Dynamics of Polymer Liquids and Monolayers (invited lecture), CERSIM Colloque '96, Laval University, Quebec, Que., Nov. 29, 1996.
  37. Flow-Induced Dynamics of Polymer Liquids and Interfaces (invited lecture), Polymers West Gordon Research Conf., Ventura, CA, January 5 - 10, 1997.
  38. Elongational Flow of a Two-dimensional Polymer Nematic (invited lecture), MRS Spring 1997 Meeting, San Francisco, CA, March 31- April 4, 1997.
  39. Flow orientation of a two-dimensional polymer liquid crystal (invited lecture), The Second International Conference on Dynamics of Polymeric Liquids, Capri, Italy, May 7 - 10, 1997.
  40. Dynamics and Structure of Langmuir Monolayers Subject to Flow (invited lecture), 3rd International Discussion Meeting on Relaxations in Complex Systems, Vigo, Spain, June 30 - July 11, 1997.
  41. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids and Interfaces (Bingham Plenary Lecture), 69th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Columbus, OH

October 19-23, 1997.

42. Interfacial Rheometry of Complex Interfaces (Invited Paper), Symposium on Nonequilibrium Dynamic Processes at Colloidal Interfaces, ACS Spring Meeting, Dallas, TX, March 29 - April 2, 1998.
43. Recent Advances in Optical Rheometry (Keynote Lecture), The Polymer Processing Society, 14th Annual Meeting, Yokohama, Japan, June 8-12, 1998.
44. Dynamics and Crystalline Connectivity of Stereoblock Polypropylene (Invited Lecture), Mitsubishi Chemical Workshop on Polymer Manufacturing, Mizushima, Japan, June 4-5, 1998.
45. Rheology and Dynamics of Complex Langmuir Films (Invited Lecture), 72nd ACS Colloid and Surface Science Symposium, Pennsylvania State University, June 21-24, 1998.
46. Interfacial Rheology of Complex Interfaces (Keynote Lecture), 2nd Meeting of the Hellenic Society of Rheology and International Symposium, Heraklion, Crete, Greece, Aug. 21-Sept. 2, 1998.
47. Recent Advances in Optical Rheometry (Keynote Lecture), 5th European Rheology Conference, Portoroz, Slovenia, September, 6-11, 1998.
48. Flow-induced Morphology in Polymer-Polymer Emulsions (Invited Paper), AIChE Annual Meeting, Miami Beach, FL, Nov. 15-20, 1998.
49. Crystallization and Dynamics of Stereoblock Polyporopylenes (Invited Paper), Gordon Research Conference on Elastomers, Networks and Gels, New London, NH, July 18-23, 1999.
50. Optical and Extensional Rheology (Invited Lectures), Sixth European School of Rheology, 6th-10th September 1999, Leuven, Belgium.
51. Structure and Dynamics of Elastomeric Polypropylene (Invited Paper), First Southern Europe Conference on Rheology, Calabria, Italy, 7th-11th September 1999.
52. The Rheology of Two-Dimensional Systems (Plenary Lecture), Perspectives on Rheology for the 21C, 10th Anniversary Meeting of the Korean Society of Rheology, Seoul, Korea, Nov. 9-10, 1999.
53. Rheology in Two Dimensions (Invited Lecture), David V. Boger Symposium, Melbourne, Australia, Nov. 15-16, 1999.
54. The Rheology of Complex Interfaces (Plenary Lecture), Tiger-Hen Day - Joint Polymer Science Symposium between the University of Delaware and Princeton University, Newark, DE, Jan. 15, 2000.
55. Rheology in Two Dimensions (Plenary Lecture), Workshop on Surfactant Flows at Interfaces, The Institute for Surface and Interface Science, UCI, Laguna Beach, CA, April 28 & 29, 2000.
56. Dynamics of Polymers in 2D (Invited Lecture), Dillon Symposium of the APS March Meeting, Minneapolis, MN, Mar. 19-24, 2000.
57. Order and Disorder of Polymer Monolayers (Invited Lecture), Multi-Level Ordering by Competing Short and Long Range Interactions in Macromolecular Systems Discussion Meeting, Weingarten, Germany, June 3-8, 2000.
58. Interfacial Rheology in Polymer Processing (Invited Lecture), The Polymer Processing Society, Zlin, Czech Republic, Aug. 16-18, 2000.
59. Rheology Of Complex Fluid Interfaces (Invited Lecture), LB 9-Potsdam 2000,

- The Ninth International Conference on Organised Molecular Films, Potsdam, Germany, 8/28-9/1, 2000.
60. Rheology in Two Dimensions (Invited Lecture), Rheological aspects of surfactant based systems, Collingwood College, University of Durham, England, 18-19 Sept. 2000.
  61. The dynamics of polymer chains trapped in two dimensions (Invited Lecture), POLYMERS (WEST) Gordon Conference, January 7-11, 2001, Ventura, California.
  62. DNA Chains Slithering on Interfaces: Chain Dynamics in 2D (Invited Lecture), Chains@Interfaces 2001" Euroconference, Evora, Portugal, January 14 - 19, 2001.
  63. Rheology in Two Dimensions (Invited Lecture), London Rheology Group, Mechanical Engineering Department, Kings College, London, England, February, 22, 2001.
  64. Perspectives on Chemical Engineering (Invited Lecture), Korean Academy of Engineering, Seoul, Korea, May 29, 2001.
  65. Interfacial Rheology: Stresses and Strains in Flatland (Invited Lecture), Korean Society of Rheology, Postech, Korea, May 31, 2001.
  66. Crystallization and dynamics of stereoblock polypropylene (Invited Lecture), Gordon Conference, Polymers East, New Hampshire, July 9 - 12, 2001.
  67. Rheology in Two Dimensions (Invited Lecture), Swiss Rheology Society, Lausanne, Switzerland, September 4, 2001.
  68. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Conference On Process Modelling, Lake Vymwy Hotel, Powys, Mid-Wales, UK, March 25-27, 2002.
  69. Orientation Dynamics of Stereoblock Polypropylene (Invited Lecture), Symposium on Complex Liquids, Capri May 26-29, 2002.
  70. Orientation and Crystallization of Polypropylene, (Keynote Address), Polymer Processing Society, Guimares, Portugal, June 16-20, 2002.
  71. Structure and Dynamics of Particle Monolayers at a Liquid-Liquid Interface Subjected to Shear Flow (Invited Lecture), Faraday Discussion 123 on Non-Equilibrium Behavior of Colloidal Dispersions, Edinburgh, UK, Sept. 9-11, 2002.
  72. Rheology of Complex Fluid Interfaces (Invited Lecture), Polymer Processing Society, Tapei, Taiwan, Nov. 3-7, 2002.
  73. Interfacial Rheology and Emulsion Stability (Invited Lecture), Third International Symposium on Food Rheology and Structure, Zürich/Switzerland, Feb. 9 - 13, 2003.
  74. 2D Suspensions (Invited Lecture), Rheometry II, Miskin Manor, Cardiff, Wales UK, April 14-16, 2003.
  75. Holtz Lecturer, Department of Chemical Engineering, Johns Hopkins University, April 24 - 25, 2003.
  76. Dynamics of 2-Dimensional Colloidal Crystals (Invited Lecture), 3rd Chemical Engineering Conference for Collaborative Research in Eastern Mediterranean (EMCC-3), May 14-16, 2003, Thessaloniki, Greece
  77. Flow-induced Crystallization of Elastomeric Polypropylene (Invited Lecture), Polymer Processing Society, Melbourne, Australia, July 6 - 10, 2003.
  78. Coalescence of Particle-Laden Interfaces (Invited Lecture), Unilever Rheology



- Workshop, Clinton Inn, Tenafly, NJ, August 19-20, 2003.
79. Interfacial Rheology of Polymer Monolayers (Invited Lecture), Symposium Honoring Paul Flory, ACS Annual Meeting, New York, NY, September 7 - 11, 2003
  80. Lecturer, European School on Rheology (Invited Lecture), University of Leuven, Belgium, September 15 - 19.
  81. Stabilization of Pickering Emulsions (Invited Lecture), Nestle Rheology Workshop, Lausanne, Switzerland, September 23 - 25, 2003.
  82. Emulsion Stability and Interfacial Rheology (Invited Lecture), Special Panel Discussion on Rheology, American Association of Cereal Chemists, Portland, Oregon, September 28 - October 2, 2003.
  83. Stabilization of Emulsions by Protein Interfaces (Keynote Lecture), Food Processing Division, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, November, 2003.
  84. Interfacial Rheology (Invited Lecture), TA Instruments Workshop, San Antonio, TX, February 2 - 4, 2004.
  85. Particle-laden Interfaces (Invited Lecture), Neue Ansätze für innovative Polymerwerkstoffe (Professor Eisenbach Birthday Celebration), University of Stuttgart, Stuttgart, Germany, February 16 - 17, 2004.
  86. Particle Stabilized Emulsions (Invited Lectures), Particles 2004, Orlando, FL, March 7 - 9, 2004.
  87. Complex Fluid Interfaces (Visiting Professor), Hong Kong University of Science and Technology, Hong Kong, April 5 - 8, 2004.
  88. "Complex Fluid Interfaces" and "Connect the Drops - Particle Stabilized Emulsions", Smith Lectureship, Cornell University, Ithaca, NY, April 19 - 20, 2004.
  89. "Complex Fluid Interfaces" and "Connect the Drops - Particle Stabilized Emulsions", Pearson Lectureship, UCSB, Santa Barbara, CA, May 9 - 13, 2004.
  90. Particle Stabilized Emulsions (Plenary Lecture), Rheology Symposium of the Rheology Group of Brazil, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, July 7 - 9, 2004.
  91. Foam Stability (Invited Lecture), Unilever Workshop, Edgewater, NJ, July 22 - 23, 2004.
  92. Two-Dimensional Melts and Suspensions (Invited Lecture), SoftComp Symposium, University of Leuven, Leuven, Belgium, 20-21, 2005.
  93. Rheology and Stability of Complex Fluid Interfaces (Plenary Lecture), Unilever Corporate Review, Sharnbrook, England, May 9-12, 2005.
  94. Rheology of Complex Fluid Interfaces (Keynote Lecture), 6<sup>th</sup> Liquid Matter Conference, Utrecht, The Netherlands, July 2-6, 2005.
  95. Complex Fluid Interfaces and Emulsion Stability (Plenary Lecture), BASF Symposium, Ludwigshafen, Germany, Sept. 5-6, 2005.
  96. Short Course on Rheology (Invited Lecturer), University of Leuven, Leuven, Belgium, Sept. 12-15, 2005.
  97. Particle-stabilized emulsions with controllable stability (Keynote Lecture), Nanotechnology Talks IV, Frankfurt, Germany, Sept. 29-30, 2005.
  98. Two Dimensional Polymer Glasses (Invited Lecture), Dealy Symposium: Molecular Structure and Rheology, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Vancouver,

- Canada, October 16-20, 2005.
99. Two Dimensional Polymer Melts, Gordon Research Conference on Colloidal, Macromolecular & Polyelectrolyte Solutions (Invited Lecture), Ventura, CA, February 5 - 10, 2006.
  100. Complex Fluid Interfaces: Applications in Consumer Products and the Life Sciences, The Lodge Commemorative Meeting on Rheology (Keynote Lecture), Cardiff, Wales, April 10-12, 2006.
  101. Collagen Monolayers (Invited Lecture), Materials Research Society, San Francisco, CA, April 17-20, 2006.
  102. Interfacial Rheology: Applications from Industry and Nature (Invited Lecture), 2006 Users Meeting and Symposium, TA Instruments, Newport, Rhode Island, May 8-11, 2006.
  103. Two Dimensional Suspensions and Polymer Melts (Invited Lecture), IV Workshop on Non Equilibrium Phenomena in Supercooled Fluids, Glasses and Amorphous Materials, Pisa, Italy, September 17-22, 2006.
  104. Solid Stabilized Emulsions (Keynote Lecture), World Congress on Emulsions, Lyon, France, October 3-6, 2006.
  105. Solid Stabilized Emulsions (Invited Lecture), Special Symposium Honoring William Russel of Princeton, ACS National Meeting, Washington, DC, March 26, 27, 2007.
  106. Complex Fluid Interfaces (Plenary Lecture), Annual European Rheology Conference, Naples, Italy, April 12-14, 2007.
  107. Interfacial Rheology (Plenary Lecture), Korean Society of Rheology Annual Meeting, Seoul, S. Korea, May 17, 2007.
  108. Structure and Dynamics of Complex Fluid Interfaces (Keynote Lecture), ACS Colloids Meeting, University of Delaware, Newark, DE, June 24-27, 2007.
  109. European Short Course on Rheology (Invited Lecturer), Leuven University, Leuven, Belgium, September 2-7, 2007.
  110. Flow processing and rheology of complex fluid interfaces (Plenary Lecture in Interfacial Phenomena), AIChE Annual Meeting, Salt Lake City, UT, Nov. 4-9, 2008.
  111. Two Problems in Biomedicine: Rheology to the Rescue (Plenary Lecture). Korean Society of Rheology, Hanna Square at Korea University, Monday, Nov. 19, 2007, Plenary Lecture.
  112. Interfacial Flow Processing of Biological Materials (Keynote Lecture), Frontiers in Microrheology Workshop, California NanoSystems Institute, UCLA, Los Angeles, Feb. 6-10, 2008.
  113. Rheology and Materials Processing (Invited Lecturer), Science and Technology Panel of the Moroccan Academy of Science and Technology, University of Mohamedia, Feb. 18, 2008.
  114. Interfacial Flow Processing of Biological Materials (Plenary Lecture), Workshop on Complex Flows of Complex Fluids, Institute of Non-Newtonian Fluid Mechanics and the British Society of Rheology, University of Liverpool, UK, March 17-19, 2008.
  115. Interfacial Rheology (Keynote Lecture), TA 3<sup>rd</sup> User Meeting on Rheology and Thermal Analysis, Scottsdale, AZ, May 4-7<sup>th</sup>, 2008.
  116. Interfacial processing of collagen monolayers for contact guidance of mammalian cells (Keynote Lecture), Surfactants in Solutions (SIS) meeting in Berlin, Germany, Aug. 17-21, 2008.
  117. Interfacial Flow Processing of Collagen, Invited Lecture at the Symposium Honor

- Bud Homsy, AIChE Annual Meeting, Philadelphia, November 15-21, 2008.
118. Interfacial Flow Processing of Collagen Substrates, De Gennes Discussion Conference, Chamonix, France, Feb. 2-5, 2009.
119. Rinsing flows: using polymeric liquids as soft adhesives, Presentation to the Moroccan National Society of Science and Technology, February 24, 2009.
120. Rheology of High Interface Systems, Two Day Short Course to the Multiphase Flow Assurance Innovation Center, Oslo, Norway, March 23, 24, 2009 (with J. Vermant and S. Cox).
121. Interfacial Rheology (Invited Lecture), Rheology Research Center, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, April 3, 2008.
123. Oriented Collagen Substrates for Directed Cell Growth (Keynote Lecture), Inaugural Meeting of the Romanian Society of Rheology, Bran, Transylvania, Romania, June 15-19, 2009.
124. Interfacial rheology of Meibomian fluids (Invited Lecture), "Solving Dye Eye" Symposium, Sydney Australia, August 3-7, 2009.
125. Rinsing flows: Transforming polymeric liquids into soft adhesives (Plenary Lecture), 20<sup>th</sup> Anniversary of the Korean Society of Rheology, Seoul, Korea, August 19-21, 2009.
126. Lectures on "Extensional Viscosity" and "Interfacial Viscosity", European Rheology School, University of Leuven, Belgium, September 21-25, 2009.
127. Rheology to the Rescue: Two Problems in Biomedicine, Presentation of an Honorary Degree from the University of Crete, Heraklion, Greece, November 25, 2009.
128. Particle Removal by Rinsing Non-Newtonian Fluids (Keynote Lecture), Symposium on Complex Fluids, IIT Madras, Chennai, India, 4 – 9 January, 2010.
129. Rinsing Flows, A New Class of Non-Newtonian Flow (Invited Lecture), Welsh Conference on Rheometry, March 29-31, 2010, at Lake Vyrnwy, Wales UK.
130. Rinsing Flows: Turning Polymeric Liquids into Soft Adhesives (Plenary Lecture), Inaugural Meeting of the Brazilian Society of Rheology, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, July 14-16, 2010.
131. Interfacial Rheology (Series of Invited Lectures), DynaSoft2010: Dynamics in Soft Condensed Matter, Corsica, France, August 2-13, 2010.
132. Rinsing Flows of Non-Newtonian Fluids, Invited Lectures, International workshop on colloids and interface: Microstructure Fluids and Materials KAIST, Korea, 18th-20th August, 2010.
133. Particle Removal by Rinsing Polymeric Liquids (Plenary Lecture), South African Society of Rheology, 3<sup>rd</sup> Conference on Rheology, Cape Town, SA, September 8-10, 2010.
134. Bulk and Interfacial Rheology of Meibum and Its Effect on Dewetting (Invited Lecture), G. Fuller, D. Leiske, and L. Rosenfeld, International Congress on Industrial and Applied Mathematics, Vancouver, July 20-24, 2010.
135. Lifting physisorbed colloidal particles from solid surfaces (Keynote Lecture), ACS Meeting, March 27-31, 2011 in Anaheim, California
136. Rheology of Biological Interfaces (Plenary Lecture), University of Wales Institute of non-Newtonian Fluid Mechanics 20<sup>th</sup>, Apr. 18-20, 2011, Portmeirion Village, Wales.
137. Interfacial Rheology of Biological Fluids (Keynote Lecture), 7<sup>th</sup> Annual European Rheology Conference AERC, May 10-14, 2011 Suzdal, Russia.

138. Rinsing Flows: Ablation of non-Newtonian Liquids from Solid Surfaces (Plenary Lecture), Nordic Society of Rheology, Helsinki, Finland, June 8-10, 2011.
239. Rheology of Biological Interfaces (Plenary Lecture), Lorentz Workshop on the topic "Dynamics of complex fluid-fluid interfaces", University of Leiden, The Netherlands, September 26-29, 2011.

#### **Contributed Conference Presentations**

1. G.G. Fuller and L.G. Leal, Flow Birefringence of Concentrated Polymer Solutions Subjected to Two Dimensional Flows, presented at the Golden Jubilee Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Boston, Massachusetts, October 1979.
2. L.G. Leal, G.G. Fuller and W.L. Olbricht, Studies of the Flow Induced Stretching of a Macromolecule in Dilute Solution, presented at the Viscous Drag Reduction Symposium, Dallas, Texas, November 1979.
3. G.G. Fuller and L.G. Leal, Effect of Molecular Weight and Flow Type on Flow Birefringence of Dilute Polymer Solutions, presented at the VIIIth International Congress on Rheology, Naples, Italy, September 1980.
4. L.G. Leal and G.G. Fuller, Experimental and Theoretical Studies of Entanglement Network Models for Macromolecular Solutions, presented at the AIChE National Meeting Chicago, Illinois, November 1980.
5. G.G. Fuller, Dynamics of an Adsorbed Polymer Molecule Subjected to Flow, presented at the 159th meeting of the Electrochemical Society, Minneapolis, Minnesota, May 1981.
6. G.G. Fuller, Response of Adsorbed Polymer Molecules to an Imposed Flow, presented at the 28th Congress I.U.P.A.C., Vancouver, B.C., Canada, August 1981.
7. G.G. Fuller, The Response of Adsorbed Polymer Chains Subjected to Flow, presented at the AIChE National Meeting, New Orleans, Louisiana, November 1981.
8. G.G. Fuller, A.W. Chow and P.L. Frattini, Flow Birefringence in Time Dependent Flows, presented at the 54th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Evanston, Illinois, October 1982.
9. G.G. Fuller and A.W. Chow, Flow Birefringence of Rod Like Polymers in Transient Shear Flow, 185th ACS National Meeting, Seattle, Washington, March 1983.
10. G.G. Fuller, A.W. Chow and D. Wallace, Response of Collagen Solutions to Transient Shear by Two-Color Flow Birefringence, presented at the Fifth International Congress on Biorheology, Baden-Baden, FRG, August 1983.
11. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, The Response of Red Blood Cells to Transient Shear Flows by Phase Modulated Dichroism, presented at the Fifth International Congress on Biorheology, Baden-Baden, FRG, August 1983.
12. G.G. Fuller and J.-J. Lee, Flow-Enhanced Desorption of Adsorbed Polymer Chains, presented at the 186th ACS National Meeting, Washington, D.C., August 1983.
13. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, Flow-Induced Dichroism and Average Angle of Orientation of Colloidal Suspensions in Transient Shear Flow, presented at the

186th ACS National Meeting, Washington, D.C., August 1983.

14. G.G. Fuller and A.W. Chow, Response of Collagen Solutions to Transient Shear Flow by Two-Color Flow Birefringence, presented at the 55th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Knoxville, Tennessee, October 1983.

15. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, Flow-Induced Dichroism and Average Angle of Orientation of Colloidal Suspensions in Transient Shear Flow, presented at the 55th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Knoxville, Tennessee, October 1983.

16. G.G. Fuller and J.-J. Lee, Flow-Enhanced Desorption of Adsorbed Polymer Chains, presented at the 55th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Knoxville, Tennessee, October 1983.

17. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, Dynamics of Suspended Particles in Transient Shear Flow by Phase Modulated Flow Dichroism, 36th Annual Meeting of the Division of Fluid Mechanics, APS, Houston, Texas, November 1983.

18. G.G. Fuller and J.-J. Lee, Polymer Adsorption under Flowing Conditions by Ellipsometry, 58th ACS Colloid and Surface Sciences Symposium, Carnegie-Mellon University, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, June 10-13, 1984.

19. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, Colloidal Solutions in Transient Shear Flow by Phase-Modulated Conservative Dichroism, 58th ACS Colloid and Surface Sciences Symposium, Carnegie-Mellon University Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, June 10-13, 1984.

20. G.G. Fuller and A.W. Chow, Response of Rigid Collagen Protein Chains in Semi-Dilute Solution to Transient Simple Shear Flow by Two-Color Flow Birefringence, 58th ACS Colloid and Surface Sciences Symposium, Carnegie Mellon University, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, June 10- 13, 1984.

21. G.G. Fuller and B.E. Zebrowski, The Effect of Molecular Weight on Transient Birefringence of Concentrated Polymer Solutions, Proceedings of the IXth International Congress on Rheology, Acapulco, Mexico, October 1984.

22. G.G. Fuller and A.W. Chow, Two-Color Flow Birefringence of Collagen Subjected to Transient Shear Flow, Proceedings of the IXth International Congress on Rheology, Acapulco, Mexico, October 1984.

23. G.G. Fuller and J.-J. Lee, Adsorption and Desorption of Flexible Polymer Chains in Flowing Systems, Proceedings of the IXth International Congress on Rheology, Acapulco, Mexico, October 1984.

24. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, Microscale Dynamics of a Sheared Suspension by Linear Dichroism, Proceedings of the IXth International Congress on Rheology, Acapulco, Mexico, October 1984.

25. G.G. Fuller and A.W. Chow, Dynamics of Rod-Like Polymers Subject to Transient Flows, AIChE Annual Meeting San Francisco, California, November 1984.

26. G.G. Fuller and B.E. Zebrowski, Flow Birefringence Measurements of Concentrated Monodisperse and Bimodal Flexible Chain Solutions in Transient Flow, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, California, November 1984.

27. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, Dynamics of Dilute Colloidal Suspensions by Linear Dichroism, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, California, November 1984.

28. G.G. Fuller and O Ok Park, Transport of Rod-Like Polymers Through Small Channels, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, California, November 1984.
29. G.G. Fuller and P.L. Frattini, Dynamics of Colloidal Suspensions Subject to Transient Shear Flow, 5th International Physico-Chemical Hydrodynamics Conference, Tel Aviv, Israel, December 1984.
30. G.G. Fuller, B.E. Zebrowski and A.W. Chow, Response of Rod-Like and Flexible Polymer Chains to Transient Flows, 5th International Physico-Chemical Hydrodynamics Conference, Tel Aviv, Israel, December 1984.
31. G.G. Fuller, Optical Methods for Transient Flows, 56th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Blacksburg, Virginia, February 1985.
32. G.G. Fuller, Optical Methods for Suspension Rheology, European Mechanics Colloquium, No. 191, England, April 1985.
33. G.G. Fuller, Optical Techniques in Suspension Rheology, 5th International Conference on Surface and Colloid Science, Clarkson University, Potsdam, New York, June 1985.
34. G.G. Fuller, Optical Techniques in Suspension Rheology, AIChE National Meeting, Seattle, Washington, August 1985.
35. G.G. Fuller, Optical Techniques in Suspension Rheology, ACS Annual Meeting, Chicago, Illinois, September 1985.
36. G.G. Fuller and A.J. Salem, Small Angle Light Scattering as a Probe of Particle Orientation in Sheared Suspensions, AIChE Annual Meeting, Chicago, Illinois November 1985.
37. G.G. Fuller, Optical Techniques in Suspension Rheology, AIChE Annual Meeting, Chicago, Illinois, November 1985.
38. G.G. Fuller and S.J. Johnson, Optical Rheometry of Particles Suspended in NonNewtonian Fluids, International Conference on Viscoelasticity of Polymeric Liquids Grenoble, France, January, 1986.
39. G.G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry, 2nd Conference of European Rheologists, Prague, Czechoslovakia, June, 1986.
40. G.G. Fuller, S.J. Johnson and A.J. Salem, Optical Rheometry of Dispersions, 10th U.S. National Congress of Applied Mechanics, Austin, Texas, June, 1986.
41. S.J. Johnson and G.G. Fuller, The Motion of Colloid Particles Suspended in Polymeric Liquids, 60th Colloid and Surface Science Symposium, Atlanta, Georgia, June 1986.
42. G.G. Fuller, B. Zebrowski, C. Cathey, and J. Kornfield Electro-hydrodynamics of Colloidal Particles, Annual Meeting of the A.I.Ch.E., Miami Beach, Florida, November. 1986.
43. J.A. Kornfield and G.G. Fuller, Infra-red Dichroism as a Probe of Molecular Dynamics in Polydisperse Polymer Melts, Society of Rheology Winter Meeting, Santa Monica, CA, January, 1987.
44. G.G. Fuller and C.A. Cathey, An Extensional Viscometer for Low Viscosity Liquids at High Strain Rates, Society of Rheology Winter Meeting, Santa Monica, CA, January 1987.
45. S.J. Johnson and G.G. Fuller, The Fluid Dynamics of Colloidal Particles Suspended in Polymeric Liquids, Faraday Discussion No. 83: Brownian Motion, Cambridge, England, April, 1987.

46. G.G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Suspensions and Dispersions, Engineering Foundation Conference on Fluid-Particle Interactions, Davos, Switzerland, May 1987.
47. G.G. Fuller and K.S. Wagner, The Kinetics of Electric Field Induced Structure in Concentrated Suspensions, 18th Annual Meeting of the Fine Particle Society, Boston, Massachusetts, August, 1987.
48. J.S. Lee and G.G. Fuller, Development of Couette Flow and Shear Wave Propagation by Flow Birefringence, 59th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Atlanta, Georgia, October, 1987.
49. G.G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Lyotropic Liquid Crystals, 59th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Atlanta, Georgia, October, 1987.
50. G.G. Fuller, S.J. Johnson, and A.J. Salem, Dynamics of Particles Suspended within a Second Order Fluid, A.I.Ch.E. Annual Meeting, New York, NY, November, 1987.
51. G.G. Fuller and J.S. Lee, The Rayleigh Problem for Viscoelastic Fluids by Spatially Scanned Flow Birefringence, A.I.Ch.E. Annual Meeting, New York New York, November, 1987.
52. G.G. Fuller, The Development of an Instrument for Studying Low Viscosity Materials in Extensional Flow International Conference on Extensional Flow, Chamonix, France, January, 1988.
53. J.A. Kornfield, G.G. Fuller, and D.S. Pearson, Component Dynamics in Binary-Blend Rheology, APS Division of High-Polymer Physics Meeting, New Orleans, Louisiana, March, 1988.
54. G.G. Fuller, P. Moldenaers, and J. Mewis, Conservative Dichroism Measurements of Polymer Liquid Crystal Domain Structure in Flow, APS Division of High-Polymer Physics Meeting, New Orleans, Louisiana, March, 1988.
55. K.J. Mikkelsen, C.W. Macosko, and G.G. Fuller, Opposed Jets: An Extensional Rheometer for Low Viscosity Liquids, Xth International Congress on Rheology, Sydney, Australia, August, 1988.
56. C. A. Cathey and G.G. Fuller, The Mechanical and Optical Response of Low Viscosity Polymeric Liquids in Extensional Flow, Xth International Congress on Rheology, Sydney, Australia, August, 1988.
57. J. A. Kornfield and G.G. Fuller, Infrared Dichroism as a Probe of the Linear Viscoelasticity of Polydisperse Melts, Xth International Congress on Rheology, Sydney, Australia, August, 1988.
58. G. G. Fuller, Particle Orientation Measurements in Magnetic Media by High Speed Polarimetry, Symposium on Particulate Recording Media, Carnegie-Mellon University, Pittsburgh, PA, October 26-27, 1988.
59. G. G. Fuller, P. Moldenaers, and J. Mewis, Domain Structure in Polymer Liquid Crystals Subjected to Flow, A.I.Ch.E. Annual Meeting, Washington, D. C., Nov. 27 - Dec. 2, 1988.
60. C. A. Cathey and G. G. Fuller, Extensional Flow Properties of Flexible Chains, A.I.Ch.E. Annual Meeting, Washington, D. C., Nov. 27 - Dec.2, 1988.
61. W. R. Burghardt and G. G. Fuller, Rheo-optical Studies of Domain Dynamics in Polymer Liquid Crystal Rheology, 60th Annual Meeting of the Society of

- Rheology, Gainesville, FL., February 12-16, 1989.
62. C. M. Ylitalo, K. A. Kornfield, and G. G. Fuller, Molecular Weight Dependence of Molecular Relaxation in Bidisperse Melt Rheology, 60th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Gainesville, FL., February 12-16, 1989.
  63. K. Smith and G. G. Fuller, Electric Field-Induced Structure in Dense Colloidal Dispersions, 60th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Gainesville, FL., February 12-16, 1989.
  64. V. Abetz and G. G. Fuller, Two-Color Rotary Polarization Modulation Flow Birefringence, 60th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Gainesville, FL., February 12-16, 1989.
  65. K. Mikkelsen, T. Schweizer, and G. G. Fuller, Opposed Jets Extensional Rheometry on the M1 Standard Fluid, International Conference on Extensional Flow, Combloux, France, March 20-21, 1989.
  66. K. Smith, P. Adriani, G. Fuller and A. Gast, "Structural Anisotropy of Dense Colloidal Dispersions Subject to Electric Fields", 61st Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Montreal, Quebec, October 21-26, 1989.
  67. G. G. Fuller and J.-S. Lee, "Shear Wave Propagation in Polymeric Liquids", AIChE 1989 Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 5-10, 1989.
  68. G. G. Fuller and C. L. Valencia, "Measurements of Orientation Processes in Poling NLO Polymer Films", AIChE 1989 Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 5-10, 1989.
  69. G. G. Fuller and J.-S. Lee, "Shear Wave Propagation in Polymeric Liquids", APS 42nd Annual Meeting of the Division of Fluid Mechanics, NASA Ames Research Center, Palo Alto, CA, Nov. 19-21, 1989.
  70. G. G. Fuller, "Optical Rheometry of Polymeric Liquids", Golden Gate Polymer Forum, 1990 Asilomar Conference, Asilomar, CA, March 18-20, 1990.
  71. G. G. Fuller and K. Smith, "Electro-hydrodynamics of Colloidal Dispersions", Second World Congress on Particle Technology, Kyoto, Japan, September 19-22, 1990.
  72. G. G. Fuller, "Optical Rheometry of Dense Suspensions", NSF-DOE Workshop on Flow of Particulates and Fluids, Gaithersburg, MD, October 1-3, 1990.
  73. W. R. Burghardt and G. G. Fuller, "The Microstructure of Polymer Liquid Crystals Subject to Transient Flows", 62nd Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Santa Fe, NM, October 21-25, 1990.
  74. G. G. Fuller and C. M. Ylitalo, "Infrared Polarimetry Studies for Multicomponent Polymer Melts", 62nd Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Santa Fe, NM, October 21-25, 1990.
  75. W. R. Burghardt and G. G. Fuller, "The Role of Director Tumbling in Polymer Liquid Crystals", A.I.Ch.E. 1990 Annual Meeting, Chicago, IL, November 11-16, 1990.
  76. G. G. Fuller and J. van Egmond, "Flow-induced Phase Separation in Polymer Solutions", A.I.Ch.E. 1990 Annual Meeting, Chicago, IL, November 11-16, 1990.
  77. G.G. Fuller, C. Ylitalo and J. Zawada, "Dynamics of Polymer Blends", 201st ACS National Meeting, Atlanta, GA, April 14-19, 1991.
  78. G.G. Fuller and C.M. Ylitalo, "Infrared Polarimetry Studies for Multicomponent



- Polymer Melts", Prague Meeting on Macromolecules, Prague, Czechoslovakia, July 15-18, 1991.
79. J. van Egmond and G.G. Fuller, "Rheo-Optics of Flow Induced Phase Separation", ACS Annual Meeting, New York, N.Y., August 25-30, 1991.
80. G.G. Fuller, "Extensional Mechanical and Optical Properties of Dilute Polymer Solutions", VIth IFP Research Conference on Exploration-Production, St. Raphael, France, September 4-9, 1991.
81. G.G. Fuller and J. van Egmond, "Flow-Induced Phase Separation of Polymer Solutions", International Conference on Dynamics of Polymeric Liquids, Capri, Italy, September 11-14, 1991.
82. J. Zawada, C. Ylitalo and G.G. Fuller, "Component Relaxation Dynamics in Poly(ethylene oxide)-Poly(methyl methacrylate) Blends", AIChE Meeting, Los Angeles, CA, November 17-22, 1991.
83. D. Werner, G.G. Fuller and C.W. Frank, "Interrogation of Polymer Blends under Shear Flow by Small Angle Light Scattering and Excimer Fluorescence", AIChE Meeting, Los Angeles, CA, November 17-22/91.
84. C. Valencia and G.G. Fuller, "Poling of Polymer Films for Integrated Optics Applications", AIChE Meeting, Los Angeles, CA, November 17-22/91.
85. J.A. Zawada and G.G. Fuller, "Component Relaxation Dynamics in Miscible Blends of Poly(ethylene oxide) and Poly(methyl methacrylate)", 63rd meeting of the Society of Rheology, Rochester, N.Y., October 20-24, 1991.
86. L.A. Archer, G.G. Fuller and L. Nunnelley, "Dynamics of Polymeric Liquids using Polarization Modulated Laser Raman Scattering", poster presented at the Gordon Research Conference Polymers-West in Ventura, CA, January 6-10, 1992.
87. L.A. Archer and G.G. Fuller, "Polarization Modulated Laser Raman Scattering", presented at the XIth International Congress on Rheology, Brussels, August 1992.
88. D. Wirtz, K. Berend and G.G. Fuller, "Electric Field-induced Structure in Critical Polymer Solutions", poster presented at the XIth International Congress on Rheology, Brussels, August 1992.
89. P. D'Haeme, G.G. Fuller and J. Mewis, "Shear Thickening Effect in Highly Concentrated Colloidal Dispersions", presented at the XIth International Congress on Rheology, Brussels, August 1992.
90. E.L. Meyer and G.G. Fuller, "Aggregate Structures in Water-soluble Polymer Systems", presented at the XIth International Congress on Rheology, Brussels, August 1992.
91. J.W. van Egmond and G.G. Fuller, "Flow-induced Structure and Dynamics of Concentration Fluctuations of Polymer Solutions", presented at the XIth International Congress on Rheology, Brussels, August 1992.
92. D.E. Werner, G.G. Fuller and C.W. Frank, "Flow Induced Phase Transitions for Incompatible Blends", presented at the XIth International Congress on Rheology, Brussels, August 1992.
93. D. Wirtz, K. Berend and G.G. Fuller, "Small Angle Light Scattering, Dichroism and Birefringence Induced by an Electric Field in a Polymer Solution near the Critical Point", AIChE 1992 Annual Meeting, Miami Beach, FL, November 2,

1992.

94. J. van Egmond and G.G. Fuller, "Flow Induced Concentration Fluctuations in a Polymer Solution subject to Extensional Flow", AIChE 1992 Annual Meeting, Miami Beach, FL, November 4, 1992.
95. L.A. Archer and G.G. Fuller, "Orientation Dynamics of a Polymer Melt using Polarization Modulated Laser Raman Scattering", AIChE 1992 Annual Meeting, Miami Beach, FL, November 5, 1992.
96. P. D'Haene, J. Mewis and G.G. Fuller, "Scattering Dichroism Measurements of Flow-Induced Structure of a Shear Thickening Suspension", AIChE 1992 Annual Meeting, Miami Beach, FL, November 6, 1992.
97. J. van Egmond and G.G. Fuller, "Simultaneous Small Angle Light Scattering and Polairmetry Measurements on Flow-Induced Phase Separation", The Society of Rheology, 64th Annual Meeting, Santa Barbara, CA, February 1993.
98. J. van Egmond and G.G. Fuller, "An Hydrodynamic Instability in Polymer Solutions due to Coupling of Nonhomogeneity in Concentration and Stress", The Society of Rheology, 64th Annual Meeting, Santa Barbara, CA, February 1993.
99. D. Wirtz, K. Berend and G.G. Fuller, "Structural Dynamics of Concentrated Polymer Solutions in Electric Fields", The Society of Rheology, 64th Annual Meeting, Santa Barbara, CA, February 1993.
100. E.L. Meyer, J. van Egmond and G.G. Fuller, "Extensional Flow-Induced Aggregation in Polymer Systems", The Society of Rheology, 64th Annual Meeting, Santa Barbara, CA, February 1993.
101. Wirtz, K. Berend and G.G. Fuller, "Electric Field Induced Structure and Dynamics in Polymer Solutions and Gels", APS Meeting, Seattle, WA, March 22-26, 1993.
102. J. Lai, E. Meyer and G.G. Fuller, "Structure and Dynamics of Polymer-Polymer Solutions and Liquid Crystalline Polymer Emulsions", 2nd International Discussion Meeting on Relaxations in Complex Systems, Alicante, Spain, July 1993.
103. J.A. Zawada, G.G. Fuller and R.H. Colby, "Component Contributions to the Overall Rheology in 1,4-Polyisoprene/1,2-Polybutadiene Miscible Blends", Society of Rheology, Boston, MA, October 1993.
104. L.A. Archer and G.G. Fuller, "Orientation and Dynamics of Block-copolymer Melts using Laser Raman Scattering", Society of Rheology, Boston, MA, October 1993.
105. J. Lai and G.G. Fuller, "Structure and Dynamics of Polymer-Polymer Solutions under Shear Flow", Society of Rheology, Boston, MA, October 1993.
106. M. Friedenberg, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Rheo Optical Studies of Orientational Dynamics in a Polymer Liquid Crystal Monolayer", Gordon Research Conference for Organic Thin Films, Ventura, CA, February 1994.
107. M. Friedenberg, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Optical Studies of Monolayer Rheology", 1994 ACS Meeting, Stanford, CA, June 1994.
108. T. Takahashi, J. Vermant, G. G. Fuller, J. Mewis, Simultaneous Mechanical and Optical Measurements of a Polymer Liquid Crystal in Transient Shear, Pacific

- Conference on Rheology and Polymer Processing, Kyoto, Japan, September 26-30, 1994.
109. J. Lai and G.G. Fuller, "A Rheo-Optical Study of the Shear Effects on Polymer Blend Solutions", The Society of Rheology 66th Annual Meeting, Philadelphia, PA, October 1994.
110. D.E. Werner, G.G. Fuller and C.W. Frank, "Aparent Phase Transitions in Polymer Blends Induced by Oscillatory Shear Flow", The Society of Rheology 66th Annual Meeting, Philadelphia, PA, October 1994.
111. K. Huang and G.G. Fuller, "Two-Dimensional Raman Scattering: a new Technique for Investigating the Dynamics of Multicomponent Polymer Systems", The Society of Rheology 66th Annual Meeting, Philadelphia, PA, October 1994.
112. M. Friedenberg, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Rheo Optical Studies of Orientation Dynamics in Two-Dimensions: Monolayers at the Air-Water Interface", The Society of Rheology 66th Annual Meeting, Philadelphia, PA, October 1994.
113. L. Archer and G.G. Fuller, "Optical and Mechanical Properties of a Star Diblock Copolymer in Oscillatory Shear Flows", 1994 AIChE Meeting, San Francisco, CA, November 13-18, 1994.
114. J. Lai and G.G. Fuller, "Structural Dynamics of a Polymer Blend Solution under Oscillatory Flow", 1994 AIChE Meeting, San Francisco, CA, November 13-18, 1994.
115. M. Friedenberg, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Optical Studies of Flow-Orientation and Relaxation in Monolayer Films", 1994 AIChE Meeting, San Francisco, CA, November 13-18, 1994.
116. E.L. Meyer, G.G. Fuller and R.H. Reamey, "Liquid Crystal Droplet Emulsions: Observation of Biconcave Disc Shape", 1994 AIChE Meeting, San Francisco, CA, November 13-18, 1994.
117. K. Huang and G.G. Fuller, "Investigation of Polymer Blend Rheology using Two-Dimensional Raman Scattering", 1994 AIChE Meeting, San Francisco, CA, November 13-18, 1994.
118. M. C. Friedenberg, T. Maruyama, G. G. Fuller, C. W. Frank, C. R. Robertson, "Flow-Induced Orientation and Relaxation in Polymer Monolayers", APS 1995 March Meeting, San Jose, CA, March 20-23, 1995.
119. J. Lai, G. G. Fuller, "Coupling of Viscoelasticity and Structure in Polymer Blend Solutions under Oscillatory Shear Flow", APS 1995 March Meeting, San Jose, CA, March 20-23, 1995.
120. U. Seidel, R. Stadler, G. G. Fuller, "Relaxation Dynamics of Bidisperse Temporary Networks", APS 1995 March Meeting, San Jose, CA, March 20-23, 1995.
121. K. Huang, E. D. Carlson, G. G. Fuller, "Microstructural Dynamics of a Homopolymer Melts Approaching the Mechanical Glass Transition", APS 1995 March Meeting, San Jose, CA, March 20-23, 1995.
122. P.L. Maffettone, M. Grosso, S. Crescitelli, M.C. Friedenberg, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Orientation Dynamics of a Polymer Liquid Crystal Monolayer", presented by P.L. Maffettone at the 12th Annual Meeting of the

- Polymer Processing Society, Sorrento, Italy, May 27-31, 1996.
123. M.C. Friedenberg, P.L. Maffetone, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Interfacial Dynamics of Polymer Monolayers", presented at the IUPAC Macro Seoul '96 Conference, Seoul, Korea, August 4-9, 1996.
  124. T. Maruyama, J. Lauger, P.L. Maffetone, G.G. Fuller, C.W. Frank and C.R. Robertson, "Interfacial Rheology of Monolayers" presented at the XIIth International Congress on Rheology, Quebec, Canada, August 18-23, 1996.
  125. E. Wheeler, P. Izu, G. Fuller, "Rheo-optical Investigation of the Dynamics of Wormlike Micelles", XIIth International Congress on Rheology, Quebec City, Quebec, Canada, August 18-23, 1996.
  126. T. Maruyama, G. Fuller, C. Frank, C. Robertson, "Interfacial Rheology of Monolayers", XIIth International Congress on Rheology, Quebec City, Quebec, Canada, August 18-23, 1996.
  127. T. Maruyama, G. Fuller, C. Frank, C. Robertson, "Fluid Dynamics of Langmuir Monolayers", First International Workshop on "Thin Organic Films: properties and applications", Gallipoli, Italy, September 23-26, 1996.
  128. E. K. Wheeler, P. Izu, G. G. Fuller, "A Rheo-optical Investigation of Wormlike Micelles", The Society of Rheology 67th Annual Meeting, Sacramento, CA, October 8-12, 1995.
  129. T. Maruyama, G. Fuller, C. Frank, C. Robertson, "Dynamics of Liquid Crystalline Monolayers", The Society of Rheology 67th Annual Meeting, Sacramento, CA, October 8-12, 1995.
  130. G. Fuller, T. Maruyama, C. Frank, C. Robertson, "Fluid Dynamics of Langmuir Films", The American Physical Society, Division of High Polymer Physics Meeting, St. Louis, MO, March 18-21, 1996.
  131. G.G. Fuller, M. Friedenberg, P. Maffetone, M. Grosso, "Dynamics of Two Dimensional Polymer Liquid Crystals", 1996 AIChE Meeting, Chicago, IL, November 10-15, 1996.
  132. T. Maruyama, J. Lauger, G. Fuller, C. Frank, C. Robertson, "Interfacial Dynamics of Monolayers", 1996 AIChE Meeting, Chicago, IL, November 10-15, 1996.
  133. G.G. Fuller, C.R. Robertson, C.W. Frank, J. Laeuger, T. Maruyama, "Fluid Dynamics of Langmuir Monolayers", 1996 Materials Research Society Fall Meeting, Boston, MA, December 2-6, 1996.
  134. Eric D. Carlson, Toshitsugu Terakawa, Gerald G. Fuller, Mark T. Krejchi, Chirag Shah and Robert M. Waymouth, "Rheological Investigation of Stereoblock Polypropylene", The Society of Rheology 68th Annual Meeting, Galveston, TX, February 17-20, 1997.
  135. Toshitsugu Terakawa and Gerald G. Fuller, "Shear-Induced Structure of Rubber Toughened Styrenic Polymer using Sals", The Society of Rheology 68th Annual Meeting, Galveston, TX, February 17-20, 1997.
  136. Elizabeth K. Wheeler, Peter Fischer and Gerald G. Fuller, "Time-Periodic Flow Induced Structures in Visco-Elastic Surfactant Solutions", The Society of Rheology 68th Annual Meeting, Galveston, TX, February 17-20, 1997.
  137. Carlton F. Brooks, Channing R. Robertson, Curtis W. Frank and Gerald G. Fuller, "Magnetic Rod Surface Stress Rheometer", The Society of Rheology

- 68th Annual Meeting, Galveston, TX, February 17-20, 1997.
138. T. Maruyama, J. Lauger, G. G. Fuller, C. W. Frank and C. R. Robertson, "Flow-Induced Orientation of a Fatty Acid Monolayer", The Society of Rheology 68th Annual Meeting, Galveston, TX, February 17-20, 1997.
139. T. Maruyama, G. G. Fuller and P.-L. Maffettone, "Extensional Flow of a Two-Dimensional Nematic", The Society of Rheology 68th Annual Meeting, Galveston, TX, February 17-20, 1997.
140. G. Fuller, Dynamics of Complex Monolayers, ACS Spring Meeting, San Francisco, CA, April 13 - 18, 1997.
141. G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Dense Suspensions, International Fine Particle Research Institute, Osaka, Japan, June 8 - 13, 1997.
142. G. Fuller, Interfacial Rheometry of Complex Interfaces, International Union of Theoretical and Applied Mechanics, The University of Sydney, Sydney, Australia, July 20 - 25, 1997.
143. T. Maruyama, P. Fischer, G. Fuller, Dynamics of Polymer Monolayers, Second Pacific Rim Conference on Rheology, Melbourne, Australia, July 27 - 31, 1997.
144. C. Brooks, G. Fuller, C. Frank, C. Robertson, Interfacial Stress Rheometer, 8th International Conference on Organized Molecular Films, Asilomar, CA, August 24 - 29, 1997.
145. E.K. Wheeler, P. Fischer, G. Fuller, Rheo-optical investigations of viscoelastic micellar solutions, 69th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Columbus, OH October 19-23, 1997.
146. P. Fischer, A. Ritcey, G. Fuller, Flow Properties of "Hairy Rod" Monolayers formed by Cellulose Derivatives with and without attached Chromophores, 69th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Columbus, OH October 19-23, 1997.
147. C. Brooks, J. Hur, G. Fuller, C. Frank, C. Robertson, Mechanical Rheometry Study of a Polymer Liquid Crystal Monolayer, 69th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Columbus, OH October 19-23, 1997.
148. E. Carlson, G. Fuller, R. Waymouth, Rheo-optical Study of Elastomeric Polypropylene, 69th Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Columbus, OH October 19-23, 1997.
149. K. Yim, G. Fuller, Flow-Induced Orientation in a Two Dimensional Polymer Solution, AIChE 1997 Annual Meeting, Los Angeles, November 16-21, 1997.
150. C. Brooks, J. Hur, G. Fuller, C. Frank, C. Robertson, Surface Rheological Study of a Polymer Liquid Crystal Monolayer, AIChE 1997 Annual Meeting, Los Angeles, November 16-21, 1997.
151. G. Fuller, The Dynamics of Complex Fluid Interfaces, AIChE 1997 Annual Meeting, Los Angeles, November 16-21, 1997.
152. M. Lipp, C. Brooks, G. Fuller, J. Zasadzinski, Direct Measurement of the Effect of SP-B Protein on the Shear Viscosity of Model Lung Surfactant Monolayers, AIChE 1997 Annual Meeting, Los Angeles, November 16-21, 1997.
153. E. Wheeler, P. Fischer, G. Fuller, E. Shaqfeh, Flow-Induced Structures and Instabilities in Viscoelastic Micellar Solutions, AIChE 1997 Annual Meeting, Los Angeles, November 16-21, 1997.
- A. Mosler, E. Shaqfeh, G. Fuller, An Experimental Investigation of Drop Breakup

- in the Flow through a Fixed Bed of Fibers, AIChE 1997 Annual Meeting, Los Angeles, November 16-21, 1997.
154. E. Carlson, G. Fuller, R. Waymouth, Stereoblock Polypropylene Rheology, AIChE 1997 Annual Meeting, Los Angeles, November 16-21, 1997.
155. D. J. Olson, G. G. Fuller, Contraction/Expansion Flows of Non-Newtonian Monolayers, Society of Rheology Annual Meeting, Monterey, CA, Oct. 4-8, 1998.
156. K.-S. Yim, G. G. Fuller, C. W. Frank, C. R. Robertson, Isotropic-Nematic Transition in a Two-Dimensional Polymer Solution, Society of Rheology Annual Meeting, Monterey, CA, Oct. 4-8, 1998.
157. C. F. Brooks, J. Thiele, G. G. Fuller, C. W. Frank, W. Knoll, D. O'Brien, Surface Rheological Study of a Polymerizable Phospholipid Monolayer, Society of Rheology Annual Meeting, Monterey, CA, Oct. 4-8, 1998.
158. Structure and dynamics of polymer-tethered phospholipid membranes, Frank CW, Naumann C, Shen W, Brooks C, Fuller GG, Knoll W, ACS Meeting, New Orleans, LA, March 21, 1999.
159. G. Fuller, Dynamics of Complex, Nematic Interfaces, Eurorheo 99-1, Sophia-Antipolis, France, May 3-7, 1999.
160. Measurement of Particle Shape Distributions (Invited Poster), International Fine Particle Research Institute, Sommerset, NJ, June 9, 1999.
161. Flow-induced orientation of a flexible-chain polymer monolayer, David J. Olson, Gerald G. Fuller, Joke Hagting, and Arend Jan Schouten, 71st Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 17-21, 1999.
162. Study of rheological transition by photo-induced isomerization on Langmuir monolayers of azobenzene derivative, Kang Sub Yim, Gerald G. Fuller, and Curtis W. Frank, 71st Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 17-21, 1999.
163. PO35 First observation of the isotropic-nematic phase transition temperature of liquid crystalline polymers on two-dimensional Langmuir monolayers, Kang Sub Yim, Gerald G. Fuller, and Claus D. Eisenbach, 71st Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 17-21, 1999.
164. SF2 Birefringence and stress in uniaxial extension of polymer solutions, Tam Sridhar, D. A. Nguyen, and Gerald G. Fuller, 71st Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 17-21, 1999.
165. Surface rheology of a dendritic monolayer, J. Patrick Kampf, Carlton F. Brooks, Curtis W. Frank, Gerald G. Fuller, Craig Hawker, and Eva E. Malmström, 71st Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 17-21, 1999.
166. Contraction Flows of NonNewtonian Interfaces, G. G. Fuller and D. J. Olson, AIChE 1999 Annual Meeting, Dallas, TX, Oct. 31 - Nov. 5, 1999.
167. Order/Disorder Transitions in Polymer Interfaces, G. G. Fuller, K. S. Yim, AIChE 1999 Annual Meeting, Dallas, TX, Oct. 31 - Nov. 5, 1999.
168. Measurement of Interfacial Stress and Order in Flowing, Complex Interfaces, C. F. Brooks, G. G. Fuller, K. S. Yim, AIChE 1999 Annual Meeting, Dallas, TX, Oct. 31 - Nov. 5, 1999.
169. Non-newtonian Flows in 2D, D. Olson and G. Fuller, ACS Spring Meeting, San Francisco, Mar. 26-30, 2000.

170. Nematic Transitions in Polymer Monolayers, K. Yim, ACS Spring Meeting, San Francisco, Mar. 26-30, 2000.
171. Synthesis of well-defined long chain-branched polyolefins, Wiyatno W, Fox PA, Waymouth RM, Fuller GG, Hawker CJ, ACS Spring Meeting, San Francisco, Mar. 26-30, 2000.
172. Surface rheological transitions in Langmuir films of bicompetitive fatty acids, K. S. Yim, G. G. Fuller, ACS National Meeting, San Francisco, May 2000.
173. Dynamics of DNA adsorbed to fluid interfaces, D.J. Olson, J. M. Johnson, G. G. Fuller, S. G. Boxer, ACS National Meeting, San Francisco, May 2000.
174. Recent developments in patterning, manipulating, and interrogating supported bilayer membranes, Boxer SG, Kung L, Hovis J, Ajo C, Johnson J, Olson D, Fuller GG, ACS National Meeting, Washington, DC, Aug. 2000
175. Dynamics of Magnetic Fluids Subject to Rotating Magnetic Fields, S. Melle, G. Fuller, M. Rubio, XIIIth International Congress of Rheology, Cambridge, U. K., August 20-25, 2000
176. 2D Electrophoresis of DNA, D. Olson, G. Fuller, J. Johnson, S. Boxer, XIIIth International Congress of Rheology, Cambridge, U. K., August 20-25, 2000
177. Rheology of Complex Interfaces, G. Fuller, XIIIth International Congress of Rheology, Cambridge, U. K., August 20-25, 2000
178. Aggregation and Orientation of Magnetic Particles in Rotating Fields, S. Melle, G. Fuller, and M. Rubio, AIChE Annual Meeting, November 12-17, Los Angeles, CA.
179. Surface Gelation of Gelatin Solutions, K. Lim and G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, November 12-17, Los Angeles, CA.
180. 2D Electrophoresis of DNA, D. Olson, G. Fuller, J. Johnson, S. Boxer, AIChE Annual Meeting, November 12-17, Los Angeles, CA.
181. 2D electrophoresis and flow of DNA chains, Gerald G. Fuller, David J. Olson, and Ed Stancik, Society of Rheology, Hilton Head, SC, Feb 11 - 15, 2001.
182. Fluorescence microscopy experiments and Brownian dynamics simulations of flow behavior of DNA molecules confined to two dimensions, David J. Olson, Prateek D. Patel, Eric S. G. Shaqfeh, Steven G. Boxer, and Gerald G. Fuller, Society of Rheology, Hilton Head, SC, Feb 11 - 15, 2001.
183. Rheo-Optics and X-ray Scattering Study of Elastomeric Polypropylene, W. Wiyatno, J. Pople, A. P. Gast, R. M. Waymouth, and G. G. Fuller, ACS National Conference, Chicago, Aug 28, 2001
184. Mobility of DNA on cationic supported lipid bilayers, Marton A, Stancik EJ, Olson DJ, Johnson JM, Boxer SG, Fuller GG, ACS National Conference, Chicago, Aug 28, 2001.
185. Study of uniaxial extensional flow and morphology of elastomeric polypropylenes, Gerald G. Fuller, Willy Wiyatno, Holger Schonherr, John Pople, Robert M. Waymouth, Curtiss Frank, and Alice Gast, 73rd Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, October 21 - 25, 2001, Bethesda, MD.
186. Two-dimensional suspensions: Dynamics and rheology, Gerald G. Fuller, Alex Laschitsch, Martin Widenbrant, Ed Stancik, and Jan Vermant, 73rd Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, October 21 - 25, 2001, Bethesda, MD.
187. Flow-induced structures and rheology of concentrated latex suspensions, J.

- Vermant, H. Hoekstra, J. Mewis, E. Stancik, A. Laschitsch, G.G. Fuller, Jülich Soft Matter Days 2001, 13 - 16 November, 2001 Congressentrum Rolduc, Kerkrade, NL
188. Fibrous clay gels: extensional flow properties. Dichroism and SALS measurements, Frédéric Pignon, Albert Magnin, Jean-Michel Piau, Gerald G. Fuller, 2nd International Conference on Self-Assembled Fibrillar Networks, Autrans, France, November 24 - 28, 2001.
189. Two-dimensional suspensions : dynamics and rheology, J. Vermant, H. Hoekstra, J. Mewis, G G. Fuller, Annual Meeting of the Dutch Rheological Society, DSM Research, Geleen, The Netherlands, April 17, 2002.
190. Phase behavior of silicone copolymers swollen with water and oil. Hill RM, Fuller GG, Anseth J, 224th ACS National Meeting, August 18-22, 2002, Boston, MA
191. Orientation dynamics and crystallization of elastomeric polypropylenes. Fuller GG, Wiyatno W, Pople J, Gast AP, Waymouth R, ACS National Meeting, April, 2002, Orlando, FL.
192. Interfacial rheology of graft-type siloxane surfactants, Jay W. Anseth, Randal M. Hill, and Gerald G. Fuller, Society of Rheology Annual Meeting, Minneapolis, MN, Oct. 2002.
193. Complex fluid interfaces, Gerald G. Fuller, Society of Rheology Annual Meeting, Minneapolis, MN, Oct. 2002.
194. The structure and dynamics of particle monolayers at a liquid-liquid interface subjected to flow, Edward J. Stancik, Martin J. O. Widenbrant, Grant T. Gavranovic, Alex T. Laschitsch, Jan Vermant, and Gerald G. Fuller, Society of Rheology Annual Meeting, Minneapolis, MN, Oct. 2002.
195. Flow Induced Structure and Dynamics of Particle Monolayers Trapped at a Liquid-Liquid Interface, E. Stancik, M. Widenbrant, G. Gavranovic, A. Laschitsch, J. Vermant, G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, Indianapolis, IN, Nov. 2002.
196. Connect the Drops, E. Stancik, G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, Nov., 2003.
197. Rheology of Complex Siloxane Interfaces, J. Anseth, R. Hill, G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, Indianapolis, IN, Nov. 2002.
198. Interfacial Rheology of Lung Surfactants, J. Anseth, P. Kao, D. Upadhyay, G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, Nov., 2003.
199. Shear and Dilational Rheology of Protein Monolayers, E. Freer, K.S. Yim, G. Fuller, C. Radke, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, Nov., 2003.
200. Particle Laden Interfaces, E. Stancik, G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, Nov., 2003.
201. Surface gels of polyelectrolytes and surfactants, C. Monteux, O. Anthony, G. Fuller, C. Williams, V. Bergeron, MACRO 2004, 40th IUPAC World Polymer Congress, Paris, France, July 4-9, 2004.
202. Complex Fluid Interfaces, G. Fuller, International Congress on Rheology, Seoul, Korea, August 23 - 26, 2004.
203. Interfacial Rheology of Polymer Monolayers, G. Gavonovic, G. Fuller, International Congress on Rheology, Seoul, Korea, August 23 - 26, 2004.



204. Tracking Vesicles Bound to Phospholipid Monolayers, M. Wildenbrandt, G. Fuller, International Congress on Rheology, Seoul, Korea, August 23 – 26, 2004.
205. Particle Stabilized Emulsions, G. G. Fuller, E. Stancik, AIChE Annual Meeting, Austin TX, Nov. 7-12, 2004.
206. Two-Dimensional Gelation of Lung Surfactant Monolayers, J. Anseth, G. G. Fuller, P. Kao, D. Upadhyay, AIChE Annual Meeting, Austin TX, Nov. 7-12, 2004.
207. Surface Diffusion of Lipid Vesicles Attached to Membranes, M. Wildenbrandt, G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, Austin TX, Nov. 7-12, 2004.
208. Two-Dimensional Polymer Melts, G. Gavranovic, J. Deutsch, G. Fuller, AIChE Annual Meeting, Austin TX, Nov. 7-12, 2004.
208. A. Goffin, J. Anseth, G. Fuller, D. Upadhyay, P. Kao, Viscoelasticity of lung surfactant responding to environmental stress, Soc. Rheology Annual Meeting, Lubbock, TX, Feb. 13-17, 2005.
209. M. Widenbrant, G. Fuller, Using single lipid tracking to investigate Langmuir monolayer properties, Soc. Rheology Annual Meeting, Lubbock, TX, Feb. 13-17, 2005.
210. G. Gavranovic, J. Deutsch, G. Fuller, Polymer films at the air/water interface: Rheology and simulation, Soc. Rheology Annual Meeting, Lubbock, TX, Feb. 13-17, 2005.
211. S. Melle, M. Lask, G. Fuller, Magnetic emulsions with tunable stability, Soc. Rheology Annual Meeting, Lubbock, TX, Feb. 13-17, 2005.
208. A. Goffin, J. Anseth, G. Fuller, D. Upadhyay, P. Kao, Gelation of lung surfactant responding to environmental stress, European Soc. Rheology, Grenoble, France, April 18-21, 2005.
209. M. Widenbrant, G. Fuller, Single lipid tracking of Langmuir monolayer properties, European Soc. Rheology, Grenoble, France, April 18-21, 2005.
210. G. Gavranovic, J. Deutsch, G. Fuller, Polymer melts at the air/water interface: Rheology and simulation, European Soc. Rheology, Grenoble, France, April 18-21, 2005.
211. G. Fuller, Solid-stabilized emulsions, European Soc. Rheology, Grenoble, France, April 18-21, 2005.
212. . Solid Stabilized Emulsions, Xu, H., Kirkwood, J., Fuller, G., Annual Meeting of the AIChE, Cincinnati, OH, October 30 – September 3, 2005.
213. Xu, H., Kirkwood, J., Fuller, G. Rheology of Particle-Laden Interfaces, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Vancouver, Canada, October 16-20, 2005.
214. Basavaraj, M. G., Fuller, G. G., Vermant, J., Packing, Flipping, and Buckling Transitions in Compressed Monolayers of Ellipsoidal Latex Particles, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Vancouver, Canada, October 16-20, 2005.
215. Golemanov, K., Kurtz, R., Fuller, G., Interfacial Rheology of Mixed Fatty Alcohol Monolayers, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Vancouver, Canada, October 16-20, 2005.
216. Xu, Hui, Kirkwood, J., Fuller, G., Buckling of Particle-Laden Fluid Interfaces, Materials Research Society, San Francisco, CA, April 17-20, 2006.
217. Xu, H. Kirkwood, J., Fuller, G., Two Dimensional Polymer Melts and Glasses, Annual European Rheology Conference, Hersonisos, Crete, Greece, April 27-29, 2006.
218. Gavranovic, G., Fuller, G., Polymers in Two Dimensions: Spanning Solutions, Melts, and Glasses, International Workshop on Mesoscale and Multiscale Description of

Complex Fluids, Prato, Italy, July 5-8, 2006.

219. Wong, A., Miller, R., Fuller, G., Orientational Dynamics of Polydiacetylene Monolayers, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Portland, ME, October 8-12, 2006.

220. Gravranovic, G., Fuller, G., Effects of Temperature and Chemical Modification on Polymer Langmuir Films, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Portland, ME, October 8-12, 2006.

221. J. Kirkwood, G. Fuller, Amyloid-protein interactions with phospholipid membranes, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 12-16, 2006.

222. H. Xu, J. Kirkwood, G. Fuller, Buckling Transitions in Solid Stabilizing Emulsions, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 12-16, 2006.

223. M. Widenbrandt, G. Fuller, Lipid-Induced beta-Amyloid Peptide Assemblage and Fragmentation, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 12-16, 2006.

224. A. Goffin, G. Fuller, Interfacial Flow Processing of Collagen Monolayers, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 12-16, 2006.

225. R. Kurtz, G. Fuller, Structure and Dynamics of mixtures of straight and branched chain fatty acids, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 12-16, 2006.

226. A. Wong, G. Fuller, Interfacial Flow Processing of Organic Semiconductors, AIChE Annual Meeting, San Francisco, CA, Nov. 12-16, 2006.

227. J. Kirkwood, J. Rajadas, G. Fuller, Coupling of cell orientation to alignment of collagen substrates, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Salt Lake City, UT, Oct. 7-11, 2007.

228. R. Kurtz, M. Toney, A. Lange, G. Fuller, Interfacial Dynamics of Straight-Chain and Branched Hexadecanol and Eicosanol Mixtures, AIChE Annual Meeting, SLC, Nov. 4-8, 2007

229. J. Kirkwood, A. Goffin, G. Fuller, Deposition Of Oriented Collagen From A Nematic State: Orienting Fibroblasts, AIChE Annual Meeting, SLC, Nov. 4-8, 2007

230. S. Nishimura, H. Kettelson, G. Fuller, Development Of An Interfacial Rheological Model For Identification Of Stable Tear Films, AIChE Annual Meeting, SLC, Nov. 4-8, 2007

231. D. Leiske, G. Fuller, Use Of An Interfacial Tensiometer To Measure Response Of A Model Tear Film Under Extensional Strain, AIChE Annual Meeting, SLC, Nov. 4-8, 2007.

232. D. Leiske, G. Fuller, Use Of An Interfacial Tensiometer To Measure Response Of A Model Tear Film Under Extensional Strain, Association for Research in Vision and Ophthalmology (ARVO), Ft. Lauderdale, FL, May, 2008.

230. D. Leiske, G. Fuller, Development of an interfacial extensional rheometer with applications in model tear films, International Congress on Rheology, Monterey, CA, August 3-8, 2008.

231. J. Kirkwood, G. Fuller, Flow induced orientation of cholesteric collagen, a useful substrate for controlling cell orientation, International Congress on Rheology, Monterey, CA, August 3-8, 2008.

232. A. Goffin, G. Fuller, Interfacial flow processing of biological molecules, International Congress on Rheology, Monterey, CA, August 3-8, 2008.

233. Kristin Sommer, G. Fuller, Flow-induced morphologies of highly concentrated collagen solutions, International Congress on Rheology, Monterey, CA, August 3-8,

2008.

234. D. Auguste, J. Kirkwood, J. Kohn, G. Fuller, R. Prud'homme, Surface Rheology of Hydrophobically-Modified PEG Polymers Associating with a Phospholipid Monolayer at the Air-Water Interface, AIChE Annual Meeting, Philadelphia, Nov. 15-21, 2008.

235. Y. Shenghan, E. Shaqfeh, G. Fuller, An investigation of the collective behavior of colloidal particles trapped at a fluid-fluid interface, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 18-22, 2009.

236. C. Anderson, E. Lai, G. Fuller, Oriented matrices of collagen for directed cellular growth, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 18-22, 2009.

237. T. Hsu, G. Fuller, Fluid mechanics of rinsing flows, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 18-22, 2009.

238. C. Wu, G. Fuller, Oriented monolayers of single-walled carbon nanotubes using interfacial flow processing, Annual Meeting of the Society of Rheology, Madison, WI, Oct. 18-22, 2009.

239. C. Anderson, E. Lai, G. Fuller, Oriented matrices of collagen for directed cellular growth, Annual Meeting of the AIChE, Nashville, TN, Nov. 10, 2009.

240. T. Hsu, G. Fuller, Fluid mechanics of rinsing flows, Annual Meeting of the AIChE, Nashville, TN, Nov. 11, 2009.

241. D. Leiske, G. Fuller, Interfacial Rheology of the Tear Film, 6th Annual European Rheology Conference, April 7-9, 2010, Göteborg – Sweden

242. T. Hsu, C. Frank, G. Fuller, Particle Removal: Turning Liquids into Soft Adhesives, 6th Annual European Rheology Conference, April 7-9, 2010, Göteborg – Sweden

243. Interfacial Rheology of the Meibomian Lipid Layer, 6<sup>th</sup> International Conference on the Tear Film and Ocular Surface, Florence, Italy, September 23-25, 2010.

244. Dynamic Contact Angle of Drops Supporting Monolayers of Meibomian Lipids, 6<sup>th</sup> International Conference on the Tear Film and Ocular Surface, Florence, Italy, September 23-25, 2010.

245. A Stress Rheometer for Living Mammalian Cells, C. Anderson, G. Fuller, Soc. Rheology Annual Mtg., Santa Fe, NM, Oct. 24-28, 2010.

246. Interfacial Rheology and Stability of the Tear Film, D. Leiske, G. Fuller, Soc. Rheology Annual Mtg., Santa Fe, NM, Oct. 24-28, 2010.

247. Rinsing Flows of Complex Liquids, T. Hsu, T. Walker, C. Frank, G. Fuller, Soc. Rheology Annual Mtg., Santa Fe, NM, Oct. 24-28, 2010.

248. Removal of Particles From Surfaces Using Non-Newtonian Fluids, T. Hsu, T. Walker, C. Frank, G. Fuller, A.I.Ch.E. Ann. Mtg., Salt Lake City, Nov. 2010.

249. Viscoelastic and Structural Changes of Human Meibomian Lipids with Temperature, D. Leiske, G. Fuller, A.I.Ch.E. Ann. Mtg., Salt Lake City, Nov. 2010.

250. Thin Film Formation of Silica Nanoparticle/Lipid Composite Films at the Fluid-Fluid Interface, M. Maas, G. Fuller, A.I.Ch.E. Ann. Mtg., Salt Lake City, Nov. 2010.

251. Rinsing Flows of Non-Newtonian Fluids, T. Walker, T. Hsu, G. Fuller, APS Div. Fluid Dynamics, Long Beach, Nov. 2010.

252. Interfacial Rheology of Monoclonal Antibody Solutions, M. Maas, G. Fuller, ACS Meeting, March 27-31, 2011 in Anaheim, California.

253. Porous media model and collective behaviour of colloidal particles trapped at a

fluidic interface, S. Yan, G. Fuller, E. Shaqfeh, Society of Rheology Meeting, Cleveland, OH, October 10-13, 2011.

254. Bulk and interfacial rheology of the tear film, L. Rosenfeld, D. Leiske, G. Fuller, Society of Rheology Meeting, Cleveland, OH, October 10-13, 2011.

255. Interfacial shear rheological behaviors of natural silk fibroin, X. Qiao, G. Fuller, Society of Rheology Meeting, Cleveland, OH, October 10-13, 2011.

256. Matrix-induced alignment and shear flow: effects on endothelial cells, E. Lai, M. Bynum, A. Dunn, G. Fuller, Society of Rheology Meeting, Cleveland, OH, October 10-13, 2011.

257. Rinsing flows using non-Newtonian fluids, T. Walker, T. Hsu, G. Fuller, Society of Rheology Meeting, Cleveland, OH, October 10-13, 2011.

258. Matrix-Induced Alignment and Shear Flow: Effects On Endothelial Cells, E. Lai, M. Bynum, A. Dunn, G. Fuller, AIChE Meeting, Minneapolis, MN, October 16-20, 2011.

259. Bulk and interfacial rheology of the tear film, L. Rosenfeld, D. Leiske, G. Fuller, AIChE Meeting, Minneapolis, MN, October 16-20, 2011.

#### **Invited Seminars**

1. Light Scattering and Flow Birefringence Studies of Flow Induced Macromolecular Deformation and Orientation in Solution, University of Wisconsin, Madison, Wisconsin, April, 1979.
2. Dynamics of Polymer Solutions Subjected to a Wide Range of Kinematic Conditions, Bell Telephone Laboratories, Murray Hill, New Jersey, October, 1980.
3. Dynamics of Polymer Solutions Subjected to a Wide Range of Kinematic Conditions, Raychem Corporation, Menlo Park, California, December, 1980.
4. Dynamics of Polymer Solutions Subjected to a Wide Range of Kinematic Conditions, IBM Research, San Jose, California, January, 1981.
5. The Response of Polymer Films Subjected to Flow Department of Chemical Engineering, University of California, Davis, California, November, 1981.
6. Flow Birefringence in Time Dependent Flows, Department of Chemical Engineering, Massachusetts Institute of Technology, Cambridge, Massachusetts, October 29, 1982.
7. Flow Birefringence of Rigid Rod Polymers in Time Dependent Flows, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, Massachusetts, November 1, 1982.
8. Ellipsometric Studies of Polymer Adsorption in Flowing Systems, Eastman Kodak Research Laboratories, Rochester, New York, November 2, 1982.
9. Flow Birefringence in Time Dependent Flows, Department of Chemical Engineering, Princeton University, Princeton, New Jersey, November 3, 1982.
10. Dynamics of Dilute Suspensions Subject to Transient Flows by Conservative Dichroism, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Delaware, Newark, Delaware, October 20, 1983.
11. Dynamics of Dilute Suspensions Subject to Transient Flows by Conservative Dichroism, Department of Chemical Engineering, Cornell University, Ithaca,

New York, October 25, 1983.

12. Dynamics of Dilute Suspensions Subject to Transient Flows by Conservative Dichroism, Department of Chemical Engineering, Carnegie-Mellon University, Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, October 26, 1983.

13. Flow Enhanced Desorption of Adsorbed Polymer Chains Department of Chemical Engineering, University of California at Los Angeles, California, November 11, 1983.

14. Dynamics of Dilute Suspensions Subject to Transient Flows by Conservative Dichroism, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Southern California, Los Angeles, California, November 14, 1983.

15. Optical Methods in Micro-Rheology, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Arizona, Tucson, Arizona, March 27, 1984.

16. Optical Methods in Micro-Rheology, Department of Chemical Engineering, Arizona State University, Tempe, Arizona, March 29, 1984.

17. Optical Methods in Micro-Rheology, Celanese Research Laboratories, Summit, New Jersey, June 8, 1984.

18. Optical Methods in Micro-Rheology, Exxon Research and Engineering Company, Clinton, New Jersey, June 14, 1984.

19. Dynamics of Iron Oxide Suspensions Subjected to Transient Flows Using Conservative Dichroism, IBM Research San Jose, California, August 15, 1984.

20. Optical Methods in Rheology, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of California, Davis, California, February 11, 1985.

21. Optical Methods in Rheology, AT&T Bell Laboratories, Murray Hill, New Jersey, March 1, 1985.

22. Optical Methods in Suspension Rheology, Laboratoire d'Aerothermique, C.N.R.S., Meudon, France, March 25, 1985.

23. Optical Methods in Suspension Rheology, Polymer and Colloid Laboratory, University of Bristol, Bristol England, March 27, 1985.

24. Optical Methods in Suspension Rheology, Department of Applied Mathematics, University College of Wales, Aberystwyth, Wales, March 29, 1985.

25. Optical Rheometry, American Cyanamid Research Laboratories, Stamford, Connecticut, August, 1985.

26. Optical Methods for Polymeric and Colloidal Liquid Fluid Dynamics, Dow Chemical Research Laboratories, Midland, Michigan, September, 1985.

27. Optical Rheometry, Owens-Corning Technical Center, Granville, Ohio, November 1985.

28. Optical Rheometry of Particles Suspended in Non Newtonian Liquids, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Wisconsin, Madison, Wisconsin, February, 1986.

29. Flow Induced Particle Orientations by Optical Rheometry, 3M Center, St. Paul, Minnesota, February 1986.

30. Optical Rheometry of Colloidal and Polymeric Liquids, Eastman Kodak Company, Rochester, New York, May, 1986.

31. Optical Rheometry of Multicomponent Liquids, Department of Chemical Engineering, CALTECH, Pasadena, California October, 1986.

32. Optical Rheometry of Polymeric and Colloidal Liquids, Department of

- Chemical Engineering, University of Pennsylvania, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, February 1987.
33. Orientation of Colloidal Particles in Flowing Polymeric Liquids, Dupont Experimental Station, Wilmington, Delaware, February, 1987.
  34. Optical Rheometry, Department of Chemical Engineering University of Delaware, Newark, Delaware, March, 1987.
  35. Optical Rheometry, Fluid Mechanics Group, University of Toronto, Toronto, Ontario, April, 1987.
  36. Optical Rheometry of Liquid Crystal Domain Structure, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Leuven, Leuven, Belgium, May, 1987.
  37. Optical Rheometry of Liquid Crystal Domain Structure Department of Chemical Engineering, VPI, Blacksburg, Virginia, May, 1987.
  38. Orientation of Colloidal Particles in Polymeric Liquids Subjected to Flow, Department of Chemical Engineering, Cornell University, Ithaca, New York, June, 1987.
  39. Guest Lecturer in Optical Rheometry, Rheology Short Course, University of Minnesota, Minneapolis, Minnesota, August, 1987.
  40. Optical Rheometry of Polymeric Liquids, Dupont Research and Development, Brevart, North Carolina, March, 1988.
  41. Rheo-optics of Polymeric and Colloidal Liquids, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of California, Berkeley, CA, September 12, 1988.
  42. Rheo-optics of Bidisperse Polymer Melts, Institute for Chemical Research, Kyoto University, Kyoto, Japan, October 3, 1988.
  43. Domain Structure of Polymer Liquid Crystals, Department of Polymer Chemistry, Kyoto University, Kyoto, Japan, October 4, 1988.
  44. Domain Structure of Polymer Liquid Crystals, Department of Macromolecular Science, Osaka University, Osaka, Japan, October 4, 1988.
  45. Extensional Flow Properties of Flexible and Rigid Polymer Chains, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Niigata University, Niigata, Japan, October 7, 1988.
  46. Flow Induced Structure in Dense Dispersions of Colloidal Spheres, Department of Physics, Tokyo Metropolitan University, Tokyo, Japan, October 11, 1988.
  47. Determination of Liquid Crystalline Domain Size and Anisotropy, Dow Chemical, Research Center, Walnut Creek, CA, December 8, 1988.
  48. Domain Structure of Polymer Liquid Crystals, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Illinois, Urbana, IL, February, 16, 1989.
  49. Optical Rheometry of Polymer Liquid Crystals, Physical Chemistry Laboratory, University of Utrecht, The Netherlands, May 24th, 1989.
  50. Optical Rheometry of Bidisperse Polymer Melts, Corporate Research Laboratories, Dutch State Mining Company, May 25th, 1989
  51. Dynamics of Polymeric Liquids at Intermediate Length Scales, Department of Polymer Chemistry, University of Mainz and Max Planck Institute for Polymer Science, Mainz, West Germany, May 29, 1989.
  52. Optical Rheometry of Bidisperse Polymer Melts, Corporate Research Laboratories, BASF, Ludwigshafen, West Germany, May 30, 1989.
  53. Dynamics of Polymeric Liquids at Intermediate Length Scales, Physical Chemistry Laboratory, Ecole Supérieure de Physique et de Chimie Industrielles

de Paris, Paris, France, May 31, 1989.

54. Dynamics of Polymeric Liquids at Intermediate Length Scales, Polymer Science Department, University of Freiburg, Freiburg, West Germany, July 10, 1989.

55. Flow Induced Phase Separation in Polymer Solutions, Department of Chemical Engineering, Purdue University, West Lafayette, Indiana, September 13, 1989.

56. Rheo-optical Studies of Flow-Induced Phase Transition in Polymer Solutions, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Connecticut, Storrs, CT, Nov. 15, 1989.

57. Rheo-optical Studies of Flow-Induced Phase Transition in Polymer Solutions, Department of Polymer Science, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, MA, Nov. 17, 1989.

58. Optical Rheometry of Polymeric Liquids and Thin Films, Hoescht-Celanese Research Center, Summit, NJ, Jan. 8, 1990.

59. Infrared Polarimetry Studies for Multi-component Polymer Melts, Kodak Corporate Research Laboratories, Rochester, NY, August 14, 1990.

60. Electro-hydrodynamics of Dense Colloidal Suspensions, Department of Applied Physics, Nagoya University, Nagoya, Japan, September 18, 1990.

61. Rheo-optics of Flow-induced Phase Separation of Polymer Solutions, Department of Polymer Chemistry, Kyoto University, Kyoto, Japan, September 19, 1990.

62. Optical Rheometry, Department of Chemical Engineering, Brigham Young University, Provo, UT, November 29, 1990.

63. Optical Rheometry, Rhom & Haas Co., Spring House, PA, January 17, 1991.

64. Extensional Flow Properties of Solutions, Clorox Technical Center, Pleasanton, CA, April 23, 1991.

65. Rheo-Optics of Polymer Dynamics, 3M, St. Paul, MN, June 3, 1991.

66. Rheo-Optics of Polymer Dynamics, Amoco Corporation, Naperville, IL, June 4, 1991.

67. Optical Rheometry, BP Research, Middlesex, United Kingdom, July 22, 1991.

68. Optical Rheometry of Polymer Melts and Blends, Delft University of Technology, Delft, The Netherlands, September 9, 1991

69. Flow-Induced Phase Separation of Polymer Liquids, BP Research, Middlesex, United Kingdom, September 16, 1991

70. Optical Rheometry of Multicomponent Polymer Liquids, University of California, Santa Barbara, November 7, 1991.

71. Shear Induced Phase Transition and Electric-Field Induced Structures in Polymer Systems, Department of Physics, Kyoto University, January 16, 1992.

72. Optical Rheometry for Multicomponent Systems, University of Arizona, Tucson, January 21, 1992.

73. Optical Rheometry for Multicomponent Systems, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Delaware, March 5, 1992.

74. Rheo-Optics of Polymer Dynamics, Shell Development Company, Houston, TX, April 23, 1992.

75. Optical Rheometry of Multicomponent Polymer Liquids, 3M Technical Center, St. Paul, MN, June 23, 1992.

76. Field Unduced Phase Separation in Polymer Liquids, Department of Polymer

- Chemistry, University of Mainz, Germany, July 22, 1992.
77. Dynamics of Multicomponent Complex Liquids, Department of Material Science, EPFL, Lausanne, Switzerland, July 24, 1992.
  78. Field Induced Phase Separation of Polymer Liquids, Institute for Problems in Mechanics of the Russian Academy of Sciences, Moscow, Russia, October 6, 1992.
  79. Field Induced Phase Separation in Polymer Liquids, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Washington, Seattle, WA, November 16, 1992.
  80. Extensional Viscometry of Low Viscosity Fluids, Polaroid Corporation, Boston, MA, October 21, 1993.
  81. Dynamics of Polymer Mixtures, General Electric Co., Schenectady, NY, October 22, 1993.
  82. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Florida, Gainesville, FL, November 12, 1993.
  83. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Missouri-Rolla, Rolla, MO, November 14, 1993.
  84. Optical Rheometry, Xerox Research Centre, Toronto, Canada, February 22, 1994.
  85. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, 3M Center, St. Paul, MN, February 23, 1994.
  86. Dynamics of Multicomponent Polymer Liquids, Dept. of Chemical Engineering, University of Naples, Italy, March 30, 1994
  87. Dynamics of Two Dimensional Liquid Crystals, Dept. of Chemistry, University of Mainz, Germany, April 26, 1994.
  88. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Dept. of Chemical Engineering, University of Patras, Patras, Greece, May 9, 1994.
  89. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Dept. of Polymer Science, F.O.R.T.H., University of Iraklion, Iraklion, Crete, Greece, May 19, 1994.
  90. Optical Rheometry, Center for Materials Science, Ecole des Mines de Paris, Nice, France, June 7, 1994.
  91. Introduction to Optical Rheometry, Bridgestone Corp., Tokyo, Japan, Sept. 21, 1994.
  92. Dynamics and Structure of Wormlike Micelles, Procter and Gamble, Cincinnati, OH, October 25, 1994.
  93. Optical Rheometry of Complex Fluids, Chemical Engineering, Texas A&M University, College Station, TX, December 2, 1994.
  94. Principles of Optical Rheometry, Technical University of Eindhoven, Eindhoven, The Netherlands, December 7, 1994.
  95. Dynamics of Polymeric Liquids using Optical Rheometry, Department of Macromolecular Science, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH, February 3, 1995.
  96. Dynamics of Multicomponent Polymer Liquids, DuPont Corp., Wilmington, DE, February 7, 1995.
  97. Dynamics of Multicomponent Polymer Liquids, Union Carbide, New Brunswick, NJ, February 8, 1995.
  98. Optical Rheometry of Polymer Liquids, Sunkyoung Chemical Co., Yukong



- Taeduk Research Center, Korea, March 29, 1995.
99. Gerald G. Fuller, Orientation Dynamics of Monolayers, The Levich Institute, City College of New York, March 26, 1996.
  100. Gerald G. Fuller, Fluid Dynamics of Complex Interfaces, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Colorado, Boulder, CO, April 10-11, 1996.
  101. Gerald G. Fuller, Rheology of Monolayers, Laboratoire de Rheologie, University of Grenoble, Grenoble, France, April 26, 1996.
  102. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow Orientation of Monolayers, Newton Institute, University of Cambridge, U.K., April 30, 1996.
  103. Gerald G. Fuller, Series of three lectures: "Flow Induced Concentration Fluctuations in Polymeric Liquids", "Orientation Dynamics of Miscible Polymer Blends", "Interfacial Dynamics of Monolayers", Sadron Institute, University of Strasbourg, Strasbourg, France, June-July, 1996.
  104. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow Orientation of Monolayers, Department of Material Science, EPFL, Lausanne, Switzerland, June 17, 1996.
  105. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow Orientation of Langmuir Films, Department of Physics, Ecole Normale Superier, Paris, France, 1996.
  106. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow Orientation of Langmuir Films, Department of Physics, Technical University of Berlin, July 2, 1996.
  107. Gerald G. Fuller, Flow Orientation of Langmuir Films, Max Planck Institute for Colloid Science, Berlin, Germany, July 3, 1996.
  108. Gerald G. Fuller, Rheology of Monolayers, Department of Chemistry, Tulane University, New Orleans, LA, Oct. 7, 1996.
  109. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids and Interfaces, Raychem, Menlo Park, CA, October 24, 1997.
  110. Gerald G. Fuller, Fluid Dynamics of Langmuir Monolayers, Department of Chemical Engineering, Princeton University, Princeton, NJ, February 26, 1997.
  111. Gerald G. Fuller, Interfacial Rheology of Monolayers, Chemical Engineering Department, Northwestern University, Evanston, IL, February 27, 1997.
  112. Gerald G. Fuller, Rheology of Complex Interfaces, Rheology Research Center, University of Wisconsin, Madison, WI, February 28, 1997.
  113. Gerald G. Fuller, Interfacial Rheology, Alza Corporation, Palo Alto, CA, June 18, 1997.
  114. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Hercules Inc., Wilmington, Delaware, July 15, 1997.
  115. Gerald G. Fuller, Interfacial Rheology and Dynamics of Langmuir Films, Department of Chemistry, University of Essen, Essen, Germany, September 9, 1997.
  116. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Complex Fluids and Interfaces, Department of Chemical Engineering, Oklahoma State University, Stillwater, OK, September 23, 1997.
  117. Gerald G. Fuller, Dynamics and Structure of Complex Interfaces, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of British Columbia, Vancouver, BC, September 26, 1997.
  118. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymer Melts, Blends, and

- Copolymers, Elf Atochem, King of Prussia, PA, November 11, 1997.
119. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Polymer Melts, Blends, and Stereoblock Polymers, Dow, Freeport, TX, November 12, 1997.
  120. Gerald G. Fuller, Optical Rheometry of Complex Fluids and Interfaces, Chemical Engineering, NC State, Rayleigh, NC, November 24, 1997.
  121. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Solvay Chemical Co., Brussels, Belgium, June 16, 1998.
  122. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Dow-Corning, Midland, MI, July 13, 1998.
  123. Optical Rheometry of Complex Liquids, Avery-Dennison, Cleveland, OH, July, 14, 1998.
  124. Dynamics and Rheometry of Complex Interfaces, Carnegie-Mellon University, Pittsburg, PA, Nov. 10, 1999.
  125. Structure and Dynamics of Complex Fluid Interfaces, UCSB, Santa Barbara, CA, 01/14/99
  126. Structure and Dynamics of Complex Fluid Interfaces, UCLA, Los Angeles, CA, 01/14/99
  127. Rheology of Complex Fluids and Interfaces, Procter and Gamble, Cincinnati, OH, 01/27/99.
  128. Rheology of Complex Interfaces, Department of Chemistry, Colorado State University, Ft. Collins, CO, 04/15/99
  129. Rheology of Complex Interfaces, Colorado School of Mines, Golden, CO, 04/16/99
  130. Interfacial Rheology, Procter and Gamble, Brussels, Belgium, 05/07/99
  131. Microrheology of Complex Liquids and Interfaces, Rohm and Haas Company, Spring House, PA, May 27, 1999.
  132. Dynamics of Complex Liquids and Interfaces, Department of Polymer Chemistry, University of Bayreuth, Bayreuth, Germany, June 29, 1999.
  133. Optical Rheometry, Enitechnologies, Milan, Italy, July 1-2, 1999.
  134. Applied Rheology, National Starch and Chemical Company, Bridgewater, NJ, August 23-24, 1999.
  135. Rheology in Two Dimensions, Chemical Engineering, UC Berkeley, Berkeley, CA, September 15, 1999.
  136. Rheology of Complex Interfaces, Kodak Research Laboratories, Rochester, NY, Jan. 14, 2000.
  137. Interfacial Rheology of Complex Systems, Merck Research, Rahway, NJ, Mar. 1, 2000.
  138. Interfacial Rheology of Complex Systems, ExxonMobile Research and Engineering Company, Clinton, NJ, Mar. 2, 2000.
  139. Rheology in Two Dimensions, Department of Polymer Engineering, University of Akron, Akron, OH, Mar. 3, 2000.
  140. Dynamics of Complex Interfaces, Department of Polymer Science, Yamagata University, Japan, Mar. 14, 2000.
  141. Rheology in Two Dimensions, Frontier Research System, RIKEN Laboratories, Tokyo, Japan, Mar. 16, 2000.
  142. Rheology in Two Dimensions, Chemical Engineering, Texas Tech., Lubbock,

TX, Feb. 18, 2000.

143. Dynamics of Complex Interfaces, Department of Physics, Technical University of Munich, Germany, June 9, 2000.

144. Dynamics of Complex Interfaces, Department of Polymer Science, University of Bayreuth, Germany, June 12, 2000.

145. Rheology in Two Dimensions, Department of Chemical and Environmental Engineering, University of Arizona, January 23, 2001.

146. Dynamics of Chains Trapped in Two Dimensions, NIST, Gaithersburg, VA, March 6, 2001.

147. Interfacial Rheology, Department of Macromolecular Science, Case Western Reserve University, Cleveland, OH, January 18, 2002.

148. Dynamics of Polymer Interfaces, Department of Chemical Engineering, Wayne State University, Detroit, MI, February 15, 2002.

149. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Facultad de Ciencias de la UNED, E-28040 Madrid, Spain, March 4, 2002.

150. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Unilever Co., NJ, April 6, 2002.

151. Rheology of two-dimensional, mobile systems, University of Minho, Department of Polymer Engineering, Guimarães, Portugal, June 24, 2002.

152. Dynamics of Mobile Interfaces: Rheology on the Edge, Chemical Engineering, UC Davis, Davis, CA, Sept. 30, 2002.

153. Interfacial Rheology of Complex Interfaces, Chemical Engineering, Virginia Tech, October 18, 2002.

154. Dynamics of Mobile Interfaces: Rheology on the Edge, Miami Valley Research Laboratories, Procter and Gamble, Cincinnati, OH, December 16, 2002.

155. Rheology of Complex, Mobile Interfaces, Department of Chemistry, Virginia Tech., Blacksburg, VA, April 18, 2003.

156. Rheology of Complex, Mobile Interfaces, Department of Chemistry, University of Sofia, Sofia, Bulgaria, May 9, 2003.

157. Rheology of Complex, Mobile Interfaces, Department of Materials Science, University of Crete, Heraklion, Greece, May 15, 2003.

158. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Chemical Engineering, University of Michigan, October 30, 2003.

159. Interfacial Rheology, KSV Corp., Helsinki, Finland, August 2, 2004.

160. Particle Stabilized Emulsions, University of Bordeaux, France, September 27, 2004.

161. Particle Stabilized Emulsions, BASF, Ludwigshafen, Germany, September 30, 2004.

162. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Mechanical Engineering, UC Berkeley, Oct. 20, 2004.

163. Rheology of Complex Fluid Interfaces, Physics Department, Emory University, Atlanta, GA, Dec. 3, 2004.

164. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Department of Chemistry, Oxford University, Oxford, England, Dec. 6, 2004.

165. Two-Dimensional Suspensions, Unilever Corporate Research, Colworth, England, Dec. 7, 2004.

166. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Department of Physics, Cambridge University, Cambridge, England, Dec. 8, 2004.

167. Dynamics of Complex Fluid Interfaces, Engineering and Applied Sciences, Harvard University, Cambridge, MA, Jan. 10, 2005.
168. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Department of Chemistry, University of Groningen, Groningen, The Netherlands, Jan. 17, 2005.
169. Solid-Stabilized Emulsions, Department of Physics, Free University of Amsterdam, Amsterdam, The Netherlands, Jan. 18, 2005.
170. Interfacial Rheology, Chemical Engineering, Ecole Polytechnique, Montreal, Canada, March 31, 2005.
171. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Chemical Engineering, Laval University, Quebec City, Quebec, Canada, April 1, 2005.
172. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Department of Physics, UC Santa Cruz, Santa Cruz, CA, April 8, 2005.
173. Dynamics of Biological Films, Guidant, Mountain View, CA, June 3, 2005.
174. Dynamics of Biological Films, Nelcor, Pleasanton, CA, June 6, 2005.
175. Particle Stabilized Droplets, Rheology Research Center, University of Wisconsin, October 28, 2005.
176. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Chemical Engineering, University of Pittsburg, November 11, 2005.
177. Complex Fluid Interfaces: Applications in Consumer Products and the Life Sciences, Department of Chemistry, UCLA, April 1, 2006.
178. Complex Fluid Interfaces, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Calabria, May 30, 2006.
179. Interfacial Rheology, Institute of Bioengineering and Nanotechnology, Singapore, August 7, 2006.
180. Interfacial Rheology, King's Mongkut Institute of Technology North Bangkok, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Bangkok, Thailand, August 9, 2006.
181. Recent Advances in Interfacial Rheology, Shanghai Jiao Tong University, Shanghai, China, December 13, 2006.
182. The Rheology of Complex, Biological Interfaces, Manchester Interdisciplinary BioCentre, Manchester, England, July 1-6, 2007.
183. Short Course on Rheology, Shanghai Jiao Tong University, Shanghai, China, July 23 – 27, 2007
184. Washington University, October 28, 2007
185. IIT Delhi, November 21, 2007.
186. IIT Kanpur, November 22, 2007.
187. National Chemical Laboratories, Pune, India, November 23, 2007.
188. Interfacial Rheology, IIT Mumbai, India, October 3, 2008.
189. Interfacial Rheology, National Chemical Laboratories, Pune, India, October 4, 2008.
190. Interfacial Rheology, IIT Delhi, India, October 15, 2008.
191. Interfacial Rheology, Indian Institute of Science, Bangalore, India, October 17, 2008.
192. Oriented collagen substrates for directed cell growth, Department of Chemical Engineering, University of Queensland, Brisbane, Australia, August 10, 2009.
193. Surface Cleaning using Non-Newtonian Fluids, Departmental Seminar, Chemical Engineering, ASU, Tempe, AZ, April 24, 2010
194. Interfacial Rheology, Petrobras Research Laboratories, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, July

- 12, 2010.
195. Extensional Rheometry and Surface Cleaning, Departmental Seminar, Chemical Engineering, University Federal Rio de Janeiro, July 13, 2010.
196. Protein-Surface Interactions, Cabot Industries, Billerica, MA, July 11, 2010.
197. Interfacial Rheology: Emulsion Stability, Coalescence, and Adhesion, Cape Town University, Cape Town, SA, Sept. 7, 2010.
198. Rinsing Flows and Particle Removal, ESPCI, Paris, France, September 28, 2010.
199. Protein-Surface Interactions, Medimmune, Gaithersburg, MD, Oct. 11, 2010.
200. Rinsing Flows and Surface Cleaning by Complex Liquids, Chemical Engineering, University of Leuven, Leuven, Belgium, December 8, 2010.
201. Rinse and Repeat: Turning Polymeric Liquids into Soft Adhesives, Chemical Engineering, Queen's University, Kingston, Ont., Canada, January 20, 2011.
202. Surface Cleaning by non-Newtonian Fluid Rinsing, Clorox Corp., Pleasanton, CA, January 28, 2011.
203. Rinse and Repeat: Turning Polymeric Liquids into Soft Adhesives, Mechanical Engineering, U. Washington, Seattle, March 1, 2011.
204. Rinse and Repeat: Turning Polymeric Liquids into Soft Adhesives, Mechanical Engineering, Georgia Tech, April 11, 2011.
205. Short Course on Rheology, Brazilian Society of Rheology, Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, July 4-5, 2011.
206. Short Course on Rheology, Golden Gate Polymer Forum, July 13-15, 2011, Mountain View, CA.
207. Short Course on Rheology, University of Leuven, Leuven, Belgium, September 5-9, 2011.
208. Short Course on the Rheology of High Interface Systems, Society of Rheology Meeting, Cleveland, OH, October 8-9, 2011.
209. Short Course on Rheology, South African Society of Rheology, Johannesburg, SA, November 21-22, 2011.

# APPENDIX II